The local structure of algebraic K-theory

Bjørn Ian Dundas, Thomas G. Goodwillie and Randy McCarthy

December 30, 2010

Preface

Algebraic K-theory draws its importance from its effective codification of a mathematical phenomenon which occurs in as separate parts of mathematics as number theory, geometric topology, operator algebras, homotopy theory and algebraic geometry. In reductionistic language the phenomenon can be phrased as

> *there is no canonical choice of coordinates*,

or, as so elegantly expressed by Hermann Weyl [260, p.49]:

> *The introduction of numbers as coordinates ... is an act of violence whose only practical vindication is the special calculatory manageability of the ordinary number continuum with its four basic operations.*

As such, algebraic K-theory is a meta-theme for mathematics, but the successful codification of this phenomenon in homotopy-theoretic terms is what has made algebraic K-theory a valuable part of mathematics. For a further discussion of algebraic K-theory we refer the reader to chapter I below.

Calculations of algebraic K-theory are very rare and hard to come by. So any device that allows you to obtain new results is exciting. These notes describe one way to produce such results.

Assume for the moment that we know what algebraic K-theory is; how does it vary with its input?

The idea is that algebraic K-theory is like an analytic function, and we have this other analytic function called *topological cyclic homology* (TC) invented by Bökstedt, Hsiang and Madsen [19], and

> *the difference between K and TC is locally constant.*

This statement will be proven below, and in its integral form it has not appeared elsewhere before.

The good thing about this, is that TC is occasionally possible to calculate. So whenever you have a calculation of K-theory you have the possibility of calculating all the K-values of input "close" to your original calculation.

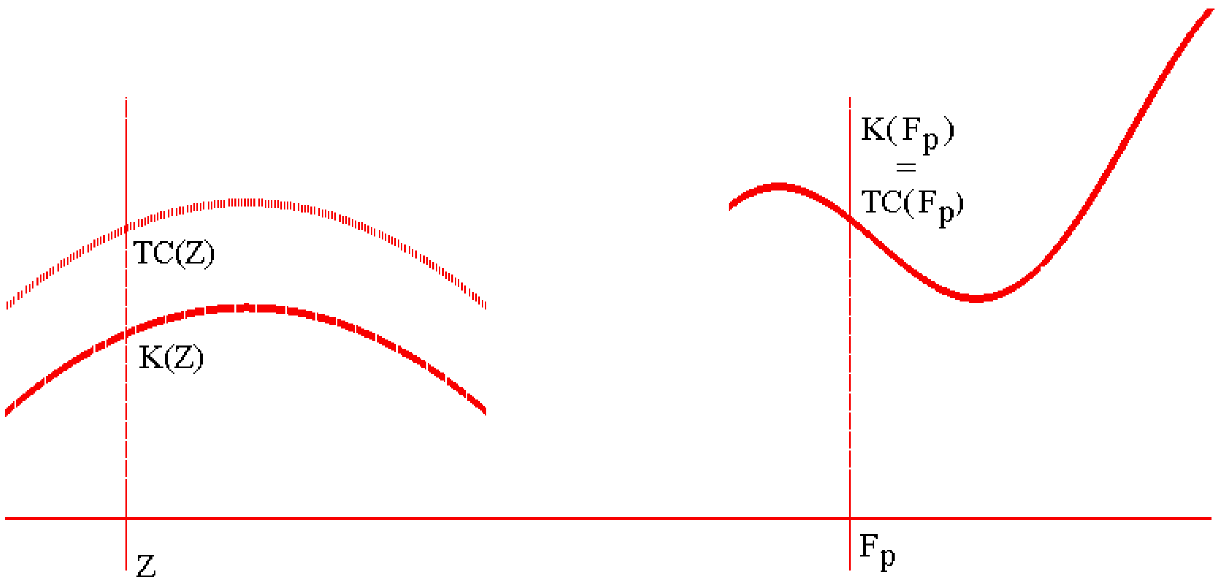


Figure 1: The difference between K and TC is locally constant. The left part of the figure illustrates the difference between $K(\mathbf{Z})$ and $TC(\mathbf{Z})$ is quite substantial, but once you know this difference you know that it does not change in a "neighborhood" of $\mathbf{Z}$. In this neighborhood lies for instance all applications of algebraic K-theory of simply connected spaces, so here TC-calculations ultimately should lead to results in geometric topology as demonstrated by Rognes.

On the right hand side of the figure you see that close to the finite field with p elements, K-theory and TC agrees (this is a connective and p-adic statement: away from the characteristic there are other methods that are more convenient). In this neighborhood you find many interesting rings, ultimately resulting in Hesselholt and Madsen's calculations of the K-theory of local fields.

So, for instance, if somebody (please) can calculate K-theory of the integers, many "nearby" applications in geometric topology (simply connected spaces) are available through TC-calculations (see e.g., [207], [206]). This means that calculations in motivic cohomology (giving K-groups of e.g., the integers) will actually have bearings for our understanding of diffeomorphisms of manifolds!

On a different end of the scale, Quillen's calculation of the K-theory of finite fields give us access to "nearby" rings, ultimately leading to calculations of the K-theory of local fields [113]. One should notice that the illustration offered by figure 1 is not totally misleading: the difference between $K(\mathbf{Z})$ and $TC(\mathbf{Z})$ is substantial (though locally constant), whereas around the field $\mathbf{F}_p$ with p elements it is negligible.

Taking K-theory for granted (we'll spend quite some time developing it later), we should say some words about TC. Since K-theory and TC differ only by some locally constant term, they must have the same differential: $D_1K = D_1TC$. For ordinary rings A this differential is quite easy to describe: it is the *homology* of the category $\mathcal{P}_A$ of finitely generated projective modules.

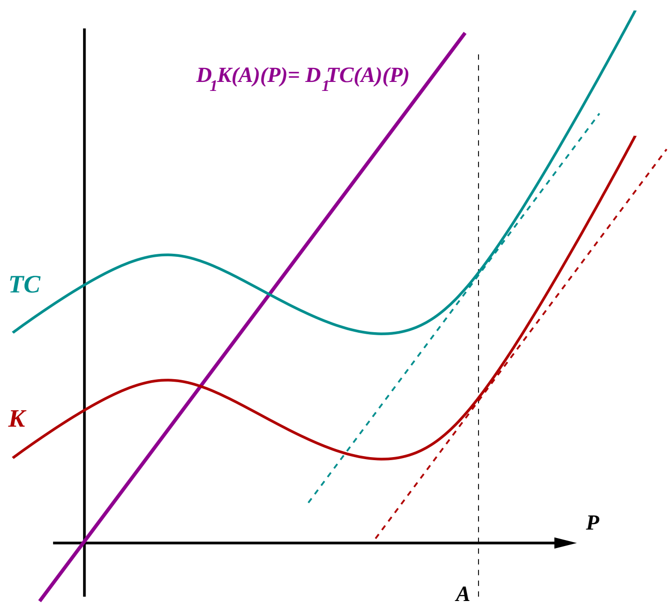


Figure 2: The differentials "at an **S**-algebra A in the direction of the A-bimodule P" of K and TC are equal. For discrete rings the differential is the homology of the category of finitely generated projective modules. In this illustration the differential is the magenta straight line through the origin, K-theory is the red curve and TC is the shifted curve in cyan.

The homology of a category is like Hochschild homology, and as Connes observed, certain models of Hochschild homology carry a circle action which is useful when comparing with K-theory. Only, in the case of the homology of categories it turns out that the ground ring over which to take Hochschild homology is not an ordinary ring, but the so-called sphere spectrum. Taking this idea seriously, we end up with Bökstedt's *topological Hochschild homology* THH.

One way to motivate the construction of TC from THH is as follows. There is a transformation $K \to THH$ which we will call the *Dennis trace map*, and there is a model for THH for which the Dennis trace map is just the *inclusion of the fixed points under the circle action*. That is, the Dennis trace can be viewed as a composite

$$K \cong THH^{\mathbb{T}} \subseteq THH$$

where $\mathbb{T}$ is the circle group.

The unfortunate thing about this statement is that it is *model dependent* in that fixed points do not preserve weak equivalences: if $X \to Y$ is a map of $\mathbb{T}$-spaces which is a weak equivalence of underlying spaces, normally the induced map $X^{\mathbb{T}} \to Y^{\mathbb{T}}$ will not be a weak equivalence. So, TC is an attempt to construct the $\mathbb{T}$-fixed points through techniques that **do** preserve weak equivalences.

It turns out that there is more to the story than this: THH possesses something called an *epicyclic structure* (which is not the case for all $\mathbb{T}$-spaces), and this allows us to approximate the $\mathbb{T}$-fixed points even better.

So in the end, the *cyclotomic trace* is a factorization

$$K \to TC \to THH$$

of the Dennis trace map.

The cyclotomic trace is the theme for this book. There is another paper devoted to this transformation, namely Madsen's eminent survey [162]. If you can get hold of a copy it is a great supplement to the current text.

It was originally an intention that readers who were only interested in discrete rings would have a path leading far into the material with minimal contact with ring spectra. This idea has to a great extent been abandoned since ring spectra and the techniques around them have become much more mainstream while these notes have matured. Some traces of this earlier approach can still be seen in that chapter I does not depend at all on ring spectra, leading to the proof that stable K-theory of rings correspond to homology of the category of finitely generated projective modules. Topological Hochschild homology is, however, interpreted as a functor of ring spectra, so the statement that stable K-theory is THH requires some background on ring spectra.

General plan The general plan of the book is as follows.

In section I.1 we give some general background on algebraic K-theory. The length of this introductory section is justified by the fact that this book is primarily concerned with algebraic K-theory; the theories that fill the last chapters are just there in order to shed light on K-theory, we are not really interested in them for any other reason. In section I.2 we give Waldhausen's interpretation of algebraic K-theory and study in particular the case of radical extensions of rings. Finally, section I.3 compares stable K-theory and homology.

Chapter II aims at giving a crash course on ring spectra. In order to keep the presentation short we have limited our presentation only the simplest version: Segal's Γ-spaces. This only gives us connective spectra and the behavior with respect to commutativity issues leaves something to be desired. However, for our purposes Γ-spaces suffice and also fit well with Segal's version of algebraic K-theory, which we are using heavily later in the book.

Chapter III can (and perhaps should) be skipped on a first reading. It only asserts that various reductions are possible. In particular, K-theory of simplicial rings can be calculated degreewise "locally" (i.e., in terms of the K-theory of the rings appearing in each degree), simplicial rings are "dense" in the category of (connective) ring spectra, and all definitions of algebraic K-theory we encounter give the same result.

In chapter IV, topological Hochschild homology is at long last introduced. First for ring spectra, and then in a generality suitable for studying the correspondence with algebraic K-theory. The equivalence between the topological Hochschild homology of a ring and the homology of the category of finitely generated projective modules is established in IV.2, which together with the results in I.3 settle the equivalence between stable K-theory and topological Hochschild homology of rings.

In order to push the theory further we need an effective comparison between K-theory and THH, and this is provided by the Dennis trace map $K \to THH$ in the following chapter. We have here chosen a model which "localizes at the weak equivalences", and so conforms nicely with the algebraic case. For our purposes this works very well, but the reader should be aware that other models are more appropriate for proving structural theorems about the trace. In the last section, V.3, the comparison between stable K-theory and topological Hochschild homology is finalized using the trace.

In chapter VI topological cyclic homology is introduced. This is the most involved of the chapters in the book, since there are so many different aspects of the theory that have to be set in order. However, when the machinery is set up properly, and the trace has been lifted to topological cyclic homology, the local correspondence between K-theory and topological cyclic homology is proved in a couple of pages in chapter VII.

Chapter VII ends with a quick and inadequate review of the various calculations of algebraic K-theory that have resulted from trace methods. We first review the general framework set up by Bökstedt and Madsen for calculating topological cyclic homology, and follow this through for the important examples: the prime field $\mathbf{F}_p$, the (p-adic) integers $\mathbf{Z}_p$ and the Adams summand ℓ. These are all close enough to $\mathbf{F}_p$ so that the local correspondence between K-theory and topological cyclic homology make these calculations into actual calculations of algebraic K-theory. We also discuss very briefly the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture as seen from a homotopy theoretical viewpoint, which is made especially attractive through the comparison with topological cyclic homology. The inner equivariant workings of topological Hochschild homology display a rich and beautiful algebraic structure, with deep intersections with log geometry through the de Rham-Witt complex. This is prominent in Hesselholt and Madsen's calculation of the K-theory of local fields, but facets are found in almost all the calculations discussed in section VII.3. We also briefly touch upon the first problem tackled through trace methods: the algebraic K-theory Novikov conjecture.

The appendix A collects some material that is used freely throughout the notes. Much of the material is available elsewhere in the literature, but for the convenience of the reader we have given the precise formulations we actually need and set them in a common framework. The reason for pushing this material to an appendix, and not working it into the text, is that an integration would have produced a serious eddy in the flow of ideas when only the most diligent readers will need the extra details. In addition, some of the results are used at places that are meant to be fairly independent of each other.

The fairly detailed index is meant as an aid through the plethora of symbols and complex terminology, and we have allowed ourselves to make the unorthodox twist of adding hopefully helpful hints in the index itself, where this has not taken too much space, so that in many cases a brief glance at the index makes checking up the item itself unnecessary.

Displayed diagrams commute, unless otherwise noted. The ending of proofs that are just sketched or referred away and of statements whose verification is embedded in the preceding text are marked with a ☺.

Acknowledgments: This book owes a lot to many people. The first author especially wants to thank Marcel Bökstedt, Bjørn Jahren, Ib Madsen and Friedhelm Waldhausen for their early and decisive influence on his view on mathematics. The third author would like to thank Marcel Bökstedt, Dan Grayson, John Klein, Jean-Louis Loday and Friedhelm Waldhausen whose support has made all the difference.

These notes have existed for quite a while on the net, and we are grateful for the helpful comments we have received from a number of people, in particular from Morten Brun, Harald Kittang, Birgit Richter, John Rognes, Stefan Schwede and Paul Arne Østvær.

A significant portion of the notes were written while visiting Stanford University, and the first author is grateful to Gunnar Carlsson and Ralph Cohen for the invitation and the

request to give a course based on these notes, which gave the impetus to try to finish the project.

Finally, the first author wants to thank his wife and two daughters for their patience with him and apologize for all the time spent thinking, writing and generally not paying attention to the important things.

Leitfaden For the convenience of the reader we provide the following Leitfaden. It should not be taken too seriously, some minor dependencies are not shown, and many sections that are noted to depend on previous chapters are actually manageable if one is willing to retrace some crossreferencing. In particular, chapter III should be postponed upon a first reading.

$$
\begin{tikzcd}
\mathrm{I.1} \arrow[r] & \mathrm{III.1} \arrow[d] & & \mathrm{II.1} \arrow[d] & \\
\mathrm{I.2} \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & \mathrm{III.2} \arrow[d] & & \mathrm{II.2} \arrow[ll] \arrow[d] & \\
\mathrm{I.3} \arrow[d] & \mathrm{III.3} \arrow[r] \arrow[dddl] & \mathrm{IV.1} \arrow[d] & \mathrm{II.3} \arrow[ddlll] & \\
\mathrm{V.1} \arrow[d] & & \mathrm{IV.2} \arrow[ll] \arrow[r] & \mathrm{VI.1} \arrow[d] & \\
\mathrm{V.2} \arrow[d] & & & \mathrm{VI.3} \arrow[d] & \mathrm{VI.2} \arrow[l] \\
\mathrm{V.3} \arrow[rr] & & \mathrm{VII.1} \arrow[d] & \mathrm{VI.4} \arrow[l] & \\
& & \mathrm{VII.2} \arrow[d] & & \\
& & \mathrm{VII.3} & &
\end{tikzcd}
$$

Contents

Chapter I

Algebraic K-theory

In this chapter we define and discuss the algebraic K-theory functor. This chapter will mainly be concerned with the algebraic K-theory of rings, but we will extend this notion at the end of the chapter. There are various possible extensions, but we will mostly focus on a class of objects that are close to rings. In later chapters this will be extended again to include ring spectra and even more exotic objects.

In the first section we give a quick nontechnical overview of K-theory. Many of the examples are but lightly touched upon and not needed later, but are included to give an idea of the scope of the theory. Some of the examples in the introduction may refer to concepts or ideas that are unfamiliar to the reader. If this is the case, the reader may consult the index to check whether this is a topic that will be touched upon again (and perhaps even explained), or if it is something that can be left for later investigations. In any case, the reader is encouraged to ignore such problems at a first reading. For a fuller historical account, the reader may want to consult for instance [258] or [11].

In the second section we introduce Waldhausen's S-construction of algebraic K-theory and prove some of its basic properties.

The third section concerns itself with comparisons between K-theory and various homology theories, giving our first identification of the differential of algebraic K-theory, as discussed in the preface.

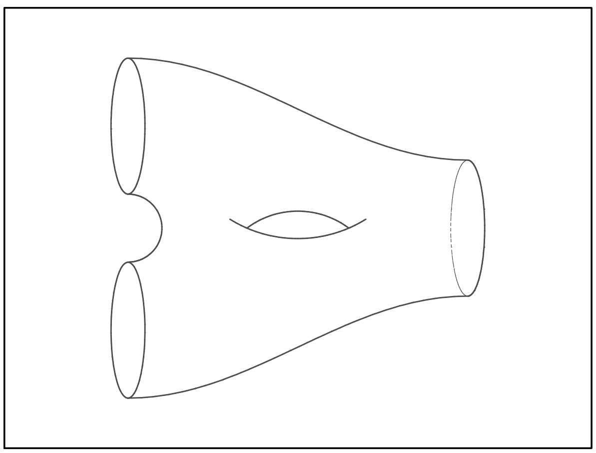
1 Introduction

The first appearance of what we now would call truly K-theoretic questions are the investigations of J. H. C. Whitehead (for instance [261], [262] or the later [263]), and Higman [115]. The name "K-theory" is much younger (said to be derived from the German word "Klassen"), and first appears in Grothendieck's work [1] in 1957 on the Riemann-Roch theorem. But, even though it was not called K-theory, we can get some motivation by studying the early examples.

1.1 Motivating example from geometry: Whitehead torsion

The "Hauptvermutung" states that two homeomorphic finite simplicial complexes have isomorphic subdivisions. The conjecture was formulated by Steinitz and Tietze in 1908, see [200] for references and a deeper discussion.

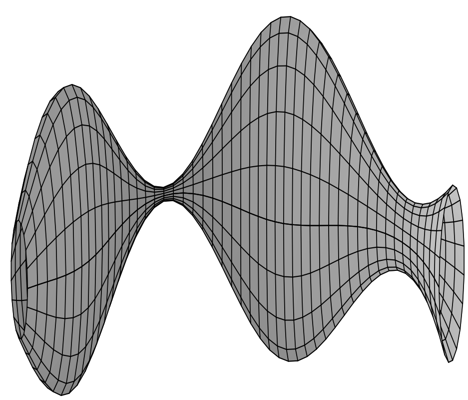
Unfortunately, the Hauptvermutung is not true: already in 1961 Milnor [180] gave concrete counterexamples built from lens spaces in all dimensions greater that six. To distinguish the simplicial structures he used an invariant of the associated chain complexes in what he called the *Whitehead group*. In the decade that followed, the Whitehead group proved to be an essential tool in topology, and especially in connection with problems related to "cobordisms". For a more thorough treatment of the following example, see Milnor's very readable article [178]



A cobordism W between a disjoint union M of two circles and a single circle N.

Let M and N be two smooth n-dimensional closed manifolds. A *cobordism* between M and N is an $n+1$-dimensional smooth compact manifold W with boundary the disjoint union of M and N (in the oriented case we assume that M and N are oriented, and W is an oriented cobordism from M to N if it is oriented so that the orientation agrees with that on N and is the opposite of that on M).
Here we are interested in a situation where M and N are deformation retracts of W. Obvious examples are cylinders $M \times I$.

More precisely: Let M be a closed, connected, smooth manifold of dimension $n > 5$. Suppose we are given an *h-cobordism* $(W; M, N)$, that is, a compact smooth $n+1$ dimensional manifold W, with boundary the disjoint union of M and N, such that both the inclusions $M \subset W$ and $N \subset W$ are homotopy equivalences.



An h-cobordism $(W; M, N)$. This one is a cylinder.

Question 1.1.1 *Is W diffeomorphic to $M \times I$?*

It requires some imagination to realize that the answer to this question can be "no". In particular, in the low dimensions of the illustrations all h-cobordisms **are** cylinders.

However, this is not true in high dimensions, and the h-cobordism theorem 1.1.4 below gives a precise answer to the question.

To fix ideas, let $M = L$ be a *lens space* of dimension, say, $n = 7$. That is, the cyclic group of order l, $\pi = \mu_l = \{1, e^{2\pi i/l}, \dots, e^{2\pi i(l-1)/l}\} \subseteq \mathbf{C}$, acts on the seven-dimensional sphere $S^7 = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbf{C}^4 \text{ s.t. } |\mathbf{x}| = 1\}$ by complex multiplication

$$\pi \times S^7 \to S^7 \qquad (t, \mathbf{x}) \mapsto (t \cdot \mathbf{x})$$

and we let let the lens space L be the quotient space $S^7/\pi = S^7/(\mathbf{x} \sim t \cdot \mathbf{x})$. Then L is a smooth manifold with fundamental group π.

Let

$$\dots \xrightarrow{\partial} C_{i+1} \xrightarrow{\partial} C_i \xrightarrow{\partial} \dots \longrightarrow C_0 \longrightarrow 0$$

be the complex calculating the homology $H_* = H_*(W, L; \mathbf{Z}[\pi])$ of the inclusion $L = M \subseteq W$ (see sections 7 and 9 in [178] for details). Each C_i is a finitely generated free $\mathbf{Z}[\pi]$-module, and, up to orientation and translation by elements in π, has a preferred basis over $\mathbf{Z}[\pi]$ coming from the i-simplices added to get from L to W in some triangulation of the universal covering spaces. As always, the groups Z_i and B_i of i-cycles and i-boundaries are the kernel of $\partial\colon C_i \to C_{i-1}$ and image of $\partial\colon C_{i+1} \to C_i$. Since $L \subset W$ is a deformation retract, we have by homotopy invariance of homology that $H_* = 0$, and so $B_* = Z_*$.

Since each C_i is a finitely generated free $\mathbf{Z}[\pi]$-module, and we may assume each B_i free as well (generally we get by induction only that each B_i is "stably free", but in our lens space case this implies that B_i is free). Now, this means that we may **choose** arbitrary bases for B_i, but there can be nothing canonical about this choice. The strange fact is that this phenomenon is exactly what governs the geometry.

When trying to answer question 1.1.1, it turns out that the matrix M_i representing (in the chosen bases) the isomorphism

$$B_i \oplus B_{i-1} \cong C_i$$

coming from a choice of section in

$$0 \longrightarrow B_i \longrightarrow C_i \longrightarrow B_{i-1} \longrightarrow 0$$

plays an important rôle. We will return to this matrix shortly in order to define the obstruction to the answer to the question being "yes" (see section 1.1.3), but first we need some basic definitions from linear algebra.

1.1.2 K_1 and the Whitehead group

For any ring A we may consider the ring $M_k(A)$ of $k \times k$ matrices with entries in A, as a monoid under multiplication (recall that a *monoid* satisfies all the axioms of a group but the requirement that all inverses must exist). The *general linear group* is the subgroup of invertible elements $GL_k(A)$. Take the colimit (or more concretely, the union) $GL(A) = \lim_{k\to\infty} GL_k(A) = \bigcup_{k\to\infty} GL_k(A)$ with respect to the stabilization

$$GL_k(A) \xrightarrow{g\mapsto g\oplus 1} GL_{k+1}(A)$$

(thus every element $g \in GL(A)$ can be thought of as an infinite matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} g' & 0 & 0 & \dots \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{bmatrix}$$

with $g' \in GL_k(A)$ for some $k < \infty$). Let $E(A)$ be the subgroup of *elementary matrices* (i.e., $E_k(A) \subset GL_k(A)$ is the subgroup generated by the matrices e^a_{ij} with ones on the diagonal and a single off-diagonal entry $a \in A$ in the ij position). The "Whitehead lemma" (see 1.2.2 below) implies that the quotient

$$K_1(A) = GL(A)/E(A)$$

is an abelian group. In the particular case where A is an integral group ring $\mathbf{Z}[\pi]$ we define the *Whitehead group* as the quotient

$$Wh(\pi) = K_1(\mathbf{Z}[\pi])/\{\pm\pi\}$$

via $\{\pm\pi\} \subseteq GL_1(\mathbf{Z}[\pi]) \to K_1(\mathbf{Z}[\pi])$.

1.1.3 Classifying cobordisms

Let $(W; M, N)$ be an h-cobordism, and let $M_i \in GL(\mathbf{Z}[\pi_1(M)])$ be the matrices described at the end of section 1.1 for the lens spaces, and similarly in general. Let $[M_i] \in Wh(\pi_1(M))$ be the corresponding equivalence classes and set

$$\tau(W, M) = \sum (-1)^i [M_i] \in Wh(\pi_1(M)).$$

The class $\tau(W, M)$ is called the *Whitehead torsion*.

The Whitehead torsion turns out to be a vital ingredient in Barden (Thesis, 1963), Mazur [171] and Stalling's [228] extension of the famous results of Smale beyond the simply connected case (for a proof, see also [139]):

Theorem 1.1.4 *(Barden, Mazur, Stallings) Let M be a compact, connected, smooth manifold of dimension > 5 and let $(W; M, N)$ be an h-cobordism. The Whitehead torsion $\tau(W, M) \in Wh(\pi_1(M))$ is well defined, and τ induces a bijection*

$$\left\{ \begin{matrix} \textit{diffeomorphism classes (rel. } M) \\ \textit{of } h\textit{-cobordisms } (W; M, N) \end{matrix} \right\} \longleftrightarrow Wh(\pi_1(M))$$

In particular, $(W; M, N) \cong (M \times I; M, M)$ if and only if $\tau(W, M) = 0$.

Example 1.1.5 The Whitehead group, $Wh(\pi)$, has been calculated for only a very limited set of groups π. We list a few of them; for a detailed study of Wh of finite groups, see [186]. The first three refer to the lens spaces discussed above (see page 375 in [178] for references).

1. $l = 1$, $M = S^7$. "Exercise": show that $K_1\mathbf{Z} = \{\pm 1\}$, and so $Wh(0) = 0$. Thus any h-cobordism of S^7 is diffeomorphic to $S^7 \times I$.

2. $l = 2$. $M = P^7$, the real projective 7-space. "Exercise:" show that $K_1\mathbf{Z}[\mu_2] = \{\pm\mu_2\}$, and so $Wh(\mu_2) = 0$. Thus any h-cobordism of P^7 is diffeomorphic to $P^7 \times I$.

3. $l = 5$. $Wh(\mu_5) \cong \mathbf{Z}$ (generated by the invertible element $t + t^{-1} - 1 \in \mathbf{Z}[\mu_5]$ – the inverse is $t^2 + t^{-2} - 1$). That is, there exists countably infinitely many non-diffeomorphic h-cobordisms with incoming boundary component S^7/μ_5.

4. Waldhausen [245]: If π is a free group, free abelian group, or the fundamental group of a submanifold of the three-sphere, then $Wh(\pi) = 0$.

5. Farrell and Jones [71]: If M is a closed Riemannian manifold with nonpositive sectional curvature, then $Wh(\pi_1 M) = 0$.

1.2 K_1 of other rings

1. Commutative rings: The map from the units in A

$$A^* = GL_1(A) \to GL(A)/E(A) = K_1(A)$$

is split by the determinant map, and so the units of A is a split summand in $K_1(A)$. In certain cases (e.g., if A is local, or the integers in a number field, see next example) this is all of $K_1(A)$. We may say that the rest of $K_1(A)$ measures to what extent we can do Gauss elimination, in that $\ker\{\det\colon K_1(A) \to A^*\}$ is the group of equivalence classes of matrices up to stabilization in the number of variables and elementary row operations (i.e., multiplication by elementary matrices and multiplication of a row by an invertible element).

2. Let F be a number field (i.e., a finite extension of the rational numbers), and let $A \subseteq F$ be the ring of integers in F (i.e., the integral closure of $\mathbf{Z}$ in F). Then $K_1(A) \cong A^*$, and a result of Dirichlet asserts A^* is finitely generated of rank $r_1 + r_2 - 1$ where r_1 (resp. $2r_2$) is the number of distinct real (resp. complex) embeddings of F.

3. Let $B \to A$ be an epimorphism of rings with kernel $I \subseteq rad(B)$ – the Jacobson radical of B (that is, if $x \in I$, then $1 + x$ is invertible in B). Then

$$(1 + I)^\times \longrightarrow K_1(B) \longrightarrow K_1(A) \longrightarrow 0$$

is exact, where $(1+I)^\times \subset GL_1(B)$ is the group $\{1+x|x\in I\}$ under multiplication (see e.g., page 449 in [10]). Moreover, if B is commutative and $B\to A$ is split, then

$$0 \longrightarrow (1+I)^\times \longrightarrow K_1(B) \longrightarrow K_1(A) \longrightarrow 0$$

is exact.

For later reference, we record the Whitehead lemma mentioned above. For this we need some definitions.

Definition 1.2.1 The *commutator* $[G,G]$ of a group G is the (normal) subgroup generated by all commutators $[g,h]=ghg^{-1}h^{-1}$. A group G is called *perfect* if it is equal to its commutator, or in other words, if its first homology group $H_1(G)=G/[G,G]$ vanishes. Any group G has a *maximal perfect subgroup*, which we call PG, and which is automatically normal. We say that G is *quasi-perfect* if $PG=[G,G]$.

An example of a perfect group is the alternating group A_n on $n\geq 5$ letters. Further examples are provided by the

Lemma 1.2.2 *(The Whitehead lemma) Let A be a unital ring. Then $GL(A)$ is quasi-perfect with maximal perfect subgroup $E(A)$, i.e.,*

$$[GL(A),GL(A)]=[E(A),GL(A)]=[E(A),E(A)]=E(A)$$

Proof: See e.g., page 226 in [10]. ∎

1.3 The Grothendieck group K_0

Definition 1.3.1 Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be a small category and let $\mathcal{E}$ be a collection of diagrams $c'\to c\to c''$ in $\mathfrak{C}$ closed under isomorphisms. Then the Grothendieck group $K_0(\mathfrak{C},\mathcal{E})$ is the abelian group, defined (up to isomorphism) by the following universal property. Any function f from the set of isomorphism classes of objects in $\mathfrak{C}$ to an abelian group A such that $f(c)=f(c')+f(c'')$ for all sequences $c'\to c\to c''$ in $\mathcal{E}$, factors uniquely through $K_0(\mathfrak{C})$.

That is, $K_0(\mathfrak{C},\mathcal{E})$ is the free abelian group on the set of isomorphism classes, modulo the relations of the type "$[c]=[c']+[c'']$". So, it is not really necessary that $\mathfrak{C}$ is small, the only thing we need to know is that the class of isomorphism classes forms a set.

Most often the pair $(\mathfrak{C},\mathcal{E})$ will be an *exact category* in the sense that $\mathfrak{C}$ is an *additive category* (i.e., a category with all finite coproducts where the morphism sets are abelian groups and where composition is bilinear) such that there exists a full embedding of $\mathfrak{C}$ in an abelian category $\mathfrak{A}$, such that $\mathfrak{C}$ is closed under extensions in $\mathfrak{A}$ and $\mathcal{E}$ consists of the sequences in $\mathfrak{C}$ that are short exact in $\mathfrak{A}$.

Any additive category is an exact category if we choose the exact sequences to be the split exact sequences, but there may be other exact categories with the same underlying additive category. For instance, the category of abelian groups is an abelian category, and hence an exact category in the natural way, choosing $\mathcal{E}$ to consist of the short exact sequences. These are not necessary split, e.g., $\mathbf{Z} \xrightarrow{2} \mathbf{Z} \longrightarrow \mathbf{Z}/2\mathbf{Z}$ is a short exact sequence which does not split.

The definition of K_0 is a case of "additivity": K_0 is a (or perhaps, *the*) functor to abelian groups insensitive to extension issues. We will dwell more on this issue later, when we introduce the higher K-theories. Higher K-theory plays exactly the same rôle as K_0, except that the receiving category has a much richer structure than the category of abelian groups.

The choice of $\mathcal{E}$ will always be clear from the context, and we drop it from the notation and write $K_0(\mathfrak{C})$.

Example 1.3.2 1. Let A be a unital ring. Recall that an A-module M is *finitely generated* if there is a surjection $A^n = A \oplus \cdots \oplus A \twoheadrightarrow M$ (n summands). An A-module P is *projective* if for all (solid) diagrams

$$\begin{tikzcd} & M \arrow[d] \\ P \arrow[r] \arrow[ur, dotted] & M'' \end{tikzcd}$$

of A-modules where the vertical homomorphism is a surjection, there is a (dotted) homomorphism $P \to M$ making the resulting diagram commute. It is a consequence that an A-module P is finitely generated and projective precisely when there is an n and an A-module Q such that $A^n \cong P \oplus Q$. Note that Q is automatically finitely generated and projective.

If $\mathfrak{C} = \mathcal{P}_A$, the category of finitely generated projective A-modules, with the usual notion of exact sequences, we often write $K_0(A)$ for $K_0(\mathcal{P}_A)$. Note that $\mathcal{P}_A$ is split exact, that is, all short exact sequences in $\mathcal{P}_A$ split. Thus we see that we could have defined $K_0(A)$ as the quotient of the free abelian group on the isomorphism classes in $\mathcal{P}_A$ by the relation $[P \oplus Q] \sim [P] + [Q]$. It follows that all elements in $K_0(A)$ can be represented as a difference $[P] - [F]$ where F is a finitely generated free A-module.

2. Inside $\mathcal{P}_A$ sits the category $\mathcal{F}_A$ of finitely generated free A-modules, and we let $K_0^f(A) = K_0(\mathcal{F}_A)$. If A is a principal ideal domain, then every submodule of a free module is free, and so $\mathcal{F}_A = \mathcal{P}_A$. This is so, e.g., for the integers, and we see that $K_0(\mathbf{Z}) = K_0^f(\mathbf{Z}) \cong \mathbf{Z}$, generated by the module of rank one. Generally, $K_0^f(A) \to K_0(A)$ is an isomorphism if and only if every finitely generated projective module is *stably free* (P and P' are said to be *stably isomorphic* if there is a finitely generated free A-module Q such that $P \oplus Q \cong P' \oplus Q$, and P is stably free if it is stably isomorphic to a free module). Whereas $K_0(A \times B) \cong K_0(A) \times K_0(B)$, K_0^f does not preserve products: e.g., $\mathbf{Z} \cong K_0^f(\mathbf{Z} \times \mathbf{Z})$, while $K_0(\mathbf{Z} \times \mathbf{Z}) \cong \mathbf{Z} \times \mathbf{Z}$ giving an easy example of a ring where not all projectives are free.

3. Note that K_0 does not distinguish between stably isomorphic modules. This is not important in some special cases. For instance, if A is a commutative Noetherian ring of Krull dimension d, then every stably free module of rank $> d$ is free ([10, p. 239]).

4. The initial map $\mathbf{Z} \to A$ defines a map $\mathbf{Z} \cong K_0^f(\mathbf{Z}) \to K_0^f(A)$ which is always surjective, and in most practical circumstances, an isomorphism. If A has the *invariance of basis property*, that is, if $A^m \cong A^n$ if and only if $m = n$, then $K_0^f(A) \cong \mathbf{Z}$. Otherwise, $A = 0$, or there is an $h > 0$ and a $k > 0$ such that $A^m \cong A^n$ if and only if either $m = n$ or $m, n > h$ and $m \equiv n \mod k$. There are examples of rings with such h and k for all $h, k > 0$ (see [146] or [44]): let $A_{h,k}$ be the quotient of the free ring on the set $\{x_{ij}, y_{ji} | 1 \le i \le h, 1 \le j \le h + k\}$ by the matrix relations

$$[x_{ij}] \cdot [y_{ji}] = I_h, \text{ and } [y_{ji}] \cdot [x_{ij}] = I_{h+k}$$

Commutative (non-trivial) rings always have the invariance of basis property.

5. Let X be a CW-complex, and let $\mathfrak{C}$ be the category of complex vector bundles on X, with exact sequences meaning the usual thing. Then $K_0(\mathfrak{C})$ is the $K^0(X)$ of Atiyah and Hirzebruch [6]. Note that the possibility of constructing normal complements assures that this is a split exact category.

6. Let X be a scheme, and let $\mathfrak{C}$ be the category of vector bundles on X. Then $K_0(\mathfrak{C})$ is the $K(X)$ of Grothendieck. This is an example of K_0 of an exact category which is not split exact.

1.3.3 Geometric example: Wall's finiteness obstruction

Let A be a space which is dominated by a finite CW-complex X (dominated means that there are maps $A \xrightarrow{i} X \xrightarrow{r} A$ such that $ri \simeq id_A$).

Question: is A homotopy equivalent to a finite CW-complex?

The answer is *yes* if and only if a certain finiteness obstruction in the abelian group $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbf{Z}[\pi_1 A]) = ker\{K_0(\mathbf{Z}[\pi_1 A]) \to K_0(\mathbf{Z})\}$ vanishes. So, for instance, if we know that $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbf{Z}[\pi_1 A])$ vanishes for algebraic reasons, we can always conclude that A is homotopy equivalent to a finite CW-complex. As for K_1, calculations of $K_0(\mathbf{Z}[\pi])$ are very hard, but we give a short list.

1.3.4 K_0 of group rings

1. If C_p is a cyclic group of prime order p less than 23, then $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbf{Z}[\pi])$ vanishes. $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbf{Z}[C_{23}]) \cong \mathbf{Z}/3\mathbf{Z}$ (Kummer, see [181, p. 30]).

2. Waldhausen [245]: If π is a free group, free abelian group, or the fundamental group of a submanifold of the three-sphere, then $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbf{Z}[\pi]) = 0$.

3. Farrell and Jones [71]: If M is a closed Riemannian manifold with nonpositive sectional curvature, then $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbf{Z}[\pi_1 M]) = 0$.

1.3.5 Facts about K_0 of rings

1. If A is a commutative ring, then $K_0(A)$ has a ring structure. The additive structure comes from the direct sum of modules, and the multiplication from the tensor product.

2. If A is local, then $K_0(A) = \mathbf{Z}$.

3. Let A be a commutative ring. Define $rk_0(A)$ to be the split summand of $K_0(A)$ of classes of rank 0, c.f. [10, p. 459]. The modules P for which there exists a Q such that $P \otimes_A Q \cong A$ form a category. The isomorphism classes form a group under tensor product. This group is called the Picard group, and is denoted $Pic(A)$. There is a "determinant" map $rk_0(A) \to Pic(A)$ which is always surjective. If A is a Dedekind domain (see [10, p. 458–468]) the determinant map is an isomorphism, and $Pic(A)$ is isomorphic to the ideal class group $Cl(A)$.

4. Let A be the integers in a number field. Then Dirichlet tells us that $rk_0(A) \cong Pic(A) \cong Cl(A)$ is finite. For instance, if $A = \mathbf{Z}[e^{2\pi i/p}] = \mathbf{Z}[t]/\sum_{i=0}^{p-1} t^i$, the integers in the cyclotomic field $\mathbf{Q}(e^{2\pi i/p})$, then $K_0(A) \cong K_0(\mathbf{Z}[C_p])$ (1.3.41.).

5. If $f\colon B \to A$ is a surjection of rings with kernel I contained in the Jacobson radical, $rad(B)$, then $K_0(B) \to K_0(A)$ is injective ([10, p. 449]). It is an isomorphism if

   (a) B is complete in the I-adic topology ([10]),

   (b) (B, I) is a Hensel pair ([77]) or

   (c) f is split (as K_0 is a functor).

   That (B, I) is a *Hensel pair* means that if $f \in B[t]$ has image $\bar{f} \in A[t]$ and $a \in A = B/I$ satisfies $\bar{f}(a) = 0$ and $f'(a)$ is a unit in B/I, then there is a $b \in B$ mapping to a, and such that $f(b) = 0$. It implies that $I \subseteq rad(B)$.

1.3.6 An example from algebraic geometry

(Grothendieck's proof of the Riemann–Roch theorem, see Borel and Serre [27], where Bott's entry in Mathematical Reviews can serve as the missing introduction). Let X be a non-singular quasi-projective variety (i.e., a locally closed subvariety of some projective variety) over an algebraically closed field. Let $CH(X)$ be the Chow ring of cycles under linear equivalence (called $A(X)$ in [27, section 6]) with product defined by intersection. Tensor product gives a ring structure on $K_0(X)$, and Grothendieck defines a natural ring homomorphism

$$ch\colon K_0(X) \to CH(X) \otimes \mathbf{Q},$$

similar to the Chern character for vector bundles, cf. [182]. This map has good functoriality properties with respect to pullback, i.e., if $f\colon X \to Y$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K_0(X) & \xrightarrow{ch} & CH(X)\otimes \mathbf{Q} \\ {\scriptstyle f^!}\uparrow & & {\scriptstyle f^*}\uparrow \\ K_0(Y) & \xrightarrow{ch} & CH(Y)\otimes \mathbf{Q} \end{array}$$

commutes, where $f^!$ and f^* are given by pulling back along f. For proper morphism $f\colon X \to Y$ [27, p. 100] there are "transfer maps" (defined as a sort of Euler characteristic) $f_!\colon K_0(X) \to K_0(Y)$ [27, p. 110] and direct image $f_*\colon CH(X) \to CH(Y)$. The Riemann–Roch theorem is nothing but a quantitative measure of the fact that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K_0(X) & \xrightarrow{ch} & CH(X)\otimes \mathbf{Q} \\ {\scriptstyle f_!}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle f_*}\downarrow \\ K_0(Y) & \xrightarrow{ch} & CH(Y)\otimes \mathbf{Q} \end{array}$$

fails to commute: $ch(f_!(x)) \cdot Td(Y) = f_*(ch(x) \cdot Td(X))$ where $Td(X)$ is the value of the "Todd class" [27, p. 112] on the tangent bundle of X.

1.3.7 A number-theoretic example

Let F be a number field and A its ring of integers. Then there is an exact sequence connecting K_1 and K_0:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & K_1(A) & \longrightarrow & K_1(F) & \xrightarrow{\delta} & \\ \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{m}\in Max(A)} K_0(A/\mathfrak{m}) & \longrightarrow & K_0(A) & \longrightarrow & K_0(F) & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array}$$

(cf. [10, p. 323, 702], or better [196, corollary to theorem 5] plus the fact that $K_1(A) \to K_1(F)$ is injective). The *zeta function* $\zeta_F(s)$ of F is defined as the meromorphic function on the complex plane $\mathbf{C}$ we get as the analytic continuation of

$$\zeta_F(s) = \sum_{I \text{ non-zero ideal in } A} |A/I|^{-s}.$$

This series converges for $Re(s) > 1$. The zeta function has a zero of order $r = rank(K_1(A))$ (see 1.2.(2)) in $s = 0$, and the class number formula says that

$$\lim_{s\to 0} \frac{\zeta_F(s)}{s^r} = -\frac{R|K_0(A)_{tor}|}{|K_1(A)_{tor}|},$$

where $|-_{tor}|$ denotes the cardinality of the torsion subgroup, and the regulator R is a number that depends on the map δ above, see [149].

This is related to the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture, which is now confirmed due to work of among many others Voevodsky, Suslin, Rost, Grayson (see section 1.7 and section VII.3.2 for references and a deeper discussion).

1.4 The Mayer–Vietoris sequence

The reader may wonder why one chooses to regard the functors K_0 and K_1 as related. Example 1.3.7 provides one motivation, but that is cheating. Historically, it was an insight of Bass that K_1 could be obtained from K_0 in analogy with the definition of $K^1(X)$ as $K^0(S^1 \wedge X)$ (cf. example 1.3.2.5). This manifests itself in exact sequences connecting the two theories. As an example: if

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle f} \\ C & \xrightarrow{g} & D \end{array}$$

is a cartesian square of rings and g (or f) is surjective, then we have a long exact "Mayer–Vietoris" sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} K_1(A) & \longrightarrow & K_1(B) \oplus K_1(C) & \longrightarrow & K_1(D) & \longrightarrow & \\ K_0(A) & \longrightarrow & K_0(B) \oplus K_0(C) & \longrightarrow & K_0(D) & & \end{array}$$

However, it is not true that this continues to the left. For one thing there is no simple analogy to the Bott periodicity $K^0(S^2 \wedge X) \cong K^0(X)$. Milnor proposed in [181] a definition of K_2 (see below) which would extend the Mayer–Vietoris sequence if **both** f and g are surjective, i.e., we have a long exact sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} K_2(A) & \longrightarrow & K_2(B) \oplus K_2(C) & \longrightarrow & K_2(D) & \longrightarrow & & & \\ K_1(A) & \longrightarrow & K_1(B) \oplus K_1(C) & \longrightarrow & K_1(D) & \longrightarrow & K_0(A) & \longrightarrow & \dots \end{array}$$

However, this was the best one could hope for:

Example 1.4.1 Swan [235] gave the following example showing that there exists no functor K_2 giving such a sequence if only g is surjective. Let A be commutative, and consider the pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A[t]/t^2 & \xrightarrow{t \mapsto 0} & A \\ {\scriptstyle a+bt \mapsto \left(\begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & a \end{smallmatrix}\right)}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \Delta} \\ T_2(A) & \xrightarrow{g} & A \times A \end{array}$$

where $T_2(A)$ is the ring of upper triangular 2×2 matrices, g is the projection onto the diagonal, while Δ is the diagonal inclusion. As g splits $K_2(T_2(A)) \oplus K_2(A) \to K_2(A \times A)$ must be surjective, but, as we shall see below, $K_1(A[t]/t^2) \to K_1(T_2(A)) \oplus K_1(A)$ is not injective.

Recall that, since A is commutative, $GL_1(A[t]/t^2)$ is a direct summand of $K_1(A[t]/t^2)$. The element $1+t \in A[t]/t^2$ is invertible (and not the identity), but $[1+t] \neq [1] \in K_1(A[t]/t^2)$ is sent onto $[1]$ in $K_1(A)$, and onto

$$[\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{smallmatrix}\right)] \sim [\begin{pmatrix} \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{smallmatrix}\right) & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}] = [\left[e_{12}^{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{smallmatrix}\right)}, e_{21}^{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{smallmatrix}\right)}\right]] \sim [1] \in K_1(T_2(A))$$

where the inner brackets stand for commutator (which by definition is trivial in K_1).

Using trace methods, one can measure the failure of excision and do concrete calculation, see VII.3.9.

1.5 Milnor's $K_2(A)$

Milnor's definition of $K_2(A)$ is given in terms of the Steinberg group, and turns out to be isomorphic to the second homology group $H_2(E(A))$ of the group of elementary matrices. Another, and more instructive way to say this is the following. The group $E(A)$ is generated by the matrices e^a_{ij}, $a \in A$ and $i \neq j$, and generally these generators are subject to lots of relations. There are, however, some relations which are more important than others, and furthermore are universal in the sense that they are valid for any ring: the so-called *Steinberg relations*. One defines the *Steinberg group* $St(A)$ to be exactly the group generated by symbols x^a_{ij} for every $a \in A$ and $i \neq j$ subject to these relations. Explicitly:

$$x^a_{ij}x^b_{ij} = x^{a+b}_{ij}$$

and

$$[x^a_{ij}, x^b_{kl}] = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i \neq l \text{ and } j \neq k \\ x^{ab}_{il} & \text{if } i \neq l \text{ and } j = k \\ x^{-ba}_{kj} & \text{if } i = l \text{ and } j \neq k \end{cases}$$

One defines $K_2(A)$ as the kernel of the surjection

$$St(A) \xrightarrow{x^a_{ij} \mapsto e^a_{ij}} E(A).$$

In fact,

$$0 \longrightarrow K_2(A) \longrightarrow St(A) \longrightarrow E(A) \longrightarrow 0$$

is a central extension of $E(A)$ (hence $K_2(A)$ is abelian), and $H_2(St(A)) = 0$, which makes it the "universal central extension" (see e.g., [141]).

The best references for K_i $i \leq 2$ are still Bass' [10] and Milnor's [181] books. Swan's paper [235] is recommended for an exposition of what optimistic hopes one might have to extend these ideas, and why some of these could not be realized (for instance, there is **no** functor K_3 such that the Mayer–Vietoris sequence extends, even if all maps are split surjective).

1.6 Higher K-theory

At the beginning of the seventies there appeared suddenly a plethora of competing theories pretending to extend these ideas into a sequence of theories, $K_i(A)$ for $i \geq 0$. Some theories were more interesting than others, and many were equal. The one we are going to discuss in this paper is the Quillen K-theory, later extended by Waldhausen to a larger class of rings and categories.

As Quillen defines it, the K-groups are really the homotopy groups of a space. He gave three equivalent definitions, one by the "plus" construction discussed in 1.6.1 below (we also use it in section III.1.1), one via "group completion" and one by what he called the Q-construction. The group completion line of idea circulated as a preprint for a very long time, but in 1994 finally made it into the appendix of [76], while the Q-construction appears already in 1973 in [196]. That the definitions agree appeared in [95]. For a ring A, the homology of (a component of) the space $K(A)$ is nothing but the group homology of $GL(A)$. Using the plus construction and homotopy theoretic methods, Quillen calculated in [192] $K(\mathbf{F}_q)$, where $\mathbf{F}_q$ is the field with q elements.

The advantage of the Q-construction is that it is more accessible to structural considerations. In the foundational article [196] Quillen uses the Q-construction to extend to the higher K-groups most of the general statements that were known to be true for K_0 and K_1.

However, given these fundamental theorems, of Quillen's definitions it is the plus construction that has proven most directly accessible to calculations (this said, very few groups were in the end calculated directly from the definitions, and by now indirect methods such as motivic cohomology and the trace methods that are the topic of this book have extended our knowledge far beyond the limitations of direct calculations).

1.6.1 Quillen's plus construction

We will now describe a variant of Quillen's definition of (a component of) the algebraic K-theory space of an associative ring A with unit via the plus construction. For more background, the reader may consult [105], [12], or [76].

We will be working in the category of simplicial sets (as opposed to topological spaces). The readers who are uncomfortable with this can think of simplicial sets (often referred to as simply "spaces") as topological spaces for the moment and consult section III.1.1 for further details. We have collected some basic facts about simplicial sets that are particularly useful for our applications in appendix A.

If X is a simplicial set, $H_*(X) = H(X; \mathbf{Z})$ will denote the homology of X with trivial integral coefficients, and $\tilde{H}_*(X) = \ker\{H_*(X) \to H_*(pt) = \mathbf{Z}\}$ is the reduced homology.

Definition 1.6.2 Let $f\colon X \to Y$ be a map of connected simplicial sets with connected homotopy fiber F. We say that f is acyclic if $\tilde{H}_*(F) = 0$.

We see that the homotopy fiber of an acyclic map must have perfect fundamental group (i.e., $0 = \tilde{H}_1(F) \cong H_1(F) \cong \pi_1 F/[\pi_1 F, \pi_1 F]$). Recall from 1.2.1 that any group π has a maximal perfect subgroup, which we call $P\pi$, and which is automatically normal.

1.6.3 Remarks on the construction

There are various models for X^+, and the most usual is Quillen's original (originally used by Kervaire [140] on homology spheres). That is, regard X as a CW-complex, add 2-cells to X to kill $P\pi_1(X)$, and then kill the noise created in homology by adding 3-cells. See e.g., [105] for details on this and related issues. This process is also performed in details for the particular case $X = BA_5$ in section III.1.2.3.

In our simplicial setting, we will use a slightly different model, giving us strict functoriality (not just in the homotopy category), namely the partial integral completion of [31, p. 219]. Just as K_0 was defined by a universal property for functions into abelian groups, the integral completion constructs a universal element over simplicial abelian groups (the "partial" is there just to take care of pathologies such as spaces where the fundamental group is not quasi-perfect). For the present purposes we only have need for the following properties of the partial integral completion, and we defer the actual construction to section III.1.1.7.

Proposition 1.6.4 *1. $X \mapsto X^+$ is an endofunctor of pointed simplicial sets, and there is a natural cofibration $q_X\colon X \to X^+$,*

2. if X is connected, then q_X is acyclic, and

3. if X is connected then $\pi_1(q_X)$ is the projection killing the maximal perfect subgroup of $\pi_1 X$

Then Quillen provides the theorem we need (for a proof and a precise simplicial formulation, see theorem III.1.1.10):

Theorem 1.6.5 *For X connected, 1.6.4.2 and 1.6.4.3 characterizes X^+ up to homotopy under X.*

The integral completion will reappear as an important technical tool in a totally different setting in section III.3.

Recall that the general linear group $GL(A)$ was defined as the union of the $GL_n(A)$. Form the *classifying space* (see A.1.6) of this group, $BGL(A)$. Whether you form the classifying space before or after taking the union is without consequence. Now, Quillen defines the connected cover of algebraic K-theory to be the realization $|BGL(A)^+|$ or rather, the homotopy groups,

$$K_i(A) = \begin{cases} \pi_i(BGL(A)^+) & \text{if } i > 0 \\ K_0(A) & \text{if } i = 0 \end{cases},$$

to be the K-groups of the ring A. We will use the following notation:

Definition 1.6.6 If A is a ring, then the *algebraic K-theory space* is

$$K(A) = BGL(A)^+.$$

Now, the Whitehead lemma 1.2.2 tells us that $GL(A)$ is quasi-perfect with commutator $E(A)$, so

$$\pi_1 K(A) \cong GL(A)/PGL(A) = GL(A)/E(A) = K_1(A),$$

as expected. Furthermore, using the definition of $K_2(A)$ via the universal central extension, 1.5, it is not too difficult to prove that the K_2's of Milnor and Quillen agree: $K_2(A) = \pi_2(BGL(A)^+) \cong H_2(E(A))$ (and even $K_3(A) \cong H_3(St(A))$, see [84]).

One might regret that this space $K(A)$ has no homotopy in dimension zero, and this will be amended later. The reason we choose this definition is that the alternatives available to us at present all have their disadvantages. We might take $K_0(A)$ copies of this space, and although this would be a nice functor with the right homotopy groups, it will not agree with a more natural definition to come. Alternatively we could choose to multiply by $K_0^f(A)$ of 1.3.2.2 or $\mathbf{Z}$ as is more usual, but this has the shortcoming of not respecting products.

1.6.7 Other examples of use of the plus construction

1. Let $\Sigma_n \subset GL_n(\mathbf{Z})$ be the *symmetric group* of all permutations on n letters, and let $\Sigma_\infty = \lim_{n\to\infty} \Sigma_n$. Then the theorem of Barratt–Priddy–Quillen (e.g., [9]) states that $B\Sigma_\infty^+ \simeq \lim_{k\to\infty} \Omega^k S^k$, so the groups $\pi_*(B\Sigma_\infty^+)$ are the "stable homotopy groups of spheres".

2. Let X be a connected space with abelian fundamental group. Then Kan and Thurston [131] have proved that X is homotopy equivalent to a BG^+ for some strange group G. With a slight modification, the theorem can be extended to arbitrary connected X.

3. Consider the *mapping class group* Γ_g of (isotopy classes of) diffeomorphisms of a surface of genus g (we are suppressing boundary issues). It is known that the colimit $B\Gamma_\infty$ of the classifying spaces as the genus goes to infinity has the same rational cohomology as $\mathcal{M}$, the *stable moduli space of Riemann surfaces*, and Mumford conjectured in [185] that the rational cohomology of $\mathcal{M}$ is a polynomial algebra generated by certain classes – the "Mumford classes" – κ_i with dimension $|\kappa_i| = 2i$. Since $B\Gamma_\infty$ and $B\Gamma_\infty^+$ have isomorphic cohomology groups, the Mumford conjecture follows by Madsen and Weiss' identification [163] of $\mathbf{Z} \times B\Gamma_\infty^+$ as the infinite loop space of a certain spectrum called $\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^\infty_{-1}$ which (for badly understood reasons) will resurface in section VII.3.8.1 (see also [80]). One should notice that prior to this, Tillmann [239] had identified $\mathbf{Z} \times B\Gamma_\infty^+$ with the infinite loop space associated to a category of cobordisms of one-dimensional manifolds.

1.6.8 Alternative definition of $K(A)$

In case the partial integral completion bothers you; for $BGL(A)$ it can be replaced by the following construction: choose an acyclic cofibration $BGL(\mathbf{Z}) \to BGL(\mathbf{Z})^+$ once and for all (by adding particular 2- and 3-cells), and define algebraic K-theory by means of the pushout square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} BGL(\mathbf{Z}) & \longrightarrow & BGL(A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ BGL(\mathbf{Z})^+ & \longrightarrow & BGL(A)^+ \end{array}$$

This will of course be functorial in A, and it can be verified that it has the right homotopy properties. However, at one point (e.g., in chapter III) we will need functoriality of the plus construction for more general spaces. All the spaces which we will need in these notes can be reached by choosing to do our handicrafted plus not on $BGL(\mathbf{Z})$, but on the space BA_5. See section III.1.2.3 for more details.

1.6.9 Comparison with topological K-theory

Quillen's definition of the algebraic K-theory of a ring fits nicely with the topological counterpart, as discussed in 1.3.2.5. If one considers the (topological) field $\mathbf{C}$, then the general linear group $GL_n(\mathbf{C})$ becomes a topological group. The classifying space construction applies equally well to topological groups, and we get the classifying space $B^{\mathrm{top}}GL_n(\mathbf{C})$. Vector bundles of rank n over a reasonable space X are classified by homotopy classes of maps into $B^{\mathrm{top}}GL_n(\mathbf{C})$, giving us the topological K-theory of Atiyah and Hirzebruch:

$$K^i(X) \cong [S^i \wedge X, \mathbf{Z} \times B^{\mathrm{top}}GL(\mathbf{C})].$$

The fundamental group of $B^{\mathrm{top}}GL(\mathbf{C})$ is trivial, and so the map

$$B^{\mathrm{top}}GL(\mathbf{C}) \to B^{\mathrm{top}}GL(\mathbf{C})^+$$

is an equivalence. To avoid the cumbersome notation, we notice that the Gram-Schmidt procedure guarantees that the inclusion of the unitary group $U(n) \subseteq GL_n(\mathbf{C})$ is an equivalence, and in the future we can use the convenient notation BU to denote any space with the homotopy type of $B^{\mathrm{top}}GL(\mathbf{C})$. The space $\mathbf{Z} \times BU$ is is amazingly simple from a homotopy group point of view: $\pi_*(\mathbf{Z} \times BU)$ is the polynomial ring $\mathbf{Z}[u]$, where u is of degree 2 and is represented by the tautological line bundle on $\mathrm{CP}^1 = S^2$. That multiplication by u gives an isomorphism $\pi_k BU \to \pi_{k+2} BU$ for $k > 0$ is a reflection of *Bott periodicity* (for a cool proof, see [103].

Similar considerations apply to the real case, with $\mathbf{Z} \times BO$ classifying real bundles. Its homotopy groups are 8-periodic.

1.7 Some results and calculations

In this section we will collect some results and calculations of algebraic K-theory that have been obtained by methods *different* from those that will be discussed in the chapters to come. The collection is somewhat idiosyncratic and often just picks out a piece of a more general result, but the reader is encouraged to pursue the references for further information.

For a discussion of results and calculations that do use trace methods and comparison to topological cyclic homology, see VII.3.

1. Quillen [192]: If $\mathbf{F}_q$ is the field with q elements, then

$$K_i(\mathbf{F}_q) \cong \begin{cases} \mathbf{Z} & \text{if } i = 0 \\ \mathbf{Z}/(q^j - 1)\mathbf{Z} & \text{if } i = 2j-1 \\ 0 & \text{if } i = 2j > 0 \end{cases}.$$

If $\bar{\mathbf{F}}_p$ is the algebraic closure of the prime field $\mathbf{F}_p$, then

$$K_i(\bar{\mathbf{F}}_p) \cong \begin{cases} \mathbf{Z} & \text{if } i = 0 \\ \mathbf{Q}/\mathbf{Z}[1/p] & \text{if } i = 2j-1 \\ 0 & \text{if } i = 2j > 0 \end{cases}.$$

The Frobenius automorphism $\Phi(a) = a^p$ induces multiplication by p^j on $K_{2j-1}(\bar{\mathbf{F}}_p)$, and the subgroup fixed by Φ^k is $K_{2j-1}(\mathbf{F}_{p^k})$.

A different way of phrasing this is to say that (the connected cover of) the algebraic K-theory space of $\mathbf{F}_q$ is equivalent to the homotopy fiber of a certain map $\psi^q - 1\colon BU \to BU$, where BU is the classifying space of the infinite unitary group (see 1.6.9) and Ψ^q is the so-called qth Adams operation. The homotopy groups of BU are a copy of the integers in even positive dimensions and zero otherwise, and the qth Adams operation acts as q^j on $\pi_{2j}BU$.

2. Suslin [229]: "The algebraic K-theory of algebraically closed fields only depends on the characteristic, and away from the characteristic it always agrees with topological K-theory". More precisely:

   Let F be an algebraically closed field. The group $K_i(F)$ is divisible for $i \geq 1$. The torsion subgroup of $K_i(F)$ is zero if i is even, and it is isomorphic to

$$\begin{cases} \mathbf{Q}/\mathbf{Z}[1/p] & \text{if } char(F) = p > 0 \\ \mathbf{Q}/\mathbf{Z} & \text{if } char(F) = 0 \end{cases}$$

   if i is odd (see [233] for references).

   On the space level (not including K_0) Suslin's results are: If p is a prime different from the characteristic of the algebraically closed field F, then

$$K(F)^{\widehat{}}_p \simeq BU^{\widehat{}}_p$$

   where $^{\widehat{}}_p$ is p-completion.

   If F is of characteristic $p > 0$, then $K(F)^{\widehat{}}_p$ is contractible.

   Note in particular the pleasing formulation saying that $BGL(\mathbf{C})^+ \to B^{\mathrm{top}}GL(\mathbf{C})^+ \simeq B^{\mathrm{top}}GL(\mathbf{C})$ is an equivalence after p-completion. Even though $\mathbf{R}$ is not algebraically closed, the analogous result holds in the real case.

3. Naturally, the algebraic K-theory of the integers has been a key prize, and currently a complete calculation of the groups of degree divisible by 4 appears out of reach (relying on the so-called Vandiver's conjecture in number theory, which at present is known to hold for all prime numbers less than 12 million). We list here a few concrete results.

   - $K_0(\mathbf{Z}) = \mathbf{Z}$,

- $K_1(\mathbf{Z}) = \mathbf{Z}/2\mathbf{Z}$,
- $K_2(\mathbf{Z}) = \mathbf{Z}/2\mathbf{Z}$,
- $K_3(\mathbf{Z}) = \mathbf{Z}/48\mathbf{Z}$, (Lee-Szczarba, 1976, [147]),
- $K_4(\mathbf{Z}) = 0$ (Rognes, 2000, [205])
- $K_5(\mathbf{Z}) = \mathbf{Z}$ (Elbaz-Vincent, Gangl and Soulé, 2002, [69]).

We note the long time span from the identification of $K_3(\mathbf{Z})$ to that of $K_4(\mathbf{Z})$. In this period things did not stand still; there was much work on the so-called Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture, and other closely associated conjectures in motivic cohomology by a cohort of mathematicians including Voevodsky, Rost, Kahn, Suslin, Beilinson, Dwyer, Friedlander, Grayson, Mitchell, Levine, Soulé, Thomason, Wiles, Weibel, and many, many others. See section VII.3.2 for some further information, or perhaps better, some more specialized and detailed source like Weibel's paper [257].

In 2000 Rognes and Weibel published a complete account [203] of the 2-torsion piece of $K_*(\mathbf{Z})$ following Voevodsky's proof of the Milnor conjecture [244]. The result can be stated in terms of a homotopy commutative square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(\mathbf{Z}[1/2]) & \longrightarrow & BO \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K(\mathbf{F}_3) & \longrightarrow & BU \end{array}$$

becoming homotopy cartesian after completion at 2, or in terms of the 2-primary information in the table one paragraph down.

For a more thorough discussion of the situation at odd primes we refer the reader to Weibel's survey [257], from which we have lifted the following table for the K-groups $K_n(\mathbf{Z})$ for $n > 1$:

$n \mod 8$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$K_n(\mathbf{Z})$	$\mathbf{Z} \oplus \mathbf{Z}/2$	$\mathbf{Z}/2c_k$	$\mathbf{Z}/2w_{2k}$	0	$\mathbf{Z}$	$\mathbf{Z}/c_k$	$\mathbf{Z}/w_{2k}$	0

The K-groups of the integers. The validity of the odd primary information assumes Vandiver's conjecture. Here k is the integer part of $1 + \frac{n}{4}$, c_k is the numerator and w_{2k} the denominator of $(-1)^k \frac{1}{2}\zeta_{\mathbf{Q}}(1-2k)/2 = B_k/4k$ (where B_k is the kth Bernoulli number – numbered so that $B_1 = \frac{1}{6}$, $B_2 = \frac{1}{30}, \dots$), so that $w_2 = 24$, $w_4 = 240$ etc..

4. Quite early Borel [26] proved the following result. Let $\mathcal{O}_F$ be the integers in a number field F and n_j the order of vanishing of the zeta function

$$\zeta_F(s) = \sum_{0 \neq I \text{ ideal in } \mathcal{O}_F} |\mathcal{O}_F/I|^{-s}$$

at $s = 1 - j$. Then

$$\operatorname{rank} K_i(\mathcal{O}_F) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i = 2j > 0 \\ n_j & \text{if } i = 2j - 1 \end{cases}$$

Example: If $F = \mathbf{Q}$, then

$$n_j = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } j = 2k - 1 > 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Furthermore, Quillen [195] proved that the groups $K_i(\mathcal{O}_F)$ are finitely generated.

Again, for a more thorough discussion we refer the reader to Weibel's survey [257] where the K-groups are expressed in similar terms as that of $K_*(\mathbf{Z})$ in the table above.

5. Let A be a perfect ring of characteristic $p > 0$ (in characteristic $p > 0$ "perfect" means that the Frobenius endomorphism $a \mapsto a^p$ is an automorphism. For instance, all finite fields are perfect). Then the K-groups $K_i(A)$ are uniquely p-divisible for $i > 0$, see [116] or [142].

6. Gersten [85]/Waldhausen [245]: If A is a free ring, then $K(A) \simeq K(\mathbf{Z})$.

7. Waldhausen [245]: If G is a free group, free abelian group, or the fundamental group of a submanifold of the three-sphere, then there is a spectral sequence

$$E^2_{p,q} = H_p(G; K_q(\mathbf{Z})) \Rightarrow K_{p+q}(\mathbf{Z}[G]).$$

This result is related to the algebraic K-theory *Novikov conjecture* about the so-called *assembly map*, which is also discussed briefly in section VII.3.6.

8. Waldhausen [250]: The K-theory (in his sense) of the category of retractive spaces over a given space X, is equivalent to the product of the unreduced suspension spectrum of X and the differentiable Whitehead spectrum of X. See also section III.2.3.4 and section VII.3.8.1.

9. Goodwillie [89]: If $A \to B$ is a surjective map of rings such that the kernel is nilpotent, then the relative K-theory and the relative cyclic homology agree rationally:

$$K_i(A \to B) \otimes \mathbf{Q} \cong HC_{i-1}(A \to B) \otimes \mathbf{Q}.$$

10. Suslin/Panin:

$$K(\hat{\mathbf{Z}_p})\hat{} \simeq \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{n}} K(\mathbf{Z}/p^n\mathbf{Z})\hat{}$$

where $\hat{}$ denotes profinite completion.

1.8 Where to read

The Handbook of algebraic K-theory [75] contains many good surveys on the state of affairs in algebraic K-theory. Of older sources, one might mention the two very readable surveys [98] and [233] on the K-theory of fields and related issues. The article [184] is also recommended. For the K-theory of spaces see [249]. Some introductory books about higher K-theory exist: [12], [226], [208] and [125], and a "new" one (which looks very promising) is currently being written by Weibel [254]. The "Reviews in K-theory 1940–84" [164], is also helpful (although with both Mathematical Reviews and Zentralblatt on the web it naturally has lost some of its glory).

2 The algebraic K-theory spectrum.

Ideally, the so-called "higher K-theory" is nothing but a reformulation of the idea behind K_0: the difference is that whereas K_0 had values in abelian groups, K-theory has values in spectra, A.2.2. For convenience, we will follow Waldhausen and work with categories with cofibrations (see 2.1 below). When interested in the K-theory of rings we should, of course, apply our K-functor to the category $\mathcal{P}_A$ of finitely generated projective modules. The finitely generated projective modules form an exact category (see 1.3), which again is an example of a category with cofibrations.

There are many definitions of K-theory, each with its own advantages and disadvantages. Quillen began the subject with no less than three: the plus construction, the group completion approach and the "Q"-construction. Soon more versions appeared, but luckily most turned out to be equivalent to Quillen's whenever given the same input. We will eventually meet three: Waldhausen's "S"-construction which we will discuss in just a moment, Segal's Γ-space approach (see chapter II.3), and Quillen's plus construction (see 1.6.1 and section III.1.1).

2.1 Categories with cofibrations

The source for these facts is Waldhausen's [249] from which we steal indiscriminately. That a category is *pointed* means that it has a chosen zero object 0 that is both initial and final.

Definition 2.1.1 A *category with cofibrations* is a pointed category $\mathcal{C}$ together with a subcategory $co\mathcal{C}$ satisfying

1. all isomorphisms are in $co\mathcal{C}$
2. all maps from the zero object are in $co\mathcal{C}$

3. if $A \to B \in co\mathcal{C}$ and $A \to C \in \mathcal{C}$, then the pushout

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ C & \longrightarrow & C \coprod_A B \end{array}$$

exists in $\mathcal{C}$, and the lower horizontal map is in $co\mathcal{C}$.

We will call the maps in $co\mathcal{C}$ simply *cofibrations*. Cofibration may occasionally be written $\rightarrowtail$. A functor between categories with cofibrations is *exact* if it is pointed, takes cofibrations to cofibrations, and preserves the pushout diagrams of item 3.

Exact categories, as described in section 1.3, are important examples. In these cases the monomorphisms in the short exact sequences are the cofibrations. In particular the category of finitely generated projective modules over a ring is a category with cofibrations:

Example 2.1.2 (The category of finitely generated projective modules) Let A be a ring (unital and associative as always) and let $\mathcal{M}_A$ be the category of all A-modules. Conforming with the notation used elsewhere in the book, where $\mathcal{C}(c, c')$ denotes the set of maps $c \to c'$ in some category $\mathcal{C}$, we write $\mathcal{M}_A(M, N)$ for the group of A-module homomorphisms $M \to N$ instead of $\mathrm{Hom}_A(M, N)$.

We will eventually let the K-theory of the ring A be the K-theory of the category $\mathcal{P}_A$ of finitely generated projective right A-modules. The interesting structure of $\mathcal{P}_A$ as a category with cofibrations is to let the cofibrations be the injections $P' \rightarrowtail P$ in $\mathcal{P}_A$ such that the quotient P/P' is also in $\mathcal{P}_A$. That is, a homomorphism $P' \rightarrowtail P \in \mathcal{P}_A$ is a cofibration if it is the first part of a short exact sequence

$$0 \to P' \rightarrowtail P \twoheadrightarrow P'' \to 0$$

of projective modules. In this case the cofibrations are *split*, i.e., for any cofibration $j \colon P' \to P$ there exists a homomorphism $s \colon P \to P'$ in $\mathcal{P}_A$ such that $sj = id_{P'}$. Note that no choice of splitting is assumed in saying that j is split; some authors use the term "splittable".

A ring homomorphism $f \colon B \to A$ induces a pair of adjoint functors

$$\mathcal{M}_B \underset{f^*}{\overset{-\otimes_B A}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{M}_A$$

where f^* is restriction of scalars. The adjunction isomorphism

$$\mathcal{M}_A(Q \otimes_B A, Q') \cong \mathcal{M}_B(Q, f^*Q')$$

is given by sending $L \colon Q \otimes_B A \to Q'$ to $q \mapsto L(q \otimes 1)$.

When restricted to finitely generated projective modules $-\otimes_B A$ induces a map $K_0(B) \to K_0(A)$ making K_0 into a functor.

Usually authors are not too specific about their choice of $\mathcal{P}_A$, but unfortunately this may not always be good enough. For one thing the assignment $A \mapsto \mathcal{P}_A$ should be functorial, and the problem is the annoying fact that if

$$C \xrightarrow{g} B \xrightarrow{f} A$$

are maps of rings, then $(M \otimes_C B) \otimes_B A$ and $M \otimes_C A$ are generally only naturally isomorphic (not equal).

So whenever pressed, $\mathcal{P}_A$ is the following category.

Definition 2.1.3 Let A be a ring. The category of *finitely generated projective A-modules* $\mathcal{P}_A$ is the following category with cofibrations. Its objects are the pairs (m,p), where m is a nonnegative integer and $p = p^2 \in M_m(A)$. A morphism $(m,p) \to (n,q)$ is an A-module homomorphism of images $im(p) \to im(q)$. A cofibration is a split monomorphism (remember, a splitting is *not* part of the data).

Since $p^2 = p$ we get that $im(p) \subseteq A^m \xrightarrow{p} im(p)$ is the identity, and $im(p)$ is a finitely generated projective module. Any finitely generated projective module in $\mathcal{M}_A$ is isomorphic to some such image. The full and faithful functor (i.e., bijective on morphism groups) $\mathcal{P}_A \to \mathcal{M}_A$ sending (m,p) to $im(p)$ displays $\mathcal{P}_A$ as a category equivalent to the category of finitely generated projective objects in $\mathcal{M}_A$. With this definition $\mathcal{P}_A$ becomes a category with cofibrations, where $(m,p) \to (n,q)$ is a cofibration exactly when $im(p) \to im(q)$ is. The coproduct is given by $(m,p) \oplus (n,q) = (m+n, p \oplus q)$ where $p \oplus q$ is block sum of matrices.

Note that for any morphism $a\colon (m,p) \to (n,q)$ we may define

$$x_a\colon A^m \twoheadrightarrow im(p) \xrightarrow{a} im(q) \subseteq A^n,$$

and we get that $x_a = x_a p = q x_a$. In fact, when $(m,p) = (n,q)$, you get an isomorphism of rings

$$\mathcal{P}_A((m,p),(m,p)) \cong \{y \in M_m(A) | y = yp = py\}$$

via $a \mapsto x_a$, with inverse

$$y \mapsto \{im(p) \subseteq A^m \xrightarrow{y} A^m \xrightarrow{p} im(p)\}.$$

Note that the unit in the ring on the right hand side is the matrix p.

If $f\colon A \to B$ is a ring homomorphism, then $f_*\colon \mathcal{P}_A \to \mathcal{P}_B$ is given on objects by $f_*(m,p) = (m, f(p))$ ($f(p) \in M_m(B)$ is the matrix you get by using f on each entry in p), and on morphisms $a\colon (m,p) \to (n,q)$ by $f_*(a) = f(x_a)|_{im(f(p))}$, which is well defined as $f(x_a) = f(q)f(x_a) = f(x_a)f(p)$. There is a natural isomorphism between

$$\mathcal{P}_A \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_A \xrightarrow{M \mapsto M \otimes_A B} \mathcal{M}_B$$

and

$$\mathcal{P}_A \xrightarrow{f_*} \mathcal{P}_B \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_B.$$

The assignment $A \mapsto \mathcal{P}_A$ is a functor from rings to exact categories.

Example 2.1.4 (The category of finitely generated free module) Let A be a ring. To conform with the strict definition of $\mathcal{P}_A$ in 2.1.3, we define the category $\mathcal{F}_A$ of finitely generated free A-modules as the full subcategory of $\mathcal{P}_A$ with objects of the form $(n, 1)$, where 1 is the identity $A^n = A^n$. The inclusion $\mathcal{F}_A \subseteq \mathcal{P}_A$ is "cofinal" in the sense that given any object (m, p) in $\mathcal{P}_A$ there exists another object (n, q) in $\mathcal{P}_A$ such that $(n, q) \oplus (m, p) = (n + m, q \oplus p)$ is isomorphic to a free module. This will have the consequence that the K-theories of $\mathcal{F}_A$ and $\mathcal{P}_A$ only differ at K_0.

2.1.5 K_0 of categories with cofibrations

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a category with cofibrations, we let the "short exact sequences" be the cofiber sequences $c' \rightarrowtail c \twoheadrightarrow c''$, meaning that $c' \rightarrowtail c$ is a cofibration and the sequence fits in a pushout square

$$\begin{tikzcd} c' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & c \arrow[d] \\ 0 \arrow[r] & c'' \end{tikzcd}.$$

This class is the class of objects of a category which we will call $S_2\mathcal{C}$. The maps are commutative diagrams

$$\begin{tikzcd} c' \arrow[r, tail] \arrow[d] & c \arrow[r, two heads] \arrow[d] & c'' \arrow[d] \\ d' \arrow[r, tail] & d \arrow[r, two heads] & d'' \end{tikzcd}$$

Note that we can define cofibrations in $S_2\mathcal{C}$ too: a map like the one above is a cofibration if the vertical maps are cofibrations and the map from $c \coprod_{c'} d'$ to d is a cofibration.

Lemma 2.1.6 *With these definitions $S_2\mathcal{C}$ is a category with cofibrations.*

Proof: Firstly, we have to prove that a composite of two cofibrations

$$\begin{tikzcd} c' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & c \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & c'' \arrow[d] \\ d' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & d \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & d'' \arrow[d] \\ e' \arrow[r] & e \arrow[r] & e'' \end{tikzcd}$$

again is a cofibration. The only thing to be checked is that the map from $c \coprod_{c'} e'$ to e is a cofibration, but this follows by 2.1.1.1. and 2.1.1.3. since

$$c \coprod_{c'} e' \cong c \coprod_{c'} d' \coprod_{d'} e' \rightarrowtail d \coprod_{d'} e' \rightarrowtail e$$

The axioms 2.1.1.1 and 2.1.1.2 are clear, and for 2.1.1.3 we reason as follows. Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} d' & \longrightarrow & d & \longrightarrow & d'' \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ c' & \longrightarrow & c & \longrightarrow & c' \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ e' & \longrightarrow & e & \longrightarrow & e'' \end{array}$$

where the rows are objects of $S_2\mathcal{C}$ and the downwards pointing maps constitute a cofibration in $S_2\mathcal{C}$. Taking the pushout (which you get by taking the pushout of each column) the only nontrivial part of 2.1.1.3. is that we have to check that $(e' \coprod_{c'} d') \coprod_{d'} d \to e \coprod_c d$ is a cofibration. But this is so since it is the composite

$$\left(e' \coprod_{c'} d'\right) \coprod_{d'} d \cong \left(e' \coprod_{c'} c\right) \coprod_{c} d \to e \coprod_{c} d$$

and the last map is a cofibration since $e' \coprod_{c'} c \to e$ is. ∎

There are three important functors

$$d_0, d_1, d_2\colon S_2\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}$$

sending a sequence $\mathbf{c} = \{c' \rightarrowtail c \twoheadrightarrow c''\}$ to $d_0(\mathbf{c}) = c''$, $d_1(\mathbf{c}) = c$ and $d_2(\mathbf{c}) = c'$.

Lemma 2.1.7 *The functors $d_i\colon S_2\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}$ for $i = 0, 1, 2$, are all exact.*

Proof: See [249, p. 323]. ∎

We now give a reformulation of the definition of K_0. We let $\pi_0(i\mathcal{C})$ be the set of isomorphism classes of $\mathcal{C}$. That a functor F from categories with cofibrations to abelian groups is "under $\pi_0 i$" then means that it comes equipped with a natural map $\pi_0(i\mathcal{C}) \to F(\mathcal{C})$, and a map between such functors must respect this structure.

Lemma 2.1.8 *K_0 is the universal functor F under $\pi_0 i$ to abelian groups satisfying additivity, i.e., such that the natural map*

$$F(S_2\mathcal{C}) \xrightarrow{(d_0,d_2)} F(\mathcal{C}) \times F(\mathcal{C})$$

is an isomorphism.

Proof: First one shows that K_0 satisfies additivity. Consider the splitting $K_0(\mathcal{C}) \times K_0(\mathcal{C}) \to K_0(S_2\mathcal{C})$ which sends $([a], [b])$ to $[a \rightarrowtail a \vee b \twoheadrightarrow b]$. We have to show that the composite

$$K_0(S_2\mathcal{C}) \xrightarrow{(d_0,d_2)} K_0(\mathcal{C}) \times K_0(\mathcal{C}) \longrightarrow K_0(S_2\mathcal{C})$$

sending $[a' \rightarrowtail a \twoheadrightarrow a'']$ to $[a' \rightarrowtail a' \vee a'' \twoheadrightarrow a''] = [a' = a' \to 0] + [0 \rightarrowtail a'' = a'']$ is the identity. But this is clear from the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} a' & = & a' & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \| & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ a' & \longrightarrow & a & \longrightarrow & a'' \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \| \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & a'' & = & a'' \end{array}$$

in $S_2S_2\mathcal{C}$. Let F be any other functor under $\pi_0 i$ satisfying additivity. By additivity the function $\pi_0(i\mathcal{C}) \to F(\mathcal{C})$ satisfies the additivity condition used in the definition of K_0 in 1.3.1; so there is a unique factorization $\pi_0(i\mathcal{C}) \to K_0(\mathcal{C}) \to F(\mathcal{C})$ which for the same reason must be functorial. ∎

The question is: can we obtain deeper information about the category $\mathcal{C}$ if we allow ourselves a more fascinating target category than abelian groups? The answer is yes. If we use a category of spectra instead we get a theory – K-theory – whose homotopy groups are the K-groups introduced earlier.

2.2 Waldhausen's S-construction

We now give Waldhausen's definition of the K-theory of a category with (isomorphisms and) cofibrations. (According to Waldhausen, the "S" is for "Segal" as in Graeme B. Segal. According to Segal his construction was close to the "block-triangular" version given for additive categories in 2.2.4 below. Apparently, Segal and Quillen were aware of this construction even before Quillen discovered his Q-construction, but it was not before Waldhausen reinvented it that it became apparent that the S-construction was truly useful. In fact, in a letter to Segal [193], Quillen comments: "... But it was only this spring that I succeeded in freeing myself from the shackles of the simplicial way of thinking and found the category Q($\underline{\underline{\mathrm{B}}}$)".)

For any category $\mathcal{C}$, the *arrow category* $\mathcal{A}r\mathcal{C}$ (not to be confused with the *twisted* arrow category $T\mathcal{C}$), is the category whose objects are the morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$, and where a morphism from $f: a \to b$ to $g: c \to d$ is a commutative diagram in $\mathcal{C}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} a & \longrightarrow & c \\ {\scriptstyle f}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle g}\downarrow \\ b & \longrightarrow & d \end{array}.$$

If $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is a functor, we get an induced functor $\mathcal{A}r\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}r\mathcal{D}$, and a quick check reveals that $\mathcal{A}r$ is itself a functor.

Consider the ordered set $[n] = \{0 < 1 < \cdots < n\}$ as a category and its arrow category $\mathcal{A}r[n]$.

Actually, since orientation differs in varying sources, let us be precise about this. The simplicial category Δ may be considered as a full subcategory of the category of small categories, by identifying $[n]$ with the category $\{0 \leftarrow 1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow n\}$ (the idea is that you just insert a horizontal line to make $<$ into $\leftarrow$). Many authors consider instead the opposite category $[n]^o = \{0 \to 1 \to \cdots \to n\}$. Since we want to keep Waldhausen's *notation*, but still be consistent with our chosen convention we consider the arrow category $\mathcal{A}r([n]^o)$. So, in $\mathcal{A}r([11]^o)$ there is a unique morphism from the object $(2 \leq 4)$ to $(3 \leq 7)$ and no morphism the other way.

Definition 2.2.1 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category with cofibrations. Then $S\mathcal{C} = \{[n] \mapsto S_n\mathcal{C}\}$ is the simplicial category which in degree n is the category $S_n\mathcal{C}$ of functors $C\colon \mathcal{A}r([n]^o) \to \mathcal{C}$ satisfying the following properties

1. For all $j \geq 0$ we have that $C(j = j) = 0$ (the preferred null object in $\mathcal{C}$)
2. if $i \leq j \leq k$, then $C(i \leq j) \rightarrowtail C(i \leq k)$ is a cofibration, and
$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(i \leq j) & \longrightarrow & C(i \leq k) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ C(j = j) & \longrightarrow & C(j \leq k) \end{array}$$
is a pushout.

The simplicial structure is induced by the cosimplicial category $[n] \mapsto \mathcal{A}r([n]^o)$.

To get one's hand on each individual category $S_n\mathcal{C}$, think of the objects as strings of cofibrations
$$C_{01} \rightarrowtail C_{02} \rightarrowtail \ldots \rightarrowtail C_{0n}$$
with compatible choices of cofibers $C_{ij} = C_{0j}/C_{0i}$, or equivalently as triangles

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccc}
C_{01} & \rightarrowtail & C_{02} & \rightarrowtail & C_{03} & \rightarrowtail \cdots \rightarrowtail & C_{0,n-1} & \rightarrowtail & C_{0n} \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & C_{12} & \rightarrowtail & C_{13} & \rightarrowtail \cdots \rightarrowtail & C_{1,n-1} & \rightarrowtail & C_{1n} \\
 & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & & & C_{23} & \rightarrowtail \cdots \rightarrowtail & C_{2,n-1} & \rightarrowtail & C_{2,n} \\
 & & & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & & & & \ddots & \vdots & & \vdots \\
 & & & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & & & & & C_{n-2,n-1} & \rightarrowtail & C_{n-2,n} \\
 & & & & & & & & \downarrow \\
 & & & & & & & & C_{n-1,n}
\end{array}$$

with horizontal arrows cofibrations and every square a pushout (the null object is placed in the corners below the diagonal).

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a category, we will let $ob\mathcal{C}$ be the class of objects in $\mathcal{C}$.

The first thing one should notice is

Lemma 2.2.2 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a small category with cofibrations. Then there is a natural isomorphism $K_0(\mathcal{C}) \cong \pi_1(obS\mathcal{C})$.*

Proof: Since $obS_0\mathcal{C}$ is trivial, the fundamental group $\pi_1(obS\mathcal{C})$ is the quotient of the free group on the pointed set $ob\mathcal{C} = obS_1\mathcal{C}$ by the relation that $[c'] = [c'']^{-1}[c]$ for every $c' \rightarrowtail c \twoheadrightarrow c'' \in obS_2\mathcal{C}$ (this is the "edge loop" description of the fundamental group, and can be seen alternatively by using the Kan loop group description of the fundamental group of a space with only one zero simplex, see the appendix A.1.6.2). An isomorphism $c' \xrightarrow{\cong} c$ can be considered as an element $c' \xrightarrow{\cong} c \to 0 \in obS_2\mathcal{C}$, and so $[c'] = [c]$. Since we then have that

$$[c'][c''] = [c'' \vee c'] = [c' \vee c''] = [c''][c']$$

we get that the fundamental group is an abelian group, and so $\pi_1 obS\mathcal{C}$ is the quotient of the free abelian group on the isomorphism classes of $\mathcal{C}$ by the relation $[c'] + [c''] = [c]$, which is just the formula for $K_0(\mathcal{C})$ arrived at in 1.3 ∎

Thus we have that $K_0(A) = K_0(\mathcal{P}_A)$ is the fundamental group of $obS\mathcal{P}_A$ if we choose the cofibrations to be the split monomorphisms, and it can be shown that $K_i(A)$ is $\pi_{i+1}(obS\mathcal{P}_A)$ for the other groups we discussed in the introduction (namely the algebraic cases $i = 1$ and $i = 2$, and also for the definition of the higher groups via the plus construction, see section III.2).

2.2.3 Additive categories

Recall that an *$\mathcal{A}b$-category* [161] is a category where the morphism sets are abelian groups and where composition is bilinear (also called *linear category*). An *additive category* is an $\mathcal{A}b$-category with all finite products.

Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category, regarded as a category with cofibrations by letting the cofibrations be the split monomorphisms. With this choice we call $\mathfrak{C}$ a *split exact category.*

In these cases it is easier to see how the S-construction works. Note that if

$$c = (c_{0,1}, \dots, c_{i-1,i}, \dots, c_{n-1,n})$$

is a sequence of objects, then the sum diagram $\psi_n c$ with

$$(\psi_n c)_{ij} = \bigoplus_{i \le k \le j} c_{k-1,k}$$

and maps the obvious inclusions and projections, is an element in $S_n\mathfrak{C}$. Since $\mathfrak{C}$ is split exact every element of $S_n\mathfrak{C}$ is isomorphic to such a diagram. Maps between two such sum diagrams can be thought of as upper triangular matrices:

Definition 2.2.4 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an $\mathcal{A}b$-category. For every $n > 0$, we define $T_n\mathcal{C}$ – the $n \times n$ *upper triangular matrices* on $\mathcal{C}$ – to be the category with objects $ob\mathcal{C}^n$, and morphisms

$$T_n\mathcal{C}((c_1, \dots, c_n), (d_1, \dots, d_n)) = \bigoplus_{1 \le j \le i \le n} \mathcal{C}(c_i, d_j)$$

with composition given by matrix multiplication

Lemma 2.2.5 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be additive. Then the assignment ψ_q given in the discussion above defines a full and faithful functor*

$$\psi_q \colon T_q\mathfrak{C} \to S_q\mathfrak{C}$$

which is an equivalence of categories since $\mathfrak{C}$ is split exact. ☺

2.3 The equivalence $obS\mathcal{C} \to BiS\mathcal{C}$

Lemma 2.3.1 below displays an amazing – and very useful – property about the simplicial set of objects of the S-construction: Considered as a functor from small categories with cofibrations to simplicial sets, it transforms natural isomorphisms to homotopies, and so sends equivalences of categories to homotopy equivalences.

This is reminiscent to the classifying space construction B discussed below (see also A.1.4), but is slightly weaker in that the classifying space takes all natural transformations to homotopies, whereas obS only takes the natural *iso*morphisms to homotopies.

All categories in this section are assumed to be small. For every $n \geq 0$, regard $[n] = \{0 < 1 < \cdots < n\}$ as a category (if $a \leq b$ there is a unique map $a \leftarrow b$), and maps in Δ as functors (hence we regard Δ as a full subcategory of the category of small categories). The *classifying space* (or *nerve*) of a small category $\mathcal{C}$ is the space (simplicial set) $B\mathcal{C}$ defined by

$$[q] \mapsto B_q\mathcal{C} = \{c_0 \leftarrow c_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow c_q \in \mathcal{C}\} = \{\text{functors } [q] \to \mathcal{C}\}.$$

Note that the standard $[q]$-simplex $\Delta[q] = \{[n] \mapsto \Delta([n], [q])\}$ is the nerve of the category $[n]$: $B[q] = \Delta[q]$. The standard fact that natural transformations induce homotopies comes from the fact that a natural transformation is the same as a functor $\mathcal{C} \times [1] \to \mathcal{D}$, and $B(\mathcal{C} \times [1]) \cong B\mathcal{C} \times B[1] = B\mathcal{C} \times \Delta[1]$. See also appendix A.1.4.

Lemma 2.3.1 *If*

$$f_0, f_1 \colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$$

are isomorphic exact functors, then they induce homotopic maps

$$obS\mathcal{C} \to obS\mathcal{D}.$$

Hence $\mathcal{C} \mapsto obS\mathcal{C}$ sends equivalences of categories to homotopy equivalences of spaces.

Proof: (the same proof as in [249, 1.4.1]). We define a homotopy

$$H\colon ob S\mathcal{C}\times B[1] \longrightarrow ob S\mathcal{D}$$

from Sf_0 to Sf_1 as follows. The natural isomorphism $\eta\colon f_1\cong f_0$ gives rise to a functor $F\colon \mathcal{C}\times[1]\to\mathcal{D}$ with $F(c,i)=f_i(c)$, and $F(c\to c', i\le i')$ equal to the obvious composite $f_{i'}(c)\cong f_i(c)\to f_i(c')$. Let $c\colon \mathcal{A}r[n]\to\mathcal{C}$ be an object of $S_n\mathcal{C}$, and $\phi\in B_n[1]=\Delta([n],[1])$. Then $H(c,\phi)$ is the composite

$$\mathcal{A}r([n]^o) \longrightarrow \mathcal{A}r([n]^o)\times[n]^o \xrightarrow{(c,\phi)} \mathcal{C}\times[1]^o\cong\mathcal{C}\times[1] \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{D}$$

where the first map sends $i\le j$ to $(i\le j, j)$, and where we have used the isomorphism $[1]^o\cong[1]$. This is an object in $S_n\mathcal{D}$ since $f\cong g$ is an isomorphism. ∎

We will use bisimplicial sets (functors from $\Delta^o\times\Delta^o$ to sets) quite freely, and may consider a simplicial set as a bisimplicial set which is constant in one simplicial direction. We will simply say that a map of bisimplicial sets is an equivalence if its diagonal is a weak equivalence of simplicial sets. For this and related technicalities, the reader is invited to consult appendix A.5.

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a category, then $i\mathcal{C}\subseteq\mathcal{C}$ is the subcategory with all objects, but only isomorphisms as morphisms.

Corollary 2.3.2 *If $t\mathcal{C}\subset i\mathcal{C}$ is a subcategory of the isomorphisms containing all objects, then the inclusion of the zero skeleton is an equivalence*

$$ob S\mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{\simeq} Bt S\mathcal{C}$$

where $tS_q\mathcal{C}\subseteq S_q\mathcal{C}$ is the subcategory whose morphisms are transformations coming from $t\mathcal{C}$.

Proof: This follows by regarding the bisimplicial object

$$\{[p],[q]\mapsto B_p tS_q\mathcal{C}\}$$

as $ob S_q\mathbf{N}_p(\mathcal{C},t\mathcal{C})$, where $\mathbf{N}_p(\mathcal{C},t\mathcal{C})$ is a full subcategory of the **category** $\mathbf{N}_p\mathcal{C}$ (see A.1.4) of functors $[p]\to\mathcal{C}$ and natural transformations between these. The objects of $\mathbf{N}_p(\mathcal{C},t\mathcal{C})$ are the chains of maps in $t\mathcal{C}$, i.e., $ob\mathbf{N}_p(\mathcal{C},t\mathcal{C})=B_pt\mathcal{C}$.

Consider the functor $\mathcal{C}\to\mathbf{N}_p(\mathcal{C},t\mathcal{C})$ given by sending c to the chain of identities on c (here we need that all identity maps are in $t\mathcal{C}$). It is an equivalence of categories. A splitting being given by e.g., sending $c_0\leftarrow\cdots\leftarrow c_p$ to c_0: the natural isomorphism to the identity on $\mathbf{N}_p(\mathcal{C},t\mathcal{C})$ is given by

$$\begin{tikzcd}
c_0 \arrow[d, equal] & c_1 \arrow[l, "\alpha_1"'] \arrow[d, "\alpha_1"'] & c_2 \arrow[l, "\alpha_2"'] \arrow[d, "\alpha_1\alpha_2"'] & \dots \arrow[l, "\alpha_3"'] & c_p \arrow[l, "\alpha_p"'] \arrow[d, "\alpha_1\alpha_2\dots\alpha_p"'] \\
c_0 \arrow[r, equal] & c_0 \arrow[r, equal] & c_0 \arrow[r, equal] & \dots \arrow[r, equal] & c_0
\end{tikzcd}.$$

Considering $obS\mathcal{C} \to BtS\mathcal{C}$ as a map of bisimplicial sets, we see that by 2.3.1 it is a homotopy equivalence

$$obS\mathcal{C} = obS\mathbf{N}_0(\mathcal{C}, t\mathcal{C}) \to obS\mathbf{N}_p(\mathcal{C}, t\mathcal{C}) = B_p tS\mathcal{C}$$

in every degree, and so by A.5.0.2 we obtain a weak equivalence of diagonals. ∎

2.3.3 Additivity

The fundamental theorem of the S-construction is the additivity theorem. For proofs we refer the reader to [249] or [172]. This result is actually not used explicitly anywhere in these notes, but it is our guiding theorem for all of K-theory. In fact, it shows that the S-construction is a true generalization of K_0, giving the same sort of universality for K-theory considered as a functor into spectra (see below).

Theorem 2.3.4 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category with cofibrations. The natural map*

$$obS(S_2\mathcal{C}) \to obS(\mathcal{C}) \times obS(\mathcal{C})$$

is a weak equivalence. ☺

See also the more general formulation in theorem 2.7.1.

2.4 The spectrum

Continuing where lemma 2.1.6 and 2.1.7 left off, one checks that the definition of $S\mathcal{C}$ guarantees that it is in fact a simplicial category with cofibrations.

To be precise,

Definition 2.4.1 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category with cofibrations. A cofibration $c \rightarrowtail d \in S_q\mathcal{C}$ is a map such that for $0 < i \leq q$ the maps

$$c_{0i} \rightarrowtail d_{0i}$$

and

$$d_{0,i-1} \coprod_{c_{0,i-1}} c_{0i} \rightarrowtail d_{0i}$$

are all cofibrations.

Note that if $c \rightarrowtail d$ is a cofibration then it follows that all the maps $c_{ij} \rightarrowtail d_{ij}$ are cofibrations.

This means that we may take S of each $S_n\mathcal{C}$, and in this way obtain a bisimplicial object $SS\mathcal{C}$, and by iteration, a sequence of (multi)-simplicial objects $S^{(m+1)}\mathcal{C} = SS^{(m)}\mathcal{C}$.

Recall that a *spectrum* is a sequence of pointed spaces, $m \mapsto X_m$, $m \geq 0$, together with maps $S^1 \wedge X_m \to X_{m+1}$. See appendix A.2.2 for further development of the basic properties of spectra, but recall that given a spectrum X, we define its homotopy groups as

$$\pi_q X = \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \pi_{k+q} X_k$$

(where the colimit is taken along the adjoint of the structure maps). A map of spectra $f\colon X \to Y$ is a *pointwise equivalence* if $f_n\colon X_n \to Y_n$ is a weak equivalence for every n, and a *stable equivalence* if it induces an isomorphism $\pi_*(f)\colon \pi_* X \to \pi_* Y$.

We will study another model for spectra in more detail in chapter II. Morally, spectra are beefed up versions of chain complexes, but in reality they give you much more.

Note that $S_0\mathcal{C} = *$, i.e., $S\mathcal{C}$ is *reduced.* If we consider the space $obS\mathcal{C}$ it will also be reduced, and the inclusion of the 1-skeleton $obS_1\mathcal{C} = ob\mathcal{C}$ gives a map

$$S^1 \wedge ob\mathcal{C} \to obS\mathcal{C}$$

This means that the multi-simplicial sets

$$m \mapsto obS^{(m)}\mathcal{C} = ob\underbrace{S \dots S}_{m \text{ times}}\mathcal{C}$$

form a spectrum after taking the diagonal.

Since $obS^{(m)}\mathcal{C}$ is connected in all of its m simplicial directions, the diagonal will be $m-1$-connected by corollary A.5.0.9. A consequence of the additivity theorem 2.3.4 is that this spectrum is almost an "Ω-spectrum" (see A.2.2): more precisely the adjoint maps $obS^{(m)}\mathcal{C} \to \Omega obS^{(m+1)}\mathcal{C}$ are equivalences for all $m > 0$. We won't need this fact.

For any category $\mathcal{D}$, let $i\mathcal{D} \subseteq \mathcal{D}$ be the subcategory with the same objects, but with only the isomorphisms as morphisms. As before, we get a map $S^1 \wedge Bi\mathcal{C} \to BiS\mathcal{C}$, and hence another spectrum $m \mapsto BiS^{(m)}\mathcal{C}$.

For each n, the degeneracies induce an inclusion

$$obS^{(n)}\mathcal{C} = B_0 iS^{(n)}\mathcal{C} \to BiS^{(n)}\mathcal{C}$$

giving a map of spectra. That the two spectra are pointwise equivalent (that is, the maps $obS^{(n)}\mathcal{C} = B_0 iS^{(n)}\mathcal{C} \to BiS^{(n)}\mathcal{C}$ are all weak equivalences of spaces after taking diagonals) follows from corollary 2.3.2.

Definition 2.4.2 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category with cofibrations. Then

$$\mathbf{K}(\mathcal{C}) = \{m \mapsto obS^{(m)}\mathcal{C}\}$$

is the K-theory spectrum of $\mathcal{C}$ (with respect to the isomorphisms).

In these notes we will only use this definition for categories with cofibrations which are $\mathcal{A}b$-categories. Exact categories are particular examples of $\mathcal{A}b$-categories with cofibrations, and we will never need the further restrictions in the definition of exact categories, even though we will give all statements for exact categories only.

The additivity theorem 2.3.4 can be restated as a property of the K-theory spectrum: The natural map

$$\mathbf{K}(S_2\mathcal{C}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{K}(\mathcal{C}) \times \mathbf{K}(\mathcal{C})$$

is a pointwise equivalence (i.e.,

$$obS^{(n)}(S_2\mathcal{C}) \longrightarrow S^{(n)}(\mathcal{C}) \times obS^{(n)}(\mathcal{C})$$

is a weak equivalence for all n). One should note that the claim that the map is a *stable* equivalence follows almost automatically by the construction (see [249, 1.3.5]).

Definition 2.4.3 (K-theory of rings) Let A be a ring (unital and associative as always). Then we define the K-theory of A, $\mathbf{K}(A)$, to be $\mathbf{K}(\mathcal{P}_A)$, the K-theory of the category of finitely generated projective right A-modules.

K-theory behaves nicely with respect to "cofinal" inclusions, see e.g., [227], and we cite the only case we need: Let $\mathcal{F}_A$ be the category of finitely generated free A-modules. The inclusion $\mathcal{F}_A \subseteq \mathcal{P}_A$ induces a homotopy fiber sequence of spectra

$$\mathbf{K}(\mathcal{F}_A) \longrightarrow \mathbf{K}(\mathcal{P}_A) \longrightarrow H(K_0(A)/K_0^f(A))$$

where $H(M)$ is the Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum of an abelian group M (a spectrum whose only nonzero homotopy group is M in dimension zero. See section A.2.2 for a construction). Hence the homotopy groups of $\mathbf{K}(\mathcal{F}_A)$ and $\mathbf{K}(A) = \mathbf{K}(\mathcal{P}_A)$ coincide in positive dimensions.

2.5 K-theory of split radical extensions

Recall that if B is a ring, the Jacobson radical $rad(M)$ of a B-module M is the intersection of all the kernels of maps from M to simple modules [10, p. 83]. Of particular importance to us is the case of a nilpotent ideal $I \subseteq B$. Then $I \subseteq rad(B)$ since $1 + I$ consists of units.

We now turn to the very special task of giving a suitable model for $\mathbf{K}(B)$ when $f\colon B \to A$ is a split surjection with kernel I contained in the Jacobson radical $rad(B) \subseteq B$. We have some low dimensional knowledge about this situation, namely 1.2.3. and 1.3.2.5. which tell us that $K_0(B) \cong K_0(A)$ and that the multiplicative group $(1+I)^\times$ maps surjectively onto the kernel of the surjection $K_1(B) \twoheadrightarrow K_1(A)$. Some knowledge of K_2 was also available already in the seventies (see e.g., [51] [243] and [159])

We use the strictly functorial model explained in 2.1.3 for the category of finitely generated projective modules $\mathcal{P}_A$ where an object is a pair (m, p) where m is a natural number and $p \in M_m A$ satisfies $p^2 = p$. If $j\colon A \to B$, then $j_*(m, p) = (m, j(p))$.

Lemma 2.5.1 *Let $f\colon B \to A$ be a split surjective k-algebra map with kernel I, and let $j\colon A \to B$ be a splitting. Let $c = (m,p) \in \mathcal{P}_A$ and $P = im(p)$, and consider $\mathcal{P}_B(j_*c, j_*c)$ as a monoid under composition. The kernel of the monoid map*

$$f_*\colon \mathcal{P}_B(j_*c, j_*c) \to \mathcal{P}_A(c,c)$$

is isomorphic to the monoid of matrices $x = 1 + y \in M_m(B)$ such that $y \in M_m I$ and $y = yj(p) = j(p)y$. This is also naturally isomorphic to the set $\mathcal{M}_A(P, P \otimes_A j^*I)$. The monoid structure induced on $\mathcal{M}_A(P, P \otimes_A j^*I)$ is given by

$$\alpha \cdot \beta = (1+\alpha)\circ(1+\beta) - 1 = \alpha + \beta + \alpha\circ\beta$$

for $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{M}_A(P, P\otimes_A I)$ where $\alpha\circ\beta$ is the composite

$$P \xrightarrow{\beta} P\otimes_A I \xrightarrow{\alpha\otimes 1} P\otimes_A I \otimes_A I \xrightarrow{\text{multiplication in } I} P \otimes_A I$$

Proof: As in definition 2.1.3, we identify $\mathcal{P}_B(j_*c, j_*c)$ with the set of matrices $x \in M_m(B)$ such that $x = xj(p) = j(p)x$ and likewise for $\mathcal{P}_A(c,c)$. The kernel consists of the matrices x for which $f(x) = p$ (the identity!), that is, the matrices of the form $j(p) + y$ with $y \in M_m(I)$ such that $y = yj(p) = j(p)y$. As a set, this is isomorphic to the claimed monoid, and the map $j(p)+y \mapsto 1+y$ is a monoid isomorphism since $(j(p)+y)(j(p)+z) = j(p)^2 + yj(p) + j(p)z + yz = j(p) + y + z + yz \mapsto 1 + y + z + yz = (1+y)(1+z)$. The identification with $\mathcal{M}_A(P, P\otimes_A j^*I)$ is through the composite

$$\begin{aligned} Hom_A(P, P\otimes_A j^*I) &\xrightarrow{\cong} Hom_B(P\otimes_A B, P\otimes_A I) \\ &\xrightarrow{\phi\mapsto 1+\phi} Hom_B(P\otimes_A B, P\otimes_A B) \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathcal{P}_B(j_*c, j_*c) \end{aligned}$$

where the first isomorphism is the adjunction isomorphism and the last isomorphism is the natural isomorphism between

$$\mathcal{P}_A \xrightarrow{j_*} \mathcal{P}_B \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_B$$

and

$$\mathcal{P}_A \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_A \xrightarrow{-\otimes_A B} \mathcal{M}_B.$$

∎

Lemma 2.5.2 *In the same situation as the preceding lemma, if $I \subset Rad(B)$, then the kernel of*

$$f_*\colon \mathcal{P}_B(j_*c, j_*c) \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}_A(c,c)$$

is a group.

Proof: To see this, assume first that $P \cong A^n$. Then

$$\mathcal{M}_A(P, P\otimes_A I) \cong M_n I \subseteq M_n(rad(B)) = rad(M_n(B))$$

(we have that $M_n(rad(B)) = Rad(M_n(B))$ since $\mathcal{M}_B(B^n, -)$ is an equivalence from B-modules to $M_n(B)$-modules, [10, p. 86]), and so $(1 + M_n(I))^\times$ is a group. If P is a direct summand of A^n, say $A^n = P \oplus Q$, and $\alpha \in \mathcal{M}_A(P, P \otimes_A I)$, then we have a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P \otimes_A B & \xrightarrow{1+\alpha} & P \otimes_A B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A^n \otimes_A B & \xrightarrow{1+(\alpha,0)} & A^n \otimes_A B \end{array}$$

where the vertical maps are split injections. By the discussion above $1 + (\alpha, 0)$ must be an isomorphism, forcing $1 + \alpha$ to be one too. ∎

All of the above holds true if instead of considering module categories, we consider the S construction of Waldhausen applied n times to the projective modules. More precisely, let now c be some object in $S_p^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A$. Then the set of morphisms $S_p^{(n)}\mathcal{M}_A(c, c \otimes_A j^*I)$ is still isomorphic to the monoid of elements sent to the identity under

$$S_p^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B(j_*c, j_*c) \xrightarrow{f_*} S_p^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A(c, c)$$

and, if I is radical, this is a group. We will usually suppress the simplicial indices and speak of elements in some unspecified dimension. We will also usually suppress the j^* that should be inserted whenever I is considered as an A-module.

We need a few technical definitions.

Definition 2.5.3 Let

$$0 \longrightarrow I \longrightarrow B \xrightarrow{f} A \longrightarrow 0$$

be a split extension of k-algebras with $I \subset Rad(B)$, and choose a splitting $j \colon A \to B$ of f. Let $t\mathcal{P}_B \subseteq \mathcal{P}_B$ be the subcategory with all objects, but with morphisms only the endomorphisms taken to the identity by f_*. Note that, since $I \subseteq rad(B)$, all morphisms in $t\mathcal{P}_B$ are automorphisms.

Let

$$tS_q^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B \subseteq iS_q^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$$

be the subcategory with the same objects, but with morphisms transformations of diagrams in $S_q^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$ consisting of morphisms in $t\mathcal{P}_B$.

Consider the sequence of (multi) simplicial exact categories $n \mapsto \mathcal{D}_A^n B$ given by

$$ob\mathcal{D}_A^n B = obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A \text{ and } \mathcal{D}_A^n B(c, d) = S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B(j_*c, j_*d)$$

Let $t\mathcal{D}_A^n B \subset \mathcal{D}_A^n B$ be the subcategory containing all objects, but whose only morphisms are the automorphisms $S^{(n)}\mathcal{M}_A(c, c \otimes_A I)$ considered as the subset $\{b \in S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B(j_*c, j_*c) | f_*b = 1\} \subseteq \mathcal{D}_A^n B(c, c)$.

We set

$$\mathbf{K}_A B = \{n \mapsto Bt\mathcal{D}_A^n B = \coprod_{m \in S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A} B\left(S^{(n)}\mathcal{M}_A(m, m \otimes_A I)\right)\} \tag{2.5.4}$$

where the bar construction is taken with respect to the group structure.

Recall that in the eyes of K-theory there really is no difference between the special type of automorphisms coming from t and all isomorphisms since by corollary 2.3.2 the inclusions

$$obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B \subseteq BtS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B \subseteq BiS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$$

are both weak equivalences.

Note that $\mathcal{D}^n_A B$ depends not only on I as an A-bimodule, but also on the multiplicative structure it inherits as an ideal in B. We have a factorization

$$S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A \xrightarrow{j_!} \mathcal{D}^n_A B \xrightarrow{j_\#} S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$$

where $j_!$ is the identity on object, and j_* on morphisms, and $j_\#$ is the fully faithful functor sending $c \in obt\mathcal{D}^n_A B = obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A$ to $j_* c \in obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$ (and the identity on morphisms). We see that $\mathbf{K}_A B$ is a subspectrum of $\{n \mapsto BiS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B\}$ via

$$t\mathcal{D}^n_A B \longrightarrow tS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B \subseteq iS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$$

Theorem 2.5.5 *Let $f\colon B \to A$ be a split surjection of k-algebras with splitting j and kernel $I \subset Rad(B)$. Then*

$$\mathcal{D}^n_A B \xrightarrow{j_\#} S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B, \text{ and its restriction } t\mathcal{D}^n_A B \xrightarrow{j_\#} tS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$$

are (degreewise) equivalences of simplicial exact categories, and so the chain

$$\mathbf{K}_A B(n) = Bt\mathcal{D}^n_A B \subseteq BtS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B \supseteq obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B = \mathbf{K}(B)(n)$$

consists of weak equivalences.

Proof: To show that

$$\mathcal{D}^n_A B \xrightarrow{j_\#} S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$$

is an equivalence, all we have to show is that every object in $S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$ is isomorphic to something in the image of $j_\#$. We will show that $c \in S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$ is isomorphic to $j_* f_* c = j_\#(j_! f_* c)$.

Let $c = (m, p) \in ob\mathcal{P}_B$, $P = im(p)$. Consider the diagram with short exact columns

$$\begin{tikzcd}
im(p) \cdot I \arrow[r, dashed] \arrow[d, hook] & im(jf(p)) \cdot I \arrow[d, hook] \\
im(p) \arrow[r, dashed, "\eta_p"] \arrow[d, "\pi"] & im(jf(p)) \arrow[d, "\pi'"] \\
f^* im(f(p)) \arrow[r, equal] & f^* im(fjf(p))
\end{tikzcd}$$

Since $im(p)$ is projective there exist a (not necessarily natural) lifting η_p. Let C be the cokernel of η_p. A quick diagram chase shows that $C \cdot I = C$. Since $im(jf(p))$, and hence

C, is finitely generated, Nakayama's lemma III.1.4.1 tells us that C is trivial. This implies that η_p is surjective, but $im(jf(p))$ is also projective, so η_p must be split surjective. Call the splitting ϵ. Since $\pi\epsilon = \pi'\eta_p\epsilon = \pi'$ the argument above applied to ϵ shows that ϵ is also surjective. Hence η_p is an isomorphism. Thus, every object $c \in ob\mathcal{P}_B$ is isomorphic to $j_*(f_*c)$.

Let $c \in obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$. Then c and j_*f_*c are splittable diagrams with isomorphic vertices. Choosing isomorphisms on the "diagonal" we can extend these to the entire diagram, and so c and j_*f_*c are indeed isomorphic as claimed, proving the first assertion.

To show that

$$t\mathcal{D}^n_A B \xrightarrow{j_\#} tS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$$

is an equivalence, note first that this functor is also fully faithful. We know that any $c \in ob\, tS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B = obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$ is isomorphic in $S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$ to j_*f_*c, and the only thing we need to show is that we can choose this isomorphism in t. Let $\iota\colon c \to j_*f_*c \in iS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_B$ be any isomorphism. Consider

$$c \xrightarrow{\iota} j_*f_*c = j_*f_*j_*f_*c \xrightarrow{j_*f_*(\iota^{-1})} j_*f_*c$$

Since $f_*(j_*f_*(\iota^{-1}) \circ \iota) = f_*(\iota^{-1}) \circ f_*(\iota) = 1_{f_*c}$ the composite $j_*f_*(\iota^{-1}) \circ \iota$ is an isomorphism in $tS^n_q\mathcal{P}$ from c to $j_\#(j_!f_*c)$. ∎

We set

Definition 2.5.6

$$\tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A B = \mathbf{K}_A B/\mathbf{K}(A) = \{n \mapsto \bigvee_{m \in S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A} B\left(S^{(n)}\mathcal{M}_A(m, m \otimes_A I)\right)\}$$

Theorem 2.5.5 says that

$$\tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A B \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{K}(B)/\mathbf{K}(A)$$

is a (pointwise) equivalence of spectra. The latter spectrum is stably equivalent to the fiber of $\mathbf{K}(B) \to \mathbf{K}(A)$. To see this, consider the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{K}(B) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{K}(A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{K}(B)/\mathbf{K}(A) & \longrightarrow & * \end{array}$$

It is a (homotopy) cocartesian square of spectra, and hence homotopy cartesian. (In spectrum dimension n this is a cocartesian square, and the spaces involved are at least $n-1$-connected, and so all maps are $n-1$-connected. Then Blakers–Massey A.7.2.2 tells us that the square is $(n-1)+(n-1)-1 = 2n-3$ homotopy cartesian.) This means that the homotopy fiber of the upper horizontal map maps by a weak equivalence to the homotopy fiber of the lower horizontal map.

2.5.7 "Analyticity properties" of $\mathbf{K}_A(B)$

The following result will not be called for until lemma VII.2.1.3, and may be safely skipped at a first reading until the result is eventually referred back to, but is placed here since it uses notation that is better kept local.

Although we are not using the notion of calculus of functors in these notes, we will in many cases come quite close. The next lemma, which shows how $\mathbf{K}_A(B)$ behaves under certain inverse limits, can be viewed as an example of this. A twist, which will reappear later is that we do not ask whether the functor turns "cocartesianness" into "cartesianness", but rather to what extent the functor preserves inverse limits. The reason for this is that in many cases the coproduct structure of the source category can be rather messy, whereas some forgetful functor tells us exactly what the limits should be.

For the basics on cubes see appendix A.7. In particular, a *strongly cocartesian n-cube* is an n-cube where each two-dimensional face is cocartesian.

Let Split be the category of split radical extensions over a given ring A. The category sSplit of simplicial objects in Split then inherits the notion of k-cartesian cubes via the forgetful functor down to simplicial sets. By "final maps" in an n-cube we mean the maps induced from the n inclusions of the subsets of cardinality $n-1$ in $\{1,\dots,n\}$.

If $A \ltimes \mathcal{P} \in s\mathrm{Split}$ it makes sense to talk about $\mathbf{K}(A \ltimes \mathcal{P})$ by applying the functor in every degree, and diagonalizing.

Lemma 2.5.8 *Let $A \ltimes \mathcal{P}$ be a strongly cartesian n-cube in* sSplit *such all the final maps are k-connected. Then $\mathbf{K}(A \ltimes \mathcal{P})$ is $(1+k)n$-cartesian.*

Proof: Fix the non-negative integer q, the tuple $p=(p_1,\dots,p_q)$ and the object $c \in obS^{(q)}_p\mathcal{P}_A$. The cube $S^{(q)}_p\mathcal{M}_A(c, c\otimes_A\mathcal{P})$ is also strongly cartesian (it is so as a simplicial set, and so as a simplicial group), and the final maps are still k-connected. Taking the bar of this gives us a strongly cartesian cube $BS^{(q)}_p\mathcal{M}_A(c, c\otimes_A\mathcal{P})$, but whose final maps will be $k+1$-connected. By the Blakers–Massey theorem A.7.2.2 this means that $BS^{(q)}_p\mathcal{M}_A(c, c\otimes_A\mathcal{P})$ will be $(k+2)n-1$-cocartesian. The same will be true for

$$\coprod_{c\in obS^{(q)}_p\mathcal{P}_A} BS^{(q)}_p\mathcal{M}_A(c, c\otimes_A\mathcal{P})$$

Varying p and remembering that each multi-simplicial space is $(q-1)$-connected in the p direction, we see that the resulting cube is $q+(k+2)n-1$-cocartesian, c.f. A.5.0.9. Varying also q, we see that this means that the cube of spectra $\mathbf{K}(A \ltimes \mathcal{P})$ is $(k+2)n-1$ cocartesian, or equivalently $(k+2)n-1-(n-1)=(k+1)n$-cartesian. ∎

The importance of this lemma will become apparent as we will approximate elements in Split by means of cubical diagrams in sSplit where all but the initial node will be "reduced" in the sense that the zero skeletons will be exactly the trivial extension $A=A$.

2.6 Categories with cofibrations and weak equivalences

Definition 2.4.2 of the K-theory of a category with cofibrations does not immediately cover more general situations where we are interested in incorporating some structure of weak equivalences, e.g., simplicial rings. Waldhausen [249] covers this case also, and demands only that the category of weak equivalences $w\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathcal{C}$ contains all isomorphisms and satisfies the *gluing lemma*, that is, if the left horizontal maps in the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} d & \leftarrowtail & c & \rightarrow & e \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ d' & \leftarrowtail & c' & \rightarrow & e' \end{array}$$

are cofibrations and the vertical maps are weak equivalences, then the induced map

$$d \coprod_c d \to d' \coprod_{c'} e'$$

is also a weak equivalence. In this case $S\mathcal{C}$ inherits a subcategory of weak equivalences, $wS\mathcal{C}$ satisfying the same conditions by declaring that a map is a weak equivalence if it is on all nodes. We iterate this construction and define

$$\mathbf{K}(\mathcal{C}, w) = \{m \mapsto BwS^{(m)}\mathcal{C}\}. \tag{2.6.0}$$

Corollary 2.3.2 then says that

$$\mathbf{K}(\mathcal{C}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{K}(\mathcal{C}, i)$$

is an equivalence of spectra.

One should note that there really is no need for the new definition, since the old covers all situations by the following observation. If we let $\mathbf{N}_q\mathcal{C}$ be the category of functors $[q] \to \mathcal{C}$ and natural transformations between these, we can let $\mathbf{N}_q(\mathcal{C}, w)$ be the full subcategory of $\mathbf{N}_q\mathcal{C}$ with $ob\mathbf{N}_q(\mathcal{C}, w) = B_qw\mathcal{C}$. Letting q vary, this is a simplicial category with cofibrations, and we have an isomorphism

$$\mathbf{K}(\mathcal{C}, w)(m) = BwS^{(m)}\mathcal{C} \cong obS^{(m)}\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w) = \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w)).$$

Some authors use the word “Waldhausen category” to signify a category with cofibrations and weak equivalences.

2.7 Other important facts about the K-theory spectrum

The following theorems are important for the general framework of algebraic K-theory and we include them for the reader’s convenience. We will neither need them for the development of the theory nor prove them, but we still want to use them in some examples and draw the reader’s attention to them. The papers [97] and [227] of Grayson and Staffeldt give very concrete and nice proofs of Quillen’s original statements in the context of Waldhausen’s construction. In addition, Waldhausen’s [249], Thomason’s [238] and Schlichting’s [209] papers are good sources.

Theorem 2.7.1 (Additivity theorem: [249, section 1.4] and [172]) *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category with cofibrations and weak equivalences $w\mathcal{C}$. Then*

$$BwSS_2\mathcal{C} \to BwS\mathcal{C} \times NwS\mathcal{C}$$

is an equivalence, and the structure map $BwS^{(m)}\mathcal{C} \to \Omega BwS^{(m+1)}\mathcal{C}$ is an equivalence for $m > 0$. ☺

In order to state the next theorems, we need to define some important notions about categories with cofibrations and weak equivalences

Definition 2.7.2 A subcategory of a category is said to satisfy the *two-out-of-three property* if given two composable morphisms

$$c \xleftarrow{g} b \xleftarrow{f} a$$

in the ambient category, one has that, if two of f, g and fg are in the smaller category, then all three are.

The category of weak equivalences in a category with cofibrations and weak equivalences is said to satisfy the *extension axiom* if for given a map

$$\begin{tikzcd} c \arrow[r, tail] \arrow[d] & c' \arrow[d] \\ d \arrow[r, tail] & d' \end{tikzcd}$$

of cofibrations where $c \to d$ and the induced map of cofibers $c'/c \to d'/d$ are weak equivalences it follows that the map $c' \to d'$ is a weak equivalence too.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be categories with weak equivalences and cofibrations. A functor $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is *exact* if it preserves weak equivalences and is exact as a functor of categories with cofibrations (i.e., preserves cofibrations and pushout squares along cofibrations, c.f. 2.1.1).

An exact functor of categories with weak equivalences and cofibrations $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ has the *approximation property* if

1. $w\mathcal{C} = F^{-1}(w\mathcal{D})$

2. given $F(c) \to d \in \mathcal{D}$, there is a cofibration $c \rightarrowtail c'$ in $\mathcal{C}$ and a weak equivalence $F(c') \xrightarrow{\sim} d$ in $\mathcal{D}$ such that the induced diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} F(c) \arrow[rr] \arrow[dr] & & d \\ & F(c') \arrow[ur, "\sim"] & \end{tikzcd}$$

commutes

Waldhausen refers to the two-out-of-three property by saying that the smaller category satisfies the *saturation axiom*. One notices how subcategories characterized by some induced invariant (like homotopy groups) being isomorphisms will always satisfy the two-out-of-three property.

We state Schlichting's version [209, Theorem 10] of the approximation theorem.

Theorem 2.7.3 (Approximation theorem 1.6.7 [249] and [209]) *Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be categories with cofibrations and weak equivalences, where the weak equivalences have the two-out-of-three property, and suppose that every morphism in $\mathcal{C}$ may be factored as a cofibration followed by a weak equivalence. If the exact functor $F\colon \mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}$ has the approximation property, then the induced maps $Bw\mathcal{C}\to Bw\mathcal{D}$ and $BwS\mathcal{C}\to BwS\mathcal{D}$ are weak equivalences.* ☺

It does not escape notice that with Schlichting's formulation, even Ravel's "Fool's morning song" (c.f. axiom Cyl 3 on p. 348 of [249]) is redundant.

The next theorem, the so-called fibration theorem is of importance in localization situations, and is often referred to as the localization theorem, and again we use Schlicting's formulation [209, Theorem 11]

Theorem 2.7.4 (Fibration theorem [249], [209], [95] and [196]) *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category with cofibrations and* two *subcategories $v\mathcal{C}\subseteq w\mathcal{C}$ of weak equivalences. Let $\mathcal{C}^w\subseteq\mathcal{C}$ be the full subcategory with cofibrations of objects c such that the unique map $*\to c$ is in $w\mathcal{C}$. This inherits two subcategories of weak equivalences $v\mathcal{C}^w=\mathcal{C}^w\cap v\mathcal{C}$ and $w\mathcal{C}^w=\mathcal{C}^w\cap w\mathcal{C}$. Assume every map in $\mathcal{C}$ may be factored as a cofibration followed by a map in $w\mathcal{C}$ and that $w\mathcal{C}$ has the two-out-of-three property and satisfies the extension axiom 2.7.2. Then the square*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} BwS\mathcal{C}^w & \longrightarrow & BwS\mathcal{C}^w \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ BvS\mathcal{C} & \longrightarrow & BwS\mathcal{C} \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian, and the upper right term, $BwS\mathcal{C}^w$ is contractible. ☺

In his foundational paper [196], Quillen states a dévissage theorem for the K-theory of abelian categories. Although there has been serious effort, this theorem has still not found a satisfactory formulation in Waldhausen's setup, see e.g., [264], [97, 5.1], [227, 4.1] (the last two with short proofs)

Still it is a very important theorem and we state it with the original conditions.

Theorem 2.7.5 (Dévissage theorem [196, theorem 4]) *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an essentially small abelian category and $\mathcal{B}$ a full additive subcategory closed under taking subobjects and quotient objects. If for each object a of $\mathcal{A}$ there is a finite filtration $0=a_0\subseteq a_1\subseteq\cdots\subseteq a_n=a$ such that each subquotient a_j/a_{j-1} is in $\mathcal{B}$, then the map $BiS\mathcal{B}\to BiS\mathcal{A}$ induced by the inclusion is a weak equivalence.* ☺

We state the resolution theorem (see also [97, 4.1] and [227, 3.1])

Theorem 2.7.6 (Resolution theorem [196, theorem 3]) *Assume $\mathcal{P} \subseteq \mathcal{M}$ is a full exact subcategory closed under exact sequences, extension and cokernel. Assume that for any $M \in \mathcal{M}$ there is a short exact sequence $0 \to M \to P \to P'' \to 0$ in $\mathcal{M}$ with P, P'' in $\mathcal{P}$, then the map $BiS\mathcal{P} \to BiS\mathcal{M}$ induced by the inclusion is a weak equivalence.* ☺

Some of the theory Waldhausen develops for his construction will appear later in other contexts. The stable approach we will eventually adopt, avoids the use of machinery such as spherical objects and cell filtrations.

3 Stable K-theory is homology

In this section we will try to connect K-theory to homology. This is done by considering "small perturbations" in input in K-theory, giving a "linear" theory: the "directional derivative" of K-theory. This is then compared with the classical concept of homology, and the two are shown to be equal.

3.1 Split surjections with square-zero kernels

If A is a unital ring, and P is any A bimodule (with no multiplicative structure as part of the data), we define the ring $A \ltimes P$ simply to be $A \oplus P$ as an A-bimodule, and with multiplication $(a', p')(a, p) = (a'a, a'p + p'a)$. That is, $P^2 = 0$ when P is considered as the kernel of the projection $A \ltimes P \twoheadrightarrow A$ sending (a, p) to a.

Algebraically, this is considered to be a "small" deformation of A (the elements of P are so small that their products vanish!). And the difference between $K(A \ltimes P)$ and $K(A)$ reflects the local structure of K-theory. The goal is to measure this difference.

Considered as a functor from A-bimodules, $P \mapsto \mathbf{K}(A \ltimes P)$ is not *additive*, even if we remove the part coming from $\mathbf{K}(A)$. That is, if we let

$$\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A \ltimes P) = fiber\{\mathbf{K}(A \ltimes P) \longrightarrow \mathbf{K}(A)\}$$

then the natural map $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A \ltimes (P \oplus Q)) \to \tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A \ltimes P) \times \tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A \ltimes Q)$ is not an equivalence. For instance, we have by [135] that $\pi_2\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(\mathbf{Z} \ltimes P) \cong \bigwedge^2 P \oplus P/2P$ for all abelian groups P. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
\pi_2\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(\mathbf{Z} \ltimes (P \oplus Q)) &\cong \bigwedge^2 (P \oplus Q) \oplus (P \oplus Q)/2(P \oplus Q) \\
&\cong \left(\bigwedge^2 P \oplus P/2P\right) \oplus \left(\bigwedge^2 Q \oplus Q/2Q\right) \oplus P \otimes Q \\
&\cong \pi_2\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(\mathbf{Z} \ltimes P) \oplus \pi_2\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(\mathbf{Z} \ltimes Q) \oplus (P \otimes Q)
\end{aligned}$$

where the tensor product expresses the nonlinearity.

There are means of forcing linearity upon a functor, which will eventually give stable K-theory, and the aim of this section is to prove that this linear theory is equivalent to the homology of the category of finitely generated projective A-modules.

3.2 The homology of a category

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an $\mathcal{A}b$-category (that is: a category enriched in $\mathcal{A}b$, the category of abelian groups, see appendix A9.2.4. $\mathcal{A}b$-categories are also known as "linear categories" and unfortunately, some call them "additive categories", a term we reserve for pointed $\mathcal{A}b$-categories with sum). The important thing to remember is that the homomorphism sets are really abelian groups, and that composition is bilinear.

We say that $\mathcal{C}$ is *flat* if the morphism sets are flat as abelian groups. A $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule is an $\mathcal{A}b$-functor (linear functor) $\mathcal{C}^o \otimes \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}b$ (see also A.9.4). The category $\mathcal{A}b^{\mathcal{C}^o\otimes\mathcal{C}}$ of $\mathcal{C}$-bimodules forms an abelian category with "enough projectives", so we are free to do homological algebra. If $\mathcal{C}$ is flat, the *Hochschild homology* of $\mathcal{C}$ with coefficients in $M \in \mathcal{A}b^{\mathcal{C}^o\otimes\mathcal{C}}$ is customarily defined as

$$\mathrm{Tor}_*^{\mathcal{A}b^{\mathcal{C}^o\otimes\mathcal{C}}}(M, \mathcal{C})$$

(see [183]). There is a standard simplicial abelian group (complex) whose homotopy groups calculate the Hochschild homology groups, namely

$$[q] \mapsto HH(\mathcal{C}, M)_q = \bigoplus_{c_0,\dots,c_q \in ob\mathcal{C}} M(c_0, c_q) \otimes \bigotimes_{1\le i\le q} \mathcal{C}(c_i, c_{i-1})$$

with face and degeneracies as in Hochschild homology (see [183], and also below).

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be any category (that is, not necessarily an $\mathcal{A}b$-category). It is not uncommon to to call functors $\mathcal{C}^o \times \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}b$ "bifunctors". We note immediately that, by adjointness of the free and forgetful functors

$$\mathcal{E}ns \overset{\mathbf{Z}}{\rightleftarrows} \mathcal{A}b$$

connecting abelian groups to sets, a "bifunctor" is nothing but a $\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}$-bimodule in the $\mathcal{A}b$-enriched world; that is, an $\mathcal{A}b$-functor $\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}^o \otimes \mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}b$. So, for any "bifunctor" (i.e., $\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}$-bimodule) M we may define the homology of $\mathcal{C}$ with respect to M as

$$H_*(\mathcal{C}, M) = \pi_* HH(\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}, M)$$

(notice that $\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}$ is flat). The standard complex $HH(\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}, M)$ calculating this homology, is naturally isomorphic to the following complex $F(\mathcal{C}, M)$:

Definition 3.2.1 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category and M a $\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}$-bimodule. Then the *homology of $\mathcal{C}$ with coefficients in M*, is the simplicial abelian group $F(\mathcal{C}, M)$ which in degree q is given by

$$F_q(\mathcal{C}, M) = \bigoplus_{c_0\leftarrow\cdots\leftarrow c_q \in B_q\mathcal{C}} M(c_0, c_q) \cong \bigoplus_{c_0,\dots,c_q \in ob\mathcal{C}} M(c_0, c_q) \otimes \bigotimes_{1\le i\le q} \mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}(c_i, c_{i-1})$$

and with simplicial structure defined as follows. We write elements of $F_q(\mathcal{C}, M)$ as sums of elements of the form (x, α) where $x \in M(c_0, c_q)$ and

$$\alpha = c_0 \xleftarrow{\alpha_1} \dots \xleftarrow{\alpha_q} c_q \in B_q\mathcal{C}.$$

Then

$$d_i(x,\alpha) = \begin{cases} (M(\alpha_1,1)x, d_0\alpha) & \text{if } i=0 \\ (x, d_i\alpha) & \text{if } 0<i<q \\ (M(1,\alpha_q)x, d_q\alpha) & \text{if } i=q \end{cases}$$

and $s_i(x,\alpha) = (x, s_i\alpha)$.

Remark 3.2.2 *The homology of $\mathcal{C}$, or rather $F(\mathcal{C},-)\colon \mathcal{A}b^{\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}^o\otimes\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}} \to s\mathcal{A}b$, is characterized up to equivalence by the three properties*

1. *If $M \in ob\mathcal{A}b^{\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}^o\otimes\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}}$ is projective, then $F(\mathcal{C},M)\to H_0(\mathcal{C},M)$ is an equivalence.*
2. *$F(\mathcal{C},-)\colon \mathcal{A}b^{\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}^o\otimes\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}} \to s\mathcal{A}b$ take short exact sequences to fiber sequences, and*
3. *The values $H_0(\mathcal{C},M)$.*

In particular, this means that if we have a map to or from some other theory satisfying 1. and 2, and inducing an isomorphism on π_0, then this map is an equivalence.

3.3 Incorporating the S-construction

In order to compare with K-theory, we will incorporate the S-construction into the source of the homology functor.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a small category, and M a $\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C}$-bimodule (i.e., a functor from $\mathcal{C}^o\times\mathcal{C}$ to abelian groups). Recall how bimodules are extended to diagram categories (see appendix A.9.4 for the general situation).

If $\mathfrak{C}$ be an exact category, consider the full subcategory $S_q\mathfrak{C}\subseteq[\mathcal{A}r([q]^o),\mathfrak{C}]$. Let M be a $\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule, then S_qM is defined, and is given by

$$S_qM(c,d) = \{\{m_{ij}\}\in\prod_{0\le i\le j\le q} M(c_{ij},d_{ij})|M(1,d_{ij}\to d_{kl})m_{ij} = M(c_{ij}\to c_{kl},1)m_{kl}\}$$

(if you like ends, this has the compact and pleasing notation $S_qM(c,d)=\int_{i\le j} M(c_{ij},d_{ij})$). Note that, if M is not pointed (i.e., a $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule) we may have elements in the groups $M(c_{ii},d_{ii}) = M(0,0)$, but these are uniquely determined by the values in the other groups. (In fact, if $\mathfrak{C}$ is split exact, then the projection $S_qM(c,d)\to M(c_{0q},d_{0,q})$ is a split monomorphism – a retract is constructed using a choice of splittings).

The construction $[q]\mapsto S_qM$ is functorial in q, in the sense that for every map $\phi\colon[p]\to[q]\in\Delta$ there are natural maps $\phi^*\colon S_pM\to\phi^*S_qM$. Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an exact category, and M a pointed $\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule. Note that, due to the bimodule maps $\phi^*\colon S_pM\to\phi^*S_qM$

$$F(S\mathfrak{C},SM) = \{[p],[q]\mapsto F_p(S_q\mathfrak{C},S_qM)\}$$

is a bisimplicial abelian group.

Again we get a map $S^1 \wedge F(\mathfrak{C}, M) \to F(S\mathfrak{C}, SM)$ making

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathfrak{C}, M) = \{n \mapsto F(S^{(n)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(n)}M)\}$$

a spectrum. In the special case $\mathfrak{C} = \mathcal{P}_A$, and $M(c, d) = Hom_A(c, d \otimes_A P)$ for some A-bimodule P, we define

$$\mathbf{F}(A, P) = \mathbf{F}(\mathcal{P}_A, Hom_A(-, - \otimes_A P)).$$

Note that this can not cause any confusion as the spectrum $\mathbf{F}(\mathfrak{C}, M)$ was before only defined for additive categories (and not for nontrivial rings). We will also consider the associated spectra $\mathbf{F}_q$ for $q \geq 0$ (with the obvious definition).

Lemma 3.3.1 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category and let M be a pointed $\mathbf{Z}\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule. Let*

$$\eta\colon F_q(\mathfrak{C}, M) \to \Omega F_q(S\mathfrak{C}, SM)$$

denote the (adjoint of the) structure map. Then the two composites in the noncommutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F_q(\mathfrak{C}, M) & \xrightarrow{d_0^q} & F_0(\mathfrak{C}, M) \\ \eta\downarrow & & s_0^q\downarrow \\ \Omega F_q(S\mathfrak{C}, SM) & \xleftarrow{\eta} & F_q(\mathfrak{C}, M) \end{array}$$

are homotopic.

Proof: There are three maps $d_0, d_1, d_2\colon F_q(S_2\mathcal{C}, S_2M) \to F_q(\mathcal{C}, M)$ induced by the structure maps $S_2\mathcal{C} \to S_1\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{C}$, see 2.1.7. The two maps

$$\eta d_1 \text{ and } \eta d_0 * \eta d_2\colon F_q(S_2\mathcal{C}, S_2M) \to F_q(\mathcal{C}, M) \to \Omega F_q(S\mathcal{C}, SM)$$

are homotopic, where $\eta d_0 * \eta d_2$ denotes the loop product (remember: $\Omega X = \mathcal{S}_*(S^1, \sin|X|) \cong \sin Top_*(|S^1|, |X|)$). This is so for general reasons: if X is a reduced simplicial set, then the two maps ηd_1 and $\eta d_0 * \eta d_2$ are homotopic as maps

$$X_2 \to X_1 \xrightarrow{\eta} \Omega X$$

where the latter map is induced by the adjoint of the canonical map $S^1 \wedge X_1 \to X$.

In the diagrams below we use the following notation:

1. i_1 is the inclusion into the first summand, pr_2 the second projection, Δ the diagonal and $\nabla\colon c \oplus c \to c$ the difference $(a, b) \mapsto a - b$,

2. $\beta_i = \alpha_i \dots \alpha_q\colon c_q \to c_{i-1}$, $\Delta_i = (1 \oplus \beta_i)\Delta$, and $\nabla_i = \nabla(1 \oplus \beta_i)$

(exercise: check that the claimed elements of $S_2M(-,-)$ are well defined). We define two maps

$$E, D\colon F_q(\mathfrak{C}, M) \to F_q(S_2\mathfrak{C}, S_2M)$$

by sending $(\alpha_0, \{\alpha_i\}) = (\alpha_0 \in M(c_0, c_q), \{c_{i-1} \xleftarrow{\alpha_i} c_i\})$ to $E(\alpha_0, \{\alpha_i\}) =$

$$\left(\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ M(pr_2, \Delta)\alpha_0 \\ \alpha_0 \end{pmatrix} \in S_2M \begin{pmatrix} c_q & & c_q \\ {\scriptstyle i_1}\big\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle i_1}\big\downarrow \\ c_q \oplus c_0, & & c_q \oplus c_q \\ {\scriptstyle pr_2}\big\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle pr_2}\big\downarrow \\ c_0 & & c_q \end{pmatrix}, \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} c_q & = & c_q \\ {\scriptstyle i_1}\big\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle i_1}\big\downarrow \\ c_q \oplus c_{i-1} & \xleftarrow{1\oplus\alpha_i} & c_q \oplus c_i \\ {\scriptstyle pr_2}\big\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle pr_2}\big\downarrow \\ c_{i-1} & \xleftarrow{\alpha_i} & c_i \end{array} \right\} \right)$$

and $D(\alpha_0, \{\alpha_i\}) =$

$$\left(\begin{pmatrix} M(\beta_1, 1)\alpha_0 \\ M(pr_2, \Delta)\alpha_0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \in S_2M \begin{pmatrix} c_q & & c_q \\ {\scriptstyle \Delta_1}\big\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle \Delta}\big\downarrow \\ c_q \oplus c_0, & & c_q \oplus c_q \\ {\scriptstyle \nabla_1}\big\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle \nabla}\big\downarrow \\ c_0 & & c_q \end{pmatrix}, \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} c_q & = & c_q \\ {\scriptstyle \Delta_i}\big\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle \Delta_{i+1}}\big\downarrow \\ c_q \oplus c_{i-1} & \xleftarrow{1\oplus\alpha_i} & c_q \oplus c_i \\ {\scriptstyle \nabla_i}\big\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle \nabla_{i+1}}\big\downarrow \\ c_{i-1} & \xleftarrow{\alpha_i} & c_i \end{array} \right\} \right)$$

Since $d_2E = d_0D = 0$ we get that

$$\eta = \eta d_0 E \simeq \eta d_1 E = \eta d_1 D \simeq \eta d_2 D = \eta s_0^q d_0^q$$

∎

Corollary 3.3.2 *In the situation of the lemma, the inclusion of degeneracies induces a stable equivalence of spectra*

$$\mathbf{F}_0(\mathfrak{C}, M) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{F}(\mathfrak{C}, M)$$

and in particular, if A is a ring and P an A-bimodule, then

$$\mathbf{F}_0(A, P) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{F}(A, P)$$

Proof: It is enough to show that for every q the map $\mathbf{F}_0(\mathfrak{C}, M) \to \mathbf{F}_q(\mathfrak{C}, M)$ induced by the degeneracy is a stable equivalence (since loops of simplicial connected spaces may be performed in each degree, see A.5.0.5, and since a degreewise equivalence of simplicial spaces induces an equivalence on the diagonal, see A.5.0.2). In other words, we must show that for every q and k

$$\pi_0 \lim_{m\to\infty} \Omega^{m+k} F_0(S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M) \xrightarrow{s_0^q} \pi_0 \lim_{m\to\infty} \Omega^{m+k} F_q(S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M)$$

is an isomorphism. It is a split injection by definition, and a surjection by lemma 3.3.1.

∎

3.4 K-theory as a theory of bimodules

Let A be a ring and let $A \ltimes P \to A$ be any split radical extension. Recall the $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A$ construction of definition 2.5.4. The last part of theorem 2.5.5 says that

$$\mathbf{K}(A \ltimes P)/\mathbf{K}(A) \simeq \tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A(A \ltimes P) = \{n \mapsto \bigvee_{m \in S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A} B\left(S^{(n)}\mathcal{M}_A(m, m \otimes_A P)\right)\}.$$

Notice the striking similarity with

$$\mathbf{F}_0(\mathcal{P}_A, M) = \{n \mapsto \bigoplus_{m \in obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A} M(m,m)\}.$$

In the special case where $P^2 = 0$ the group structure on $Hom_A(c, c \otimes_A P)$ for $c \in S_q^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A$ is just the summation of maps: let $f, g \in Hom_A(c, c \otimes_A P)$, then $f \cdot g = (1+f)(1+g) - 1 = f + g + f \circ g$, where $f \circ g$ is the composite

$$c \xrightarrow{g} c \otimes_A P \xrightarrow{f \otimes 1} c \otimes_A P \otimes_A P \to c \otimes_A P$$

where the last map is induced by the multiplication in $P \subseteq A \ltimes P$, which is trivial. So $f \cdot g = f + g$. This means that the isomorphism

$$\begin{aligned} B_q Hom_A(c, c \otimes_A P) =& Hom_A(c, c \otimes_A P)^{\times q} \cong Hom_A(c, (c \otimes_A P)^{\times q}) \\ \cong& Hom_A(c, c \otimes_A P^{\times q}) = Hom_A(c, c \otimes_A B_q P) \end{aligned}$$

induces a simplicial isomorphism. Hence

$$M = B\left(S^{(n)}\mathcal{M}_A(-, - \otimes_A P)\right) \cong S^{(n)}\mathcal{M}_A(-, - \otimes_A BP)$$

is a (simplicial) $\mathcal{P}_A$-bimodule, and the only difference between $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A(A \ltimes P)$ and $\mathbf{F}_0(\mathcal{P}_A, M)$ is that the first is built up of wedge summands, whereas the second is built up of direct sums.

Here stable homotopy enters. Recall that a space X is 0-*connected* (or just *connected*, since in our simplicial setting there is no danger of confusion beween notions like connected and path connected) if $\pi_0 X$ is a point, and if X is connected it is k-*connected* for a $k > 0$ if for all vertices $x \in X_0$ we have that $\pi_q(X, x) = 0$ for $0 < q \leq k$. A space is -1-connected by definition if it is nonempty. A map $X \to Y$ is k-*connected* if its homotopy fiber is $(k-1)$-connected. We use the same convention for simplicial rings and modules.

Note 3.4.1 If A is a ring and P is a simplicial A-bimodule, we let $A \ltimes P$ be the simplicial ring with q-vertices $A \ltimes P_q$ (the square zero extension). When we write $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A(A \ltimes P)$ in the statement below, we mean simply $\{[q] \mapsto \tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A(A \ltimes P_q)\}$ (or the associated diagonal) – the "degreewise K-theory". Taking K-theory degreewise in this sense is quite rarely the right thing to do, but in the case of radical extensions we will see in section III.1.4 that it agrees with the more common definitions the reader will find elsewhere, both in the literature and in section III.1. Likewise $\mathbf{F}_0(A, BP) = \{[q] \mapsto \mathbf{F}_0(A, B_q P_q) = \mathbf{F}_0(A, P_q^{\times q})\}$.

The difference between wedge and direct sum vanishes stably, which accounts for

Theorem 3.4.2 *Let A be a ring and P a m-connected simplicial A-bimodule, the inclusion $\bigvee \subseteq \bigoplus$ induces a $2m+2$-connected map*

$$\tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A(A \ltimes P) \to \mathbf{F}_0(A, BP) \cong B\mathbf{F}_0(A, P)$$

Proof: Corollary A.7.2.4 says that if X is n-connected and Y is m-connected, then the inclusion $X \vee Y \to X \times Y$ is $m+n$-connected, and so the same goes for finitely many factors. Now, finite sums of modules is the same as products of underlying sets, and infinite sums are filtered colimits of the finite sub-sums. Since the functors in question commute with filtered colimits, the result follows. ∎

3.4.3 Removing the bar

What is the rôle of the bar construction in theorem 3.4.2? Removing it on the K-theory side, that is in $\mathbf{K}_A(A \ltimes P)$, we are invited to look at

$$\{n \mapsto \coprod_{c \in obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A} Hom_A(c, c \otimes_A P)\} \tag{3.4.3}$$

We identify this as follows. Let $\mathcal{E}_A P$ be the exact category with objects pairs (c, f) with $c \in ob\mathcal{P}_A$ and $f \in Hom_A(c, c \otimes_A P)$, and morphisms $(c, f) \to (d, g)$ commutative diagrams of A-modules

$$\begin{array}{ccc} c & \xrightarrow{h} & d \\ {\scriptstyle f}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle g}\downarrow \\ c \otimes_A P & \xrightarrow{h \otimes 1} & d \otimes_A P \end{array}$$

We have a functor $\mathcal{E}_A P \to \mathcal{P}_A$ given by $(c, f) \mapsto c$, and a sequence in $\mathcal{E}_A P$ is exact if it is sent to an exact sequence in $\mathcal{P}_A$. As examples we have that $\mathcal{E}_A 0$ is isomorphic to $\mathcal{P}_A$, and $\mathcal{E}_A A$ is what is usually called the category of endomorphisms on $\mathcal{P}_A$. We see that the expression 3.4.3 is just the K-theory spectrum $\mathbf{K}(\mathcal{E}_A P) = \{x \mapsto obS^{(n)}\mathcal{E}_A P\}$.

Definition 3.4.4 Let A be a unital ring. Set C_A to be the functor from the category of A-bimodules to the category of spectra given by

$$\mathsf{C}_A(P) = \mathbf{K}(\mathcal{E}_A P)/\mathbf{K}(A) = \{n \mapsto \bigvee_{c \in S^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A} S^{(n)}\mathcal{M}_A(c, c \otimes_A P)\}$$

(the homomorphism groups $S^{(n)}\mathcal{M}_A(c, c \otimes_A P)$ are pointed in the zero map).

With this definition we can restate theorem 2.5.5 for the square zero case as

$$\mathsf{C}_A(BP) \simeq fib\{\mathbf{K}(A \ltimes P) \to \mathbf{K}(A)\}.$$

Note that, in the language of definition 2.5.4, yet another way of writing $\mathsf{C}_A P$ is as the spectrum $\{n \mapsto N_0^{cy} t\mathcal{D}_A^n(A \ltimes P)/N_0^{cy} t\mathcal{D}_A^n(A) = N_0^{cy} t\mathcal{D}_A^n(A \ltimes P)/obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A\}$.

We are free to introduce yet another spectrum direction in $\mathsf{C}_A P$ by observing that we have natural maps $S^1 \wedge \mathsf{C}_A P \to \mathsf{C}_A(BP)$ given by $S^1 \wedge \bigvee M \cong \bigvee (S^1 \wedge M) \to \bigvee (\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1] \otimes M) \cong \bigvee BM$. Here $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}$ is the left adjoint of the forgetful functor from abelian groups to pointed sets, $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X] = \mathbf{Z}[X]/\mathbf{Z}[*]$, see section A.2.1, which has the property that $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X \wedge Y] \cong \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X] \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[Y]$, and we get a canonical isomorphisms between the classifying space BM of an abelian group M and $M \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1]$, see A.2.1.2.

Aside 3.4.5 *There are* **two** *natural maps* $\mathbf{K}(A) \to \mathbf{K}(\mathcal{E}_A A)$*, given by sending* $c \in obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A$ *to either* $(c, 0)$ *or* $(c, 1)$ *in* $obS^{(n)}\mathcal{E}_A A$*. The first is used when forming* $\mathsf{C}_A P$*, and the latter gives rise to a map*

$$\mathbf{K}(A) \to \mathsf{C}_A A$$

Composing this with $\mathsf{C}_A A \to \Omega \mathsf{C}_A(BA) = \Omega \tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A(A[t]/t^2) \to \Omega \mathbf{K}(A[t]/t^2)/\mathbf{K}(A)$*, we get a weak map*

$$\mathbf{K}(A) \to \Omega \mathbf{K}(A[t]/t^2)/\mathbf{K}(A) \xleftarrow{\sim} hofib\{\mathbf{K}(A[t]/t^2) \to \mathbf{K}(A)\}$$

(cf. [136] or [247]) where hofib is (a functorial choice representing) the homotopy fiber.

The considerations above are related to the results of Grayson in [96]. Let A *be commutative and* $R = S^{-1}A[t]$ *where* $S = 1 + tA[t]$*. The theorem above says that* $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A(A[t]/t^2) = \mathbf{K}(\mathcal{E}_A(BA))/\mathbf{K}(A)$ *is equivalent to* $\mathbf{K}(A[t]/t^2)/\mathbf{K}(A)$*, whereas Grayson's theorem tells us that the "one-simplices" of this, i.e.,* $\mathsf{C}_A A = \mathbf{K}(\mathcal{E}_A A)/\mathbf{K}(A)$ *is equivalent to the loop of* $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}_A(R) \simeq \mathbf{K}(R)/\mathbf{K}(A)$*.*

3.4.6 More general bimodules

Before we go on to reformulate theorem 3.4.2 in the more fashionable form "stable K-theory is homology" we will allow our K-functor more general bimodules so that we have symmetry in the input.

Definition 3.4.7 Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an exact category and M a pointed $\mathbf{Z}\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule. Then we define the spectrum

$$\mathsf{C}_{\mathfrak{C}}(M) = \{n \mapsto \bigvee_{c \in obS^{(n)}\mathfrak{C}} S^{(n)}M(c, c)\}.$$

The structure maps

$$S^1 \wedge \bigvee_{c \in ob\mathfrak{C}} M(c, c) \to \bigvee_{c \in obS\mathfrak{C}} SM(c, c)$$

are well defined, because $\bigvee_{c \in obS_0\mathfrak{C}} S_0 M(c, c) = M(0, 0) = 0$ since we have demanded that M is pointed

The notation should not cause confusion, although $\mathsf{C}_A P = \mathsf{C}_{\mathcal{P}_A} Hom_A(-, c \otimes_A P)$, since the ring A is not an exact category (except when $A = 0$, and then it doesn't matter).

If M is bilinear, this is the K-theory spectrum of the following category, which we will call $\mathcal{E}_{\mathfrak{C}}(M)$. The objects are pairs (c, f) with $c \in ob\mathfrak{C}$ and $f \in M(c, c)$ and a morphism from (c, m) to (c', m') is an $f \in \mathfrak{C}(c, c')$ such that $M(f, 1)m' = M(1, f)m$. A sequence $(c', m') \to (c, m) \to (c'', m'')$ is exact if the underlying sequence $c' \to c \to c''$ is exact.

3.5 Stable K-theory

Recall from 3.1 that the functor $P \mapsto \tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A \ltimes P)$ is not additive when considered as a functor from A-bimodules. If F is a pointed (simplicial) functor from A-bimodules to spectra, we define it's *first differential*, $D_1 F$, by

$$D_1 F(P) = \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k F(B^k P),$$

where F applied in each degree to the k-fold bar construction. We have a transformation $F \to D_1 F$. If F already were additive, then $F \to D_1 F$ would be a weak equivalence. This means that $D_1 F$ is initial (in the homotopy category) among additive functors under F, and is a left adjoint (in the homotopy categories) to the inclusion of the additive functors into all functors from A-bimodules to spectra.

Definition 3.5.1 Let A be a simplicial ring and P an A-bimodule. Then

$$\mathbf{K}^S(A, P) = D_1 \mathsf{C}_A(P) = \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k \mathsf{C}_A(B^k P)$$

If $\mathfrak{C}$ is an exact category and M a $\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule, then

$$\mathbf{K}^S(\mathfrak{C}, M) = D_1 \mathsf{C}_{\mathfrak{C}}(M) = \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k \mathsf{C}_{\mathfrak{C}}(M \otimes S^k)\}$$

where for a finite pointed set X, $M \otimes X$ is the bimodule sending c, d to $M(c, d) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}} X$.

Again, the isomorphism $\mathbf{K}^S(A, P) \cong \mathbf{K}^S(\mathcal{P}_A, Hom_A(-, - \otimes_A P))$ should cause no confusion. If M is a pointed simplicial $\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule, we apply $\mathsf{C}_{\mathfrak{C}}$ degreewise.

We note that there is a chain of equivalences

$$\begin{array}{c}
\mathbf{K}^S(A, P) = D_1 \Omega \mathsf{C}_A(BP) \\
\simeq \big\downarrow \\
D_1 \Omega \left(\mathbf{K}(\mathcal{P}_{A \ltimes P}, i) / \mathbf{K}(A) \right) \\
\big\uparrow \simeq \\
D_1 \Omega \left(\mathbf{K}(A \ltimes P) / \mathbf{K}(A) \right) \\
\simeq \big\downarrow \\
D_1 \Omega \mathrm{hofib}\{\mathbf{K}(A \ltimes P) \to \mathbf{K}(A)\} = \mathrm{holim}_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k \mathrm{hofib}\{\mathbf{K}(A \ltimes B^{k-1} P) \to \mathbf{K}(A)\}
\end{array}$$

and the target spectrum is the (spectrum version of the) usual definition of *stable K-theory*, c.f. [136] and [247].

In the rational case Goodwillie proved in [88] that stable K-theory is equivalent to Hochschild homology (see later). In general this is not true, and we now turn to the necessary modification.

Theorem 3.5.2 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an exact category and M an m-connected pointed simplicial $\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule. The inclusion $\bigvee \subseteq \bigoplus$ induces a $2m$-connected map*

$$\mathsf{C}_{\mathfrak{C}}M \to \mathbf{F}_0(\mathfrak{C}, M)$$

and

$$D_1\mathsf{C}_{\mathfrak{C}} \xrightarrow{\simeq} D_1\mathbf{F}_0(\mathfrak{C}, -) \xleftarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{F}_0(\mathfrak{C}, -)$$

are equivalences. Hence

$$\mathbf{K}^S(\mathfrak{C}, M) \simeq \mathbf{F}_0(\mathfrak{C}, M) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{F}(\mathfrak{C}, M)$$

In particular, for A a ring and P an A-bimodule, the map $\mathsf{C}_AP \to \mathbf{F}_0(A, P)$ gives rise to natural equivalences

$$\mathbf{K}^S(A, P) = D_1\mathsf{C}_A \xrightarrow{\simeq} D_1\mathbf{F}_0(A, -) \xleftarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{F}_0(A, -) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{F}(A, P)$$

Proof: The equivalence

$$D_1\mathbf{F}_0(\mathfrak{C}, -) \xleftarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{F}_0(\mathfrak{C}, -)$$

follows since by corollary 3.3.2 the inclusion by the degeneracies $\mathbf{F}_0(\mathfrak{C}, -) \to \mathbf{F}(\mathfrak{C}, -)$ is an equivalence, and the fact that $\mathbf{F}(\mathfrak{C}, -)$ is additive, and so unaffected by the differential. The rest of the argument follows as before. ∎

Adding up the results, we get the announced theorem:

Corollary 3.5.3 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category, and M a bilinear $\mathfrak{C}$ bimodule. Then we have natural isomorphisms*

$$\pi_*\mathbf{K}^S(\mathfrak{C}, M) \cong H_*(\mathfrak{C}, M)$$

and in particular

$$\pi_*\mathbf{K}^S(A, P) \cong H_*(\mathcal{P}_A, \mathcal{M}_A(-, - \otimes_A P))$$

Proof: The calculations of homotopy groups follows from the fact that $\mathbf{F}(\mathfrak{C}, M)$ is an Ω-spectrum (and so $\pi_*\mathbf{F}(\mathfrak{C}, M) \cong \pi_*F(\mathfrak{C}, M) = H_*(\mathfrak{C}, M)$). This follows from the equivalence

$$F(\mathfrak{C}, M) \sim THH(\mathfrak{C}, M)$$

and results on topological Hochschild homology in chapter IV. However, for the readers who do not plan to cover this material, we provide a proof showing that $\mathbf{F}$ is an Ω spectrum directly without use of stabilizations at the end of this section, see proposition 3.6.5.

∎

3.6 A direct proof of "F is an Ω-spectrum"

Much of what is to follow makes sense in an $\mathcal{A}b$-category setting. For convenience, we work in the setting of additive categories, and we choose zero objects which will always be denoted 0.

Definition 3.6.1 Let $G\colon \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ be an additive functor. We let the *twisted product category* $\mathcal{A} \times_G \mathcal{B}$ be the linear category with objects $\mathrm{ob}(\mathcal{A}) \times \mathrm{ob}(\mathcal{B})$ and

$$\mathcal{A} \times_G \mathcal{B}((a,b),(a',b')) = \mathcal{A}(a,a') \oplus \mathcal{B}(b,b') \oplus \mathcal{B}(G(a),b')$$

with composition given by

$$(f,g,h) \circ (f',g',h') = (f \circ f', g \circ g', h \circ G(f') + g \circ h').$$

If M is an $\mathcal{A}$-bimodule and N is a $\mathcal{B}$-bimodule, with an $\mathcal{A}$-bimodule map $G^*\colon M \to G^*N$ we define the $\mathcal{A} \times_G \mathcal{B}$-bimodule $M \times_G N$ by

$$M \times_G N((a,b),(a',b')) = M(a,a') \oplus N(b,b') \oplus N(G(a),b')$$

with bimodule action defined by

$$\begin{aligned}(M \times_G N)&((f,g,h),(f',g',h'))(m,n,n_G)\\ &= (M(f,f')m, N(g,g'), N(Gf,h')G^*m + N(h,g')n + N(Gf,g')n_G).\end{aligned}$$

From now on, we assume for convenience that M and N are pointed (i.e., takes zero in either coordinate to zero). Note the following structure.

1. An inclusion
$$\mathcal{A} \xrightarrow{in_{\mathcal{A}}} \mathcal{A} \times_G \mathcal{B}$$
sending $f\colon a \to a'$ $ob\mathcal{A}$ to $(f,0,0)\colon (a,0) \to (a',0)$,

2. an $\mathcal{A}$-bimodule map $M \to in_{\mathcal{A}}^*(M \times_G N)$

3. a projection
$$\mathcal{A} \times_G \mathcal{B} \xrightarrow{pr_{\mathcal{A}}} \mathcal{A}$$

4. and an $\mathcal{A} \times_G \mathcal{B}$-bimodule map $M \times_G N \to pr_{\mathcal{A}}^* M$.

Likewise for $\mathcal{B}$. The composite

$$F(\mathcal{A},M) \oplus F(\mathcal{B},N) \xrightarrow{in_{\mathcal{A}}+in_{\mathcal{B}}} F(\mathcal{A} \times_G \mathcal{B}, M \times_G N) \xrightarrow{(pr_{\mathcal{A}} \oplus pr_{\mathcal{B}})\Delta} F(\mathcal{A},M) \oplus F(\mathcal{B},N)$$

is the identity.

Lemma 3.6.2 (F is "additive") *With the notation as above*

$$F(\mathcal{A},M)\oplus F(\mathcal{B},N)\xrightarrow{in_{\mathcal{A}}+in_{\mathcal{B}}}F(\mathcal{A}\times_G\mathcal{B},M\times_G N)$$

is an equivalence.

Proof: We will show that the "other" composite

$$F(\mathcal{A}\times_G\mathcal{B},M\times_G N)\xrightarrow{(pr_{\mathcal{A}}\oplus pr_{\mathcal{B}})\Delta}F(\mathcal{A},M)\oplus F(\mathcal{B},N)\xrightarrow{in_{\mathcal{A}}+in_{\mathcal{B}}}F(\mathcal{A}\times_G\mathcal{B},M\times_G N)$$

is homotopic to the identity. Let $\mathbf{x}=(x_0;x_1,\dots,x_q)\in F_q(\mathcal{A}\times_G\mathcal{B},M\times_G N)$, where

$$x_0=(m,n,n_G)\in M\times_G N((a_0,b_0),(a_q,b_q)),\ \text{and}$$

$$x_i=(f_i,g_i,h_i)\in\mathcal{A}\times_G\mathcal{B}((a_i,b_i),(a_{i-1},b_{i-1})),\ \text{for } i>0.$$

Then x is sent to

$$J(x)=((m,0,0);in_{\mathcal{A}}pr_{\mathcal{A}}x_1,\dots in_{\mathcal{A}}pr_{\mathcal{A}}x_q)+((0,n,0);in_{\mathcal{B}}pr_{\mathcal{B}}x_1,\dots in_{\mathcal{B}}pr_{\mathcal{B}}x_q)$$

We define a homotopy between the identity and J as follows. Let $x_i^1=(f_i,0,0)\in(\mathcal{A}\times_G\mathcal{B})((a_i,b_i),(a_{i-1},0))$ and $x_i^2=(0,g_i,0)\in(\mathcal{A}\times_G\mathcal{B})((0,b_i),(a_{i-1},b_{i-1}))$. If $\phi_i\in\Delta([q],[1])$ is the map with inverse image of 0 of cardinality i, we define

$$H\colon F(\mathcal{A}\times_G\mathcal{B},M\times_G N)\times\Delta\to F(\mathcal{A}\times_G\mathcal{B},M\times_G N)$$

by the formula

$$\begin{aligned}H(\mathbf{x},\phi_i)=&((m,0,0);in_{\mathcal{A}}pr_{\mathcal{A}}x_1,\dots in_{\mathcal{A}}pr_{\mathcal{A}}x_{i-1},x_i^1,x_{i+1},\dots x_q)\\&-((0,n,n_G);x_1,\dots,x_{i-1},x_i^2,in_{\mathcal{B}}pr_{\mathcal{B}}x_{i+1},\dots in_{\mathcal{B}}pr_{\mathcal{B}}x_q)\\&+((0,n,0);in_{\mathcal{B}}pr_{\mathcal{B}}x_1,\dots in_{\mathcal{B}}pr_{\mathcal{B}}x_q)\\&+((0,n,n_G);x_1,\dots,x_q)\end{aligned}$$

(note that in the negative summand, it is implicit that n_G is taken away when $i=0$).

∎

Lemma 3.6.3 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category and M a bilinear bimodule. Then the natural map*

$$S_q\mathfrak{C}\xrightarrow{c\mapsto(c_{0,1},\dots,c_{q-1,q})}\mathfrak{C}^{\times q}$$

induces an equivalence

$$F(S_q\mathfrak{C},S_qM)\xrightarrow{\sim}F(\mathfrak{C}^{\times q},M^{\times q})\xrightarrow{\sim}F(\mathfrak{C},M)^{\times q}$$

Proof: Recall the equivalence $\psi_q \colon T_q\mathfrak{C} \to S_q\mathfrak{C}$ of lemma 2.2.5, and note that if $G_q \colon \mathfrak{C} \to T_q\mathfrak{C}$ is defined by $c \mapsto G_q(c) = (0, \dots, 0, c)$, then we have an isomorphism $T_{q+1}\mathfrak{C} \cong \mathfrak{C} \times_{G_q} T_q\mathfrak{C}$. Furthermore, if M is a linear bimodule, then we define $T_qM = \psi_q^* S_qM$, and we have that $T_{q+1}M \cong M \times_G T_qM$.

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} F(S_q\mathfrak{C}, S_qM) &\xleftarrow{\sim} F(T_q\mathfrak{C}, T_qM) \cong F(\mathfrak{C} \times_G T_{q-1}\mathfrak{C}, M \times_G T_{q-1}M) \\ &\xleftarrow{\sim} F(\mathfrak{C}, M) \oplus F(T_{q-1}\mathfrak{C}, T_{q-1}M) \end{aligned}$$

and by induction we get that

$$F(S_q\mathfrak{C}, S_qM) \xleftarrow{\sim} F(\mathfrak{C}, M)^{\times q}$$

and this map is a right inverse to the map in the statement. ∎

Definition 3.6.4 (c.f A.1.7) For any simplicial category $\mathcal{D}$ we may define the path category $P\mathcal{D}$ by setting $P_q\mathcal{D} = \mathcal{D}_{q+1}$ and letting the face and degeneracy functors be given by raising all indices by one. The unused d_0 defines a functor $P\mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}$, and we have a map $\mathcal{D}_1 = P_0\mathcal{D} \to P\mathcal{D}$ given by the degeneracies.

Then $\mathcal{D}_0 \to P\mathcal{D}$ (given by degeneracies in $\mathcal{D}$) defines a simplicial homotopy equivalence, see A.1.7.2, with inverse given by $\prod_{1 \le i \le q+1} d_i \colon P_q\mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}_0$.

Proposition 3.6.5 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category, and M a bilinear bimodule, then*

$$F(\mathfrak{C}, M) \to \Omega F(S\mathfrak{C}, SM)$$

is an equivalences.

Proof: Consider

$$F(\mathfrak{C}, M) \to F(PS\mathfrak{C}, PSM) \to F(S\mathfrak{C}, SM) \tag{3.6.6}$$

For every q we have equivalences

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} F(\mathfrak{C}, M) & \longrightarrow & F(P_qS\mathfrak{C}, P_qSM) & \longrightarrow & F(S_q\mathfrak{C}, S_qM) \\ \| & & \wr\downarrow & & \wr\downarrow \\ F(\mathfrak{C}, M) & \longrightarrow & F(\mathfrak{C}, M)^{\times q+1} & \longrightarrow & F(\mathfrak{C}, M)^{\times q} \end{array}$$

where the lower sequence is the trivial split fibration. As all terms are bisimplicial abelian groups the sequence 3.6.6 must be a fiber sequence (see A.5.0.4) where the total space is contractible. ∎

Chapter II

Γ-spaces and S-algebras

In this chapter we will introduce the so-called Γ-spaces. The reader can think of these as (very slight) generalizations of (simplicial) abelian groups. The surprising fact is that this minor generalization is big enough to encompass a wide and exotic variety of new examples.

The use of Γ-spaces also fixes another disparity. Quillen defined algebraic K-theory to be a functor from things with abelian group structure (such as rings or exact categories) to abelian groups. We have taken the view that K-theory takes values in spectra, and although spectra are almost as good as abelian groups, this is somehow unsatisfactory. The introduction of Γ-spaces evens this out, in that K-theory now takes things with a Γ-space structure (such as **S**-algebras, or the Γ-space analog of exact categories) to Γ-spaces.

Furthermore, this generalization enables us to include new fields of study, such as the K-theory of spaces, into serious consideration. It is also an aid – almost a prerequisite – when trying to understand the theories to be introduced in later chapters.

To be quite honest, Γ-spaces should not be thought of as a generalization of simplicial abelian groups, but rather of simplicial abelian (symmetric) monoids, since there need not be anything resembling inverses in the setting we use (as opposed to Segal's original approach). On the other hand, it is very easy to "group complete": it is a stabilization process.

0.1 An aside on the history of the smash product

The reader should be aware that Γ-spaces give us just one of several solutions to an old and important problem in stable homotopy theory. The smash product played a central rôle in stable homotopy theory for decades, but until the 1990's one only knew the construction in the "stable homotopy category", and did not know how to realize the smash products in any category of spectra without inverting the stable equivalences.

Several solutions to this problem came more or less at the same time. The two that attracted most attention were Elmendorf, Kriz, Mandell and May's [70] (1997) and Hovey, Shipley and Smith's [120] (2000). The Γ-space approach appeared in 1999 [158] in a paper by Lydakis, and has the advantage of being by far the simplest, but the disadvantage of only giving connective spectra. The solution is so simple, and the techniques were well known in the 1970's, and the authors have come to understand that the construction of the smash product in Γ-spaces was known, but dismissed as "much too simple" to have the right homotopy properties, see also 1.2.8 below.

Since then many variants have been introduced and there has been some reconciliation between the different setups. In retrospect, it turns out that Bökstedt in his investigations [22] in the 1980's on topological Hochschild homology had struck upon the smash product for simplicial functors [157] in the sense that he gave the correct definition for what it means for a simplicial functor to be an algebra over the sphere spectrum. Bökstedt called what was to become **S**-algebras in simplicial functors (with some connectivity hypotheses) "FSP", short for "functors with smash products".

The Γ-spaces have one serious shortcoming, and that is that they do not model strictly commutative ring spectra in the same manner as its competitors (see Lawson [145]). Although this mars the otherwise beautiful structure, it will not affect anything of what we will be doing, and we use Γ-spaces because of their superior concreteness and simplicity.

1 Algebraic structure

1.1 Γ-objects

A Γ-object is a functor from the category of finite sets. We need to be quite precise about this, and the details follow.

1.1.1 The Category Γ^o

Roughly, Γ^o is the category of pointed finite sets – a fundamental building block for much of mathematics. To be more precise, we choose a skeleton, and let Γ^o be the category with one object $k_+ = \{0, 1, \dots, k\}$ for every natural number k, and with morphism sets $\Gamma^o(m_+, n_+)$ the set of functions $f\colon \{0, 1, \dots, m\} \to \{0, 1, \dots, n\}$ such that $f(0) = 0$. In [216] Segal considered, the opposite category and called it Γ, and this accounts for the awkward situation where we call the most fundamental object in mathematics the opposite of something. Some people object to this so strongly that they write Γ when Segal writes Γ^o. We follow Segal's convention.

1.1.2 Motivation

A *symmetric monoid* is a set M together with a multiplication and a unit element so that any two maps $M^{\times j} \to M$ obtained by composing maps in the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
* \arrow[r, "\text{unit}"] & M \arrow[r, shift left=3, "m\mapsto(1,m)"] \arrow[r, shift right=3, "m\mapsto(m,1)"'] & M\times M \arrow[l, "\text{multiplication}"'] \arrow[loop above, "\text{twist}"] & M\times M\times M \arrow[l, shift right=3, "(m_1m_2,m_3)\leftarrow\!\shortmid(m_1,m_2,m_3)"'] \arrow[l, shift left=3, "(m_1,m_2m_3)\leftarrow\!\shortmid(m_1,m_2,m_3)"]
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.1.3}$$

are equal. Thinking of multiplication as "two things coming together" as in the map $2_+ \to 1_+$ given by

$$\begin{tikzcd}[row sep=large]
2_+ = \{ & 0 \arrow[d, mapsto] & 1 \arrow[d, mapsto] & 2\} \arrow[dl, mapsto] \\
1_+ = \{ & 0 & 1 & \}
\end{tikzcd}$$

we see that the diagram 1.1.3 is mirrored by the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
0_+ \arrow[r] & 1_+ \arrow[r, shift left=1.5] \arrow[r, shift right=1.5] & 2_+ \arrow[l] \arrow[loop above] & 3_+ \arrow[l, shift left] \arrow[l, shift right]
\end{tikzcd}$$

in Γ^o where the two arrows $1_+ \to 2_+$ are given by

$$\begin{tikzcd}[row sep=large]
\{0 \arrow[d, mapsto] & 1\} \arrow[d, mapsto] & & \text{and} & \{0 \arrow[d, mapsto] & 1\} \arrow[dr, mapsto] & \\
\{0 & 1 & 2\} & & \{0 & 1 & 2\}
\end{tikzcd}$$

and the maps $3_+ \to 2_+$ are

$$\begin{tikzcd}[row sep=large]
\{0 \arrow[d, mapsto] & 1 \arrow[d, mapsto] & 2 \arrow[dl, mapsto] & 3\} \arrow[dl, mapsto] & \text{and} & \{0 \arrow[d, mapsto] & 1 \arrow[d, mapsto] & 2 \arrow[d, mapsto] & 3\} \arrow[dl, mapsto] \\
\{0 & 1 & 2\} & & & \{0 & 1 & 2\} &
\end{tikzcd}$$

(there are more maps in Γ^o, but these suffice for the moment). So we could say that a symmetric monoid is a functor from this part of Γ^o to pointed sets sending 0_+ to the one-point set and sending wedge sum to product (e.g., $3_+ = 2_+ \vee 1_+$ must be sent to the product of the values at 2_+ and 1_+, i.e., the triple product of the value at 1_+).

This doesn't seem very helpful until one notices that this extends to all of Γ^o, and the requirement of sending 1_+ to the one-point set and wedge sum to product fixes the behavior in the sense that there is a one-to-one correspondence between such functors from Γ^o to sets and symmetric monoids, see example 1.2.1.1 below for more details.

The reason for introducing this new perspective is that we can model multiplicative structures functorially, and relaxing the requirement that the functor sends wedge to product is just the trick needed to study more general multiplicative structures. For instance, one could imagine situations where the multiplication is not naturally defined on $M \times M$, but on some bigger space like $M \times M \times X$, giving an entire family of multiplications varying over the space X. This is exactly what we need when we are going to study objects that are, say, commutative only up to homotopy.

1.1.4 Γ-objects

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a pointed category (i.e., it has an object which is both initial and final) one may consider pointed functors $\Gamma^o \to \mathcal{C}$ (often called a Γ-*object* in $\mathcal{C}$) and natural transformations between such functors. This defines a category we call $\Gamma\mathcal{C}$. Most notably we have the category

$$\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$$

of Γ-spaces, that is pointed functors from Γ^o to pointed simplicial sets, or equivalently, of simplicial Γ-objects in the category of pointed sets. If $\mathcal{A} = s\mathcal{A}b$ is the category of simplicial abelian groups, we may define

$$\Gamma\mathcal{A},$$

the category of simplicial Γ-objects in abelian groups. Likewise for other module categories. Another example is the category of Γ-categories, i.e., pointed functors from Γ^o to categories. These must not be confused with the notion of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories (see section 1.6).

1.2 The category $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ of Γ-spaces

We start with some examples of Γ-spaces.

Example 1.2.1 1. Let M be an abelian group. If we consider M as a mere pointed set, we can not reconstruct the abelian group structure. However, if we consider M as a Γ-pointed set, HM, as follows, there is no loss of structure. Send k_+ to the *set*

$$HM(k_+) = M \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[k_+] \cong M^{\times k},$$

where $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[k_+]$ is the free abelian group on the pointed set k_+ (and so is the sum of k copies of $\mathbf{Z}$). A function $f \in \Gamma^o(k_+, n_+)$ gives rise to the homomorphism $f_*\colon HM(k_+) \to HM(n_+)$ sending the k-tuple $(m_1, \ldots, m_k) \in M^{\times k}$ to the n-tuple

$$\left((\sum_{j\in f^{-1}(1)} m_j), \ldots, (\sum_{j\in f^{-1}(n)} m_j) \right)$$

(where $m_0 = 0$).

Alternative description: $HM(X) = \mathcal{E}ns_*(X, M)$, and if $f\colon X \to Y \in \Gamma^o$, then $f_*\colon HM(X) \to HM(Y)$ sends ϕ to $y \mapsto f_*\phi(y) = \sum_{x\in f^{-1}(y)} \phi(x)$.

In effect, this defines a functor

$$\bar{H}\colon s\mathcal{A}b = \mathcal{A} \to \Gamma\mathcal{A},$$

and we follow by the forgetful functor $U\colon \Gamma\mathcal{A} \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$, so that

$$H = U\bar{H}.$$

Both HM and $\bar{H}M$ will be referred to as the *Eilenberg–Mac Lane* objects associated with M. The reason is that, through the functor from Γ-spaces to spectra defined in 2.1.12, these Γ-objects naturally give rise to the so-called Eilenberg-Mac Lane spectra A.2.2.

2. The inclusion $\Gamma^o \subset \mathcal{E}ns_* \subset \mathcal{S}_*$ is called in varying sources, $\mathbf{S}$, Id, "the sphere spectrum" etc. We will call it $\mathbf{S}$.

   Curiously, the Barratt–Priddy–Quillen theorem (see e.g., [216] or [9]) states that $\mathbf{S}$ is "stably equivalent" (defined in 2.1.6) to the K-theory of the category Γ^o (in the interpretation of II.3).

3. If X is a pointed simplicial set and M is a Γ-space, then $M \wedge X$ is the Γ-space sending $Y \in ob\Gamma^o$ to $M(Y) \wedge X$. Dually, we let $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X, M)$ be the Γ-space

   $$Y \mapsto \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X, M(Y)) = \{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{S}_*(X \wedge \Delta[q]_+, M(Y))\}$$

   (see A.1.3 for facts on function spaces). Note that $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(M \wedge X, N)$ is naturally isomorphic to $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(M, \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X, N))$. For any simplicial set X, we let $\mathbf{S}[X] = \mathbf{S} \wedge X_+$, and we see that this is a left adjoint to the functor $R\colon \Gamma\mathcal{S}_* \to \mathcal{S}_*$ evaluating at 1_+.

4. For $X \in ob\Gamma^o$, let $\Gamma^X \in ob\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ be given by

   $$\Gamma^X(Y) = \Gamma^o(X, Y)$$

   Note that $\mathbf{S} = \Gamma^{1_+}$.

The notion of Γ-spaces we are working with is slightly more general than Segal's, [216]. It is usual to call Segal's Γ-spaces *special*:

Definition 1.2.2 A Γ-space M is said to be *special* if the canonical maps

$$M(k_+) \to \prod_k M(1_+)$$

are weak equivalences for all $k_+ \in ob\Gamma$. This induces an abelian monoid structure on $\pi_0 M(1_+)$ via

$$\pi_0 M(1_+) \times \pi_0 M(1_+) \xleftarrow{\cong} \pi_0 M(2_+) \longrightarrow \pi_0 M(1_+),$$

induced by the function $\phi\colon 2_+ \to 1_+$ with $\phi^{-1}(1) = \{1, 2\}$, and we say that M is *very special* if this is an abelian group structure.

The difference between Γ-spaces and very special Γ-spaces is not really important. Any Γ-space M gives rise to a very special Γ-space, say QM, in one of many functorial ways, such that there is a "stable equivalence" $M \xrightarrow{\sim} QM$ (see 2.1.6). However, the larger category of all Γ-spaces is nicer for formal reasons, and the very special Γ-spaces are just nice representatives in each stable homotopy class.

1.2.3 The smash product

There is a close connection between Γ-spaces and spectra (there is a functor defined in 2.1.12 that induces an equivalence on homotopy categories), and so the question of what the smash product of two Γ-spaces should be could be expected to be a complicated issue. M. Lydakis [158][157] realized that this was not the case: the simplest candidate works just beautifully.

If we have two Γ-spaces M and N, we may consider the "external smash", i.e., the functor $\Gamma^o \times \Gamma^o \to \mathcal{S}_*$ which sends (X,Y) to $M(X) \wedge N(Y)$. The category Γ^o has its own smash product, and we want some "universal filler" in

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\Gamma^o \times \Gamma^o \arrow[r, "(X,Y)\mapsto M(X)\wedge N(Y)"] \arrow[d, "\wedge"'] & \mathcal{S}_* \\
\Gamma^o &
\end{tikzcd}$$

The solutions to these kinds of questions are called "left Kan extensions" [161], and in our case it takes the following form:

Let $Z \in \Gamma^o$ and let $\wedge/Z$ be the over category (c.f. A.1.4.3), i.e., the category whose objects are tuples (X,Y,v) where $(X,Y) \in \Gamma^o \times \Gamma^o$ and $v\colon X\wedge Y \to Z \in \Gamma^o$, and where a morphism $(X,Y,v) \to (X',Y',v')$ is a pair of functions $f\colon X \to X'$ and $g\colon Y \to Y'$ in Γ^o such that $v = v' \circ (f \wedge g)$.

Then the smash product $(M\wedge N)(Z)$ is defined as the colimit of the composite

$$\wedge/Z \xrightarrow{(X,Y,v)\mapsto(X,Y)} \Gamma^o \times \Gamma^o \xrightarrow{(X,Y)\mapsto M(X)\wedge N(Y)} \mathcal{S}_*,$$

that is

$$(M\wedge N)(Z) = \varinjlim_{(X,Y,v)\in\wedge/Z} M(X)\wedge N(Y)$$

In the language of coends, this becomes particularly perceptive:

$$(M\wedge N)(Z) = \int^{(X,Y)} (M(X)\wedge N(Y)) \wedge \Gamma^o(X\wedge Y, Z)$$

the "weighted average of all the handicrafted smash products $M(X)\wedge N(Y)$"; the weight being the number of functions $X\wedge Y \to Z$.

Remark 1.2.4 *Note that a map from a smash product $M\wedge M' \to N \in \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ is uniquely described by giving a map $M(X)\wedge M'(Y) \to N(X\wedge Y)$ which is natural in $X, Y \in ob\Gamma^o$.*

1.2.5 The closed structure

Theorem 1.2.6 below states that the smash product endows the category of Γ-spaces with a structure of a *closed* category (which is short for closed symmetric monoidal category). For a thorough discussion see appendix A.9.1.1, but for now recall that *symmetric monoidal* means that the functor $\wedge\colon \Gamma\mathcal{S}_* \times \Gamma\mathcal{S}_* \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ is associative, symmetric and unital ($\mathbf{S}$ is the unit) up to coherent isomorphisms, and that it is closed means that in addition there is an "internal morphism object" with reasonable behavior.

The Γ-space of morphisms from M to N is defined by setting

$$\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,N) = \{k_+, [q] \mapsto \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,N)(k_+)_q = \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(M\wedge\Delta[q]_+, N(k_+\wedge -))\}.$$

Theorem 1.2.6 *(Lydakis) With these definitions of smash and morphism object* $(\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*, \wedge, \mathbf{S})$ *becomes a closed category.*

Sketch proof: (Sketch: see [158] for further details) First one uses the definitions to show that there is a natural isomorphism $\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M\wedge N, P) \cong \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M, \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(N,P))$. Recall from 1.2.14 that $\Gamma^X(Y) = \Gamma^o(X,Y)$ and note that $\mathbf{S} = \Gamma^{1_+}$, $\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(\Gamma^X, M) \cong M(X\wedge -)$ and $\Gamma^X\wedge\Gamma^Y \cong \Gamma^{X\wedge Y}$. We get that $M\wedge\mathbf{S} = M\wedge\Gamma^{1_+} \cong M$ since $\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M\wedge\mathbf{S}, N) \cong \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M, \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(\mathbf{S}, N)) \cong \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,N)$ for any N. The symmetry $M\wedge N \cong N\wedge M$ follows from the construction of the smash product, and associativity follows by comparing with

$$M\wedge N\wedge P = \{V \mapsto \varinjlim_{X\wedge Y\wedge Z\to V} M(X)\wedge N(Y)\wedge P(Z)\}$$

That all diagrams that must commute actually do so follows from the crucial observation 1.2.7 below (with the obvious definition of the multiple smash product). ☺

Lemma 1.2.7 *Any natural automorphism ϕ of expressions of the form*

$$M_1\wedge M_2\wedge \ldots \wedge M_n$$

must be the identity (i.e., $Aut(\bigwedge^n\colon \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*{}^{\times n} \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*)$ is the trivial group).

Proof: The analogous statement is true in Γ^o, since any element in $X_1\wedge X_2\wedge\ldots\wedge X_n$ is in the image of a map from $1_+\wedge 1_+\wedge\ldots\wedge 1_+$, and so any natural automorphism must fix this element.

Fixing a dimension, we may assume that the M_i are discrete, and we must show that $\phi(z) = z$ for any $z \in \bigwedge M_i(Z)$. By construction, z is an equivalence class represented, say, by an element $(x_1, \ldots, x_m) \in \bigwedge M_i(X_i)$ in the $f\colon \bigwedge X_i \to Z$ summand of the colimit. Represent each $x_i \in M_i(X_i)$ by a map $f_i\colon \Gamma^{X_i} \to M_i$ (so that $f_i(X_i = X_i) = x_i$). Then z is the image of $\wedge id_{X_i}$ in the f-summand of the composite

$$(\bigwedge \Gamma^{X_i})(Z) \xrightarrow{\wedge f_i} (\bigwedge M_i)(Z)$$

Hence it is enough to prove the lemma for $M_i = \Gamma^{X_i}$ for varying X_i. But $\bigwedge \Gamma^{X_i} \cong \Gamma^{\bigwedge X_i}$ and

$$\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(\Gamma^{\bigwedge X_i}, \Gamma^{\bigwedge X_i}) \cong \Gamma^o(\bigwedge X_i, \bigwedge X_i),$$

and we are done. ∎

The crucial word in lemma 1.2.7 is "natural". There is just one automorphism of the **functor** $\bigwedge^n\colon \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*{}^{\times n} \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ whereas there are, of course, nontrivial actions on individual expressions $M_1\wedge\ldots\wedge M_n$. One should note that the functor in **one** variable $M \mapsto M\wedge\ldots\wedge M$ has full Σ_n-symmetry.

1.2.8 Day's product

Theorem 1.2.6 also follows from a much more general theorem of Day [50], not relying on the special situation in lemma 1.2.7.

In hindsight it may appear as a mystery that the smash product took so long to appear on the stage, given that the problem was well publicized and the technical construction had been known since 1970. Rainer Vogt had considered this briefly, and commented in an email in 2009: "I did not know of Day's product but discovered it myself (later than Day in the 80's). Then Roland [Schwänzl] and I thought a little about it. Since we considered special Γ-spaces only and the product did not preserve those we lost interest, in particular after we realised that we would get an associative and commutative smash product for connective spectra which we did not believe exists. When many years later Lydakis exploited this construction we could have kicked ourselves."

1.3 Variants

The proof that $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ is a closed category works if $\mathcal{S}_*$ is exchanged for other suitable closed categories with colimits. In particular $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$, the category of Γ-objects in the category $\mathcal{A} = s\mathcal{A}b$ of simplicial abelian groups, is a closed category. The unit is $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z} = \{X \mapsto \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]\}$ (it is $H\mathbf{Z}$ as a set, but we remember the group structure, see example 1.2.1.1), the tensor is given by

$$(M \otimes N)(Z) = \varinjlim_{X \wedge Y \to Z} M(X) \otimes N(Y)$$

and the internal function object is given by

$$\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{A}}(M,N) = \{X, [q] \mapsto \Gamma\mathcal{A}(M \otimes \mathbf{Z}[\Delta[q]], N(- \wedge X))\}.$$

1.3.1 $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ vs. $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$

The adjoint functor pair between abelian groups and pointed sets

$$\mathcal{E}ns_* \underset{U}{\overset{\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{A}b$$

where U is the forgetful functor induces an adjoint functor pair

$$\Gamma\mathcal{S}_* \underset{U}{\overset{\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}}{\rightleftarrows}} \Gamma\mathcal{A}$$

and since $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\colon (\mathcal{E}ns_*, \wedge, S^0) \to (\mathcal{A}b, \otimes, \mathbf{Z})$ is a *(strong) symmetric monoidal functor*, so is $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\colon (\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*, \wedge, \mathbf{S}) \to (\Gamma\mathcal{A}, \otimes, \bar{H}\mathbf{Z})$ (a strong symmetric monoidal functor is a symmetric monoidal functor F such that the structure maps $F(a) \otimes F(b) \to F(a \otimes b)$ and $1 \to F(1)$ are isomorphisms). In particular $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{S} \cong \bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$,

$$\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}(M \wedge N) \cong \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}M \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}N$$

and

$$\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M, UP) \cong U\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{A}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}M, P)$$

satisfying the necessary associativity, commutativity and unit conditions.

Later, we will see that the category $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$, for all practical (homotopical) purposes can be exchanged for $s\mathcal{A}b = \mathcal{A}$. The comparison functors come from the adjoint pair

$$\mathcal{A} \underset{R}{\overset{\bar{H}}{\rightleftarrows}} \Gamma\mathcal{A}$$

where $\bar{H}P(X) = P \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ and $RM = M(1_+)$. We see that $R\bar{H} = id_{\mathcal{A}}$. The other adjunction, $\bar{H}R \to id_{\Gamma\mathcal{A}}$, is discussed in lemma 1.3.3 below. Both $\bar{H}$ and R are symmetric monoidal functors.

1.3.2 Special objects

We say that $M \in ob\Gamma\mathcal{A}$ is *special* if its underlying Γ-space $UM \in ob\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ is special, i.e., if for all finite pointed sets X and Y the canonical map

$$UM(X \vee Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} UM(X) \times UM(Y)$$

is a weak equivalence in $\mathcal{S}_*$. The following lemma has the consequence that all special objects in $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$ can be considered to be in the image of $\bar{H}\colon s\mathcal{A}b = \mathcal{A} \to \Gamma\mathcal{A}$:

Lemma 1.3.3 *Let $M \in ob\Gamma\mathcal{A}$ be special. Then the unit of adjunction $(\bar{H}RM)(k_+) \to M(k_+)$ is an equivalence.*

Proof: Since M is special, we have that $M(k_+) \to \prod_k M(1_+)$ is an equivalence. On the other hand, if we precompose this map with the unit of adjunction

$$(\bar{H}RM)(k_+) = M(1_+) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[k_+] \to M(k_+)$$

we get an isomorphism. ∎

1.3.4 Additivization

There is also a Dold-Puppe–type construction: $L\colon \Gamma\mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}$ which is **left** adjoint to $\bar{H}$, and given by

$$LM = coker\{pr_1 - \nabla + pr_2\colon M(2_+) \to M(1_+)\}$$

where ∇ is the fold map. This functor is intimately connected with the subcategory of $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$ consisting of "additive", or coproduct preserving functors $\Gamma^o \to \mathcal{A}$.

The additive objects are uniquely defined by their value at 1_+, and we get an isomorphism $M \cong \bar{H}(M(1_+)) = \bar{H}RM$. Using this we may identify $\mathcal{A}$ with the full subcategory of additive objects in $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$, and the inclusion into $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$ has a left adjoint given by $\bar{H}L$.

Note that all the functors L, R and $\bar{H}$ between $\mathcal{A}$ and $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$ are strong symmetric monoidal.

Just the same considerations could be made with $\mathcal{A}b$ exchanged for the category of k-modules for any commutative ring k.

1.4 S-algebras

In any monoidal category there is a notion of a *monoid* (see definition A.9.1.3). The reason for the name is that a monoid in the usual sense is a monoid in $(\mathcal{E}ns, \times, *)$. Furthermore, the axioms for a ring is nothing but the statement that it is a monoid in $(\mathcal{A}b, \otimes, \mathbf{Z})$. For a commutative ring k, a k-algebra is no more than a monoid in $(k-mod, \otimes_k, k)$, and so it is natural to define **S**-algebras the same way:

Definition 1.4.1 An **S**-algebra A is a monoid in $(\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*, \wedge, \mathbf{S})$.

This means that A is a Γ-space together with maps $\mu = \mu^A\colon A\wedge A \to A$ and $1\colon \mathbf{S} \to A$ such that the diagrams

$$\begin{tikzcd} A\wedge(A\wedge A) \arrow[r, "\cong"] \arrow[d, "id\wedge\mu"] & (A\wedge A)\wedge A \arrow[r, "\mu\wedge id"] & A\wedge A \arrow[d, "\mu"] \\ A\wedge A \arrow[rr, "\mu"] & & A \end{tikzcd}$$

(the isomorphism is the associativity isomorphism of the smash product) and

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathbf{S}\wedge A \arrow[r, "1\wedge id"] \arrow[dr, "\cong"'] & A\wedge A \arrow[d, "\mu"] & A\wedge\mathbf{S} \arrow[l, "id\wedge 1"'] \arrow[dl, "\cong"] \\ & A & \end{tikzcd}$$

commute, where the diagonal maps are the natural unit isomorphisms.

We say that an **S**-algebra is *commutative* if $\mu = \mu \circ tw$ where

$$A\wedge A \xrightarrow[\cong]{tw} A\wedge A$$

is the twist isomorphism.

Remark 1.4.2 *In the definition of an* **S**-*algebra, any knowledge of the symmetric monoidal category structure is actually never needed, since maps* $M\wedge N \to P$ **out of** *the smash products is uniquely characterized by a map* $M(X)\wedge N(Y) \to P(X\wedge Y)$ *natural in* $X, Y \in ob\Gamma^o$. *So, since the multiplication is a map from the smash* $A\wedge A \to A$, *it can alternatively be defined as a map* $A(X)\wedge A(Y) \to A(X\wedge Y)$ *natural in both* X *and* Y.

This was the approach of Bökstedt [22] when he defined FSP's . These are simplicial functors from finite spaces to spaces with multiplication and unit, such that the natural diagrams commute, plus some stability conditions. These stability conditions are automatically satisfied if we start out with functors from Γ^o *(and then apply degreewise and diagonalize if we want* $X \in s\Gamma^o$ *as input), see lemma 2.1.4. On the other hand, we shall later see that there is no loss of generality to consider only* **S**-*algebras.*

1.4.3 Variants

An $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra is a monoid in $(\Gamma\mathcal{A}, \otimes, \bar{H}\mathbf{Z})$. (This is, for all practical purposes, equivalent to the more sophisticated notion of $H\mathbf{Z} = U\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebras arising from the fact that there is a closed category $(H\mathbf{Z} - mod, \wedge_{H\mathbf{Z}}, H\mathbf{Z})$, see 1.5.6 below). Since the functors

$$\begin{tikzcd} \Gamma\mathcal{S}_* \arrow[r, shift left, "\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}"] & \Gamma\mathcal{A} \arrow[l, shift left, "U"] \arrow[r, shift left=2, "L"] \arrow[r, shift right=2, "R"'] & \mathcal{A} \arrow[l, "H"'] \end{tikzcd}$$

all are monoidal they send monoids to monoids. For instance, if A is a simplicial ring, then $\bar{H}A$ is an $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra and HA is an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra (it is even an $H\mathbf{Z}$-algebra):

Example 1.4.4 1. Let A be a simplicial ring, then HA is an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra with multiplication

$$HA \wedge HA \to H(A \otimes A) \to HA$$

and unit $\mathbf{S} \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{S} \cong H\mathbf{Z} \to HA$.

In particular, note the $\mathbf{S}$-algebra $H\mathbf{Z}$. It is given by $X \mapsto \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$, the "integral homology", and the unit map $X = \mathbf{S}(X) \to H\mathbf{Z}(X) = \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ is the Hurewicz map of appendix A.2.1.

2. Of course, $\mathbf{S}$ is the initial $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. If M is a simplicial monoid, the *spherical monoid algebra* $\mathbf{S}[M]$ is given by

$$\mathbf{S}[M](X) = M_+ \wedge X$$

with obvious unit and with multiplication coming from the monoid structure. Note that $R\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{S}[M] \cong \mathbf{Z}[M]$.

3. If A is an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, then A^o, the *opposite* of A, is the $\mathbf{S}$-algebra given by the Γ-space A, but with the twisted multiplication

$$A \wedge A \xrightarrow[\cong]{tw} A \wedge A \xrightarrow{\mu} A.$$

4. If A and B are $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, their smash $A \wedge B$ is a new $\mathbf{S}$-algebra with multiplication

$$(A \wedge B) \wedge (A \wedge B) \xrightarrow{id \wedge tw \wedge id} (A \wedge A) \wedge (B \wedge B) \to A \wedge B,$$

and unit $\mathbf{S} \cong \mathbf{S} \wedge \mathbf{S} \to A \wedge B$.

5. If A and B are two $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, the product $A \times B$ is formed pointwise: $(A \times B)(X) = A(X) \times B(X)$ and with componentwise multiplication and diagonal unit. The coproduct also exists, but is more involved.

6. Matrices: If A is an **S**-algebra, we define the $n \times n$ matrices $Mat_n A$ by

$$Mat_n A(X) = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(n_+, n_+ \wedge A(X)) \cong \prod_n \bigvee_n A(X)$$

– the matrices with only "one entry in each coloumn". The unit is the diagonal, whereas the multiplication is determined by

$$\begin{array}{c} Mat_n A(X) \wedge Mat_n A(Y) = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(n_+, n_+ \wedge A(X)) \wedge \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(n_+, n_+ \wedge A(Y)) \\ \downarrow {\scriptstyle id \wedge (\text{smashing with } id_{A(X)})} \\ \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(n_+, n_+ \wedge A(X)) \wedge \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(n_+ \wedge A(X), n_+ \wedge A(X) \wedge A(Y)) \\ \downarrow {\scriptstyle \text{composition}} \\ \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(n_+, n_+ \wedge A(X) \wedge A(Y)) \\ \downarrow {\scriptstyle \text{multiplication}} \\ \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(n_+, n_+ \wedge A(X \wedge Y)) = Mat_n A(X \wedge Y) \end{array}$$

We note that for a simplicial ring B, there is a natural map of **S**-algebras (sending some wedges to products, and rearranging the order)

$$Mat_n HB \to HM_n B$$

where $M_n B$ are the ordinary matrix ring. This map is a stable eqivalence as defined in 2.1.6. We also have a "Whitehead sum"

$$Mat_n(A) \times Mat_m(A) \xrightarrow{\vee} Mat_{n+m}(A)$$

which is the block sum listing the first matrix in the upper left hand corner and the second matrix in the lower right hand corner. This sum is sent to the ordinary Whitehead sum under the map $Mat_n HB \to HM_n B$.

1.5 A-modules

If A is a ring, we define a left A-module to be an abelian group M together with a map $A \otimes M \to M$ satisfying certain properties. In other words, it is a "$(A \otimes -)$-algebra" where $(A \otimes -)$ is the triple on abelian groups sending P to $A \otimes P$. Likewise

Definition 1.5.1 Let A be an **S**-algebra. A (left) A-module is an $(A \wedge -)$-algebra.

To be more explicit, a left A-module is a pair (M, μ^M) where $M \in ob\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ and

$$A \wedge M \xrightarrow{\mu^M} M \in \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$$

such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A\wedge A\wedge M & \xrightarrow{id\wedge\mu^M} & A\wedge M \\ {\scriptstyle \mu^A\wedge id}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle \mu^M}\downarrow \\ A\wedge M & \xrightarrow{\mu^M} & M \end{array}$$

commutes and such that the composite

$$M \cong \mathbf{S}\wedge M \xrightarrow{1\wedge id} A\wedge M \xrightarrow{\mu^M} M$$

is the identity.

If M and N are A-modules, an A-module map $M \to N$ is a map of Γ-spaces compatible with the A-module structure (an "$(A\wedge -)$-algebra morphism").

Remark 1.5.2 1. *Note that, as remarked for* **S**-*algebras in 1.4.2, the structure maps defining A-modules could again be defined directly without reference to the internal smash in $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$.*

2. *One defines* right A-modules and A-bimodules *as A^o-modules and $A^o\wedge A$-modules.*

3. *Note that an* **S**-*module is no more than a Γ-space. In general, if A is a commutative* **S**-*algebra, then the concepts of left or right modules agree.*

4. *If A is a simplicial ring, then an HA-module does not need to be of the sort HP for an A-module P, but we shall see that the difference between A-modules and HA-modules is for most applications irrelevant.*

Definition 1.5.3 Let A be an **S**-algebra. Let M be an A-module and M' an A^o-module. The smash product $M'\wedge_A M$ is the Γ-space given by the coequalizer

$$M'\wedge_A M = \lim_{\rightarrow}\{M'\wedge A\wedge M \rightrightarrows M'\wedge M\}$$

where the two maps represent the two actions.

Definition 1.5.4 Let A be an **S**-algebra and let M, N be A-modules. The Γ-space of A-module maps is defined as the equalizer

$$\underline{\mathcal{M}}_A(M,N) = \lim_{\leftarrow}\{\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,N) \rightrightarrows \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(A\wedge M, N)\}$$

where the first map is induced by the action of A on M, and the second is

$$\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,N) \to \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(A\wedge M, A\wedge N) \to \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(A\wedge M, N)$$

induced by the action of A on N.

From these definitions, the following proposition is immediate.

Proposition 1.5.5 *Let k be a commutative $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. Then the smash product and morphism object over k endows the category $\mathcal{M}_k$ of k-modules with the structure of a closed category.* ☺

Example 1.5.6 (k-algebras) If k is a commutative $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, the monoids in the closed monoidal category $(k - mod, \wedge_k, k)$ are called k-algebras. The most important example to us are the $H\mathbf{Z}$-algebras. A crucial point we shall return to later is that the homotopy categories of $H\mathbf{Z}$-algebras and simplicial rings are equivalent.

1.6 $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories

Since $(\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*, \wedge, \mathbf{S})$ is a (symmetric monoidal) closed category it makes sense to talk of a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-*category*, i.e., a collection of objects $ob\mathcal{C}$ and for each pair of objects $c, d \in ob\mathcal{C}$ a Γ-space $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c, d)$ of "morphisms", with multiplication

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c, d)\wedge\underline{\mathcal{C}}(b, c) \longrightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(b, d)$$

and unit

$$\mathbf{S} \longrightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c, c)$$

satisfying the usual identites analogous to the notion of an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra (as a matter of fact: an $\mathbf{S}$ algebra is precisely a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category with one object). See section A.9.2 for more details on enriched category theory.

In particular, $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ is itself a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category. As another example; from definition 1.5.4 of the Γ-space of A-module morphisms, the following fact follows immediately.

Proposition 1.6.1 *Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. Then the category of A-modules is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category.* ☺

Further examples of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories:

Example 1.6.2

1. Any $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category $\mathcal{C}$ has an underlying $\mathcal{S}_*$-category $R\mathcal{C}$, or just $\mathcal{C}$ again for short, with function spaces $(R\mathcal{C})(c, d) = R(\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c, d)) = \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c, d)(1_+)$ (see 1.2.1.3). The prime example being $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ itself, where we always drop the R from the notation.

   A $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category with only one object is what we call an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra (just as a k-*mod*-category with only one object is a k-algebra), and this is closely connected to Bökstedt's notion of an FSP. In fact, a "ring functor" in the sense of [61] is the same as a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category when restricted to $\Gamma^o \subseteq \mathcal{S}_*$, and conversely, any $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category is a ring functor when extended degreewise to simplicial Γ-spaces.

2. Just as the Eilenberg–Mac Lane construction takes rings to $\mathbf{S}$-algebras 1.4.4.1, it takes $\mathcal{A}b$-categories to $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories. Let $\mathcal{E}$ be an $\mathcal{A}b$-category (i.e., enriched in abelian groups). Then using the Eilenberg–Mac Lane-construction of 1.4.4.1 on the morphism groups gives a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category which we will call $\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ (it could be argued that

it ought to be called $H\mathcal{E}$, but somewhere there has got to be a conflict of notation, and we choose to sin here). To be explicit: if $c, d \in ob\mathcal{E}$, then $\tilde{\mathcal{E}}(c,d)$ is the Γ-space which sends $X \in ob\Gamma^o$ to $\mathcal{E}(c,d) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X] = H(\mathcal{E}(c,d))(X)$.

3. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a pointed $\mathcal{S}_*$-category. The category $\Gamma\mathcal{C}$ of pointed functors $\Gamma^o \to \mathcal{C}$ is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category by declaring that

$$\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{C}}(c,d)(X) = \Gamma\mathcal{C}(c, d(X\wedge -)) \in ob\mathcal{S}_*.$$

4. Let $(\mathcal{C}, \sqcup, e)$ be a symmetric monoidal category. An augmented symmetric monoid in $\mathcal{C}$ is an object c together with maps $c \sqcup c \to c$, $e \to c \to e$ satisfying the usual identities. A slick way of encoding all the identities of an augmented symmetric monoid c is to identify it with its bar complex (Eilenberg–Mac Lane object) $\bar{H}c\colon \Gamma^o \to \mathcal{C}$ where

$$\bar{H}c(k_+) = \sqcup^{k_+} c = \overbrace{c \sqcup \ldots \sqcup c}^{k \text{ times}}, \qquad (\sqcup^{0_+} c = e).$$

That is, an augmented symmetric monoid is a rigid kind of Γ-object in $\mathcal{C}$; it is an Eilenberg–Mac Lane object.

5. Adding 3 and 4 together we get a functor from symmetric monoidal categories to $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories, sending $(\mathcal{C}, \sqcup, e)$ to the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category with objects the augmented symmetric monoids, and with morphism objects

$$\Gamma\mathcal{C}(\bar{H}c, \bar{H}d(X\wedge -)).$$

6. Important special case: If $(\mathcal{C}, \vee, e)$ is a *category with sum* (i.e., e is both final and initial in $\mathcal{C}$, and $\vee$ is a coproduct), then **all** objects are augmented symmetric monoids and

$$\Gamma\mathcal{C}(\bar{H}c, \bar{H}d(X\wedge -)) \cong \mathcal{C}(c, \bigvee^{X} d)$$

1.6.3 The $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category $\mathcal{C}^\vee$

The last example (1.6.2.6) is so important that we introduce the following notation. Let $(\mathcal{C}, \vee, e)$ be a category with sum, then $\mathcal{C}^\vee$ is the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category with $ob\mathcal{C}^\vee = ob\mathcal{C}$ and

$$\mathcal{C}^\vee(c,d)(X) = \mathcal{C}(c, \bigvee^{X} d).$$

If $(\mathcal{E}, \oplus, 0)$ is an $\mathcal{A}b$-category with sum (what is often called an *additive category*), then the $\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ of 1.6.2.2 and $\mathcal{E}^\oplus$ coincide:

$$\tilde{\mathcal{E}}(c,d)(n_+) \cong \mathcal{E}(c,d)^{\times n} \cong \mathcal{E}(c, d^{\oplus n}) = \mathcal{E}^\oplus(c,d)(n_+),$$

since finite sums and products coincide in an additive category, see [161, p. 194].

It is worth noting that the structure of 1.6.2.6 when applied to $(\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*, \vee, 0_+)$ is different from the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-enrichment we have given to $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ when declaring it to be a symmetric monoidal **closed** category under the smash product. Then $\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,N)(X) = \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(M, N(X\wedge -))$. However, $\vee^X N \cong X\wedge N \to N(X\wedge -)$ is a stable equivalence (see definition 2.1.6), and in some cases this is enough to ensure that

$$\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}^{\vee}(M,N)(X) \cong \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(M, X\wedge N) \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(M, N(X\wedge -)) = \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,N)(X)$$

is a stable equivalence.

1.6.4 A reformulation

When talking in the language of $\mathcal{A}b$-categories (linear categories), a ring is just an $\mathcal{A}b$-category with one object, and an A-module is a functor from A to $\mathcal{A}b$. In the setting of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories, we can similarly reinterpret **S**-algebras and their modules. An **S**-algebra A is simply a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category with only one object, and an A-module is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functor from A to $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$.

Thinking of A-modules as $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functors $A \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ the definitions of smash and morphism objects can be elegantly expressed as

$$M'\wedge_A M = \int^A M'\wedge M$$

and

$$\underline{Hom}_A(M,N) = \int_A \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,N)$$

If B is another **S**-algebra, M' a $B\wedge A^o$-module we get $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-adjoint functors

$$\mathcal{M}_A \underset{\mathcal{M}_B(M',-)}{\overset{M'\wedge_A -}{\leftrightarrows}} \mathcal{M}_B$$

due to the canonical isomorphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{M}}_B(M'\wedge_A N, P) \cong \underline{\mathcal{M}}_A(N, \underline{\mathcal{M}}_B(M', P)$$

which follows from the definitions ($P \in ob\mathcal{M}_B$).

2 Stable structures

In this section we will discuss the homotopical properties of Γ-spaces and **S**-algebras. Historically Γ-spaces are nice representations of connective spectra and the choice of equivalences reflects this. That is, in addition to the obvious pointwise equivalences, we have the so-called stable equivalences. The functors of **S**-algebras we will define, such as K-theory, should respect stable equivalences. Any **S**-algebra can, up to a canonical stable equivalence, be replaced by a very special one.

2.1 The homotopy theory of Γ-spaces

To define the stable structure we need to take a different view to Γ-spaces.

2.1.1 Γ-spaces as simplicial functors

Let $M \in ob\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$. It is a (pointed) functor $M\colon \Gamma^o \to \mathcal{S}_*$, and by extension by colimits and degreewise application followed by the diagonal we may think of it as a functor $\mathcal{S}_* \to \mathcal{S}_*$. To be explicit, if X is a pointed set, we define

$$M(X) = \varinjlim_{\text{finite pointed } Y\subseteq X} M(Y)$$

where the colimit varies over the finite pointed subsets, and so M is a (pointed) functor $\mathcal{E}ns_* \to \mathcal{S}_*$. Finally, if $X \in ob\mathcal{S}_*$, we set

$$M(X) = diag^*\{[q] \mapsto M(X_q)\}$$

Aside 2.1.2 *For those familiar with the language of coends, the extensions of a* Γ*-space* M *to an endofunctor on spaces can be done all at once: if* X *is a space, then*

$$M(X) = \int^{k_+} X^{\times k} \wedge M(k_+).$$

In yet other words, we do the left Kan extension

$$\begin{tikzcd} \Gamma^o \arrow[r, "M"] \arrow[d, "\mathbf{s}"'] & \mathcal{S}_* \\ \mathcal{S}_* \arrow[ur, dotted] & \end{tikzcd}$$

The fact that these functors come from degreewise applications of a functor on (discrete) sets make them "simplicial" (more precisely: they are $\mathcal{S}_*$-functors), i.e., they give rise to simplicial maps

$$\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X,Y) \to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(M(X), N(Y))$$

which results in natural maps

$$Y\wedge M(X) \to M(X\wedge Y)$$

coming from the identity on $X\wedge Y$ through the composite

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{S}_*(X\wedge Y, X\wedge Y) &\cong \mathcal{S}_*(Y, \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X, X\wedge Y)) \\ &\to \mathcal{S}_*(Y, \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(M(X), M(X\wedge Y))) \cong \mathcal{S}_*(Y\wedge M(X), M(X\wedge Y)). \end{aligned}$$

In particular this means that Γ-spaces define spectra: the n-th term is given by $M(S^n)$, and the structure map is $S^1\wedge M(S^n) \to M(S^{n+1})$ where S^n is $S^1 = \Delta[1]/\partial\Delta[1]$ smashed with itself n times, see also 2.1.12 below.

Definition 2.1.3 If $M \in ob\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$, then the *homotopy groups* are defined as

$$\pi_q M = \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \pi_{k+q} M(S^k).$$

Note that $\pi_q M = 0$ for $q < 0$, by the following lemma.

Lemma 2.1.4 *Let $M \in \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$.*

1. *If $Y \xrightarrow{\sim} Y' \in \mathcal{S}_*$ is an equivalence then $M(Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} M(Y')$ is an equivalence also.*
2. *If $X \in ob\mathcal{S}_*$ is n-connected then $M(X)$ is n-connected also.*
3. *If $X \in \mathcal{S}_*$ is n-connected then the canonical map $Y \wedge M(X) \to M(Y \wedge X)$ is 2n-connected.*

Proof: Let $\mathbf{L}M$ be the simplicial Γ-space given by

$$\mathbf{L}M(X)_p = \bigvee_{Z_0,\dots,Z_p \in (\Gamma^o)^{\times p+1}} M(Z_0) \wedge \Gamma^o(Z_0, Z_1) \wedge \dots \wedge \Gamma^o(Z_{p-1}, Z_p) \wedge \Gamma^o(Z_p, X)$$

with operators determined by

$$d_i(f \wedge \alpha_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \alpha_p \wedge \beta) = \begin{cases} (M(\alpha_1)(f) \wedge \alpha_2 \wedge \dots \wedge \alpha_p \wedge \beta) & \text{if } i = 0 \\ (f \wedge \alpha_1 \wedge \dots \alpha_{i+1} \circ \alpha_i \dots \wedge \beta) & \text{if } 1 \le i \le p-1 \\ (f \wedge \alpha_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \alpha_{p-1} \wedge (\beta \circ \alpha_p)) & \text{if } i = p \end{cases}$$

$$s_j(f \wedge \alpha_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \alpha_p \wedge \beta) = (f \wedge \dots \alpha_j \wedge \mathrm{id} \wedge \alpha_{j+1} \dots \wedge \beta),$$

($\mathbf{L}M$ is an example of a "homotopy coend", or a "one-sided bar construction").

Consider the natural transformation

$$\mathbf{L}M \xrightarrow{\eta} M$$

determined by

$$(f \wedge \alpha_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \beta) \mapsto M(\beta \circ \alpha_p \circ \dots \circ \alpha_1)(f).$$

For each $Z \in ob\Gamma^o$ we obtain a simplicial homotopy inverse to η_Z by sending $f \in M(Z)$ to $(f \wedge \mathrm{id}_Z \wedge \dots \wedge \mathrm{id}_Z)$. Since $\mathbf{L}M$ and M both commute with filtered colimits we see that η is an equivalence on all pointed sets and so by A.5.0.2, η is an equivalence for all pointed simplicial sets because $\mathbf{L}M$ and M are applied degreewise. Thus, for all pointed simplicial sets X:

$$\mathbf{L}M(X) \xrightarrow{\sim} M(X).$$

(1) If $Y \xrightarrow{\sim} Y'$ is an equivalence then $\mathcal{S}_*(k_+, Y) \cong Y^{\times k} \xrightarrow{\sim} (Y')^{\times k} \cong \mathcal{S}_*(k_+, Y')$ is an equivalence for all k. But this implies that $\mathbf{L}M(Y)_p \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{L}M(Y')_p$ for all p and hence, by A.5.0.2, that $\mathbf{L}M(Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{L}M(Y')$.

(2) If X is n-connected for some $n \geq 0$, then $\mathcal{S}_*(k_+, X) \cong X^{\times k}$ is n-connected for all k and hence $\mathbf{L}M(X)_p$ is n-connected for all p. Thus, by A.5.0.6 we see that $\mathbf{L}M(X)$ is n-connected also.

(3) If X is n-connected and X' is m-connected then, by corollary A.7.2.4, $X \vee X' \to X \times X'$ is $(m+n)$-connected and so $Y \wedge (X \times X') \to (Y \wedge X') \times (Y \wedge X')$ is $(m+n)$-connected also by the commuting diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} Y\wedge(X \vee X') \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\cong"'] & Y\wedge(X \times X') \arrow[d] \\ (Y\wedge X) \vee (Y\wedge X') \arrow[r] & (Y\wedge X) \times (Y\wedge X') \end{tikzcd}$$

since both horizontal maps are $(m+n)$-connected. By induction we see that

$$Y\wedge\mathcal{S}_*(k_+, X) \to \mathcal{S}_*(k_+, Y\wedge X)$$

is $2n$-connected for all k and so $Y\wedge\mathbf{L}M(X)_p \to \mathbf{L}M(Y\wedge X)_p$ is $2n$-connected for all p. Since a simplicial space which is $k > 0$-connected in every degree has a k-connected diagonal (e.g., by theorem A.5.0.6) we can conclude that $Y\wedge\mathbf{L}M(X) \to \mathbf{L}M(Y\wedge X)$ is $2n$-connected. ∎

Following Schwede [213] we now define two closed model category structures on $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ (these differ very slightly from the structures considered by Bousfield and Friedlander [30] and Lydakis [158]). For basics on model categories see appendix A.3. We will call these model structures the "pointwise" and the "stable" structures":

Definition 2.1.5 Pointwise structure: A map $M \to N \in \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ is a *pointwise fibration* (resp. *pointwise equivalence*) if $M(X) \to N(X) \in \mathcal{S}_*$ is a fibration (resp. weak equivalence) for every $X \in ob\Gamma$. The map is a (pointwise) *cofibration* if it has the lifting property with respect to maps that are both pointwise fibrations and pointwise equivalences, i.e., $i\colon A \to X \in \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ is a cofibration if for every pointwise fibration $f\colon E \to B \in \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ that is a pointwise equivalence and for every solid commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} A \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "i"'] & E \arrow[d, "f", "\simeq"'] \\ X \arrow[r] \arrow[ur, dashed, "s"] & B \end{tikzcd}$$

there exists a (dotted) map $s\colon X \to E$ making the resulting diagram commute.

From this one constructs the stable structure. Note that the cofibrations in the two structures are the same! Because of this we often omit the words "pointwise" and "stable" when referring to cofibrations.

Definition 2.1.6 Stable structure: A map of Γ-spaces is a stable equivalence if it induces an isomorphism on homotopy groups (defined in 2.1.3). It is a (stable) cofibration if it is a (pointwise) cofibration, and it is a stable fibration if it has the lifting property with respect to all maps that are both stable equivalences and cofibrations.

As opposed to simplicial sets, not all Γ-spaces are cofibrant. Examples of cofibrant objects are the Γ-spaces Γ^X of 1.2.1.4 (and so the simplicial Γ-spaces $\mathbf{L}M$ defined in the proof of lemma 2.1.4 are cofibrant in every degree, so that $\mathbf{L}M \to M$ can be thought of as a cofibrant resolution).

We shall see in 2.1.9 that the stably fibrant objects are the very special Γ-spaces which are pointwise fibrant.

2.1.7 Important convention

The stable structure will by far be the most important to us, and so when we occasionally forget the qualification "stable", and say that a map of Γ-spaces is a fibration, a cofibration or an equivalence this is short for it being a **stable** fibration, cofibration or equivalence. We will say "pointwise" when appropriate.

Theorem 2.1.8 *Both the pointwise and the stable structures define closed model category structures (see A.3.2) on $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$. Furthermore, these structures are compatible with the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category structure. More precisely: If $M \overset{i}{\rightarrowtail} N$ is a cofibration and $P \overset{p}{\twoheadrightarrow} Q$ is a pointwise (resp. stable) fibration, then the canonical map*

$$\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(N,P) \to \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,P) \prod_{\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,Q)} \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(N,Q) \tag{2.1.8}$$

is a pointwise (resp. stable) fibration, and if in addition i or p is a pointwise (resp. stable) equivalence, then 2.1.8 is a pointwise (resp. stable) equivalence.

Sketch proof: (cf. Schwede [213]) That the pointwise structure is a closed simplicial model category (with $\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}^{1+}(-,-)$ as morphism spaces) is essentially an application of Quillen's basic theorem [199, II4] to the category of Γ-sets. The rest of the pointwise claim follows from the definition of $\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(-,-)$.

As to the stable structure, all the axioms but one follows from the pointwise structure. If $f\colon M \to N \in \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$, one must show that there is a factorization $M \overset{\sim}{\rightarrowtail} X \twoheadrightarrow N$ of f as a cofibration which is a stable equivalence, followed by a stable fibration. However, this is an axiom we will never use, so we refer the reader to [213]. We refer the reader to the same source for compatibility of the stable structure with the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-enrichment. ☺

Note that, since the cofibrations are the same in the pointwise and the stable structure, a map is both a pointwise equivalence and a pointwise fibration if and only if it is both a stable equivalence and a stable fibration.

Corollary 2.1.9 *Let M be a Γ-space. Then M is stably fibrant (i.e., $M \to *$ is a stable fibration) if and only if it is very special and pointwise fibrant.*

Proof: If M is stably fibrant, $M \to *$ has the lifting property with respect to all maps that are stable equivalences and cofibrations, and hence also to the maps that are pointwise equivalences and cofibrations; that is, it is pointwise fibrant. Let $X, Y \in ob\Gamma^o$, then

$\Gamma^X \vee \Gamma^Y \to \Gamma^{X\vee Y} \cong \Gamma^X \times \Gamma^Y$ is a cofibration and a (stable) equivalence. This means that if M is stably fibrant, then

$$\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(\Gamma^{X\vee Y}, M) \to \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(\Gamma^X \vee \Gamma^Y, M)$$

is a stable equivalence and a stable fibration, which is the same as saying that it is a pointwise equivalence and a pointwise fibration, which means that

$$M(X\vee Y) \cong \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(\Gamma^{X\vee Y}, M) \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(\Gamma^X \vee \Gamma^Y, M) \cong M(X)\times M(Y)$$

is an equivalence. Here, as elsewhere, we have written $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(-,-)$ for the underlying morphism space $R\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(-,-)$. Similarly, the map

$$\mathbf{S}\vee\mathbf{S} \xrightarrow{in_1+\Delta} \mathbf{S}\times\mathbf{S}$$

is a stable equivalence. When $\pi_0\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*(-,M)$ is applied to this sequence we get $(a,b)\mapsto (a,a+b)\colon \pi_0 M(1_+)^{\times 2} \to \pi_0 M(1_+)^{\times 2}$.

If M is fibrant this must be an isomorphism, and so $\pi_0 M(1_+)$ has inverses.

Conversely, suppose that M is pointwise fibrant and very special. Let $M \underset{\sim}{\overset{i}{\rightarrowtail}} N \twoheadrightarrow *$ be a factorization into a map that is a stable equivalence and cofibration followed by a stable fibration. Since both M and N are very special i must be a pointwise equivalence, and so has a section (from the pointwise structure), which means that M is a retract of a stably fibrant object since we have a lifting in the diagram in the pointwise structure

$$\begin{tikzcd} M \arrow[r, equal] \arrow[d, tail, "i", "\simeq"'] & M \arrow[d, two heads] \\ N \arrow[r] & * \end{tikzcd}.$$

∎

2.1.10 A simple fibrant replacement functor

In the approach we will follow, it is a strange fact that we will never need to replace a Γ-space with a cofibrant one, but we will constantly need to replace them by stably fibrant ones. There is a particularly easy way to do this: let M be any Γ-space, and set

$$QM(X) = \varinjlim_{k} \Omega^k M(S^k \wedge X)$$

Obviously the map $M \to QM$ is a stable equivalence, and QM is pointwise fibrant and very special (use e.g., lemma 2.1.4). For various purposes, this replacement Q will not be good enough. Its main deficiency is that it will not take $\mathbf{S}$-algebras to $\mathbf{S}$-algebras.

2.1.11 Comparison with spectra

We have already observed that Γ-spaces give rise to spectra:

Definition 2.1.12 Let M be a Γ-space. Then the *spectrum associated* with M is the sequence
$$\underline{M} = \{k \mapsto M(S^k)\}$$
where S^k is $S^1 = \Delta[1]/\partial\Delta[1]$ smashed with itself k times, together with the structure maps $S^1 \wedge M(S^k) \to M(S^1 \wedge S^k) = M(S^{k+1})$.

The assignment $M \mapsto \underline{M}$ is a simplicial functor

$$\Gamma\mathcal{S}_* \xrightarrow{M \mapsto \underline{M}} \mathcal{S}pt$$

(where $\mathcal{S}pt$ is the category of spectra, see appendix A2.2 for details). and it follows from the considerations in [30] that it induces an equivalence between the stable homotopy categories of Γ-spaces and connective spectra.

Crucial for the general acceptance of Lydakis' definition of the smash product was the following (where $\mathrm{conn}(X)$ is the connectivity of X):

Proposition 2.1.13 *Let M and N be Γ-spaces and X and Y spaces. If M is cofibrant, then the canonical map*
$$M(X) \wedge N(Y) \to (M \wedge N)(X \wedge Y)$$
is n-connected with $n = \mathrm{conn}(X) + \mathrm{conn}(Y) + \min(\mathrm{conn}(X), \mathrm{conn}(Y))$.

Sketch proof: (see [158] for further details). The proof goes by induction, first treating the case $M = \Gamma^o(n_+, -)$, and observing that then $M(X) \wedge N(Y) \cong X^{\times n} \wedge N(Y)$ and $(M \wedge N)(X \wedge Y) \cong N((X \wedge Y)^{\times n})$. Hence, in this case the result follows from lemma 2.1.3.3. ☺

Corollary 2.1.14 *Let M and N be Γ-spaces with M cofibrant. Then $\underline{M \wedge N}$ is stably equivalent to a hadicrafted smash product of spectra, e.g.,*

$$n \mapsto \{\varinjlim_{k,l} \Omega^{k+l}(S^n \wedge M(S^k) \wedge N(S^l))\}. \qquad ☺$$

2.2 A fibrant replacement for S-algebras

Note that if A is a simplicial ring, then the Eilenberg–Mac Lane object HA of 1.1 is a very special Γ-space, and so maps between simplicial rings induce maps that are stable equivalences if and only if they are pointwise equivalences. Hence any functor respecting pointwise equivalences of **S**-algebras will have good homotopy properties when restricted to simplicial rings.

When we want to apply functors to all **S**-algebras A, we frequently need to replace our **S**-algebras by a very special **S**-algebras before feeding them to our functor in order to ensure that the functor will preserve stable equivalences. This is a potential problem since the fibrant replacement functor Q presented in 2.1.10 does not take **S**-algebras to **S**-algebras.

For this we need a gadget first explored by Bökstedt. He noted that when he wanted to extend Hochschild homology to **S**-algebras or rather FSPs (see chapter IV), the face maps were problematic as they involved the multiplication, and this was not well behaved with respect to naïve stabilization.

2.2.1 The category $\mathcal{I}$

Let $\mathcal{I} \subset \Gamma^o$ be the subcategory with all objects, but only the injective maps. This has much more structure than the natural numbers considered as the subcategory where we only allow the standard inclusion $\{0, 1, \dots, n-1\} \subset \{0, 1, \dots, n\}$. Most importantly, the sum of two sets $x_0, x_1 \mapsto x_0 \vee x_1$ induces a natural transformation $\mathcal{I} \times \mathcal{I} \to \mathcal{I}$. To be quite precise, the sum is given by $k_+ \vee l_+ = (k+l)_+$ with inclusion maps $k_+ \to (k+l)_+$ sending $i \in k_+$ to $i \in (k+l)_+$, and $l_+ \to (k+l)_+$ sending $j > 0 \in l_+$ to $k + j \in (k+l)_+$. Note that $\vee$ is strictly associative and unital: $(x \vee y) \vee z = x \vee (y \vee z)$ and $0_+ \vee x = x = x \vee 0_+$ (but symmetric only up to isomorphism).

This results in a simplicial category $\{p \mapsto \mathcal{I}^{p+1}\}$ with structure maps given by sending $\mathbf{x} = (x_0, \dots, x_q) \in \mathcal{I}^{q+1}$ to

$$\begin{aligned} d_i(\mathbf{x}) =& \begin{cases} (x_0, \dots, x_i \vee x_{i+1}, \dots, x_q) & \text{for } 0 \le i < q, \\ (x_q \vee x_0, , x_1, \dots, x_{p-1}) & \text{for } i = q \end{cases} \\ s_i(\mathbf{x}) =& (x_0, \dots, x_i, 0_+, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_p) \quad \text{for } 0 \le i \le q \end{aligned}$$

Definition 2.2.2 If $x = k_+ \in ob\mathcal{I}$, we let $|x| = k$. We will often not distinguish notationally between x and $|x|$. For instance, an expression like S^x will mean S^1 smashed with itself $|x|$ times: $S^{0_+} = S^0$, $S^{(k+1)_+} = S^1 \wedge S^{k_+}$. Likewise Ω^x will mean $Map_*(S^x, -) = \mathcal{S}_*(S^x, \sin|-|)$. If $\phi\colon x \to y \in \mathcal{I}$, then $S^{(|y|-|x|)} \wedge S^x \to S^y$ is the isomorphism which inserts the jth factor of S^x as the $\phi(j)$th factor of S^y and distributes the factors of $S^{(|y|-|x|)}$ over the remaining factors of S^y, keeping the order. If M is a Γ-space and X is a finite pointed set, the assignment $x \mapsto \Omega^x M(S^x \wedge X)$ is a functor, where $\phi\colon x \to y$ is sent to

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega^x M(S^x \wedge X) \to \Omega^{(|y|-|x|)+|x|}(S^{(|y|-|x|)} \wedge M(S^x \wedge X)) \to& \\ \Omega^{(|y|-|x|)+|x|} M(S^{(|y|-|x|)} \wedge S^x \wedge X) \cong& \ \Omega^y M(S^y \wedge X) \end{aligned}$$

where the first map is suspension, the second is induced by the structure map of M and the last isomorphism is conjugation by the isomorphism $S^{(|y|-|x|)} \wedge S^x \to S^y$ described above. Let $T_0 M$ be the Γ-space

$$T_0 M = \{X \mapsto \underset{\overrightarrow{x \in \mathcal{I}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \Omega^x M(S^x \wedge X)\}$$

The reason for the notation T_0M will become apparent in chapter IV (no, it is not because it is the tangent space of something).

We would like to know that this has the right homotopy properties, i.e., that T_0M is equivalent to

$$QM = \{X \mapsto \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k M(S^k \wedge X)\}.$$

One should note that, as opposed to $\mathbf{N}$, the category $\mathcal{I}$ is not filtering, so we must stick with the homotopy colimits. However, $\mathcal{I}$ possesses certain good properties which overcome this difficulty. (Bökstedt attributes in [22] the idea behind the following very important stabilization lemma to Illusie [123])

Lemma 2.2.3 *(cf. [22, 1.5]) Let $G\colon \mathcal{I}^{q+1} \to \mathcal{S}_*$ be a functor, $\mathbf{x} \in ob\mathcal{I}^{q+1}$, and assume G sends maps in the under category $\mathbf{x}/\mathcal{I}^{q+1}$ to $n = n_{\mathbf{x}}$ connected maps. Then the map*

$$G(\mathbf{x}) \to \operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}} G$$

is n-connected.

Proof: Consider the functor

$$\mu_{\mathbf{x}}\colon \mathcal{I}^{q+1} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{y}\mapsto \mathbf{x}\vee\mathbf{y}} \mathcal{I}^{q+1}$$

The second inclusion $\mathbf{y} \subseteq \mathbf{x} \vee \mathbf{y}$ defines a natural transformation from the identity to $\mu_{\mathbf{x}}$. Hence, for every $\mathbf{y} \in ob\mathcal{I}^{q+1}$ the under category $\mathbf{y}/\mu_{\mathbf{x}}$ is contractible, and by the dual of [31, XI.9.2] (or A6.2.1) we have that

$$(\mu_{\mathbf{x}})_*\colon \operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}} G\mu_{\mathbf{x}} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}} G$$

is an equivalence. The map $G(\mathbf{x}) \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}} G$ factors through $(\mu_{\mathbf{x}})_*$, and so we have to show that the map $G(\mathbf{x}) \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}} G\mu_{\mathbf{x}}$ is n-connected. Let $G(\mathbf{x})$ also denote the constant functor with value $G(\mathbf{x})$. Since $\mathcal{I}^{q+1}$ has an initial object it is contractible (in the sense that $obN(\mathcal{I}^{q+1})$ is contractible). With this notation, we have to show that the last map in the composite

$$G(\mathbf{x}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} obN(\mathcal{I}^{q+1})_+ \wedge G(\mathbf{x}) = \operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}} G(\mathbf{x}) \to \operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}} G\mu_{\mathbf{x}}$$

is n-connected, which follows as homotopy colimits preserve connectivity (A.6.3.1). ∎

A *stable equivalence* of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras is a map of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras that is a stable equivalence when considered as a map of Γ-spaces.

Lemma 2.2.4 *The functor T_0 maps $\mathbf{S}$-algebras to $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, and the natural transformation $id \to T_0$ is a stable equivalence of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras.*

Proof: Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. We have to define the multiplication and the unit of T_0A. The unit is obvious: $\mathbf{S}\to T_0\mathbf{S}\to T_0A$, and the multiplication is

$$\begin{array}{rcl} T_0A(X)\wedge T_0A(Y) & \longrightarrow & \underset{(x,y)\in\mathcal{I}^2}{\underrightarrow{\operatorname{holim}}}\,\Omega^{x\vee y}\left(A(S^x\wedge X)\wedge A(S^y\wedge Y)\right) \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{mult. in } A} & \underset{(x,y)\in\mathcal{I}^2}{\underrightarrow{\operatorname{holim}}}\,\Omega^{x\vee y}A(S^{x\vee y}\wedge X\wedge Y) \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{sum in } \mathcal{I}} & \underset{z\in\mathcal{I}}{\underrightarrow{\operatorname{holim}}}\,\Omega^{z}A(S^{z}\wedge X\wedge Y)=T_0A(X\wedge Y) \end{array}.$$

That the map $A\to T_0A$ is a map of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras is now immediate. ∎

Corollary 2.2.5 *Any $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra is functorially stably equivalent to $\bar{H}$ of a simplicial ring. In particular, if A is an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, then $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A$ is functorially stably equivalent to H of a simplicial ring.*

Proof: The T_0 construction can equally well be performed in $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-modules: let $\Omega^1_{\mathcal{A}b}M$ be $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1,M)$, which is an $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-module if M is, and let the homotopy colimit be given by the usual formula except the the wedges are replaced by sums (see A.6.4.1 for further details). Let $R_0A=\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}}\Omega^x_{\mathcal{A}b}A(S^x)$. This is an $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra if A is. There is a natural equivalence $R_0A\to R_0(\sin|A|)$ and a natural transformation $T_0UA\to UR_0(\sin|A|)$ (U is the forgetful functor). By lemma A.6.4.4 and lemma 2.1.4.2 you get that $T_0UA(S^n)\to UR_0(\sin|A|)(S^n)$ is $(2n-1)$-connected. But since both sides are special Γ-spaces, this means that $T_0UA\xrightarrow{\sim}UR_0\sin|A|\xleftarrow{\sim}UR_0A$ is a natural chain of weak equivalences. (Alternatively, we could have adapted Bökstedt's approximation theorem to prove directly that $A\to R_0A$ is a stable equivalence.)

Consequently, if A is a $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra, there is a functorial stable equivalence $A\to R_0A$ of $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebras. But R_0A is special and for such algebras the unit of adjunction $\bar{H}R\to 1$ is an equivalence by lemma 1.3.3. ∎

2.3 Homotopical algebra in the category of A-modules

Although it is not necessary for the subsequent development, we list a few facts pertaining to the homotopy structure on categories of modules over $\mathbf{S}$-algebras. The stable structure on A-modules is inherited in the usual way from the stable structure on Γ-spaces.

Definition 2.3.1 Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. We say that an A-module map is an *equivalence* (resp. *fibration*) if it is a stable equivalence (resp. stable fibration) of Γ-spaces. The *cofibrations* are defined by the lifting property.

Theorem 2.3.2 *With these definitions, the category of A-modules is a closed model category compatibly enriched in $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$: if $M\overset{i}{\rightarrowtail}N$ is a cofibration and $P\overset{p}{\twoheadrightarrow}Q$ is a fibration, then the canonical map*

$$\underline{Hom}_A(N,P)\xrightarrow{(i^*,p_*)}\underline{Hom}_A(M,P)\prod\nolimits_{\underline{Hom}_A(M,Q)}\underline{Hom}_A(N,Q)$$

is a stable fibration, and if in addition i or p is an equivalence, then (i^*, p_*) is a stable equivalence.

Sketch proof: (For a full proof, consult [213]). For the proof of the closed model category structure, see [215, 3.1.1]. For the proof of the compatibility with the enrichment, see the proof of [215, 3.1.2] where the commutative case is treated. ☺

The smash product behaves as expected (see [158] and [213] for proofs):

Proposition 2.3.3 *Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, and let M be a cofibrant A^o-module. Then $M\wedge_A -\colon A - mod \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ sends stable equivalences to stable equivalences. If N is an A-module there are first quadrant spectral sequences*

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{Tor}_p^{\pi_*A}(\pi_*M, \pi_*N)_q) &\Rightarrow \pi_{p+q}(M\wedge_A N)\\ \pi_p(M\wedge_A(H\pi_q N)) &\Rightarrow \pi_{p+q}(M\wedge_A N)\end{aligned}$$

If $A \to B$ is a stable equivalence of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, then the derived functor of $B\wedge_A -$ induces an equivalence between the homotopy categories of A and B-modules. ☺

2.3.4 k-algebras

Let k be a commutative $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. In the category of k-algebras, we call a map a fibration or a weak equivalence if it is a stable fibration or stable equivalence of Γ-spaces. The cofibrations are as usual the maps with the right (right meaning correct: in this case left is right) lifting property. With these definitions the category of k-algebras becomes a closed simplicial model category [213]. We will need the analogous result for $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories:

2.4 Homotopical algebra in the category of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories

Definition 2.4.1 A $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functor of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is a *stable equivalence* if for all $c, c' \in ob\mathcal{C}$ the map

$$\mathcal{C}(c, c') \to \mathcal{D}(Fc, Fc') \in \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$$

is a stable equivalence, and for any $d \in ob\mathcal{D}$ there is a $c \in ob\mathcal{C}$ and an isomorphism $Fc \cong d$.

Likewise, an $\mathcal{S}$-functor of $\mathcal{S}$-categories $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is a *weak equivalence* if for all $c, c' \in ob\mathcal{C}$ the map $\mathcal{C}(c, c') \to \mathcal{D}(Fc, Fc') \in \mathcal{S}$ is a weak equivalence, and for any $d \in ob\mathcal{D}$ there is a $c \in ob\mathcal{C}$ and an isomorphism $Fc \cong d$.

Recall that a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-*equivalence* is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functor $\mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{D}$ for which there exists a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functor $\mathcal{C} \xleftarrow{G} \mathcal{D}$ and $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-natural isomorphisms $id_{\mathcal{C}} \cong GF$ and $id_{\mathcal{D}} \cong FG$.

Lemma 2.4.2 *Every stable equivalence of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories can be written as a composite of a stable equivalence inducing the identity on the objects and a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalence.*

Proof: Let $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ be a stable equivalence. let $\underline{F}$ be the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category with the same objects as $\mathcal{C}$, but with morphisms given by $\underline{F}(c, c') = \mathcal{D}(Fc, Fc')$. Then F factors as $\mathcal{C} \to \underline{F} \to \mathcal{D}$ where the first map is the identity on objects and a stable equivalence on morphisms, and the second is induced by F on objects, and is the identity on morphisms. The latter map is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalence: for every $d \in ob\mathcal{D}$ **choose** a $c_d \in ob\mathcal{C}$ and an isomorphism $d \cong Fc_d$. As one checks, the application $d \mapsto c_d$ defines the inverse $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalence. ∎

So stable equivalences are the more general, and may be characterized as composites of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalences and stable equivalences that induce the identity on the set of objects. Likewise for weak equivalences of $\mathcal{S}$-categories.

3 Algebraic K-theory

3.1 K-theory of symmetric monoidal categories

An abelian monoid can be viewed as a symmetric monoidal category (an SMC) with just identity morphisms. An abelian monoid M gives rise to a Γ-space HM via the formula $k_+ \mapsto M^{\times k}$ (see example 1.1 and [216]), the Eilenberg–Mac Lane object of M. Algebraic K-theory, as developed in Segal's paper [216], is an extension of this to symmetric monoidal categories (see also [218] or [236]), such that for every symmetric monoidal category $\mathcal{C}$ we have a Γ-category $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}$.

For a finite set X, let $\mathcal{P}X$ be the set of subsets of X. If S and T are two disjoint subsets of X, then $S \coprod T$ is again a subset of X. For a strict symmetric monoidal category $(\mathcal{C}, \sqcup, e)$ (*strict* means that all coherence isomorphisms are identities) we could define the algebraic K-theory as the Γ-category which evaluated at $k_+ \in \Gamma^o$ was the category whose objects were all functions $\mathcal{P}\{1, \dots, k\} \to ob\mathcal{C}$ sending $\coprod$ to $\sqcup$ and $\emptyset$ to e

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{P}\{1,\dots,k\} \\ \coprod \\ \emptyset \end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{C} \\ \sqcup \\ e \end{pmatrix}$$

Such a function is uniquely given by declaring what its values are on all subsets $\{i\} \subset \{1, \dots, k\}$ and so this is nothing but $\mathcal{C}$ times itself k times.

In the nonstrict case this loosens up only a bit. If $(\mathcal{C}, \sqcup, e)$ is a symmetric monoidal category, $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+)$ is the symmetric monoidal category whose objects are the pointed functors $\mathcal{P}\{1, \dots, k\} \to \mathcal{C}$ taking $\coprod$ to $\sqcup$ up to coherent isomorphisms. More precisely (remembering that displayed diagrams commute unless otherwise explicitly stated not to)

Definition 3.1.1 Let $(\mathcal{C}, \sqcup, e)$ be a symmetric monoidal category. Let $k_+ \in ob\Gamma^o$. An object of $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(X)$ is a function $a\colon \mathcal{P}\{1, \dots, k\} \to ob\mathcal{C}$ together with a choice of isomorphisms

$$\alpha_{S,T}\colon a_S \sqcup a_T \to a_{S \coprod T}$$

for every pair $S, T \subseteq \{1, \dots, k\}$ such that $S \cap T = \emptyset$, satisfying the following conditions:

1. $a_\emptyset = e$

2. $a_{\emptyset,S}\colon e \sqcup a_S \to a_{\emptyset \coprod S} = a_S$ and $a_{S,\emptyset}\colon a_S \sqcup e \to a_{S \coprod \emptyset} = a_S$ are the inverses to the corresponding structure isomorphism in $\mathcal{C}$

3.
$$\begin{tikzcd}
(a_S \sqcup a_T) \sqcup a_U \arrow[rr] \arrow[d, "\alpha_{S,T} \sqcup id"] & & a_S \sqcup (a_T \sqcup a_U) \arrow[d, "id \sqcup \alpha_{T,U}"] \\
a_{S \coprod T} \sqcup a_U \arrow[r, "\alpha_{S \coprod T, U}"'] & a_{S \coprod T \coprod U} & a_S \sqcup a_{T \coprod U} \arrow[l, "\alpha_{S, T \coprod U}"]
\end{tikzcd}$$

where the unlabelled arrow is the corresponding structure isomorphism in $\mathcal{C}$

4.
$$\begin{tikzcd}
a_S \sqcup a_T \arrow[r] \arrow[dr, "\alpha_{S,T}"] & a_T \sqcup a_S \arrow[d, "\alpha_{T,S}"] \\
 & a_{S \coprod T} = a_{T \coprod S}
\end{tikzcd}$$

where the unlabelled arrow is the corresponding structure isomorphism in $\mathcal{C}$

A morphism $f\colon (a,\alpha) \to (b,\beta) \in \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(X)$ is a collection of morphisms

$$f_S\colon a_S \to b_S \in \mathcal{C}$$

such that

1. $f_\emptyset = id_e$

2.
$$\begin{array}{ccc}
a_S \sqcup a_T & \xrightarrow{f_S \sqcup f_T} & b_S \sqcup b_T \\
\alpha_{S,T} \downarrow & & \beta_{S,T} \downarrow \\
a_{S \coprod T} & \xrightarrow{f_{S \coprod T}} & b_{S \coprod T}
\end{array}$$

If $\phi\colon k_+ \to l_+ \in \Gamma^o$, then $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+) \to \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(l_+)$ is defined by sending $a\colon \mathcal{P}\{1,\dots,k\} \to \mathcal{C}$ to

$$\mathcal{P}\{1,\dots,l\} \xrightarrow{\phi^{-1}} \mathcal{P}\{1,\dots,k\} \xrightarrow{a} \mathcal{C}$$

(this makes sense as ϕ was pointed at 0), with corresponding isomorphism $a_{\phi^{-1}(S),\phi^{-1}(T)}\colon a_{\phi^{-1}S} \sqcup a_{\phi^{-1}T} \to a_{\phi^{-1}(S) \coprod \phi^{-1}(T)} = a_{\phi^{-1}(S \coprod T)}$.

This defines the Γ-category $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}$, which again is obviously functorial in $\mathcal{C}$, giving the functor

$$\bar{H}\colon \text{symmetric monoidal categories} \to \Gamma\text{-categories}$$

The classifying space $B\bar{H}\mathcal{C}$ forms a Γ–space which is often called the *algebraic K-theory of* $\mathcal{C}$.

If $\mathcal{C}$ is discrete, or in other words, $\mathcal{C} = ob\mathcal{C}$ is a symmetric monoid, then this is exactly the Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum of $ob\mathcal{C}$.

Note that $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}$ becomes a **special** Γ-category in the sense that

Lemma 3.1.2 *Let $(\mathcal{C}, \sqcup, e)$ be a symmetric monoidal category. The canonical map*

$$\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+) \to \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(1_+) \times \cdots \times \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(1_+)$$

is an equivalence of categories.

Proof: We do this by producing an equivalence $E_k\colon \mathcal{C}^{\times k} \to \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+)$ such that

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathcal{C}^{\times k} \arrow[r, equal] \arrow[d, "E_k"'] & \mathcal{C}^{\times k} \arrow[d, "E_1^{\times k}"'] \\ \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+) \arrow[r] & \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(1_+)^{\times k} \end{tikzcd}$$

commutes. The equivalence E_k is given by sending $(c_1, \ldots, c_k) \in ob\mathcal{C}^{\times k}$ to $E_k(c_1, \ldots, c_k) = \{(a_S, \alpha_{S,T})\}$ where

$$a_{\{i_1,\ldots,i_j\}} = c_{i_1} \sqcup (c_{i_2} \sqcup \ldots \sqcup (c_{i_{k-1}} \sqcup c_{i_k}) \ldots)$$

and $\alpha_{S,T}$ is the unique isomorphism we can write up using only the structure isomorphisms in $\mathcal{C}$. Likewise for morphisms. A quick check reveals that this is an equivalence (check the case $k = 1$ first), and that the diagram commutes. ∎

3.1.3 Enrichment in $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$

The definitions above makes perfect sense also in the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-enriched world, and we may speak about symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories $\mathcal{C}$.

A bit more explicitly: a *symmetric monoidal* $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$*-category* is a tuple $(\mathcal{C}, \sqcup, e, \alpha, \lambda, \rho, \gamma)$ such that $\mathcal{C}$ is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, $\sqcup\colon \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}$ is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functor, $e \in ob\mathcal{C}$ and α, λ, ρ and γ are $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-natural transformations satisfying the usual requirements listed in appendix A.9.1.1.

The definition of $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}$ at this generality is as follows: the objects in $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+)$ are the same as before (3.1.1), and the Γ-space $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}((a, \alpha), (b, \beta))$ is defined as the equalizer

$$\bar{H}\mathcal{C}((a,\alpha),(b,\beta))(k_+) \longrightarrow \prod_{S \subseteq \{1,\ldots,k\}} \mathcal{C}(a_S, b_S) \rightrightarrows \prod_{\substack{S,T \subseteq \{1,\ldots,k\} \\ S \cap T = \emptyset}} \mathcal{C}(a_S \sqcup a_T, b_{S \coprod T})$$

where the upper map is

$$\prod_{S \subseteq \{1,\ldots,k\}} \mathcal{C}(a_S, b_S) \xrightarrow{\sqcup} \prod_{\substack{S,T \subseteq \{1,\ldots,k\} \\ S \cap T = \emptyset}} \mathcal{C}(a_S \sqcup a_T, b_S \sqcup b_T) \xrightarrow{(\beta_{S,T})_*} \prod_{\substack{S,T \subseteq \{1,\ldots,k\} \\ S \cap T = \emptyset}} \mathcal{C}(a_S \sqcup a_T, b_{S \coprod T})$$

and the lower map is

$$\prod_{S \subseteq \{1,\ldots,k\}} \mathcal{C}(a_S, b_S) \xrightarrow{\text{proj.}} \prod_{\substack{S,T \subseteq \{1,\ldots,k\} \\ S \cap T = \emptyset}} \mathcal{C}(a_{S \coprod T}, b_{S \coprod T}) \xrightarrow{(\alpha_{S,T})^*} \prod_{\substack{S,T \subseteq \{1,\ldots,k\} \\ S \cap T = \emptyset}} \mathcal{C}(a_S \sqcup a_T, b_{S \coprod T})$$

3.1.4 Categories with sum

The simplest example of symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories comes from categories with sum (i.e., $\mathcal{C}$ is pointed and has a coproduct $\vee$). If $\mathcal{C}$ is a category with sum we consider it as a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category via the enrichment

$$\mathcal{C}^\vee(c,d)(k_+) = \mathcal{C}(c, \bigvee^k d)$$

(see 1.6.3).

The sum structure survives to give $\mathcal{C}^\vee$ the structure of a symmetric $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-monoidal category:

$$\begin{aligned}&(\mathcal{C}^\vee \times \mathcal{C}^\vee)((c_1,c_2),(d_1,d_2))(k_+) = \mathcal{C}(c_1, \bigvee^k d_1) \times \mathcal{C}(c_2, \bigvee^k d_2)\\ &\xrightarrow{\vee} \mathcal{C}(c_1 \vee c_2, \left(\bigvee^k d_1\right) \vee \left(\bigvee^k d_2\right)) \cong \mathcal{C}(c_1 \vee c_2, \bigvee^k (d_1 \vee d_2)) = \mathcal{C}^\vee(c_1 \vee c_2, d_1 \vee d_2)(k_+).\end{aligned}$$

Categories with sum also have a particular transparent K-theory. The data for a symmetric monoidal category above simplifies in this case to $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+)$ having as objects functors from the pointed category of subsets and inclusions of $k_+ = \{0, 1, \dots, k\}$, sending 0_+ to 0 and pushout squares to pushout squares, see also section III.2.1.1.

3.2 Quite special Γ-objects

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a Γ-$\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, i.e., a functor $\mathcal{C}\colon \Gamma^o \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories. We say that $\mathcal{C}$ is *special* if for each pair of finite pointed sets X and Y the canonical $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functor $\mathcal{C}(X \vee Y) \to \mathcal{C}(X) \times \mathcal{C}(Y)$ is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalence of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories. So, for instance, if $\mathcal{C}$ is a symmetric monoidal category, then $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}$ is special. We need a slightly weaker notion.

Definition 3.2.1 Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a Γ-$\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category. We say that $\mathcal{D}$ is *quite special* if for each pair of finite pointed sets $X, Y \in ob\Gamma^o$ the canonical map $\mathcal{D}(X \vee Y) \to \mathcal{D}(X) \times \mathcal{D}(Y)$ is a stable equivalence of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories (see 2.4.1 for definition).

Likewise, a functor $\mathcal{D}\colon \Gamma^o \to \mathcal{S}$-categories is quite special if $\mathcal{D}(X \vee Y) \to \mathcal{D}(X) \times \mathcal{D}(Y)$ is a weak equivalence of $\mathcal{S}$-categories 2.4.1.

Typically, theorems about special $\mathcal{D}$ remain valid for quite special $\mathcal{D}$.

Lemma 3.2.2 *Let $\mathcal{D}\colon \Gamma^o \to \mathcal{S}$-categories be quite special. Then $B\mathcal{D}$ is special.*

Proof: This follows since the nerve functor obN preserves products and by [65] takes weak equivalences of $\mathcal{S}$-categories to weak equivalences of simplicial sets. ∎

Recall the fibrant replacement functor T_0 of 2.2.2. The same proof as in lemma 2.2.4 gives that if we use T_0 on all the morphism objects in a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category we get a new category where the morphism objects are stably fibrant.

Lemma 3.2.3 *Let $\mathcal{D}\colon \Gamma^o \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories be quite special. Then $T_0\mathcal{D}$ is quite special.*

Proof: This follows since T_0 preserves stable equivalences, and since

$$T_0(M \times N) \xrightarrow{\sim} T_0M \times T_0N$$

is a stable equivalence for any $M, N \in ob\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$. Both these facts follow from the definition of T_0 and Bökstedt's approximation lemma 2.2.3. ∎

3.3 A uniform choice of weak equivalences

When considering a discrete ring A, the algebraic K-theory can be recovered from knowing only the *iso*morphisms of finitely generated projective A-modules. We will show in III.2.1 that the algebraic K-theory of A, as defined through Waldhausen's S-construction in chapter I, is equivalent to what you get if you apply Segal's construction $\bar{H}$ to the groupoid $i\mathcal{P}_A$ of finitely generated A-modules and isomorphisms between them. So, noninvertible homomorphisms are not seen by algebraic K-theory.

This is not special for the algebraic K-theory of discrete rings. Most situations where you would be interested in applying Segal's $\bar{H}$ to an (ordinary) symmetric monoidal category, it turns out that only the isomorphisms matter.

This changes when one's attention turns to symmetric monoidal categories where the morphisms form Γ-spaces. Then one focuses on "weak equivalences" within the category rather than on isomorphisms. Luckily, the "universal choice" of weak equivalences, is the most useful one. This choice is good enough for our applications, but has to be modified in more complex situations where we must be free to choose our weak equivalences. For a trivial example of this, see note 3.3.3 below.

Define the functor

$$\omega\colon \Gamma\mathcal{S}_* - \text{categories} \to \mathcal{S} - \text{categories}$$

by means of the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \omega\mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{w_{\mathcal{C}}} & RT_0\mathcal{C} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ i\pi_0\mathcal{C} & \longrightarrow & \pi_0\mathcal{C} \end{array}$$

where $i\pi_0\mathcal{C}$ is the subcategory of isomorphisms in $\pi_0\mathcal{C}$, and R is the forgetful functor from $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ to $\mathcal{S}$ applied to all morphism objects (evaluating at 1_+, see 1.2.1.3). Note that $\pi_0\mathcal{C} \cong \pi_0 RT_0\mathcal{C}$.

Lemma 3.3.1 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a quite special Γ-$\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category. Then $\omega\mathcal{C}$ is a quite special Γ-$\mathcal{S}$-category.*

Proof: That $\mathcal{C}$ is quite special implies that $RT_0\mathcal{C}$ is quite special, since stable equivalences of stably fibrant Γ-spaces are pointwise equivalences, and hence taken to weak equivalences by R. The map $RT_0\mathcal{C} \to \pi_0 RT_0\mathcal{C} \cong \pi_0\mathcal{C}$ is a (pointwise) fibration since R takes fibrant Γ-spaces to fibrant spaces.

Furthermore, $\pi_0\mathcal{C}$ is special since π_0 takes stable equivalences of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-spaces to isomorphisms. The subcategory of isomorphisms in a special Γ-category is always special (since the isomorphism category in a product category is the product of the isomorphism categories), so $i\pi_0\mathcal{C}$ is special too.

We have to know that the pullback behaves nicely with respect to this structure. The map $RT_0\mathcal{C}(X \vee Y) \to RT_0\mathcal{C}(X) \times RT_0\mathcal{C}(Y)$ is a weak equivalence. Hence it is enough to show that if $\mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ is a weak equivalence of $\mathcal{S}$-categories with fibrant morphism spaces, then $i\pi_0\mathcal{A}\times_{\pi_0\mathcal{A}}\mathcal{A} \to i\pi_0\mathcal{B}\times_{\pi_0\mathcal{B}}\mathcal{B}$ is a weak equivalence. Notice that $ob\mathcal{A} \cong ob(i\pi_0\mathcal{A}\times_{\pi_0\mathcal{A}}\mathcal{A})$ and that two objects in $\mathcal{A}$ are isomorphic if and only if they are isomorphic as objects of $i\pi_0\mathcal{A} \times_{\pi_0\mathcal{A}} \mathcal{A}$ (and likewise for $\mathcal{B}$). Hence we only have to show that the map induces a weak equivalence on morphism spaces, which is clear since pullbacks along fibrations are equivalent to homotopy pullbacks. ∎

Lemma 3.3.2 *Let $\mathcal{E}$ be an $\mathcal{A}b$-category with subcategory $i\mathcal{E}$ of isomorphisms, and let $\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ be the associated $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category (see 1.6.2.2). Then the natural map $i\mathcal{E} \to \omega\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ is a stable equivalence.*

Proof: Since $\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ has stably fibrant morphism objects $T_0\tilde{\mathcal{E}} \xleftarrow{\sim} \tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ and by construction $R\tilde{\mathcal{E}} = \mathcal{E}$ (considered as an $\mathcal{S}$-category). This means also that $\pi_0\tilde{\mathcal{E}} \cong \mathcal{E}$, and the result follows. ∎

Note 3.3.3 So, for $\mathcal{A}b$-categories our uniform choice of weak equivalences essentially just picks out the isomorphisms, which is fine since that is what we usually want. For modules over **S**-algebras they also give a choice which is suitable for K-theory (more about this later).

However, occasionally this construction will not pick out the weak equivalences you had in mind. As an example, consider the category Γ^o itself with its monoidal structure coming from the sum. It turns out that the category of isomorphisms $i\Gamma^o = \coprod_{n\geq 0}\Sigma_n$ is an extremely interesting category: its algebraic K-theory is equivalent to the sphere spectrum by the Barratt–Priddy–Quillen theorem (see e.g., [216, proposition 3.5]).

However, since Γ^o is a category with sum, by 3.1.4 it comes with a natural enrichment $(\Gamma^o)^\vee$. We get that $(\Gamma^o)^\vee(m_+, n_+)(k_+) \cong \Gamma^o(m_+, k_+\wedge n_+)$. But in the language of example 1.4.4.6, this is nothing but the n by m matrices over the sphere spectrum. Hence $(\Gamma^o)^\vee$ is isomorphic to the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category whose objects are the natural numbers, and where the Γ-space of morphisms from n to m is $Mat_{n,m}\mathbf{S} = \prod_m \vee_n\mathbf{S}$. The associated uniform choice of weak equivalences are exactly the "homotopy invertible matrices" $\widehat{GL}_n(\mathbf{S})$ of III.2.3.1, and the associated algebraic K-theory is the algebraic K-theory of **S** - also known as Waldhausen's algebraic K-theory of a point $A(*)$, see III.2.3.

That **S** and $A(*)$ are different can for instance be seen from the fact that the stable homotopy groups of spheres are finite in positive dimension, whereas $(*)$ is rationally equivalent to the K-theory of the integers, which is infinite cyclic in degree 5. For a further discussion, giving partial calculations, see section VII.3.

Chapter III

Reductions

In this chapter we will perform two important reductions. We will also clean up some of the mess caused by our use of varying definitions for algebraic K-theory along the way.

The first reduction takes place in section 1 and tells one that our handling of simplicial rings in I.3.4.1 is not in conflict with the usual conventions of algebraic K-theory, and in particular the one we obtain from section II.3.3. This is of importance even if one is only interested in ordinary rings: there are certain points (in chapter V) where even the statements for ordinary rings relies on functoriality of algebraic K-theory for the category of simplicial rings.

Armed with section 1 and with section 2, which tells us that all the various definitions of K-theory agree, those only interested in applications to discrete rings are free to pass on to chapter IV.

The second reduction, which you will find in section 3, is the fact that for most practical purposes, theorems that are true for simplicial rings are true in general for **S**-algebras. One may think of this as a sort of denseness property, coupled with the fact that the requirement that a functor is "continuous" is rather weak.

1 Degreewise K-theory

Algebraic K-theory is on one hand a group-completion device, which is apparent from the definition of K_0. When looking at K_1 we can also view it is also an "abelianization" device. You kill off the commutator of the general linear group to get K_1. To get K_2 you "kill off" yet another piece where some homology group vanishes. The procedure of killing off stuff for which homology is blind ends in group-theory at this point, but if you are willing to go into spaces, you may continue, and that is just what Quillen's plus-construction is all about.

When studying the stable K-theory, we had to introduce simplicial rings into the picture, and it turned out that we could be really naïve about it: we just applied our constructions in every dimension. That this works is quite surprising. When one wants to study K-theory of simplicial rings, the degreewise application of the K-functor only rarely gives anything interesting. One way to get an interesting K-theory would be to take the S-construction of some suitable category of modules, but instead of isomorphisms use weak equivalences. Another, and simpler way, is to use Quillen's plus construction on a nice space similar to the classifying space of the general linear group. This is what we will do in this section, but it will not be proven until the next section that the two approaches are equivalent (by means of a yet another approach to K-theory due to Segal, see II.3). The plus construction has the advantage that the comparison between the "correct" and degreewise definitions is particularly simple.

1.1 The plus construction

In this section we collect the facts we need about Quillen's plus construction made into a functorial construction, using Bousfield and Kan's integral completion functor [31]. For a long time, the best sources on the plus construction were the paper by Hausmann and Husemoller [105] and Berrick's textbook [12], but Quillen's original account which had circulated for a very long time finally made it into the appendix of [76].

1.1.1 Acyclic maps

Recall from I.1.6.2 that a map of pointed connected spaces is called *acyclic* if the integral homology of the homotopy fiber vanishes. We need some facts about acyclic maps.

If Y is a connected space, we may form its *universal cover* $\tilde{Y}$ as follows. From $\sin|Y|$, form the space B by identifying two simplices $u, v \in \sin|Y|_q$ whenever, considered as maps $\Delta[q] \to \sin|Y|$, they agree on the one-skeleton of $\Delta[q]$. Then $\sin|Y| \twoheadrightarrow B$ is a fibration of fibrant spaces [170, 8.2], and $\tilde{Y}$ is defined by the pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{Y} & \longrightarrow & B^{\Delta[1]} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y & \longrightarrow & B \end{array}$$

and we note that $\tilde{Y} \to Y$ is a fibration with fiber equivalent to the discrete set $\pi_1 Y$.

Lemma 1.1.2 *Let $f\colon X \to Y$ be a map of connected spaces, and $\tilde{Y}$ the universal cover of Y. Then f is acyclic if and only if*

$$H_*(X \times_Y \tilde{Y}) \to H_*(\tilde{Y})$$

is an isomorphism.

Proof: We may assume that $X \to Y$ is a fibration with fiber F. Then the projection $X \times_Y \tilde{Y} \to \tilde{Y}$ is also a fibration with fiber F, and the Serre spectral sequence [86, IV.5.1]

$$H_p(\tilde{Y}; H_q(F)) \Rightarrow H_{p+q}(X \times_Y \tilde{Y})$$

gives that if $\tilde{H}_*(F) = 0$, then the edge homomorphism (which is induced by $X \times_Y \tilde{Y} \to \tilde{Y}$) is an isomorphism as claimed.

Conversely, if $H_*(X \times_Y \tilde{Y}) \to H_*(\tilde{Y})$ is an isomorphism. Then it is easy to check directly that $\tilde{H}_q(F) = 0$ for $q \leq 1$. Assume we have shown that $\tilde{H}_q(F) = 0$ for $q < k$ for a $k \geq 2$. Then the spectral sequence gives an exact sequence

$$H_{k+1}(X \times_Y \tilde{Y}) \xrightarrow{\cong} H_{k+1}(\tilde{Y}) \longrightarrow H_k(F) \longrightarrow H_k(X \times_Y \tilde{Y}) \xrightarrow{\cong} H_k(\tilde{Y}) \longrightarrow 0$$

which implies that $H_k(F) = 0$ as well. ∎

The lemma can be reformulated using homology with local coefficients: $H_*(\tilde{Y}) = H_*(Y; \mathbf{Z}[\pi_1 Y])$ and $H_*(X \times_Y \tilde{Y}) \cong H_*(\mathbf{Z}[\tilde{X}] \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}[\pi_1 X]} \mathbf{Z}[\pi_1 Y]) = H_*(X; f^*\mathbf{Z}[\pi_1 Y])$, so f is acyclic if and only if it induces an isomorphism

$$H_*(X; f^*\mathbf{Z}[\pi_1 Y]) \cong H_*(Y; \mathbf{Z}[\pi_1 Y])$$

This can be stated in more general coefficients:

Corollary 1.1.3 *A map $f\colon X \to Y$ of connected spaces is acyclic if and only if it for any local coefficient system $\mathcal{G}$ on Y, f induces an isomorphism*

$$H_*(X; f^*\mathcal{G}) \cong H_*(Y; \mathcal{G})$$

Proof: By the lemma we only need to verify one implication. If $i\colon F \to Y$ is the fiber of f, the Serre spectral sequence gives

$$H_p(Y; H_q(F; i^*f^*\mathcal{G})) \Rightarrow H_{p+q}(X; f^*\mathcal{G}).$$

However, $i^*f^*\mathcal{G}$ is a trivial coefficient system, so if $\tilde{H}_*(F) = 0$, the edge homomorphism must be an isomorphism. ∎

This reformulation of acyclicity is useful, for instance when proving the following lemma.

Lemma 1.1.4 *Let*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ {\scriptstyle g}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle g'} \\ Z & \xrightarrow{f'} & S \end{array}$$

be a pushout cube of connected spaces with f acyclic, and either f or g a cofibration. Then f' is acyclic.

Proof: Let $\mathcal{G}$ be a local coefficient system in S. Using the characterization 1.1.3 of acyclic maps as maps inducing isomorphism in homology with arbitrary coefficients, we get by excision that

$$H_*(S, Z; \mathcal{G}) \cong H_*(Y, X; (g')^*\mathcal{G}) = 0$$

implying that f' is acyclic. ∎

Lemma 1.1.5 *Let $f\colon X \to Y$ be a map of connected spaces. Then f is a weak equivalence if and only if it is acyclic and induces an isomorphism of the fundamental groups.*

Proof: Let F be the homotopy fiber of f. If f induces an isomorphism $\pi_1 X \cong \pi_1 Y$ on fundamental groups, then $\pi_1 F$ is abelian. If f is acyclic, then $\pi_1 F$ is perfect. Only the trivial group is both abelian and perfect, so $\pi_1 F = 0$. As $\tilde{H}_* F = 0$ the Whitehead theorem tells us that F is contractible. ∎

1.1.6 The functorial construction

We now give a functorial construction of the plus construction, following the approach of Bousfield and Kan [31, p. 218].

If X is any set, we may consider the free abelian group generated by X, and call it $\mathbf{Z}[X]$. If X is pointed we let $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X] = \mathbf{Z}[X]/\mathbf{Z}[*]$. This defines a functor $\mathcal{E}ns_* \to \mathcal{A}b$ which is adjoint to the forgetful functor $U\colon \mathcal{A}b \to \mathcal{E}ns_*$, and extends degreewise to all spaces. The transformation given by the inclusion of the generators $X \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ (where we symptomatically have forgotten to write the forgetful functor) induces the Hurewicz homomorphism $\pi_*(X) \to \pi_*(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]) = \tilde{H}_*(X)$.

As explained in appendix A.0.12, the fact that $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}$ is a left adjoint implies that it gives rise to a cosimplicial space $\underset{\sim}{\mathbf{Z}}$ via

$$\underset{\sim}{\mathbf{Z}}[X] = \{[n] \mapsto \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}^{n+1}[X]\},$$

where the superscript $n+1$ means that we have used the functor $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}$ $n+1$ times. The total (see section A.1.8) of this cosimplicial space is called the *integral completion* of X and is denoted $\mathbf{Z}_\infty X$.

Bousfield and Kan define the integral completion in a slightly different, but isomorphic, manner, which has the advantage of removing the seeming dependence on a base point. Let $e_X\colon \mathbf{Z}[X] \to \mathbf{Z}$ be the homomorphism that sends $\sum n_i x_i$ to $\sum n_i$. Instead of considering the abelian group $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$, Bousfield and Kan consider the set $e_X^{-1}(1)$. The composite $e_X^{-1}(1) \subseteq \mathbf{Z}[X] \twoheadrightarrow \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ is a bijection, and one may define the integral completion for nonbased spaces using $X \mapsto e_X^{-1}(1)$ instead. A disadvantage is that this no longer gives a cosimplicial abelian group.

If $f\colon X \to Y$ is a function of sets, define $\dot{\mathbf{Z}}[X] \to Y$ by

$$\dot{\mathbf{Z}}[X] = e_X^{-1}(1) \cap \coprod_{y \in Y} \mathbf{Z}[f^{-1}(y)] = \{\textstyle\sum n_i x_i | f(x_1) = \cdots = f(x_n), \sum n_i = 1\} \xrightarrow{\sum n_i x_i \mapsto f(x_1)} Y.$$

Note that if Y is a one-point space, then $\dot{\mathbf{Z}}[X] = e_X^{-1}(1)$, but usually $\dot{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ will not be an abelian group. This construction is natural in f, and we may extend it to spaces, giving a cosimplicial subspace of $\underset{\sim}{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$, whose total is called the *fiberwise integral completion* of X (or rather, of f).

If X is a space, there is a natural fibration $\sin|X| \to \sin|X|/P$ given by "killing, in each component, $\pi_i(X)$ for $i > 1$ and the maximal perfect subgroup $P\pi_1(X) \subseteq \pi_1(X)$". More precisely, let $\sin|X|/P$ be the space obtained from $\sin|X|$ by identifying two simplices $u, v \in \sin|X|_q$ whenever, for every injective map $\phi \in \Delta([1],[q])$, we have $d_i\phi^*u = d_i\phi^*v$ for $i = 0, 1$, and

$$[\phi^*u]^{-1} * [\phi^*v] = 0 \in \pi_1(X, d_0\phi^*u)/P\pi_1(X, d_0\phi^*u)$$

The projection $\sin|Y| \to \sin|X|/P$ is a fibration.

Definition 1.1.7 The plus construction $X \mapsto X^+$ is the functor given by the fiberwise integral completion of $\sin|X| \to \sin|X|/P$ (called the *partial integral completion* in I.1.6.1), and $q_X\colon X \to X^+$ is the natural transformation coming from the inclusion $X \subseteq \dot{\mathbf{Z}}[\sin|X|]$.

That this is the desired definition follows from [31, p. 219], where they use the alternative description of corollary 1.1.3 for an acyclic map:

Proposition 1.1.8 *If X is a pointed connected space, then*

$$q_X\colon X \to X^+$$

is an acyclic map killing the maximal perfect subgroup of the fundamental group. ☺

We note that q_X is always a cofibration (=inclusion).

1.1.9 Uniqueness of the plus construction

Proposition 1.1.8 characterizes the plus construction X^+ up to homotopy under X:

Theorem 1.1.10 *Consider the (solid) diagram of connected spaces*

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, "q_X"'] & Y \\ X^+ \arrow[ur, dashed, "h"] & \end{tikzcd}$$

If Y is fibrant and $P\pi_1X \subseteq ker\{\pi_1X \to \pi_1Y\}$, then there exists a dotted map $h\colon X^+ \to Y$ making the resulting diagram commutative. Furthermore, the map is unique up to homotopy, and is a weak equivalence if f is acyclic.

Proof: Let $S = X^+ \coprod_X Y$ and consider the solid diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, tail, "q_X"'] & Y \arrow[r, equal] \arrow[d, "g"] & Y \arrow[d, two heads] \\ X^+ \arrow[r, "f'"] & S \arrow[r] \arrow[ur, dashed, "H"] & * \end{tikzcd}$$

By lemma 1.1.4, we know that g is acyclic. The van Kampen theorem [86, III.1.4] tells us that π_1S is the "free product" $\pi_1X^+ *_{\pi_1X} \pi_1Y$, and the hypothesis imply that $\pi_1Y \to \pi_1S$ must be an isomorphism.

By lemma 1.1.5, this means that g is a weak equivalence. Furthermore, as q_X is a cofibration, so is g. Thus, as Y is fibrant, there exist a dotted H making the diagram commutative, and we may choose $h = Hf'$. By the universal property of S, any h must factor through f', and the uniqueness follows by the uniqueness of H.

If f is acyclic, then both $f = hq_X$ and q_X are acyclic, and so h must be acyclic. Furthermore, as f is acyclic $ker\{\pi_1 X \to \pi_1 Y\}$ must be perfect, but as $P\pi_1 X \subseteq ker\{\pi_1 X \to \pi_1 Y\}$ we must have $P\pi_1 X = ker\{\pi_1 X \to \pi_1 Y\}$. So, h is acyclic and induces an isomorphism on the fundamental group, and by 1.1.5 h is an equivalence. ∎

Lemma 1.1.11 *Let $X \to Y$ be a k-connected map of connected spaces. Then $X^+ \to Y^+$ is also k-connected*

Proof: Either one uses the characterization of acyclic maps by homology with local coefficients, and check by hand that the lemma is right in low dimensions, or one can use our choice of construction and refer it away: [31, p. 113 and p. 42]. ∎

1.1.12 The plus construction on simplicial spaces

The plus construction on the diagonal of a simplicial space (bisimplicial set) may be performed degreewise in the following sense. Remember, I.1.2.1, that a quasi-perfect group is a group G in which the maximal perfect subgroup is the commutator: $PG = [G, G]$.

Lemma 1.1.13 *Let $\{[s] \mapsto X_s\}$ be a simplicial space such that X_s is connected for every $s \geq 0$. Let $X^+ = \{[s] \mapsto X_s^+\}$ be the "degreewise plus-construction". Consider the diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \operatorname{diag}^* X & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{diag}^*(X^+) \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ (\operatorname{diag}^* X)^+ & \longrightarrow & (\operatorname{diag}^*(X^+))^+ \end{array},$$

where the upper horizontal map is induced by the plus construction $q_{X_s}\colon X_s \to X_s^+$, and the lower horizontal map is plus of the upper horizontal map.

The lower horizontal map is always an equivalence, and the right vertical map is an equivalence if and only if $\pi_1 \operatorname{diag}^*(X^+)$ has no nontrivial perfect subgroup. This is true if, for instance, $\pi_1(X_0^+)$ is abelian, which follows if $\pi_1(X_0)$ is quasi-perfect.

Proof: Let $A(X_s) = fiber\{q_{X_s}\colon X_s \to X_s^+\}$, and consider the sequence

$$A(X) = \{[s] \mapsto A(X_s)\} \longrightarrow X \xrightarrow{q_X} X^+$$

of simplicial spaces. As X_s and X_s^+ are connected, theorem A.5.0.4 gives that

$$\operatorname{diag}^* A(X) \longrightarrow \operatorname{diag}^* X \xrightarrow{\operatorname{diag}^* q_X} \operatorname{diag}^*(X^+)$$

is a fiber sequence. But as each $A(X_s)$ is acyclic, the spectral sequence A.5.0.6 calculating the homology of a bisimplicial set gives that $\tilde{H}_*(\operatorname{diag}^* A(X)) = 0$, and so the map $\mathrm{diag}^* q_X \colon \mathrm{diag}^* X \to \mathrm{diag}^*(X^+)$ is acyclic. The lower horizontal map $(\mathrm{diag}^* X)^+ \to (\mathrm{diag}^*(X^+))^+$ in the displayed square is thus the plus of an acyclic map, and hence acyclic itself. However, $P\pi_1((\mathrm{diag}^* X)^+)$ is trivial, so this map must be an equivalence.

The right vertical map is the plus construction applied to $\mathrm{diag}^*(X^+)$, and so is an equivalence if and only if it induces an equivalence on π_1, i.e., if $P\pi_1(\mathrm{diag}^*(X^+)) = *$. If $\pi_1(X_0)$ is quasi-perfect, then $\pi_1(X_0^+) = \pi_1(X_0)/P\pi_1(X_0) = H_1(X_0)$ is abelian, and so the quotient $\pi_1 \mathrm{diag}^*(X^+)$ is also abelian, and hence has no perfect (nontrivial) subgroups.

∎

Remark 1.1.14 *Note that some condition is needed to ensure that* $\pi_1 \mathrm{diag}^*(X^+)$ *is without nontrivial perfect subgroups, for let* $X_q = BF_q$ *where* $F \xrightarrow{\sim} P$ *is a free resolution of a perfect group* P*. Then* $\mathrm{diag}^*(X^+) \simeq BP \not\simeq BP^+$*.*

1.1.15 Nilpotent fibrations and the plus construction

Let π and G be groups, and let π act on G. The action is *nilpotent* if there exists a finite filtration

$$* = G_{n+1} \subseteq G_n \subseteq \cdots \subseteq G_2 \subseteq G_1 = G$$

respected by the action, such that each $G_{i+1} \subset G_i$ is a normal subgroup and such that the quotients G_i/G_{i+1} are abelian with induced trivial action.

A group G is said to be *nilpotent* if the self-action via inner automorphisms is nilpotent.

Definition 1.1.16 If $f \colon E \to B$ is a fibration of connected spaces with connected fiber F, then $\pi_1(E)$ acts on each $\pi_i(F)$ (see A.4.1), and we say that f is *nilpotent* if these actions are nilpotent. Generally, we will say that a map of connected spaces $X \to Y$ is nilpotent if the associated fibration is.

Lemma 1.1.17 *If* $F \to E \to B$ *is any fiber sequence of connected spaces where* $\pi_1 E$ *acts trivially on* $\pi_* F$*, then the fibration is nilpotent.*

Proof: Since $\pi_q F$ is abelian for $q > 1$, a trivial action is by definition nilpotent, and the only thing we have to show is that the action of $\pi_1 E$ on $\pi_1 F$ is nilpotent. Let $A' = ker\{\pi_1 F \to \pi_1 E\}$ and $A'' = ker\{\pi_1 E \to \pi_1 B\}$. Since $\pi_1 E$ acts trivially on A' and A'', and both are abelian (the former as it is the cokernel of $\pi_2 E \to \pi_2 B$, and the latter as it is in the center of $\pi_1 E$), $\pi_1 E$ acts nilpotently on $\pi_1 F$. ∎

Lemma 1.1.18 *Let* $f \colon X \to Y$ *be a map of connected spaces. If either*

1. *f fits in a fiber sequence* $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \longrightarrow Z$ *where Z is connected and $P\pi_1(Z)$ is trivial, or*

2. *f is a nilpotent,*

then

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ {\scriptstyle q_X}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle q_Y}\downarrow \\ X^+ & \xrightarrow{f^+} & Y^+ \end{array}$$

is (homotopy) cartesian.

Proof: Part 1. Consider the map of fiber sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y & \longrightarrow & Z \\ \downarrow & & {\scriptstyle q_Y}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle q_Z}\downarrow \\ F & \longrightarrow & Y^+ & \longrightarrow & Z^+ \end{array}$$

in the homotopy category. Since $P\pi_1 Z$ is trivial, $q_Z \colon Z \to Z^+$ is an equivalence, and so the homotopy fibers of $X \to F$ and q_Y are equivalent. Hence the map $X \to F$ is acyclic. To see that $X \to F$ is equivalent to q_X, theorem 1.1.10 gives that we must show that $\pi_1 X \to \pi_1 F$ is surjective and that $\pi_1 F$ is without nontrivial perfect subgroups. Surjectivity follows by chasing the map of long exact sequences of fibrations. That a perfect subgroup $P \subseteq \pi_1 F$ must be trivial follows since $\pi_1 Y^+$ is without nontrivial perfect subgroups, and so P must be a subgroup of the abelian subgroup $\ker\{\pi_1 F \to \pi_1 Y^+\} \cong \operatorname{coker}\{\pi_2 Y^+ \to \pi_2 Z^+\}$.

Part 2. That f is nilpotent is equivalent, up to homotopy, to the statement that f factors as a tower of fibrations

$$Y = Y_0 \xleftarrow{f_1} Y_1 \xleftarrow{f_2} \dots \xleftarrow{f_k} Y_k = X$$

where each f_i fits in a fiber sequence

$$Y_i \xrightarrow{f_i} Y_{i-1} \longrightarrow K(G_i, n_i)$$

with $n_i > 1$ (see e.g., [31, page 61]). But statement 1 tells us that this implies that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y_i & \longrightarrow & Y_i^+ \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y_{i-1} & \longrightarrow & Y_{i-1}^+ \end{array}$$

is cartesian, and by induction on k, the statement follows. ∎

1.2 K-theory of simplicial rings

A simplicial monoid M is called *group-like* if $\pi_0 M$ is a group. This has the nice consequence that we may form a good classifying space. That is, if BM is (the diagonal of) the space you get by taking the classifying space degreewise, then $\Omega BM \simeq M$ (see corollary A.5.1.3).

If A is a simplicial (associative and unital) ring, Waldhausen [246] defined $\widehat{GL}_n(A)$ as the pullback of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \widehat{GL}_n(A) & \longrightarrow & M_n(A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ GL_n(\pi_0 A) & \longrightarrow & M_n(\pi_0 A) \end{array}$$

(since the rightmost vertical map is a surjection of simplicial abelian groups, it is a fibration, c.f. A.3.1.3, which means that the square is also a *homotopy* pullback in the sense of A.7). Similar to the discrete case, $\widehat{GL}_n(A)$ sits inside $\widehat{GL}_{n+1}(A)$ via $m \mapsto m \oplus 1$, and we let $\widehat{GL}(A)$ be the union of the $\widehat{GL}_n(A)$. As $\pi_0\widehat{GL}_n(A) = GL_n(\pi_0(A))$ we get that $\widehat{GL}_n(A)$, and hence also $\widehat{GL}(A)$, is group-like.

In analogy with the definition of the algebraic K-theory space I.1.6.6 of a ring, Waldhausen suggested the following definition.

Definition 1.2.1 If A is a simplicial ring, then the algebraic K-theory space of A is

$$K(A) = B\widehat{GL}(A)^+$$

We note that

$$\pi_1 K(A) = \pi_1 B\widehat{GL}(A)/P(\pi_1 B\widehat{GL}(A)) = GL(\pi_0 A)/P(GL(\pi_0 A)) = K_1(\pi_0 A)$$

(where $P(\,)$ denotes the maximal perfect subgroup, I.1.2.1). This pattern does not continue, the fiber of $K(A) \to K(\pi_0 A)$ has in general highly nontrivial homotopy groups. Waldhausen proves in [246, proposition 1.2] that if k is the first **positive** number for which $\pi_k A$ is nonzero, the first nonvanishing group of the fiber of $K(A) \to K(\pi_0 A)$ sits in dimension $k+1$ and is isomorphic to the zero'th Hochschild homology group $HH_0(\pi_0 A, \pi_k A) = \pi_k A/[\pi_0 A, \pi_k A]$. We shall not prove this now, but settle for the weaker

Lemma 1.2.2 *If $B \to A$ is a $k > 0$-connected map of simplicial rings, then the induced map $K(B) \to K(A)$ is $(k+1)$-connected.*

Proof: Obviously $M_n A \to M_n B$ is k-connected. As $k > 0$, we have $\pi_0 B \cong \pi_0 A$, and so $\widehat{GL}_n(B) \to \widehat{GL}_n(A)$ is also k-connected. Hence, the map of classifying spaces $B\widehat{GL}(B) \to B\widehat{GL}(A)$ is $(k+1)$-connected, and we are done as the plus construction preserves connectivity of maps (1.1.11). ∎

1.2.3 Spaces under BA_5

Let A_n be the alternating group on n letters. For $n \geq 5$ this is a perfect group with no nontrivial normal subgroups. We give a description of Quillen's plus for BA_5 by adding cells. Since A_5 is perfect, it is enough, by theorem 1.1.10, to display a map $BA_5 \to Y$ inducing an isomorphism in integral homology, where Y is simply connected.

Let α be a nontrivial element in A_5. This can be thought of as a map $S^1 = \Delta[1]/\partial\Delta[1] \to BA_5$ (consider α as an element in B_1A_5, since $B_0A_5 = *$ this is a loop). Form the pushout

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S^1 & \longrightarrow & D^2 \\ {\scriptstyle\alpha}\big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ BA_5 & \longrightarrow & X_1 \end{array}.$$

Since A_5 has no nontrivial normal subgroups, the van Kampen theorem [86, III.1.4] tells us that X_1 is simply connected. The homology sequence of the pushout splits up into

$$0 \to H_2(A_5) \to H_2(X_1) \to H_1(S^1) \to 0, \qquad \text{and} \qquad H_q(A_5) \cong H_q(X_1), \text{ for } q \neq 1.$$

Since $H_1(S^1) \cong \mathbf{Z}$, we may choose a splitting $\mathbf{Z} \to H_2(X_1) \cong \pi_2(X_1)$, and we let $\beta\colon S^2 \to \sin|X_1|$ represent the image of a generator of $\mathbf{Z}$. Form the pushout

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S^2 & \longrightarrow & D^3 \\ {\scriptstyle\beta}\big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ \sin|X_1| & \longrightarrow & X_2 \end{array}$$

We get isomorphisms $H_q(X_1) \cong H_q(X_2)$ for $q \neq 2, 3$, and an exact diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} & & & H_2(A_5) \arrow[d] & & \\ 0 \arrow[r] & H_3(X_1) \arrow[r] & H_3(X_2) \arrow[r] & H_2(S^2) \arrow[r] & H_2(X_1) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & H_2(X_2) \arrow[r] & 0. \\ & & & & H_1(S^1) & & \end{tikzcd}$$

However, by the definition of β, the composite $H_2(S^2) \to H_2(X_1) \to H_1(S^1)$ is an isomorphism. Hence $H_3(X_1) \cong H_3(X_2)$ and $H_2(A_5) \cong H_2(X_2)$. Collecting what we have gotten, we get that the map $BA_5 \to X_2$ is an isomorphism in homology and $\pi_1 X_2 = 0$, and

$$BA_5 \to \text{“}BA_5^+\text{”} = X_2$$

is a model for the plus construction.

Proposition 1.2.4 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be the category of spaces under BA_5 with the property that if $BA_5 \to Y \in ob\mathcal{C}$ then the image of A_5 normally generates $P\pi_1 Y$. Then the bottom arrow in the pushout diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} BA_5 & \longrightarrow & \text{“}BA_5^+\text{”} \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ Y & \longrightarrow & \text{“}Y^+\text{”} \end{array}$$

is a functorial model for the plus construction in $\mathcal{C}$.

Proof: As it is clearly functorial, we only have to check the homotopy properties of $Y \to$ "Y^+" as given in theorem 1.1.10. By lemma 1.1.4, it is acyclic, and by van Kampen [86, III.1.4] $\pi_1(\text{“}Y^+\text{”}) = \pi_1 Y *_{A_5} \{1\}$. Using that the image of A_5 normally generates $P\pi_1 Y$ we get that $\pi_1(\text{“}Y^+\text{”}) = \pi_1 Y/P\pi_1 Y$, and we are done. ∎

Example 1.2.5 If R is some ring, we get a map

$$A_5 \subseteq \Sigma_5 \subseteq \Sigma_\infty \subseteq GL(\mathbf{Z}) \to GL(R).$$

We will show that $E(R)$ is normally generated by

$$\alpha = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \in A_3 \subseteq A_5.$$

The relation $e^1_{41} = [[\alpha, e^{-1}_{43}], e^{-1}_{21}]$ reduces the problem to showing that e^1_{41} normally generates $E(R)$, which follows from the Steinberg relations I.1.5: if $r \in R$, then $e^r_{i1} = [e^r_{i4}, e^1_{41}]$ if $1 \neq i \neq 4$, $e^r_{41} = [e^r_{4i}, e^1_{i1}]$ if $i \neq 1$, $e^r_{4j} = [e^1_{41}, e^r_{1j}]$ if $1 \neq j \neq 4$ and finally $e^r_{ij} = [e^r_{i1}, e^1_{1j}]$ if $1 \neq j \neq i \neq 4$. Hence, all spaces under BA_5, satisfying the requirement that the map on fundamental groups is the inclusion $A_5 \subseteq GL(R)$ lie in $\mathcal{C}$. In particular, if A is an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra we get that $B\widehat{GL}(A)$, as defined in 2.3.1 below, is in this class, since $\pi_1 B\widehat{GL}(A) \cong GL(\pi_0 A)$, and the algebraic K-theory of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras *could* be defined as "$B\widehat{GL}(A)^+$".

1.3 Degreewise K-theory

Waldhausen's construction $B\widehat{GL}(A)^+$is very different from what we get if we apply Quillen's definition to A degreewise, i.e.,

$$K^{deg}(A) = \operatorname{diag}^*\{[q] \mapsto K(A_q)\}.$$

This is also a useful definition. For instance, we know by [85] that if A is a regular and right Noetherian ring, then $K(A)$ agrees with the Karoubi–Villamajor K-theory of A, which may be defined to be the degreewise K-theory of a simplicial ring $\Delta A = \{[q] \mapsto A[t_0, \dots, t_q]/\sum t_i = 1\}$ with

$$d_i t_j = \begin{cases} t_j & \text{if } j < i \\ 0 & \text{if } i = j \\ t_{j-1} & \text{if } j > i \end{cases}$$

That is, for regular right Noetherian rings the canonical map $K(A) \to K^{deg}(\Delta A)$ is a weak equivalence, and interestingly, it is $K^{deg}(\Delta A)$ which is the central actor in important theories like motivic homotopy theory, not $K(A)$. On the other hand, since $t_1 \in \Delta_1 A$ is a path between 0 and 1, and any connected unital simplicial ring is contractible ("multiplication by a path from 0 to 1" gives a contraction), we get by lemma 1.2.2 that $K(\Delta A)$ is contractible, and so, in this case Waldhausen's functor give very little information.

Lemma 1.3.1 *Let A be a simplicial ring. There is a natural chain of weak equivalences*

$$K^{deg}(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} K^{deg}(A)^+ \xleftarrow{\sim} BGL(A)^+.$$

Proof: The Whitehead lemma I.1.2.2 states that $K_1(A_0)$ is abelian, and so lemma 1.1.13 with $X = BGL(A)$ gives the desired equivalences. ∎

The inclusion $GL(A) \subset \widehat{GL}(A)$ induces a map

$$BGL(A)^+ \to B\widehat{GL}(A)^+ = K(A)$$

By lemma 1.3.1, the first space is equivalent to $K^{\mathrm{deg}}(A)$, and it is of interest to know what information is preserved by this map.

Example 1.3.2 The following example is rather degenerate, but still of great importance. For instance, it was the example we considered when talking about stable algebraic K-theory in section I.3.5.

Let A be a discrete ring, and let P be a *reduced* A-bimodule (in the sense that it is a simplicial bimodule, and $P_0 = 0$). Consider the square zero extension $A \ltimes P$ as in I.3.1 (that is, $A \ltimes P$ is isomorphic to $A \oplus P$ as a simplicial abelian group, and the multiplication is given by $(a_1, p_1)\cdot(a_2, p_2) = (a_1a_2, a_1p_2 + p_1a_2)$). Then one sees that $GL(A \ltimes P)$ is actually equal to $\widehat{GL}(A \ltimes P)$: as P is reduced and A discrete $GL(\pi_0(A \ltimes P)) \cong GL(\pi_0 A) = GL(A)$ and as P is square zero $\ker\{GL(A \ltimes P) \to GL(A)\} = (1 + M(P))^\times \cong M(P)$. Hence, all "homotopy invertible" matrices are actually invertible: $GL(A \ltimes P) = \widehat{GL}(A \ltimes P)$.

If you count the number of occurrences of the comparison of degreewise and ordinary K-theory in what is to come, it is this trivial example that will pop up most often. However, we have essential need of the more general cases too. We are content with only an equivalence, and even more so, only an equivalence in relative K-theory. In order to extend this example to cases where A might not be discrete and P not reduced, we have to do some preliminary work.

1.3.3 Degreewise vs. ordinary K-theory of simplicial rings

Recall the definition of the subgroup of elementary matrices $E \subseteq GL$. For this section, we reserve the symbol $K_1(A)$ for the quotient of simplicial groups $\{[q] \mapsto K_1(A_q)\} = GL(A)/E(A)$, which must not be confused with $\pi_1 K(A) \cong K_1(\pi_0 A)$. Let $\widehat{E}(A) \subset \widehat{GL}(A)$ consist of the components of Waldhausen's grouplike monoid $\widehat{GL}(A)$ (see subsection 1.2) belonging to the subgroup $E(\pi_0 A) \subseteq GL(\pi_0 A)$ of perfect matrices. Much of the material in this section is adapted from the paper [55].

Theorem 1.3.4 *Let A be an associative (simplicial) ring. Then*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} BGL(A) & \longrightarrow & BGL(A)^+ \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ B\widehat{GL}(A) & \longrightarrow & B\widehat{GL}(A)^+ \end{array}$$

is (homotopy) cartesian.

Proof: Note that both horizontal maps in the left square of

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} BE(A) & \longrightarrow & BGL(A) & \longrightarrow & BK_1(A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B\widehat{E}(A) & \longrightarrow & B\widehat{GL}(A) & \longrightarrow & BK_1(\pi_0 A) \end{array}$$

satisfy the conditions in lemma 1.1.18.1, since both rows are fiber sequences with base spaces simplicial abelian groups.

So we are left with proving that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} BE(A) & \longrightarrow & BE(A)^+ \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B\widehat{E}(A) & \longrightarrow & B\widehat{E}(A)^+ \end{array}$$

is cartesian, but by lemma 1.1.18.2 this follows from the lemma below. ∎

Lemma 1.3.5 *(c.f. [72] or [232]) The map $BE(A) \to B\widehat{E}(A)$ is nilpotent.*

Proof: For $1 \leq k \leq \infty$ let $j_k \colon E_k(A) \to \widehat{E}_k(A)$ be the inclusions and let F_k be the homotopy fiber of $Bj_k \colon BE_k(A) \to B\widehat{E}_k(A)$. For convenience we abbreviate our notation for the colimits under stabilization $\widehat{E}_k(A) \to \widehat{E}_{k+1}(A)$, given by block sum $g \mapsto g \oplus 1$, and write $j = j_\infty \colon E(A) \subseteq \widehat{E}(A)$ and $F = F_\infty$.

Instead of showing that the action of $\pi_0 E(A) \cong \pi_1 BE(A)$ on $\pi_*(F)$ is nilpotent, we show that $\pi_0 E(A) \to \pi_0 Map_*(F,F) \to End(\pi_*(F))$ is trivial. In view of 1.1.17 this is sufficient, and it is in fact an equivalent statement since $\pi_0 E(A)$ is perfect (being a quotient of $E(A_0)$) and any nilpotent action of a perfect group is trivial.

We have an isomorphism

$$Map_*(F,F) \cong \lim_{\overleftarrow{n}} Map_*(F_n, F)$$

and, since homotopy groups commute with filtered colimits,

$$End(\pi_*(F)) \cong \lim_{\overleftarrow{n}} Hom(\pi_*(F_n), \pi_*(F)).$$

Hence it is enough to show that for each k the composite

$$E(A_0) \twoheadrightarrow \pi_0 E(A) \to \lim_{\overleftarrow{n}} \pi_0 Map_*(F_n, F) \to \pi_0 Map_*(F_k, F) \to Hom(\pi_*(F_k), \pi_*(F))$$

is trivial.

Now we fix a $k > 2$. To show that the homomorphism is trivial, it is enough to show that a set of normal generators is in the kernel. In example 1.2.5 above, we saw that $e^1_{4,1}$ is a normal generator for $E(A_0)$, and by just the same argument $e^1_{k+1,1}$ will also normally generate $E(A_0)$, so it is enough to show that $e^1_{k+1,1}$ is killed by $E(A_0) \to Hom(\pi_*(F_k), \pi_*(F))$.

Consider the simplicial category $j_k/1$ with objects $\widehat{E}_k(A)$ and where a morphism in degree q from m to n is a $g \in E_k(A_q)$ such that $m = n \cdot g$. The classifying space $B(j_k/1)$ is isomorphic to the bar construction $B(\widehat{E}_k(A), E_k(A), *) = \{[q] \mapsto \widehat{E}_k(A) \times E_k(A)^{\times q}\}$. The forgetful functor $j_k/1 \to E_k(A)$ induces an equivalence $B(j_k/1) \xrightarrow{\sim} F_k$ (see e.g., A.5.1.4) compatible with stablization $t\colon E_k(A) \to E_{k+1}(A)$. By A.4.2.1, the action on the fiber

$$B(j_k/1) \times E_k(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} B(j_k/1) \times \Omega B E_k(A) \to B(j_k/1)$$

is induced by the simplicial functor

$$j_k/1 \times E_k(A) \xrightarrow{(m,g)\mapsto i_g(m)} j_k/1$$

(where $E_k(A)$ now is considered as a simplicial discrete category with one object for every element in $E_k(A)$ and only identity morphisms) sending (m, g) to $i_g(m) = gmg^{-1}$.

In order to prove that $e^1_{k+1,1}$ is killed, we consider the factorization

$$E(A_0) \to \pi_0 Map_*(B(j_k/1), B(j/1)) \to Hom(\pi_*(F_k), \pi_*(F))$$

and show that $e^1_{k+1,1}$ is killed already in $\pi_0 Map_*(B(j_k/1), B(j/1))$.

As natural transformations give rise to homotopies (c.f. A.1.4.2), we are done if we display a natural simplicial isomorphism between t and $i_{e^1_{k+1,1}} \circ t$ in the category of pointed functors $[j_k/1, j/1]_*$, where $t(m) = m \oplus I$ and $i_{e^1_{k+1,1}}(m) = e^1_{k+1,1} m e^{-1}_{k+1,1}$. If $m = (m_{ij}) \in M_k(A)$ is any matrix, we have that $i_{e^1_{k+1,1}}(t(m)) = t(m) \cdot \tau(m)$ where

$$\tau(m) = e^{-1}_{k+1,1} \cdot \prod_{1 \le j \le k} e^{m_{1j}}_{k+1,j}.$$

It is easy to check that $\tau(m)$ is simplicial ($\psi^* \tau(m) = \tau(\psi^* m)$ for $\psi \in \Delta$) and natural in $m \in j_k/1$. Thus, $m \mapsto \tau(m)$ is the desired natural isomorphism between $i_{e^1_{k+1,1}} t$ and t in $[j_k/1, j/1]_*$. ∎

The outcome is that we are free to choose our model for the fiber of the plus construction applied to $B\widehat{GL}(A)$ among the known models for the fiber of the plus construction applied to $BGL(A)$:

Corollary 1.3.6 *If X is any functor from discrete rings to spaces with a natural transformation $X(-) \to BGL(-)$ such that*

$$X(A) \to BGL(A) \to BGL(A)^+$$

is a fiber sequence for any ring A, then X extended degreewise to a functor of simplicial rings is such that

$$X(A) \to B\widehat{GL}(A) \to B\widehat{GL}(A)^+$$

is a fiber sequence for any simplicial ring A.

Proof: By theorem 1.3.4 is enough to show that $[q] \mapsto X(A_q)$ is equivalent to the fiber of $BGL(A) \to BGL(A)^+$, but this will follow if $\{[q] \mapsto BGL(A_q)\}^+ \to \{[q] \mapsto BGL(A_q)^+\}$ is an equivalence. By lemma 1.1.13 this is true since $GL(A_0)$ is quasi-perfect, which is part of the Whitehead lemma I.1.2.2. ∎

1.4 K-theory of simplicial radical extensions may be defined degreewise

If $f\colon B \to A$ is a map of simplicial (associative and unital) rings, we will let $K(f)$ denote the fiber of the induced map $K(B) \to K(A)$.

If f is surjective and $I_q = \ker\{f_q\colon B_q \to A_q\}$ is inside the *Jacobson radical* $rad(B_q) \subseteq B_q$ (that is, $1+x$ is invertible in B_q if $x \in I_q$) for every $q \geq 0$ we say that f is a *radical extension*.

We recall some basic properties of radical extensions. Notice that the Jacobson radical is a two-sided ideal, and that any nil-ideal (i.e., an ideal consisting of nilpotent elements) is contained in the Jacobson radical.

Lemma 1.4.1 *([10, p. 85-86]) Let $f\colon B \to A$ be a radical extension of discrete rings with kernel I. Then*

1. *(Nakayama's lemma) If M is a finitely generated B-module such that $MI = M$, then $M = 0$.*

2. *For every n, the two-sided ideal $M_n(I)$ is contained in the Jacobson radical of the matrix ring $M_n(B)$.*

3. *For every n, the induced group homomorphism $GL_n(B) \to GL_n(A)$ is a surjection with kernel $(1 + M_n(I))^\times$, the subgroup of $GL_n(B)$ of matrices of the form $1 + m$ where $m \in M_n(I)$.*

☺

We studied radical extensions of discrete rings in section I.2.5, and by the following proposition, this gives information about the simplicial case as well:

Proposition 1.4.2 *Let $f\colon B \twoheadrightarrow A$ be a radical extension of simplicial rings. Then the relative K-theory $K(f)$ is equivalent to* $\mathrm{diag}^*\{[q] \mapsto K(f_q)\}$.

Proof: The proof follows closely the one given in [89] for the nilpotent case. Let $I = \ker\{f\colon B \to A\}$. Since all spaces are connected we may just as well consider

$$[q] \mapsto fiber\{BGL(B_q)^+ \to BGL(A_q)^+\}.$$

As $\pi_1(BGL(-)^+)$ has values in abelian groups, we see by lemma 1.1.13. that $\mathrm{diag}^*\{[q] \mapsto BGL(-)^+\}$ is equivalent to the plus of the diagonal $BGL(A)^+$. Hence to prove the proposition it is enough to prove that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} BGL(B)^+ & \longrightarrow & B\widehat{GL}(B)^+ \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ BGL(A)^+ & \longrightarrow & B\widehat{GL}(A)^+ \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian.

Note that $GL_n(B_q) \to GL_n(A_q)$ is a group epimorphism with kernel $(1 + M_n(I_q))^\times$, the multiplicative group of all $n \times n$ matrices of the form $1 + m$ where m has entries in I. Hence $B(1 + M(I))^\times$ is the (homotopy) fiber of $BGL(B) \to BGL(A)$.

Furthermore, $(1 + M_n(I))^\times$ is also the fiber of the epimorphism of group-like simplicial monoids $\widehat{GL}_n(B) \to \widehat{GL}_n(A)$. This follows as $J = \ker\{\pi_0(B) \to \pi_0(A)\}$ is a radical ideal in $\pi_0(B)$ (for any $x \in J$, the sum $1 + x$ is invertible in $\pi_0 B$ since there is a $y \in I_0$ mapping to x such that $1 + y$ is invertible in B_0), which implies that

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + M_n(J))^\times &= \ker\{GL_n(\pi_0(B)) \to GL_n(\pi_0(A))\} \\ &= \ker\{M_n(\pi_0(B)) \to M_n(\pi_0(A))\}. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently $B(1 + M(I))^\times$ is also the (homotopy) fiber of $B\widehat{GL}(B) \to B\widehat{GL}(A)$, and so

$$\begin{array}{ccc} BGL(B) & \longrightarrow & BGL(A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B\widehat{GL}(B) & \longrightarrow & B\widehat{GL}(A) \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian. By theorem 1.3.4 all vertical squares in the cube of

$$\begin{tikzcd}[row sep=small, column sep=small]
& BGL(B) \arrow[rr] \arrow[dl] \arrow[dd] & & BGL(B)^+ \arrow[dl] \arrow[dd] \\
BGL(A) \arrow[rr, crossing over] \arrow[dd] & & BGL(A)^+ & \\
& B\widehat{GL}(B) \arrow[rr] \arrow[dl] & & B\widehat{GL}(B)^+ \arrow[dl] \\
B\widehat{GL}(A) \arrow[rr] & & B\widehat{GL}(A)^+ \arrow[from=uu, crossing over] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

reduced spaces and 1-connected maps, except possibly

$$\begin{array}{ccc} BGL(B)^+ & \longrightarrow & B\widehat{GL}(B)^+ \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ BGL(A)^+ & \longrightarrow & B\widehat{GL}(A)^+ \end{array}$$

are homotopy cartesian, and so this square is also homotopy cartesian. ∎

Example 1.4.3 The resolving complex and Stein relativization. When we have an extension where the kernel is not in the radical, the difference between degreewise and ordinary K-theory is significant. However, there is a historical precedence for studying relative situations by means of degreewise K-theory. We have already seen in I.1.4.1 that the most naïve kind of excision fails for algebraic K-theory. Related to this is the classical method of describing relative K-theory. In Bass' [10] and Milnor's [181] books on K-theory, the Stein relativization is used to describe relative K-theory. As is admitted in Milnor's book [181, p. 56], this is not a satisfactory description, and we will give the reason why it works in low dimensions, but fails higher up. See [235] to get further examples of the failure.

Let $f\colon A \to B$ be a surjection of associative rings with unit, and define

$$K_i^{Stein}(f) = \operatorname{coker}\{K_i(A) \to K_i(A \times_B A)\}$$

given by the diagonal splitting $A \to A \times_B A$. The question is: when do we have exact sequences

$$\cdots \to K_{i+1}(A) \to K_{i+1}(B) \to K_i^{Stein}(f) \to K_i(A) \to K_i(B) \to \dots,$$

or more precisely, how far is

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(A \times_B A) & \xrightarrow{pr_1} & K(A) \\ {\scriptstyle pr_2}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle f}\downarrow \\ K(A) & \xrightarrow{f} & K(B) \end{array}$$

from being cartesian?

The failure turns up for $i = 2$, but this oughtn't be considered as bad as was fashionable at the time: The Stein relativization can be viewed as a first approximation to the fiber as follows. Let S be the "resolving complex", i.e., the simplicial ring given in dimension q as the $q+1$ fold product of A over f with the various projections and diagonals as face and degeneracies

$$\dots A \times_B A \times_B A \substack{\textstyle\rightarrow\\[-0.6ex]\textstyle\rightarrow\\[-0.6ex]\textstyle\rightarrow} A \times_B A \rightrightarrows A$$

This gives a factorization $A \to S \to B$ where the former map is inclusion of the zero skeleton, and the latter is a weak equivalence (since $A \to B$ was assumed to be a surjection). Now, as one may check directly, $GL(-)$ respects products, and

$$GL(S_q) \cong GL(A) \times_{GL(B)} \cdots \times_{GL(B)} GL(A)$$

($q+1$ $GL(A)$ factors). Just as for the simplicial ring S, this simplicial group is concentrated in degree zero, but as GL does not respect surjections we see that $\pi_0(GL(S)) \cong im\{GL(A) \to GL(B)\}$ may be different from $GL(B)$. But this is fine, for as $E(-)$ respects surjections we get that $GL(B)/im\{GL(A) \to GL(B)\} \cong \bar{K}_1(B) = K_1(B)/im\{K_1(A) \to K_1(B)\}$, and we get a fiber sequence

$$BGL(S) \to B\widehat{GL}(S) \to B\bar{K}_1(B)$$

where the middle space is equivalent to $BGL(B)$. Applying theorem 1.3.4 (overkill as $\bar{K}_1(B)$ is abelian) to $BGL(S) \to B\widehat{GL}(S)$ we get that there is a fiber sequence

$$K^{deg}(S) \to K(B) \to B\bar{K}_1(B)$$

which means that $\phi(f) = fiber\{K(A) \to K^{deg}(S)\}$ is the connected cover of the fiber of $K(A) \to K(B)$.

We may regard $\phi(f)$ as a simplicial space $[q] \mapsto \phi_q(f) = fiber\{K(A) \to K(S_q)\}$. Then $\phi_0(f) = 0$ and $\pi_i(\phi_1(f)) = K^{Stein}_{i+1}(f)$. An analysis shows that $d_0 - d_1 + d_2 \colon \pi_0(\phi_2(f)) \to \pi_0(\phi_1(f))$ is zero, whereas $d_0 - d_1 + d_2 - d_3 \colon \pi_0(\phi_3(f)) \to \pi_0(\phi_2(f))$ is surjective, so the E_2 term of the spectral sequence associated to the simplicial space looks like

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} 0 & K^{Stein}_3(f)/? & \dots & & \\ 0 & K^{Stein}_2(f)/? & ? & \dots & \\ 0 & K^{Stein}_1(f) & 0 & ? & \dots \end{array}$$

This gives that $K^{Stein}_1(f)$ is correct, wheras $K^{Stein}_2(f)$ surjects onto π_2 of relative K-theory.

2 Agreement of the various K-theories.

This section aims at removing any uncertainty due to the many definitions of algebraic K-theory that we have used. In 2.1 we show that the approach of Waldhausen and Segal agree, at least for additive categories. In section 2.2 we show that Segal's machine is an infinite delooping of the plus-construction, and show how this is related to group-completion. In 2.3 we give the definition of the algebraic K-theory space of an **S**-algebra. For *spherical group rings* as in II.1.4.4.2, i.e., **S**-algebras of the form $\mathbf{S}[G]$ for G a simplicial group, we show that the algebraic K-theory space of $\mathbf{S}[G]$ is the same as Waldhausen's algebraic K-theory of the classifying space BG. Lastly, we show that the definition of the algebraic K-theory of an **S**-algebra as defined in chapter II is the infinite delooping of the plus-construction.

2.1 The agreement of Waldhausen's and Segal's approaches

We give a quick proof of the fact that the S-construction of chapter I and the $\bar{H}$-construction of chapter II coincide when applied to additive categories. This fact is much more general, and applies to a large class of categories with cofibrations and weak equivalences where the cofibrations are "splittable up to weak equivalences", see Waldhausen's [249, section 1.8].

2.1.1 Segal's construction applied to categories with cofibrations

Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be a category with cofibrations. By forgetting structure we may consider it as a category with sum and apply Segal's Γ-space machine II.3 to it, or we may apply Waldhausen's S-construction I.2.2.1.

Note that Segal's Γ-space machine could be reinterpreted as the functor $\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}$ from the category Γ^o of finite pointed sets to the category of categories with sum, whose value at

$k_+ = \{0, \dots, k\}$ is the category $\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(k_+)$ described as follows. Its objects are functors to $\mathfrak{C}$ from the pointed category of subsets and inclusions of $k_+ = \{0, 1, \dots, k\}$, sending $0_+ = \{0\}$ to the zero object $0 \in \mathfrak{C}$ and pushout squares to pushout squares in $\mathfrak{C}$. The morphisms are simpy natural transformations of such diagrams. For instance, $\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(1_+)$ is isomorphic to $\mathfrak{C}$, whereas $\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(2_+)$ consists of pushout diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & c_{\{0,1\}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ c_{\{0,2\}} & \longrightarrow & c_{\{0,1,2\}} \end{array} .$$

We see that $\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(k_+)$ is equivalent as a category to $\mathfrak{C}^{\times k}$ via the map sending a functor $c \in ob\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(k_+)$ to $c_{\{0,1\}}, \dots, c_{\{0,k\}}$. However, $\mathfrak{C}^{\times k}$ is not necessarily functorial in k, making $\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}$ the preferred model for the bar construction of $\mathfrak{C}$.

Also, this formulation of $\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}$ is naturally isomorphic to the one we gave in II.3, the advantage is that it is easier to compare with Waldhausen's construction.

Any functor from Γ^o is naturally a simplicial object by precomposing with the circle $S^1\colon \Delta^o \to \Gamma^o$ (after all, the circle is a simplicial **finite pointed** set). We could of course precompose with any other simplicial finite pointed set, and part of the point about Γ-spaces was that if M was a functor from Γ^o to sets, then $\{m \mapsto M(S^m)\}$ is a spectrum.

2.1.2 The relative $\bar{H}$-construction.

In order to compare Segal's and Waldhausen's contructions it will be convenient to have a concrete model for the homotopy fiber of $\bar{H}$ applied to an exact functor $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ of categories with sum (or more generally, a monoidal functor of symmetric monoidal categories). To this end we define the simplicial Γ-category $C_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}}$ by the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}}(X) & \longrightarrow & \bar{H}\mathcal{D}(PS^1 \wedge X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^1 \wedge X) & \longrightarrow & \bar{H}\mathcal{D}(S^1 \wedge X) \end{array} .$$

Here PS^1 is the "path space" on S^1 as defined in appendix A.1.7: $(PS^1)_q = S^1_{q+1}$ where the ith face map is the $i+1$st face map in S^1, and where the zeroth face map of S^1 induces a weak equivalence $PS^1 \to S^1_0 = *$. The point of this construction is lemma 2.1.5 which displays it as a relative version of the $\bar{H}$-construction, much like the usual construction involving the path space in topological spaces.

Usually categorical pullbacks are of little value, but in this case it turns out that it is equivalent to the *fiber product*.

Definition 2.1.3 Let $\mathcal{C}_1 \xrightarrow{f_1} \mathcal{C}_0 \xleftarrow{f_2} \mathcal{C}_2$ be a diagram of categories. The *fiber product* $\prod(f_1, f_2)$ is the category whose objects are tuples (c_1, c_2, α) where $c_i \in ob\mathcal{C}_i$ for $i = 1, 2$

and α is an isomorphism in $\mathcal{C}_0$ from f_1c_1 to f_2c_2; and where a morphism from (c_1, c_2, α) to (d_1, d_2, β) is a pair of morphisms $g_i : c_i \to d_i$ for $i = 1, 2$ such that

$$\begin{tikzcd} f_1c_1 \arrow[r, "\alpha"] \arrow[d, "f_1g_1"'] & f_2c_2 \arrow[d, "f_2g_2"'] \\ f_1d_1 \arrow[r, "\beta"] & f_2d_2 \end{tikzcd}$$

commutes.

Fiber products (like homotopy pullbacks) are good because of their invariance: if you have a diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathcal{C}_1 \arrow[r, "f_1"] \arrow[d, "\simeq"] & \mathcal{C}_0 \arrow[d, "\simeq"] & \mathcal{C}_2 \arrow[l, "f_2"'] \arrow[d, "\simeq"] \\ \mathcal{C}'_1 \arrow[r, "f'_1"] & \mathcal{C}'_0 & \mathcal{C}'_2 \arrow[l, "f'_2"'] \end{tikzcd}$$

where the vertical maps are equivalences, you get an equivalence $\prod(f_1, f_2) \to \prod(f'_1, f'_2)$. Note also the natural map $F: \mathcal{C}_1 \times_{\mathcal{C}_0} \mathcal{C}_2 \to \prod(f_1, f_2)$ sending (c_1, c_2) to $(c_1, c_2, 1_{f_1c_1})$.

This map is occasionally an equivalence, as is exemplified in the following lemma. If $\mathcal{C}$ is a category, then $Iso\mathcal{C}$ is the class of isomorphisms, and if f is a morphism, then sf is its source and tf is its target.

Lemma 2.1.4 *Let* $\mathcal{C}_1 \xrightarrow{f_1} \mathcal{C}_0 \xleftarrow{f_2} \mathcal{C}_2$ *be a diagram of categories, and assume that the map of classes*

$$Iso\mathcal{C}_1 \xrightarrow{g \mapsto (f_1g, sg)} Iso\mathcal{C}_0 \times_{ob\mathcal{C}_0} ob\mathcal{C}_1$$

has a section (the pullback is taken along source and f_1*). Then the natural map*

$$F: \mathcal{C}_1 \times_{\mathcal{C}_0} \mathcal{C}_2 \to \prod(f_1, f_2)$$

is an equivalence.

Proof: Let $\sigma: Iso\mathcal{C}_0 \times_{ob\mathcal{C}_0} ob\mathcal{C}_1 \to Iso\mathcal{C}_1$ be a section, and define $G: \prod(f_1, f_2) \to \mathcal{C}_1 \times_{\mathcal{C}_0} \mathcal{C}_2$ by $G(c_1, c_2, \alpha) = (t\sigma(\alpha, c_1), c_2)$ and $G(g_1, g_2) = (\sigma(d_1, \beta)g_1\sigma(c_1, \alpha)^{-1}, g_2)$. Checking the diagrams proves that F and G are inverses up to natural isomorphisms built out of σ. ∎

One should think about the condition in lemma 2.1.4 as a categorical equivalent of the Kan-condition in simplicial sets. This being one of the very few places you can find an error (even tiny and in the end totally irrelevant) in Waldhausen's papers, it is cherished by his fans, since in [249] he seems to claim that the pullback is equivalent to the fiber products if f_1 has a section (which is false). At this point there is even a small error in [102, page 257], where it seems that they claim that the map in lemma 2.1.4 factors through f_1.

Now, $Iso\bar{H}\mathcal{D}(PS^1 \wedge X) \to Iso\bar{H}\mathcal{D}(S^1 \wedge X) \times_{ob\bar{H}\mathcal{D}(S^1 \wedge X)} ob\bar{H}\mathcal{D}(PS^1 \wedge X)$ has a section given by pushouts in the relevant diagrams. Hence $C_{\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}}(X)$ is equivalent to the fiber product category, and as such is invariant under equivalences. Consequently the natural map

$$C_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}}(k_+)_q \longrightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\times qk} \times_{\mathcal{D}^{\times qk}} \mathcal{D}^{\times(q+1)k} \cong \mathcal{C}^{\times qk} \times \mathcal{D}^{\times k}$$

is an equivalence. If we consider categories with sum and weak equivalences, we get a structure of sum and weak equivalence on $C_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}}$ as well, with

$$wC_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}}(X) = w\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^1\wedge X) \times_{w\bar{H}\mathcal{D}(S^1\wedge X)} w\bar{H}\mathcal{D}(PS^1\wedge X).$$

Notice also that the construction is natural: if you have a commuting diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{D} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{C}' & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{D}' \end{array}$$

you get an induced map $C_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}} \to C_{\mathcal{C}'\to\mathcal{D}'}$ by using the universal properties of pullbacks, and the same properties ensure that the construction behaves nicely with respect to composition. Furthermore $C_{*\to\mathcal{D}}(1_+)$ is isomorphic to $\mathcal{D}$, so we get a map $\mathcal{D} \cong C_{*\to\mathcal{D}}(1_+) \to C_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}}$, and if we have maps $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{E}$ whose composite is trivial, we get a map $C_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}}(1_+) \to \mathcal{E}$.

Recall that, if $\mathcal{C}$ is a category with sum (i.e., with finite coproducts and with a "zero object" which is both final and initial), then an *exact functor* to another category with sums $\mathcal{D}$ is a functor $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ preserving finite coproducts and the zero objects.

In the following lemma we use the fact that the classifying space construction embeds the category of small categories as a full subcategory of the category of spaces; and in this way we apply the language of spaces to categories, c.f. A.1.4.2. For example, a sequence of functors "is a stable fiber sequence" means that this is true after applying B to the sequence of functors.

Lemma 2.1.5 *Let $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ be an exact functor of small categories with sum and weak equivalences. Then there is a stable fiber sequence*

$$w\bar{H}\mathcal{C} \to w\bar{H}\mathcal{D} \to w\bar{H}(C_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}}(1_+))$$

Proof: It is enough to show that

$$w\bar{H}\mathcal{D}(S^1) \to w\bar{H}(C_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}}(1_+))(S^1) \to w\bar{H}(\bar{H}(\mathcal{C})(S^1))(S^1)$$

is a fiber sequence, and by theorem A.5.0.4 this follows since in each degree n

$$w\bar{H}\mathcal{D}(S^1) \to w\bar{H}(C_{\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}}(1_+)_n)(S^1) \to w\bar{H}(\bar{H}(\mathcal{C})(S^1)_n)(S^1)$$

is equivalent to the product fiber sequence

$$w\bar{H}\mathcal{D}(S^1) \to w\bar{H}(\mathcal{D} \times \mathcal{C}^{\times n})(S^1) \to w\bar{H}(\mathcal{C}^{\times n})(S^1)$$

and all spaces involved are connected. ∎

We have a canonical map

$$\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^1) \to S\mathcal{C}$$

which in dimension q is induced by sending the sum diagram $C \in ob\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(q_+)$ to $c \in obS_q\mathcal{C}$ with $c_{ij} = C_{\{0,i+1,i+2,\dots,j-1,j\}}$ and obvious maps. For instance, the object

$$\begin{tikzcd} * \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & C_{\{0,1\}} \arrow[d] \\ C_{\{0,2\}} \arrow[r] & C_{\{0,1,2\}} \end{tikzcd}$$

in $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(2_+)$ is sent to

$$\begin{tikzcd} C_{\{0,1\}} \arrow[r] & C_{\{0,1,2\}} \arrow[d] \\ & C_{\{0,2\}} \end{tikzcd}$$

in $S_2\mathcal{C}$, where $C_{\{0,1,2\}} \to C_{\{0,2\}}$ is induced by $C_{\{0,1\}} \to *$.

Scholium 2.1.6 *For those familiar with algebraic K-theory, the additivity theorem for Waldhausen's S-construction says that $iS(S_k\mathcal{C}) \to iS(\mathcal{C}^{\times k})$ is a weak equivalence. We have not used this so far, but in the special case of additive categories it is an immediate consequence of theorem 2.1.7 below. The additivity theorem for Segal's model, saying that $i\bar{H}(S_k\mathcal{C}) \to i\bar{H}(\mathcal{C}^{\times k})$ is a weak equivalence, is at the core of the proof of the theorem, and constitutes the second half of the proof.*

Theorem 2.1.7 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category. Then the map*

$$i\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(S^1) \to iS\mathfrak{C}$$

described above is a weak equivalence.

Proof: Since both $Bi\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}$ and $BiS\mathfrak{C}$ are connected, the vertical maps in

$$\begin{tikzcd} Bi\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(S^1) \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] & BiS\mathfrak{C} \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] \\ \Omega\left(Bi\bar{H}(\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(S^1))(S^1)\right) \arrow[r] & \Omega\left(B\bar{H}(iS\mathfrak{C})(S^1)\right) \end{tikzcd}$$

are equivalences by A.5.1.2, and so it is enough to prove that

$$Bi\bar{H}(\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(S^1)) \to Bi\bar{H}(S\mathfrak{C})$$

is an equivalence, which again follows if we can show that for every q

$$Bi\bar{H}(\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(q_+)) \to Bi\bar{H}(S_q\mathfrak{C})$$

is an equivalence.

Essentially this is the old "triangular matrices vs. diagonal matrices" question, and can presumably be proven directly by showing that $iS_q\mathcal{C} \to i\mathfrak{C}^{\times q}$ induces an isomorphism in homology after inverting $\pi_0(iS_q\mathcal{C}) \cong \pi_0(i\mathfrak{C}^{\times q})$.

Assume we have proven that the projection $i\bar{H}(S_k\mathfrak{C}) \to i\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C}^{\times k})$ is an equivalence for $k < q$ (this is trivial for $k = 0$ or $k = 1$). We must show that it is also an equivalence for $k = q$. Consider the inclusion by zero'th degeneracies $\mathfrak{C} \to S_q\mathfrak{C}$ (sending c to $0 \rightarrowtail 0 \rightarrowtail \dots \rightarrowtail 0 \rightarrowtail c$), and the last face map $S_q\mathfrak{C} \to S_{q-1}\mathfrak{C}$. We want to show that we have a map of fiber sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} i\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C}) & \longrightarrow & i\bar{H}(S_q\mathfrak{C}) & \longrightarrow & i\bar{H}(S_{q-1}\mathfrak{C}) \\ \| & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ i\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C}) & \longrightarrow & i\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C}^{\times q}) & \longrightarrow & i\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C}^{\times q-1}) \end{array}$$

We do have maps of fiber sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} i\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C}) & \longrightarrow & i\bar{H}(S_q\mathfrak{C}) & \longrightarrow & i\bar{H}(C_{\mathfrak{C}\to S_q\mathfrak{C}}(1_+)) \\ \| & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ i\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C}) & \longrightarrow & i\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C}^{\times q}) & \longrightarrow & i\bar{H}(C_{\mathfrak{C}\to\mathfrak{C}^{\times q}}(1_+)) \end{array}$$

and the only trouble lies in identifying the base spaces of the fibrations. We have a commuting square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} i\bar{H}(C_{\mathfrak{C}\to S_q\mathfrak{C}}(1_+)) & \longrightarrow & i\bar{H}(S_{q-1}\mathfrak{C}) \\ \downarrow & & \simeq\downarrow \\ i\bar{H}(C_{\mathfrak{C}\to\mathfrak{C}^{\times q}}(1_+)) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & i\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C}^{\times q-1}) \end{array}$$

the bottom map obviously an equivalence (and the right vertical map an equivalence by the induction hypothesis). We have to show that the top map is an equivalence, and for this purpose it is enough to show that

$$iC_{\mathfrak{C}\to S_q\mathfrak{C}}(1_+) \xrightarrow{p} iS_{q-1}\mathfrak{C}$$

is an equivalence. For every $c \in obS_{q-1}\mathfrak{C}$ the over category p/c is a simplicial category. If we can show that p/c is contractible for all c we are done by Quillen's theorem A [196]. In dimension n, the objects of the category p/c consists of certain sum diagrams of dimension $n+1$ of objects in $S_q\mathfrak{C}$ together with some extra data. Call the vertices of cardinality one $c_0, \dots, c_n$. Part of the data is an isomorphism $d_qc_0 \cong c$, and $c_1, \dots, c_n$ only have nonzero elements in the last column (i.e., $(c_k)(i \le j) = 0$ if $0 < k$ and $j < q$). Hence $(p/c)_n$ is equivalent to the category $iC_{\mathfrak{C}\to\mathfrak{C}_x}(n_+)$ where $x = c_{0,q-1}$ and $\mathfrak{C}_x$ is the category of split inclusions $x \rightarrowtail y \in \mathfrak{C}$ (which is a category with sum by taking pushout over the structure maps from x). The equivalence is induced by sending $c_0, \dots c_n$ to $x \rightarrowtail (c_0)_{0,q}, (c_1)_{0,q}, \dots, (c_n)_{0,q}$ (considered as objects in $\mathfrak{C}_x \times \mathfrak{C}^{\times n}$). The equivalence is natural in n, and so induces an equivalence $p/c \to iC_{\mathfrak{C}\to\mathfrak{C}_x}(S^1)$, and we show that the latter is contractible.

This is the group completion part: it does not matter what x we put in $\mathfrak{C}_x$. First we show that $\pi_0(iC_{\mathfrak{C}\to\mathfrak{C}_x}(S^1)) = 0$ (which implies that $iC_{\mathfrak{C}\to\mathfrak{C}_x}(S^1) \simeq \Omega i\bar{H}C_{\mathfrak{C}\to\mathfrak{C}_x}(S^1)$) and then that $i\bar{H}\mathfrak{C} \to i\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}_x$ is an equivalence.

The vertices of $iC_{\mathfrak{C}\to\mathfrak{C}_x}(S^1)$ are split inclusions $x \rightarrowtail c$; the 1-simplices in the nerve direction are isomorphisms under x, whereas the 1-simplices in the $\bar{H}$-construction are pushout diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} x & \longrightarrow & c \\ {\scriptstyle in_x}\downarrow & & \downarrow \\ x \vee c'' & \longrightarrow & c \vee c'' \end{array}$$

Hence, in $\pi_0(iC_{\mathfrak{C}\to\mathfrak{C}_x}(S^1))$ the class of $x \rightarrowtail c$ is equal the class of $x \overset{in_x}{\rightarrowtail} x \vee c/x$ (since the inclusion was splittable), which is equal to the class of the basepoint $x = x$.

Finally, consider the map $i\bar{H}\mathfrak{C} \to i\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}_x$. It is induced by $j\colon \mathfrak{C} \to \mathfrak{C}$ sending c to $in_x\colon x \rightarrowtail x \vee c$, and it has a section $q\colon \mathfrak{C}_x \to \mathfrak{C}$ given by sending $x \rightarrowtail c$ to c/x (there is no danger in choosing quotients). We have to show that jq induces a self map on $i\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}_x$ homotopic to the identity. Note that there is a natural isomorphism $c\coprod_x c \to c \vee c/x \cong c \times c/x$ under x given by sending the first summand by the identity to the first factor, and the second summand to the identity on the first factor and the projection on the second factor. Hence, 2 (twice the identity) is naturally isomorphic to $1 + jq$ in $i\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}_x$, and since this is a connected H-space we have homotopy inverses, giving that jq is homotopic to the identity. ∎

2.2 Segal's machine and the plus construction

We give a brief review of Segal's results on group completion, focusing on the examples that are important to our appliciations. There are many excellent accounts related to this issue (see e.g., [4], [86], [126], [177], [95]), but we more or less follow the approach of [216].

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a symmetric monoidal category with weak equivalences, and consider the simplicial Γ-category $H'\mathcal{C}$ defined by the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H'\mathcal{C}(X)_q & \longrightarrow & \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(PS^1_q \wedge X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(PS^1_q \wedge X) & \longrightarrow & \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^1_q \wedge X) \end{array},$$

By the same considerations as in corollary 2.1.5 (i.e., by reversal of priorities w.r.t. simplicial directions) we get a fiber sequence

$$w\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^1) \longrightarrow wH'\mathcal{C}(S^1) \longrightarrow w\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(PS^1 \wedge S^1),$$

but the last simplicial category is contractible, and so $w\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^1) \to wH'\mathcal{C}(S^1)$ is an equivalence.

Furthermore, the Γ-category $wH'\mathcal{C}$ is not only special, but very special: it has a homotopy inverse obtained by flipping the defining square around the diagonal.

Recall that a *cofinal* submonoid M' in a symmetric monoid M is a submonoid such that for all $a \in M$ there is a $b \in M$ such that $a \cdot b \in M'$. If M is a multiplicatively closed subset of a commutative ring A, then it is immediate that localizing A with respect to M' or M give isomorphic results.

Lemma 2.2.1 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a symmetric monoidal category with weak equivalences. Then the map*

$$w\bar{H}\mathcal{C} \to wH'\mathcal{C}$$

is a stable equivalence and $wH'\mathcal{C}$ is very special. Furthermore, if $\mu \subseteq w\mathcal{C}$ is a symmetric monoidal subcategory such that the image of $\pi_0\mu$ in $\pi_0 w\mathcal{C}$ is cofinal and $wT_{\mathcal{C},\mu}$ is defined as the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} wT_{\mathcal{C},\mu} & \longrightarrow & \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(PS^1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \bar{H}\mu(PS^1) & \longrightarrow & \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^1) \end{array},$$

then the natural map $wT_{\mathcal{C},\mu} \to wH'\mathcal{C}(S^1)$ is an acyclic map.

Consequently there is a chain of natural equivalences

$$(BwT_{\mathcal{C},\mu})^+ \xrightarrow{\sim} (BwH'\mathcal{C}(S^1))^+ \xleftarrow{\sim} BwH'\mathcal{C}(S^1) \xleftarrow{\sim} B\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^1).$$

Proof: Only the part about $wT_{\mathcal{C},\mu} \to wH'\mathcal{C}(S^1)$ being an acyclic map needs explanation. Since $wH'\mathcal{C}(S^1)$ is an H-space, this is equivalent to claiming that the map induces an isomorphism in integral homology.

By coherence theory (see e.g., [168, 4.2] or [137]), we may assume that $w\mathcal{C}$ is "permutative" (the associativity and unitality isomorphisms are identities, while the symmetric structure is still free to wiggle). Hence we are reduced to the following proposition: given a simplicial monoid M (the simplicial set given by the nerve of $w\mathcal{C}$) which is commutative up to all higher homotopies and a submonoid $\mu \subseteq M$ whose image in $\pi_0 M$ is cofinal, then the map $Y \to X$ given by the pullback squares

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \longrightarrow & X & \longrightarrow & EM \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ E\mu & \longrightarrow & EM & \longrightarrow & BM \end{array}$$

induces an isomorphism in homology. Analyzing the structures, we see that $Y \to X$ is nothing but the map of one-sided bar-constructions (c.f. A.4.2) $B(M \times \mu, \mu, *) \subseteq B(M \times M, M, *)$ (with the diagonal action). Segal gives an argument why this is an isomorphism in homology in [216, page 305-306] by an explicit calculation with arbitrary field coefficients.

The argument is briefly as follows: let k be a field and let $H = H_*(M; k)$ which is a graded ring since M is a monoid, and a Hopf algebra due to the diagonal map. The E^1-term of the spectral sequence for computing $H_*(B(M\times M, M, *)$ is exactly the standard complex for calculating $Tor^H_*(H \otimes_k H, k)$ (in dimension q it is $(H \otimes_k H) \otimes H^{\otimes_k q} \otimes k)$. But this complex collapses: $(H \otimes_k H) \otimes_H k \cong H[\pi^{-1}]$ (where $\pi = \pi_0 M$) and $Tor_s^H(H \otimes_k H, k) = 0$ for $s > 0$. This uses that localization in the commutative case is flat. In consequence, we get that $H_*B(M \times M, M, *; k) \cong H[\pi^{-1}]$. A similar calculation gives $H_*B(M \times \mu, \mu, *; k) \cong H[\pi_0(\mu)^{-1}]$, and the induced map is an isomorphism since the image of $\pi_0(\mu)$ in $\pi_0(M)$ is cofinal. ∎

2.2.2 Application to the category of finitely generated free modules over a discrete ring.

As an example we may consider the category of finitely generated free modules over a discrete ring A. For this purpose we use the model $\mathcal{F}_A$ of I.2.1.4 whose set of objects is the natural numbers and morphisms matrices. Assume for simplicity that A has the invariance of basis number property (IBN, see I.1.3.2.4). Then $Bi\mathcal{F}_A$ is the simplicial monoid $\coprod_{n \in \mathbf{N}} BGL_n(A)$ under Whitney sum (block sum). If $\mu = ob\mathcal{F}_A = \mathbf{N}$ then $BiT_{\mathcal{F}_A, \mathbf{N}} = B(Bi\mathcal{F}_A \times \mathbf{N}, \mathbf{N}, *)$ is a model for the homotopy colimit over the maps $\coprod_{n \in \mathbf{N}} BGL_n(A) \to \coprod_{n \in \mathbf{N}} BGL_n(A)$ given by Whitney sum (with identity matrices of varying sizes). The homotopy colimit is in turn equivalent to the homotopy colimit over the natural numbers over the maps $\coprod_{n \in \mathbf{N}} BGL_n(A) \to \coprod_{n \in \mathbf{N}} BGL_n(A)$ given by Whitney sum with the rank one identity matrix. This homotopy colimit is equivalent to the corresponding categorical colimit, which simply is $\mathbf{Z} \times BGLA$. Hence lemma 2.2.1 says that there is a chain of weak equivalences beween $\mathbf{Z} \times BGL(A)^+$ and $\Omega Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{F}_A$. Hence, for the category of finitely generated free modules over a ring A with the invariance of basis number property, the approaches through S, $\bar{H}$ and + are all equivalent:

$$\mathbf{Z} \times BGL(A)^+ \simeq \Omega Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{F}_A(S^1) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Omega BiS\mathcal{F}_A.$$

If we instead consider the category $\mathcal{P}_A$ of finitely generated projective modules over a ring A, and $\mu = ob\mathcal{F}_A \subseteq \mathcal{P}_A$, then $T_{i\mathcal{P}_A, \mu} \simeq K_0(A) \times BGL(A)$ and we get

Theorem 2.2.3 *Let A be a discrete ring. Then there is a chain of equivalences*

$$K_0(A) \times BGL(A)^+ \simeq \Omega Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{P}_A(S^1) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Omega BiS\mathcal{P}_A.$$

Notice that comparing the results for $\mathcal{F}_A$ and $\mathcal{P}_A$ gives one proof of *cofinality* in the sense used in e.g., [95]: the connected cover of K-theory does not see the difference between free and projective modules.

Note 2.2.4 One should notice that the homotopy equivalence $K(A) \simeq K_0(A) \times BGL(A)^+$ is not functorial in A. As an example, consider the ring $C(X)$ of continuous maps from a compact topological space X to the complex numbers. There is a functorial (in X) chain of maps

$$\Omega^\infty Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{P}_{C(X)} \to \Omega^\infty Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{P}^{top}_{C(X)} \xleftarrow{\simeq} Bi\mathcal{P}^{top}_{C(X)},$$

where the superscript *top* means that we shall remember the topology and and consider $\mathcal{P}_{C(X)}$ as a topological category. The latter spectrum is, by a theorem of Swan, (the connective cover of) what is known as the Atiyah and Hirzebruch's topological K-theory of X (see [6]) and is represented by the spectrum $ku = Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{P}^{top}_{C(*)}$. The map from the algebraic K-theory of $C(X)$ to the topological K-theory of X is an isomorphism on path component and a surjection on the fundamental group (see [181, page 61] or [10]). Consider the map $C(B(\mathbf{Z}/2)) \to C(B(\mathbf{Z}))$ induced by the projection $\mathbf{Z} \to \mathbf{Z}/2$. Let F be the fiber of $K(C(B(\mathbf{Z}/2))) \to K(C(B(\mathbf{Z})))$, and let G be the fiber of $[B(\mathbf{Z}/2), ku] \to [B(\mathbf{Z}), ku]$. By naturality this induces a map of long exact sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
K_1(C(B(\mathbf{Z}))) & \longrightarrow & \pi_0 F & \longrightarrow & K_0(C(B(\mathbf{Z}/2))) & \longrightarrow & K_0(C(B(\mathbf{Z}))) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \cong\downarrow & & \cong\downarrow \\
K^1(B(\mathbf{Z})) & \longrightarrow & \pi_0 G & \longrightarrow & K^0(B(\mathbf{Z}/2)) & \longrightarrow & K^0(B(\mathbf{Z})) \\
\cong\downarrow & & \cong\downarrow & & \cong\downarrow & & \cong\downarrow \\
\mathbf{Z} & \xrightarrow{2} & \mathbf{Z} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Z}/2 \oplus \mathbf{Z} & \xrightarrow{0+id} & \mathbf{Z}
\end{array}$$

(since $\pi_0 G \cong \tilde{K}^0(B(\mathbf{Z}/2) \coprod_{B(\mathbf{Z})} B(\mathbf{Z}) \wedge I) \cong \tilde{K}^0(S^0) \cong \mathbf{Z}$, and the map $K^1(B(\mathbf{Z})) \to K^1(B(\mathbf{Z})) \cong \tilde{K}^0(S^0)$ is induced by multiplication with 2). This means that $\pi_0 F \to \tilde{K}_0 C(B(\mathbf{Z}/2)) = \mathbf{Z}/2$ is a nonsplit extension, in contrast with what you get if you consider the fiber of

$$K_0(C(B(\mathbf{Z}/2))) \times BGL(C(B(\mathbf{Z}/2)))^+ \to K_0(C(B(\mathbf{Z}))) \times BGL(C(B(\mathbf{Z})))^+$$

We are grateful to D. Grayson and J. Rognes for assistance with this argument.

2.3 The algebraic K-theory space of S-algebras

The definition of K-theory space for **S**-algebras follows the idea for simplicial rings 1.2.1. We will later give the spectrum level definitions which agree with this simple definition.

2.3.1 The general linear group-like monoid $\widehat{GL}(A)$

What is to play the rôle of the general linear group for an **S**-algebra? We could of course let it be the group of automorphisms of $A^{\times n}$ (mimicking degreewise K-theory), but this will be much too restrictive for our applications. Instead, we must somehow capture all self-equivalences. The readers who have read II.3.3 will recognize the $\widehat{GL}_n(A)$ defined below as the outcome of the functor ω applied to the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category of endomorphisms of $A^{\vee n}$.

Note that we are to perform some unfriendly operations on the monoid of self-equivalences, so we had better ensure that our input is fibrant. Note also that if A is an **S**-algebra, then the multiplication in A gives rise to a simplicial monoid structure on $T_0 A(1_+)$ where T_0 is the fibrant replacement functor of II.2.2.2. This would not be true if we had used the other fibrant replacement QA of II.2.1.10.

Consider the simplicial monoid

$$\widehat{M}_n A = T_0 Mat_n A(1_+) = \underset{\overrightarrow{x \in \mathcal{I}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \Omega^x (Mat_n(A)(S^x)),$$

where Mat_nA is the $\mathbf{S}$-algebra $X \mapsto Mat_nA(X) = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(n_+, n_+\wedge A(X)) \cong \prod_n \bigvee_n A(X)$ of "matrices with only one element in each column" defined in II.1.4.4.6. Its monoid of components is $\pi_0(\widehat{M}_n(A)) = M_n(\pi_0 A)$, and we let $\widehat{GL}_n(A)$ be the grouplike simplicial monoid of homotopy units:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \widehat{GL}_n(A) & \longrightarrow & \widehat{M}_n(A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ GL_n(\pi_0 A) & \longrightarrow & M_n(\pi_0 A) \end{array}$$

This is a (homotopy) pullback diagram (the maps may not be fibrations, but even so, the pullback is a homotopy pullback: picking out components is a homotopy functor).

If R is a simplicial ring with associated Eilenberg–Mac Lane $\mathbf{S}$-algebra HR II.1.6.2.2, the inclusion of $\vee$ into $\oplus$ induces a stable equivalence $Mat_n(HR) \to HM_nR$ of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, and hence chains of weak equivalences $T_0Mat_n(HR)(1_+) \xrightarrow{\sim} T_0HM_nR(1_+) \xleftarrow{\sim} M_nR$ and $\widehat{GL}(HR) \simeq \widehat{GL}(R)$.

This stabilizes correctly, in the sense that

$$S^0 = \mathbf{S}(1_+) \to A(1_+) = Mat_1(A)(1_+) \to \Omega^n Mat_1(A)(S^n)$$

and

$$Mat_nA \times Mat_1A \xrightarrow{\vee} Mat_{n+1}A$$

induce maps

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \widehat{M}_n(A) & = & \underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}}{\operatorname{holim}}\Omega^x(Mat_n(A)(S^x)) \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}}{\operatorname{holim}}\Omega^x\left(Mat_n(A)(S^x) \times Mat_1(A)(S^x)\right) \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle\vee} \\ \widehat{M}_{n+1}(A) & = & \underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}}{\operatorname{holim}}\Omega^x(Mat_{n+1}(A)(S^x)) \end{array}$$

which in turn induce the usual Whitehead sum

$$M_n(\pi_0 A) \xrightarrow{m \mapsto m\oplus 1} M_{n+1}(\pi_0 A).$$

We let $\widehat{GL}(A)$ denote the colimit of the resulting directed system of $\widehat{GL}_n(A)$'s.

We can now form the classifying space in the usual way and define the algebraic K-theory space just as we did for simplicial rings in 1.2.1:

Definition 2.3.2 Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. Then the algebraic K-theory space of A is

$$K(A) = B\widehat{GL}(A)^+.$$

From the construction we get

Lemma 2.3.3 *Let R be a simplicial ring. Then the chain of weak equivalences $M_nHR \simeq \widehat{M}_nHR$ induces a chain of natural weak equivalence $K(HR) \simeq K(R)$, where $K(R)$ is the algebraic K-theory space of R as defined in 1.2.1.* ☺

2.3.4 Comparison with Waldhausen's algebraic K-theory of a connected space

A particularly important example is the K-theory of spherical group rings, that is, of an $\mathbf{S}$-algebras of the form $\mathbf{S}[G]$ where G is a simplicial group, see II.1.4.4.2. Then Waldhausen essentially shows that $K(\mathbf{S}[G])$ is equivalent to $A(BG)$, the "algebraic K-theory of the connected space BG".

Thus, the homotopy theoretic invariant $K(\mathbf{S}[G])$ carries deep geometric information. For instance, Waldhausen proves that $\mathbf{Z} \times K(\mathbf{S}[G])$ is equivalent to

$$\Omega^\infty(\mathbf{S}\wedge BG_+) \times Wh^{\mathrm{D}iff}(BG).$$

It is the last factor, the (smooth) *Whitehead space* that is of geometric significance; it's loop space is equivalent to the so-called *stable smooth h-cobordism space*, which among other things carries information about diffeomorphisms of high-dimensional manifolds. Unfortunately, the literature is missing some pieces at this point, but this will hopefully be mended by the forthcoming publication of Waldhausen, Jahren and Rognes' proof of the stable parametrized h-cobordism theorem.

There is a slight difference between the end product in [249, theorem 2.2.1] and the present definition and we must cover this gap (see also the discussion at the bottom of page 385 in [249]). For our purposes, we may consider Waldhausen's definition of (the connected cover of) *algebraic K-theory of the connected space* BG, $A(BG)$ to be

$$\varinjlim_{k,m} B\mathcal{H}^k_m(G)^+$$

where $\mathcal{H}^k_m(G)$ is the simplicial monoid of pointed $|G|$-equivariant weak self-equivalences of $|\mathbf{m}_+\wedge S^k\wedge G_+|$. More precisely, consider the space of $|G|$-self maps of $|\mathbf{m}_+\wedge S^k\wedge G_+|$

$$M^k_m = \sin Map_{|G|}(|\mathbf{m}_+\wedge S^k\wedge G_+|, |\mathbf{m}_+\wedge S^k\wedge G_+|).$$

This is a simplicial monoid under composition of maps $(f,g)\mapsto f\circ g$, and $\mathcal{H}^k_m(G)$ is the grouplike submonoid of invertible components. As a simplicial set M^k_m is isomorphic to $\Omega^k Mat_m\mathbf{S}[G](S^k)$. By Waldhausen's approximation theorem [249, theorem 1.6.7] we have a chain of weak equivalences

$$\varinjlim_{k} B\mathcal{H}^k_m(G) \xleftarrow{\simeq} \underset{\overrightarrow{m}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, B\mathcal{H}^k_m(G) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, B\mathcal{H}^x_m(G)$$

and we want to compare this with $B\widehat{GL}_m(\mathbf{S}[G])$.

We define a map (for convenience, we now use the non-pointed homotopy colimit; these are homotopy equivalent as $\mathcal{I}$ is contractible)

$$(\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}} \Omega^x Mat_m(\mathbf{S}[G](S^x)))^{\times q} \cong \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^q}} \prod_{i=1}^{q} M_m^{x_i} \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^q}} (M_m^{\vee\mathbf{x}})^{\times q} \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}} (M_m^{x})^{\times q}$$

The first map is induced by the ith inclusion $x_i \subseteq \vee\mathbf{x}$ in the ith factor, and the last map is given by composition with $\mathcal{I}^q \to \mathcal{I}$. When restricted to homotopy units, this gives by Bökstedt's approximation lemma II.2.2.3 the desired equivalence

$$B_q\widehat{GL}_m(\mathbf{S}[G]) \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}} B_q\mathcal{H}_m^x(G).$$

We must just show that it is a simplicial map.

Note that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M_m^x \wedge M_m^y & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{S}\text{-algebra multiplication}} & M_m^{x\vee y} \\ \downarrow & & \| \\ M_m^{x\vee y} \wedge M_m^{x\vee y} & \xrightarrow{\text{composition}} & M_m^{x\vee y} \end{array}$$

is commutative, where the left vertical map is induced by the first and second inclusion $x \subseteq x \vee y$ and $y \subseteq x \vee y$. Thus we see that if $0 < i < q$, then the ith face map in $\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^q}} \prod_{i=1}^q M_m^{x_i}$ using the $\mathbf{S}$-algebra multiplication, corresponds to the ith face map in $\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}}(M_m^x)^{\times q}$, since we have used the ith inclusion in the ith factor, and the $i+1$th inclusion in the $i+1$th factor. The face maps d_0, d_q just drops the first or last factor in both cases, and the degeneracies include the common unit in the appropriate factor.

2.4 Agreement of the K-theory of S-algebras through Segal's machine and the definition through the plus construction

Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. Recall from I.1.3.2.2 the Grothendieck group $K_0^f(\pi_0 A)$ of the category of finitely generated free $\pi_0 A$-modules. If $\pi_0 A$ has the invariance of basis number property (i.e., $(\pi_0 A)^{\times k}$ is isomorphic to $(\pi_0 A)^{\times l}$ if and only if $l = k$, which is true for most reasonable rings, and always true for commutative rings), $K_0^f(\pi_0 A) \cong \mathbf{Z}$, and otherwise it is finite cyclic.

The following is the immediate generalization of the category of finitely generated free modules as in I.2.1.4 to $\mathbf{S}$ algebras.

Definition 2.4.1 Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. Then the category $\mathcal{F}_A$ of *finitely generated free A-modules* is the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category whose objects are the natural numbers, and where $\mathcal{F}_A(m,n) = Mat_{n,m}A \cong \prod_m \bigvee_n A$.

Note that Segal's definition of the algebraic K-theory spectrum of A (with the uniform choice of weak equivalences II.3.3) is then

$$K(A) = B\omega\bar{H}\mathcal{F}_A.$$

Theorem 2.4.2 *There is a chain of weak equivalences*

$$\Omega^\infty K(A) \simeq K_0^f(\pi_0 A) \times B\widehat{GL}(A)^+$$

Proof: First, note that since $K(A) = B\omega\bar{H}\mathcal{F}_A$ is special

$$\Omega^\infty K(A) \simeq \Omega B\omega\bar{H}\mathcal{F}_A(S^1).$$

For each $n_+ \in \Gamma^o$ we have that $B\omega\bar{H}\mathcal{F}_A(n_+) \simeq (B\omega\mathcal{F}_A)^{\times n}$. For each $k \geq 0$, let $w\mathcal{F}^k$ be the full subcategory of $\omega\mathcal{F}_A$ whose only object is $k_+ \wedge A$. Note that by definition, this is nothing but $\widehat{GL}_k(A)$ considered as a simplicial category with only one object. Hence we are done, for by Segal [216] there is a chain of weak equivalences

$$\Omega B\omega\bar{H}\mathcal{F}_A(S^1) \simeq K_0^f(\pi_0 A) \times \left(\lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} Bw\mathcal{F}^k\right)^+ = K_0^f(\pi_0 A) \times B\widehat{GL}(A)^+$$

∎

If A is a discrete ring, we have a chain of weak equivalences

$$Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{F}_A \xrightarrow{\sim} B\omega\bar{H}\widetilde{\mathcal{F}_A} \xleftarrow{\sim} B\omega\bar{H}\mathcal{F}_{HA}$$

where $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}_A}$ is the construction of 1.6.2.2 making an $\mathcal{A}b$-category into a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category through the Eilenberg–Mac Lane construction. The first weak equivalence follows by lemma II.3.3.2, whereas the second follows from the fact that the natural map $Mat_n HA \to H(M_n A)$ is a weak equivalence (wedges are stably products).

3 Simplicial rings are dense in S-algebras.

The map $\mathbf{S} \to H\mathbf{Z}$ from the sphere spectrum to the integral Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum may either be thought of as the projection onto π_0 or as the Hurewicz map. Either way, we get that it is 1-connected. This implies that there is a very controlled difference between their module categories. The argument which we are going to give for this could equally well be considered in any setting where you have a 1-connected map $A \to B$ of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras. In fact, it is perhaps easiest to see that the result is true in this setting. Assume everything is cofibrant and that $A \to B$ is a cofibration of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras too, so as to avoid technicalities. Consider the adjoint pair

$$\mathcal{M}_B \underset{f^*}{\overset{-\otimes_B A}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{M}_A$$

where f^* is restriction of scalars, which we will drop from the notation. Let M be any A-module, and consider the unit of adjunction $M \to B\wedge_A M$. This map has cofiber $(B/A)\wedge_A M$, and since $A \to B$ is 1-connected this gives that $M \to B\wedge_A M$ is 1-connected, and so $B\wedge_A M$ is a B-module giving a rather coarse approximation to M.

We can continue doing this: applying $B\wedge_A-$ to $M \to B\wedge_A M$ gives a square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M & \longrightarrow & B\wedge_A M \\ \Big\downarrow & & \Big\downarrow \\ B\wedge_A M & \longrightarrow & B\wedge_A B\wedge_A M \end{array}$$

and a quick analyisis gives that this has iterated cofiber $(B/A)\wedge_A(B/A)\wedge_A M$, and so is "2-cartesian", meaning that M is approximated by the pullback of the rest of square, at least up to dimension two. This continues, and gives that any A-module may be approximated to any degree of accuracy by means of B-modules. However, the maps connecting the B-modules are not B-module maps. This is often not dangerous. Because of the rapid convergence, functors satisfying rather weak "continuity" properties and that vanish on B-modules must also vanish on all A-modules.

We will be pursuing this idea, but we will be working non-stably, and our resolutions will in fact be resolutions of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras (in the setup as sketched above, that would require commutativity conditions).

3.1 A resolution of S-algebras by means of simplicial rings

Recall the adjoint functor pairs of II.1.3.1 (briefly, $\bar{H}$ is the Eilenberg–Mac Lane construction, R is evaluation at 1_+, $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}$ is the free-abelian functor and U the forgetful functor)

$$s\mathcal{A}b = \mathcal{A} \underset{R}{\overset{\bar{H}}{\rightleftarrows}} \Gamma\mathcal{A} \underset{U}{\overset{\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}}{\leftrightarrows}} \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$$

(the left adjoints are on the top). All are symmetric monoidal (all but U are even strong symmetric monoidal), and so all take monoids to monoids. Furthermore, the construction T_0 of II.2.2.2 could equally well be performed in $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$, where it is called R_0 to remind us that the coproducts involved are now sums and not wedges. In particular, the approximation lemma II.2.2.3 works equally well in this setting. If A is an $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra, R_0A is a special $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra (i.e., its underlying Γ-space is special, II.1.2.2), and so by lemma II.1.3.3 the rightmost map in

$$A \xrightarrow{\sim} R_0A \xleftarrow{\sim} \bar{H}R(R_0A)$$

is a pointwise equivalence. Hence: any $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra is canonically stably equivalent to $\bar{H}$ of a simplicial ring (this has already been noted in II.2.2.5). This also works for (bi)modules: if P is an A-bimodule, then R_0P is an R_0A-bimodule, stably equivalent to P (as an A-bimodule); $\bar{H}(RR_0P)$ is an $\bar{H}(RR_0A)$-bimodule and pointwise equivalent to R_0P (as an $\bar{H}(RR_0A)$-bimodule).

In particular, remembering that $H = U\bar{H}$:

Lemma 3.1.1 *If A is any $\mathbf{S}$-algebra and P an A-bimodule, then $(U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A, U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}P)$ is canonically stably equivalent to a pair (HR, HQ) where R is a simplicial ring and Q an R-bimodule:*

$$(U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A, U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}P) \xrightarrow{\sim} (UR_0\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A, UR_0\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}P) \xleftarrow{\sim} (H(RR_0\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A), H(RR_0\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}P)).$$

☺

The adjoint pair connecting $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$ and $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ defines an adjoint pair

$$\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}\text{-algebras} \underset{U}{\overset{\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}}{\leftrightarrows}} \mathbf{S}\text{-algebras}$$

(that is, $U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}$ is a "triple" in **S**-algebras) and so we have the canonical resolution of A.0.12 (to be precise and concise, it is the "augmented cobar resolution of the monoid $U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}$ in the category of endofunctors of **S**-algebras").

Lemma 3.1.2 *If A is an **S**-algebra, then the adjoint pair gives an augmented cosimplicial object $A \to \{[q] \mapsto (U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}})^{q+1}A\}$, which is equivalent to H of a simplicial ring in each non-negative degree.* ☺

It is fairly straightforward to see that

$$A \to \underset{\overleftarrow{[q]\in\Delta}}{\operatorname{holim}}(U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}})^{q+1}A$$

is an equivalence, but we will not show that now, since we eventually will use the somewhat stronger Hurewicz theorem A.7.3.4 which tells us that this limit converges fast enough, so that the homotopy limit passes through constructions like K-theory. This has the consequence that these constructions only depend on their value on simplicial rings, and on **S**-algebra maps between simplicial rings. Generally this is bothersome: we would have liked the diagram we are taking the limit of to be contained wholly in the category of simplicial rings. This is of course not possible, since it would imply that all **S**-algebras were stably equivalent to simplicial rings. For instance, **S** itself is not stably equivalent to a simplicial ring, but it IS the homotopy limit of a diagram

$$H\mathbf{Z} \rightrightarrows U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}H\mathbf{Z} \overset{\longrightarrow}{\rightrightarrows} U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}H\mathbf{Z} \dots$$

Remark 3.1.3 *The categories $s\mathcal{A}b = \mathcal{A}$, $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$ and $H\mathbf{Z}$-mod, are all naturally model categories, and the functors*

$$\mathcal{A} \xrightarrow{\bar{H}} \Gamma\mathcal{A} \xrightarrow{U} H\mathbf{Z}\text{-}mod$$

induce equivalences between their homotopy categories. This uses the functor $L\colon \Gamma\mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}$ of II.1.3.4 to construct an adjoint functor pair (see [213]).

3.1.4 Review on cubical diagrams

We need some language in order to calculate the resolution of lemma 3.1.2 effectively. For a more thorough discussion we refer the reader to appendix A.7.

Let $\mathcal{P}$ be the category of finite subsets of the natural numbers $\{1, 2, \dots\}$, and inclusions. We let $\mathcal{P}n$ be the subcategory allowing only subsets of $\{1, \dots, n\}$.

Definition 3.1.5 An n-cube is a functor $\mathcal{X}$ from the category $\mathcal{P}n$. A cubical diagram is a functor from $\mathcal{P}$.

If we adjoin the empty set $[-1] = \emptyset$ as an initial object to Δ, we get (a skeleton of) Ord, the category of finite ordered sets. A functor from Ord is what is usually called an augmented cosimplicial object. There is a functor $\mathcal{P} \to Ord$ sending a set S of cardinality n to $[n-1]$. Hence any augmented cosimplicial object gives rise to a cubical diagram. In most cases there is no loss of information in considering augmented cosimplicial objects as cubical diagrams (see A.7.1.1 for further details).

Definition 3.1.6 Let $\mathcal{X}$ be an n-cube with values in any of the categories where homotopy (co)limits are defined. We say that $\mathcal{X}$ is *k-cartesian* if

$$\mathcal{X}_\emptyset \to \underset{\substack{\longleftarrow \\ S\neq\emptyset}}{\operatorname{holim}} \mathcal{X}_S$$

is k-connected, and *k-cocartesian* if

$$\underset{\substack{\longrightarrow \\ S\neq\{1,\dots,n\}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \mathcal{X}_S \to \mathcal{X}_{\{1,\dots,n\}}$$

is k-connected. It is *homotopy cartesian* if it is k-cartesian for all k, and *homotopy cocartesian* if it is k-cocartesian for all k.

When there is no possibility of confusing with the categorical notions, we write just cartesian and cocartesian. Homotopy (co)cartesian cubes are also called *homotopy pullback cubes* (resp. *homotopy pushout cubes*), and the initial (resp. final) vertex is then called the *homotopy pullback* (resp. *homotopy pushout*).

As a convention we shall say that a 0-cube is k-cartesian (resp. k-cocartesian) if $\mathcal{X}_\emptyset$ is $(k-1)$-connected (resp. k-connected).

So, a 0-cube is an object $\mathcal{X}_\emptyset$, a 1-cube is a map $\mathcal{X}_\emptyset \to \mathcal{X}_{\{1\}}$, and a 1-cube is k-(co)cartesian if it is k-connected as a map. A 2-cube is a square

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{X}_\emptyset & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{X}_{\{1\}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathcal{X}_{\{2\}} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{X}_{\{1,2\}}
\end{array}$$

and so on. We will regard a natural transformation of n-cubes $\mathcal{X} \to \mathcal{Y}$ as an $n+1$ cube. In particular, if $F \to G$ is some natural transformation of functors of simplicial sets, and $\mathcal{X}$ is an n cube of simplicial sets, then we get an $n+1$ cube $F\mathcal{X} \to G\mathcal{X}$.

The following definition is useful for book-keeping, and is discussed further in appendix A.7.

Definition 3.1.7 If f is some integral function, we say that an S-cube $\mathcal{X}$ is f-cartesian if each d-dimensional subcube of $\mathcal{X}$ is $f(d)$-cartesian. Likewise for f-cocartesian.

For instance, if $f(d) = d+1$, the cube is $id+1$-cartesian. Some prefer to call this "dim + 1-cartesian".

We will need the generalized Hurewicz theorem which we cite from appendix A.7.3.4:

Theorem 3.1.8 *Let $k > 1$. If $\mathcal{X}$ is an $id + k$ cartesian cube of simplicial sets, then so is $\mathcal{X} \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{X}$.* ☺

Definition 3.1.9 Let A be an **S**-algebra and $n > 0$. Define the n-cube of **S**-algebras

$$(A)^n = \{S \mapsto (A)^n_S\}$$

by applying the unit of adjunction $h\colon id \to U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}$ n-times to A (so that $(A)^n_S = (U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}})^{|S|}A$). Carrying this on indefinitly, we get a functor

$$\mathcal{P} \xrightarrow{S \mapsto (A)_S} \mathbf{S}\text{-algebras}$$

such that the restriction of $\{S \mapsto (A)_S\}$ to $\mathcal{P}\mathbf{n} \subseteq \mathcal{P}$ is $(A)^n = \{S \mapsto (A)^n_S\}$.

More concretely $(A)^2$ is the 2-cube

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{h_A} & U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A \\ {\scriptstyle h_A}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle h_{U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A}}\downarrow \\ U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A & \xrightarrow{U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}h_A} & (U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}})^2A \end{array}.$$

Corollary 3.1.10 *Let $n \geq 0$. The n-cube of spectra $(A)^n$ is id-cartesian.*

Proof: For each $k > 1$, the space $A(S^k)$ is $(k-1)$-connected by II.2.1.4.2 (and so $(id+k)$-cartesian as a 0-cube). Hence the Hurewicz theorem 3.1.8 says that $S \mapsto (A)^n_S(S^k)$ is $(id + k)$-cartesian, which is stronger than $S \mapsto (A)^n_S$ being id-cartesian as a spectrum. ∎

The very reason for the interest in this construction stems from the following observation which follows immediately from lemma 3.1.1.

Proposition 3.1.11 *Let A be an **S**-algebra. Then $(A)_S$ is canonically equivalent to H of a simplicial ring for all $S \neq \emptyset$.* ☺

3.2 K-theory is determined by its values on simplicial rings

First note that K-theory behaves nicely with respect to id-cartesian squares (note that a square being merely highly cartesian is not treated nicely by K-theory, you need good behavior on all subcubes).

Theorem 3.2.1 *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an id-cartesian n-cube of **S**-algebras, $n > 0$. Then $K(\mathcal{A})$ is $(n+1)$-cartesian.*

Proof: Let $\mathcal{M} = Mat_m\mathcal{A}$ be the cube given by the $m \times m$ matrices in $\mathcal{A}$. This is id-cartesian, and so $T_0\mathcal{M} = \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{x\in I}} \Omega^x(Mat_m\mathcal{A})(S^x)$ is an id-cartesian cube of grouplike simplicial monoids. As all maps in $\mathcal{A}$ are 1-connected, they induce isomorphisms on π_0. Hence we get $\mathcal{G} = \widehat{GL}_m(\mathcal{A})$ as a pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{G}_T & \longrightarrow & T_0\mathcal{M}_T \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ GL_m(\pi_0\mathcal{A}_{\{1,\dots,n\}}) & \longrightarrow & M_m(\pi_0\mathcal{A}_{\{1,\dots,n\}}) \end{array}$$

for all $T \subset \mathbf{n}$. Consequently, $\widehat{GL}_m(\mathcal{A})$ is id-cartesian, and so $B\widehat{GL}_m(\mathcal{A})$ is $id+1$ cartesian. Using lemma A.7.3.6 we get that also

$$K(\mathcal{A}) = B\widehat{GL}(\mathcal{A})^+ \cong \left(\lim_{\overrightarrow{m}} B\widehat{GL}_m(\mathcal{A})\right)^+$$

is $(id+1)$-cartesian. ∎

Note that with non-connected definitions of algebraic K-theory we still get that the algebraic K-theory of $\mathcal{A}$ is $n+1$-cartesian (it is not $(id+1)$-cartesian, but only id-cartesian, because the spaces are not 0-connected). This is so since all the maps of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras involved are 1-connected, and so $K_0(\pi_0\mathcal{A})$ is the constant cube $K_0(\pi_0\mathcal{A}_\emptyset)$.

Theorem 3.2.2 *Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. Then*

$$K(A) \to \operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}-\emptyset}} K((A)_S)$$

is an equivalence.

Proof: We know there is high connectivity to any of the finite cubes: theorem 3.2.1 tells us that $K(A) \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}\mathbf{n}-\emptyset}} K((A)^n_S)$ is $(n+1)$-connected, so we just have to know that this assembles correctly. Now, by lemma A.6.2.4 the map

$$\operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}\mathbf{n+1}-\emptyset}} K((A)^{n+1}_S) \to \operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}\mathbf{n}-\emptyset}} K((A)^n_S)$$

induced by restriction along $\mathcal{P}\mathbf{n} \subseteq \mathcal{P}\mathbf{n+1}$ is a fibration. By writing out explicitly the cosimplicial replacement formula of A.6.3 for the homotopy limit, you get that

$$\operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} F \cong \lim_{\overleftarrow{n\in\mathbf{N}}} \operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J_n}} F|_{J_n}.$$

Hence, by lemma A.6.3.2 and theorem A.6.4.3, you get that $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}\mathbf{n}-\emptyset}} K((A)^n_S)$ approximates $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}-\emptyset}} K((A)_S)$. ∎

Chapter IV

Topological Hochschild homology

As K-theory is hard to calculate, it is important to know theories that are related to K-theory, but that are easier to calculate. Thus, if somebody comes up with a nontrivial map between K-theory and something one thinks one can compute, it is considered a good thing. In 1976, R. Keith Dennis observed that there exists a map from the K-theory of a ring A to the so-called Hochschild homology $HH(A)$. This map has since been called the *Dennis trace*.

Waldhausen noticed in [247] that there is a connection between the sphere spectrum, stable K-theory and Hochschild homology. Although the proof appeared only much later ([250]), he also knew before 1980 that stable A-theory coincided with stable homotopy. Motivated by his machine "calculus of functors" and his study of stable pseudo isotopy theory, T. Goodwillie conjectured that there existed a theory sitting between K-theory and Hochschild homology, agreeing integrally with stable K-theory for all "rings up to homotopy", but with a Hochschild-style definition. He called the theory topological Hochschild homology (THH), and the only difference between THH and HH should be that whereas the ground ring in HH is the the ring of integers, the ground ring of THH should be the sphere spectrum $\mathbf{S}$, considered as a "ring up to homotopy". This would also be in agreement with his proof that stable K-theory and Hochschild homology agreed rationally, as the higher homotopy groups of S are all torsion. He also made some conjectural calculations of $THH(\mathbf{Z})$ and $THH(\mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z})$.

The next step was taken in the mid eighties by M. Bökstedt, who was able to give a definition of THH, satisfying all of Goodwillie's conjectural properties, except possibly the equivalence with stable K-theory. To model rings up to homotopy, he defined functors with smash products which are closely related to the $\mathbf{S}$-algebras defined in chapter II.

Theorem 0.0.1 (Bökstedt)

$$\pi_k THH(\mathbf{Z}) \cong \begin{cases} \mathbf{Z} & \textit{if } k = 0 \\ \mathbf{Z}/i\mathbf{Z} & \textit{if } k = 2i-1 \\ 0 & \textit{if } k = 2i > 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\pi_k THH(\mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z}) \cong \begin{cases} \mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z} & \textit{if } k \textit{ is even} \\ 0 & \textit{if } k \textit{ is odd} \end{cases}.$$

Later it was realized that a work of Breen [32] actually calculated $THH(\mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z})$. The outcome of the two papers of Jibladze, Pirashvili and Waldhausen [127], [191] was that $THH(A)$ could be thought of as the homology of the category $\mathcal{P}_A$ of finitely generated A-modules in the sense of I.3, or alternatively as "Mac Lane homology", [160]. This was subsequently used by Franjou, Lannes and Schwartz and Pirashvili to give purely algebraic proofs of Bökstedt's calculations, [73] and [74].

For (flat) rings A, there is a (3-connected) map $THH(A) \to HH(A)$ which should be thought of as being induced by the change of base ring $\mathbf{S} \to \mathbf{Z}$.

After it became clear that the connection between K-theory and THH is as good as could be hoped, many other calculations of THH have appeared – topological Hochschild homology possesses localization, in the same sense as Hochschild homology does, THH of group rings can be described, and so on. Many calculations have been done in this setting or in the dual Mac Lane cohomology. For instance by Pirashvili in [189], [190] and [188]. For further calculations see Larsen and Lindenstrauss' papers [144], [150] and [143]. For A a ring of integers in a number field, Lindenstrauss and Madsen obtained in [151] the non-canonical isomorphism

$$\pi_i THH(A) \cong \begin{cases} A & \text{if } i = 0 \\ A/n\mathcal{D}_A & \text{if } i = 2n-1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

where $\mathcal{D}_A$ is the different ideal. In [113] Hesselholt and Madsen give a canonical description, which we will return to later.

For concrete calculations the spectral sequence of Pirashvili and Waldhausen in [191] (see 1.3.8) is very useful. This is especially so since in many cases it degenerates, a phenomenon which is partially explained in [211].

As we have already noted, the first example showing that stable K-theory and THH are equivalent is due to Waldhausen, and predates the definition of THH. He showed this in the examples arising from his K-theory of spaces; in particular, he showed the so-called "vanishing of the mystery homology": stable K-theory of the sphere spectrum $\mathbf{S}$, is equivalent to $\mathbf{S} \simeq THH(\mathbf{S})$. Based upon this, [212] announced that one could prove $K^S \simeq THH$ in general, but the full proof has not yet appeared.

The second example appeared in [60], and took care of the case of rings, using the interpretation of $THH(A)$ as the homology of $\mathcal{P}_A$. In [54] it was shown how this implies $K^S \simeq THH$ for all $\mathbf{S}$-algebras.

When A is a commutative $\mathbf{S}$-algebra we get by an appropriate choice of model that $THH(A)$ is also a commutative $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, and the homotopy groups become a graded commutative ring. For instance, the calculation of $\pi_* THH(\mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z})$ could be summed up more elegantly by saying that it is the graded polynomial ring in $\mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z}$ in one generator in degree 2.

0.0.2 Organization

In the first section we will give a definition of topological Hochschild homology for **S**-algebras, and prove some basic results with a special view to the ring case. In the second section, we will extend our definition to include $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories in general as input. This is very similar, and not much more involved; but we have chosen to present the theory for **S**-algebras first so that people not interested in anything but rings can have the definition without getting confused by too much generality. However, this generality is very convenient when one wants to construct the trace map from K-theory, and also when one wants to compare with the homology of additive categories. This is particularly clear when one wants good definitions for the "trace" map from algebraic K-theory, which we present in chapter V.

0.1 Where to read

The literature on THH is not as well developed as for K-theory; and there is a significant overlap between these notes and most of the other sources. The original paper [22] is good reading, but has unfortunately not yet appeared. The article [111] develops the ideas in [19] further, and is well worth studying to get an equivariant point of view on the matter. For the THH spectrum for exact categories, [61] is slightly more general than these notes.

For a general overview, the survey article of Madsen, [162], is recommended.

1 Topological Hochschild homology of S-algebras.

As topological Hochschild homology is supposed to be a modelled on the idea of Hochschild homology, we recall the standard complex calculating $HH(A)$.

1.1 Hochschild homology of k-algebras

Recall the definition of Hochschild homology (see I.3.2): Let k be a commutative ring, let A be a *flat* k-algebra, and let P be an A-bimodule. Then we define the *Hochschild homology* (over k) of A with coefficients in P to be the simplicial k-module

$$HH^k(A,P) = \{[q] \mapsto HH^k(A,P)_q = P \otimes_k A^{\otimes_k q}\}$$

with face and degeneracies given by

$$d_i(m \otimes a_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes a_q) = \begin{cases} ma_1 \otimes a_2 \cdots \otimes a_q & \text{if } i = 0 \\ m \otimes a_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes a_i a_{i+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes a_q & \text{if } 0 < i < q \\ a_q m \otimes a_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes a_{q-1} & \text{if } i = q \end{cases}$$

$$s_i(m \otimes a_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes a_q) = m \otimes a_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes a_i \otimes 1 \otimes a_{i+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes a_q$$

Just the same definition may be applied to simplicial k-algebras, and this definition of HH^k will preserve weak equivalences. Again we either assume that our ring is flat, or else we substitute it with one that is, and so we are really defining what some call Shukla homology after [221]. To make this functorial in (A, P) we really should choose a functorial flat resolution of rings once and for all, but since our main applications are to rings that are already flat, we choose to suppress this.

1.1.1 Cyclic structure

In the case $P = A$ something interesting happens. Then $HH^k(A) = HH^k(A, A)$ is not only a simplicial object, but also a *cyclic* object (see VI.1.1 for a more detailed discussion of cyclic objects, and section 1.2.7 below for the structure on THH). Recall that a *cyclic object* is a functor from Connes' category Λ^o, where Λ is the category containing Δ, but with an additional endomorphism for each object, satisfying certain relations. In terms of generators, this means that in addition to all maps coming from Δ for each $[q]$ there is a map $t = t_q\colon [q] \to [q]$. In our case t is sent to the map $A^{\otimes_k (q+1)} \to A^{\otimes_k (q+1)}$ sending $a_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes a_q$ to $a_q \otimes a_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes a_{q-1}$.

To be precise:

Definition 1.1.2 Connes' category Λ is the category with the same objects as the simplicial category Δ, but with morphism sets

$$\Lambda([n], [q]) = \Delta([n], [q]) \times C_{n+1},$$

where C_{n+1} is the cyclic group with generator $t = t_n$ and with $t_n^{n+1} = 1_{[n]}$. Here a pair (σ, t^a) is considered as a composite

$$[n] \xrightarrow{t^a} [n] \xrightarrow{\sigma} [q]$$

(where $t = t_n$ is the generator of C_{n+1}, so that $t_n^{n+1} = 1_{[n]}$). Composition is subject to the extra relations

$$\begin{aligned} t_n d^i &= d^{i-1} t_{n-1} && 1 \leq i \leq n \\ t_n d^0 &= d^n && \\ t_n s^i &= s^{i-1} t_{n+1} && 1 \leq i \leq n \\ t_n s^0 &= s^n t_{n+1}^2 && \end{aligned}$$

A *cyclic object* in some category $\mathcal{C}$ is a functor $\Lambda^o \to \mathcal{C}$, and a *cyclic map* is a natural transformation between cyclic objects.

Notice that any map in Λ can be written as a composite ϕt^a where $\phi \in \Delta$. Furthermore, this factorization is unique.

Due to the inclusion $j\colon \Delta \subset \Lambda$, any cyclic object X gives rise to a simplicial object $j^* X$.

Hochschild homology is just an instance of a general gadget giving cyclic objects: let M be a monoid in a symmetric monoidal category $(\mathcal{C}, \square, e)$. Then the *cyclic bar construction* is the cyclic object $B^{cy}(M) = \{[q] \mapsto M^{\square(q+1)}\}$. Hochschild homology is then the example coming from $(k\text{-mod}, \otimes_k, k)$. The most basic example is the *cyclic bar construction* of ordinary monoids: in the symmetric monoidal category of sets with cartesian product, a monoid is just an ordinary monoid, and $B^{cy}_q(M) = M^{\times(q+1)}$. Slightly more fancy are the cases $(Cat, \times, *)$: monoids are strict monoidal categories, or $(\mathcal{S}, \times, *)$: monoids are simplicial monoids. We have already seen an example of the former: the object $\{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{I}^{q+1}\}$ which appeared in II.2.2.1 was simply $B^{cy}\mathcal{I}$.

1.2 Topological Hochschild homology of S-algebras

In analogy with the above definition of HH^k, Bökstedt defined topological Hochschild homology. Of course, **S** is initial among the **S**-algebras (as defined in section II.1.4), just as k is initial among k-algebras, and the idea is that we should try to substitute $(k\text{-mod}, \otimes_k, k)$ with $(\mathbf{S}\text{-mod}, \wedge, \mathbf{S})$. In other words, instead of taking tensor product over k, we should take "tensor product over **S**", that is, smash of Γ-spaces. So we could consider

$$HP\wedge HA\wedge \ldots \wedge HA$$

(or even smashed over some other commutative **S**-algebra if desirable), and there is nothing wrong with this, except that

1. as it stands it is prone to all the nuisances of the classical case: unless we replace HA with something fairly free in $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ first, this will not preserve equivalences; and

2. without some amendment this will not have enough structure to define the goal of the next chapter: topological cyclic homology.

Inspired by spectra rather than Γ-spaces, Bökstedt defined a compact definition which takes care of both these problems. But before we give Bökstedt's definition, we note that we have already twice encountered one of the obstructions to a too naïve generalization. Let A be a ring. The associated **S**-algebra HA sending X to $HA(X) = A \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ has a multiplication; but if we want to loop this down we have a problem: the multiplication gives a map from

$$\varinjlim_{k,l\in\mathbf{N}^2} \Omega^{k+l}((A\otimes\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^k])\wedge(A\otimes\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^l]))$$

to

$$\varinjlim_{k,l\in\mathbf{N}^2} \Omega^{k+l}(A\otimes\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^{k+l}])$$

which sure enough is isomorphic to $\varinjlim_{k\in\mathbf{N}} \Omega^k(A\otimes\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^k])$, but not equal. The problem gets nasty when we consider associativity: we can't get the two maps from the "triple smash" to be **equal**. For Hochschild homology we want a simplicial space which in degree 0 is equivalent to $\varinjlim_{k\in\mathbf{N}}\Omega^k(A\otimes\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^k])$, in degree 1 is equivalent to

$$\varinjlim_{k,l\in\mathbf{N}^2}\Omega^{k+l}((A\otimes\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^k])\wedge(A\otimes\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^l]))$$

and so on, and one of the simplicial relations ($d_1^2=d_1d_2$) will exactly reflect associativity and it is not clear how to do this.

In [22], Bökstedt shows how one can get around this problem by using the category $\mathcal{I}$ (the subcategory of Γ^o with all objects and just injections, see II.2.2.1) instead of the natural numbers. To ensure that the resulting colimit has the right homotopy properties, we must use the homotopy colimit, see the approximation lemma II.2.2.3.

Recall that, if $x=k_+=\{0,\dots,k\}\in ob\mathcal{I}$, then an expression like $S^x=S^k$ will mean S^1 smashed with itself k times, and $\Omega^x=\Omega^k$ will mean $Map_*(S^k,-)=\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^k,\sin|-|)$.

Definition 1.2.1 Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, P an A-bimodule and X a space, and define for every q the assignment $V(A,P)\colon ob\mathcal{I}^{q+1}\to ob\mathcal{S}_*$ by

$$(x_0,\dots,x_q)\mapsto V(A,P)(x_0,\dots,x_q)=P(S^{x_0})\wedge\bigwedge_{1\le i\le q}A(S^{x_i})$$

This gives rise to a functor $G_q=G(A,P,X)_q\colon\mathcal{I}^{q+1}\to\mathcal{S}_*$ given by

$$\mathbf{x}\mapsto G_q(\mathbf{x})=\Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V(A,P)(\mathbf{x}))$$

and

$$THH(A,P)(X)_q=\underset{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}{\underrightarrow{\operatorname{holim}}}\,G_q(\mathbf{x})$$

1.2.2 The homotopy type

We have to know that this has the right homotopy properties, i.e., we want to know that it is equivalent to

$$\varinjlim_{(n_0,\dots n_q)\in\mathbf{N}^{q+1}}\Omega^{\sum n_i}(X\wedge P(S^{n_0})\wedge\bigwedge_{1\le i\le q}A(S^{n_i}))$$

By the approximation lemma II.2.2.3 for $\mathcal{I}$, this will be the case if we can show that a map $\mathbf{x}\subseteq\mathbf{y}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}$ will induce a map $G_q(\mathbf{x})\to G_q(\mathbf{y})$ which gets higher and higher connected with the cardinality of $\mathbf{x}$. Maps in $\mathcal{I}^{q+1}$ can be written as compositions of an isomorphism together with a standard inclusion. The isomorphisms pose no problem, so we are left with considering the standard inclusions which again can be decomposed into successions of standard inclusions involving only one coordinate. Since the argument is rather symmetric, we may assume that we are looking at the standard inclusion

$$\mathbf{x}=(k_+,x_1,\dots,x_q)\subseteq((k+1)_+,x_1,\dots,x_q).$$

Since P is a Γ-space, lemma II.2.1.4.3 says that $S^1 \wedge P(S^k) \to P(S^{k+1})$ is roughly $2k$-connected, and so (by the same lemma II.2.1.4.2) the map

$$S^1 \wedge P(S^k) \wedge \bigwedge A(S^{x_i}) \to P(S^{k+1}) \wedge \bigwedge A(S^{x_i})$$

is roughly $2k + \vee x_i$ connected. The Freudenthal suspension theorem A.7.2.3 then gives the result.

1.2.3 Functoriality

We note that, when varying X in Γ^o, $THH(A, P; X)_q$ becomes a very special Γ-space which we simply call $THH(A, P)_q$ (it is "stably fibrant" in the terminology of chapter II, see corollary II.2.1.9), and so defines an Ω-spectrum. We also see that it is a functor in the maps of pairs $(A, P) \xrightarrow{f} (B, Q)$ where $f\colon A \to B$ is a map of **S**-algebras, and $P \to f^*Q$ is a map of A-bimodules – that is, a map of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$*-natural bimodules* in the sense of appendix A.9.4.2.

1.2.4 Simplicial structure

So far, we have not used the multiplicative structure of our **S**-algebra, but just as for ordinary Hochschild homology this enters when we want to make $[q] \mapsto THH(A, P; X)_q$ into a functor, that is, a simplicial space. The compact way of describing the face and degeneracy maps is to say that they are "just as for ordinary Hochschild homology". This is true and will suffice for all future considerations, and the pragmatic reader can stop here. However, we have seen that it is difficult to make this precise, and the setup of Bökstedt is carefully designed to make this rough definition work.

In detail: Consider the functor $G_q = G(A, P, X)_q \colon \mathcal{I}^{q+1} \to \mathcal{S}_*$ of the definition 1.2.1 of $THH(A, P; X)_q$. Homotopy colimits are functors of "$\mathcal{S}_*$-natural modules", in this case restricted to pairs (I, F) where I is a small category and $F\colon I \to \mathcal{S}_*$ is a functor. A map $(I, F) \to (J, G)$ is a functor $f\colon I \to J$ together with a natural transformation $F \to G \circ f$. So to show that $[q] \to THH(A, P; X)_q$ is a functor, we must show that $[q] \mapsto (\mathcal{I}^{q+1}, G_q)$ is a functor from Δ^o to $\mathcal{S}_*$-natural modules. Let $\phi \in \Lambda([n], [q])$. The maps $\phi^*\colon \mathcal{I}^{q+1} \to \mathcal{I}^{n+1}$ comes from the fact that $\mathcal{I}$ is symmetric monoidal with respect to the pointed sum $m_+ \vee n_+ = (m + n)_+$, and even strict monoidal if you are careful. Hence $\mathcal{I}^{q+1}$ is just a disguise for the q-simplices of the cyclic bar construction $B^{cy}\mathcal{I}$ of 1.1.1, and the ϕ^* are just the structure maps for the cyclic bar construction. The maps $G_q(\mathbf{x}) \to G_n(\phi^*\mathbf{x})$ are defined as follows. The loop coordinates are mixed by the obvious isomorphisms $S^{\phi^*\mathbf{x}} \cong S^{\mathbf{x}}$, and the maps $V(A, P)(\mathbf{x}) \to V(A, P)(\phi^*\mathbf{x})$ are given by the following setup:

for $\phi \in \Lambda([q], ?)$	define $V(A,P)(\mathbf{x}) \to V(A,P)(\phi^*\mathbf{x})$ by means of...
d^0	$P(S^{x_0}) \wedge A(S^{x_1}) \to P(S^{x_0 \vee x_1})$
d^i for $0 < i < q$	$A(S^{x_i}) \wedge A(S^{x_{i+1}}) \to A(S^{x_i \vee x_{i+1}})$
d^q	$A(S^{x_q}) \wedge P(S^{x_0}) \to P(S^{x_q \vee x_0})$
s^i for $0 \le i \le q$	$S^0 = \mathbf{S}(S^0) \to A(S^0)$ in the $i+1$st slot
t (only when $A = P$)	cyclic permutation of smash factors

We check that these obey the simplicial/cyclic identities. For this, use the associative and unital properties of $\mathcal{I}$, A and P.

Definition 1.2.5 Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, P an A-bimodule and X a space. Then the topological Hochschild homology is defined as

$$THH(A, P; X) = \{[q] \mapsto THH(A, P; X)_q\}$$

This gives rise to the very special Γ-space

$$THH(A, P) = \{Y \in ob\Gamma^o \mapsto THH(A, P; Y)\}$$

and the Ω-spectrum

$$\underline{T}(A, P; X) = \{m \mapsto \sin|THH(A, P; S^m \wedge X)|\}$$

The $\sin|-|$ in the definition of $\underline{T}$ will not be of any importance to us now, but will be convenient when discussing the cyclic structure in chapter VI. We also write $THH(A, P) = THH(A, P; S^0)$ and $THH(A) = THH(A; S^0)$ and so on, where confusion is unlikely.

Note that by lemma 1.3.1 below,

$$THH(A, P; X) \simeq \operatorname{diag}^*\{[q] \mapsto THH(A, P; X_q)\} = THH(A, P)(X)$$

for all spaces X.

Lemma 1.2.6 *$THH(A, P; X)$ is functorial in (A, P) and X, and takes (stable) equivalences to pointwise equivalences. Likewise for THH and $\underline{T}$.*

Proof: This follows from the corresponding properties for $THH(A, P; X)_q$ since maps of simplicial spaces inducing weak equivalences in every degree induce weak equivalences on diagonals, A.5.0.2. ∎

1.2.7 Cyclic structure

In the case where $P = A$ we have that $THH(A; X) = THH(A, A; X)$ is a cyclic space. Furthermore, $THH(A) = THH(A, A)$ is a cyclic Γ-space and $\underline{T}(A; X) = \underline{T}(A, A; X)$ becomes an $\mathbf{S^1}$-spectrum (where $\mathbf{S^1} = \sin|S^1|$ and $S^1 = \Delta[1]/\partial\Delta[1]$). This last point needs some explanation, and will become extremely important in the next chapter.

If Z is a cyclic space, then the realization $|Z|$ of the corresponding simplicial space has a natural $|S^1| \cong \mathbb{T}$-action (see VI.1.1 for further details), and so $\sin|Z|$ has a natural $\mathbf{S^1} = \sin|S^1|$-action. Of course, there is no such thing as an "S^1-space", since S^1 is only an innocent space - not a group - before realizing (remember that in "space" = "simplicial set").

In the case where $Z = THH(A, X)$ (considered as a simplicial cyclic set) the actual $\mathbf{S^1}$-fixed points are not very exciting: as we will show in more details in chapter VI,

$$\sin|THH(A; X)|^{\mathbf{S^1}} \cong \sin|X|.$$

An important fact in this connection is that, considered as a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, A has only one object. In the next section we will consider more general situations, and get more interesting results.

In chapter VI we shall see that, although the $\mathbf{S^1}$-fixed points are not very well behaved, the finite cyclic subgroups give rise to a very interesting theory.

1.2.8 Hochschild homology over other commutative S-algebras

Bökstedt's definition of topological Hochschild homology is very convenient, and accessible for hands on manipulations. On the other hand, it is conceptually more rewarding to view topological Hochschild homology as Hochschild homology over $\mathbf{S}$. Let k be a commutative $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. Then $(k\text{-mod}, \wedge_k, k)$ is a symmetric monoidal category, and we may form the cyclic bar construction, see 1.1.1, in this category: if A is a k-algebra which is cofibrant as a k-module and P is an A-bimodule, then $HH^k(A, P)$ is the simplicial k-module

$$HH^k(A, P) = \{[q] \to P \wedge_k A \wedge_k \ldots \wedge_k A\}$$

By the results of the previous chapter, we see that $HH^{\mathbf{S}}$ and THH have stably equivalent values (the smash product has the right homotopy type when applied to cofibrant Γ-spaces, and so $HH^{\mathbf{S}}(A, P)$ and $THH(A, P)$ are equivalent in every degree). Many of the results we prove in the following section have more natural interpretations in this setting.

If we want to talk about Hochschild homology of k-algebras that are not cofibrant as k-modules, we should apply a functorial cofibrant replacement before using the construction of HH^k above.

Example 1.2.9 (THH of spherical group rings) Let G be a simplicial group, and consider the spherical group ring $\mathbf{S}[G]$ of II.1.4.4.2 given by sending a finite pointed set X to $\mathbf{S}[G](X) = X \wedge G_+$. Then $THH(\mathbf{S}[G])_q$ has the homotopy type of $\mathbf{S}[G]$ smashed with itself $q+1$ times ($\mathbf{S}[G]$ is a cofibrant Γ-space, so one does not have to worry about cofibrant replacements), with face and degeneracy maps as in Hochschild homology. Hence $THH(\mathbf{S}[G])$ is equivalent to $\mathbf{S}[B^{cy}(G)]$, whose associated infinite loop space calculates the stable homotopy of the cyclic bar construction of G.

A particularly nice interpretation is obtained if we set $X = |BG|$, because there is a natural equivalence $|B^{cy}G| \simeq \Lambda X$ between the cyclic nerve of the loop group and the free loop space (see e.g., [87, proof of V.1.1]), and so

$$|THH(\mathbf{S}[G])(1_+)| \simeq \Omega^\infty\Sigma^\infty\Lambda X.$$

1.3 First properties of topological Hochschild homology

An important example is the topological Hochschild homology of an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra coming from a (simplicial) ring. We consider THH as a functor of rings and bimodules, and when there is no danger of confusion, we write $THH(A, P; X)$, even though we actually mean $THH(HA, HP; X)$ and so on. Whether the ring is discrete or truly simplicial is of less importance in view of the following lemma, which holds for simplicial $\mathbf{S}$-algebras in general

Lemma 1.3.1 *Let A be a simplicial $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, P an A-bimodule and X a space. Then*

$$THH(\mathrm{diag}^*A, \mathrm{diag}^*P; X) \simeq \mathrm{diag}^*\{[q] \mapsto THH(A_q, P_q; X_q)\}.$$

Proof: Let $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{I}^{n+1}$. Using that the smash product is formed degreewise, we get that

$$|X \wedge V(\mathrm{diag}^*A, \mathrm{diag}^*P)(\mathbf{x})| \simeq |[q] \mapsto X_q \wedge V(A_q, P_q)(\mathbf{x})|$$

This means that $|\Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X \wedge V(\mathrm{diag}^*A, \mathrm{diag}^*P)(\mathbf{x}))| \simeq |[q] \mapsto \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X_q \wedge V(A_q, P_q))(\mathbf{x}))|$ (the loop may be performed degreewise, see A.5.0.5), and by Bökstedt's approximation lemma II.2.2.3 we get that

$$|THH(\mathrm{diag}^*A, \mathrm{diag}^*P; X)_n| \simeq |[q] \mapsto THH(A_q, P_q; X_q)_n|$$

which gives the result. ∎

1.3.2 Relation to Hochschild homology (over the integers)

Since, à priori, Hochschild homology is a simplicial abelian group, whereas topological Hochschild homology is a Γ-space, we could consider HH to be a Γ-space by the Eilenberg–Mac Lane construction $H\colon \mathcal{A} = s\mathcal{A}b \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ in order to have maps between them.

We make a slight twist to make the comparison even more straight-forward. Recall the definitions of $\bar{H}\colon \mathcal{A} = s\mathcal{A}b \to \Gamma\mathcal{A}$ II.1, and the forgetful functor $U\colon \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{S}_*$ which is adjoint to the free functor $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\colon \mathcal{S}_* \to \mathcal{A}$ of II.1.3.1. By definition $H = U\bar{H}$. An $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra A is a monoid in $(\Gamma\mathcal{A}, \otimes, \bar{H}\mathbf{Z})$ (see II.1.4.3), and is always equivalent to $\bar{H}$ of a simplicial ring (II.2.2.5). As noted in the proof of corollary II.2.2.5 the loops and homotopy colimit used to stabilize could be exchanged for their counterpart in simplicial abelian groups if the input has values in simplicial abelian groups. This makes possible the following definition (the loop space of a simplicial abelian group is a simplicial abelian group, and the homotopy colimit is performed in simplicial abelian groups with direct sums instead of wedges, see A.6.4.1):

Definition 1.3.3 Let A be an $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra, P an A-bimodule, and $X \in ob\Gamma^o$. Define the simplicial abelian group

$$HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P;X)_q = \underrightarrow{\operatorname{holim}}_{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}} \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}\left(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]\otimes P(S^{x_0})\otimes \bigotimes_{1\le i\le q} A(S^{x_i})]\right)$$

with simplicial structure maps as for Hochschild homology. Varying X and q, this defines $\underline{HH}^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P)\in ob\Gamma\mathcal{A}$.

Remark 1.3.4 *Again (sigh), should A not take flat values, we replace it functorially by one that does. One instance where this is not necessary is when $A = \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}B$ for some $\mathbf{S}$-algebra B. Note that a $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}B$-module is a special case of a B-module via the forgetful map $U\colon \Gamma\mathcal{A}\to\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ (it is a B-module "with values in $\mathcal{A}$").*

If A is a simplicial ring and P an A-bimodule, $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\bar{H}A,\bar{H}P)$ is clearly (point-wise) equivalent to

$$\bar{H}(HH(A,P)) = \{X\mapsto HH(A,P;X) = HH(A,P)\otimes\mathbf{Z}[X]\}$$

Definition 1.3.5 For A an $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra and P an A-bimodule, there is an natural map

$$THH(UA,UP)(X)\to UHH^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P)(X),$$

called the *linearization map*, given by the Hurewicz map $X\to\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ and by sending the smash of simplicial abelian groups to tensor product (again, if A should happen to be non-flat, we should take a functorial flat resolution, and in this case the "map" is really the one described preceded by a homotopy equivalence pointing in the wrong direction).

In the particular case of a simplicial ring R and R-bimodule Q, the term *linearization map* refers to the "weak" map

$$THH(HR,HR)\to UHH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\bar{H}R,\bar{H}Q)\xleftarrow{\sim} H(HH(R,R)).$$

The linearization map is generally far from being an equivalence (it *is* for general reasons always two-connected). If $P=A$ it is a cyclic map.

However, we may factor $THH(UA,UP)\to UHH^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P)$ through a useful equivalence:

Lemma 1.3.6 *Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, P a $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A$-bimodule and $X\in ob\Gamma^o$. The inclusion*

$$X\wedge P(S^{x_0})\wedge \bigwedge_{1\le i\le q} A(S^{x_i})\to\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]\otimes P(S^{x_0})\otimes\bigotimes_{1\le i\le q}\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[A(S^{x_i})]$$

induces an equivalence

$$THH(A,UP)\xrightarrow{\sim} UHH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A,P).$$

Proof: It is enough to prove it degreewise. If $M \in s\mathcal{A}b$ is m-connected, and $Y \in \mathcal{S}_*$ is y-connected, then $M \wedge Y \to M \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[Y]$ is $2m+y+2$ connected (by induction on the cells of Y: assume $Y = S^{y+1}$, and consider $M \to \Omega^{y+1}(M \wedge S^{y+1}) \to \Omega^{y+1} M \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^{y+1}]$. The composite is an equivalence, and the first map is $2m+1$ connected by the Freudenthal suspension theorem A.7.2.3). Setting $M = P(S^{x_0})$ and $Y = X \wedge \bigwedge_{1 \le i \le q} A(S^{x_i})$ we get that the map is $2x_0 - 2 + \sum_{i=1}^{q}(x_i - 1) + \mathrm{conn}(X) + 2$ connected, and so, after looping down the appropriate number of times, $x_0 - q + \mathrm{conn}(X)$ connected, which goes to infinity with x_0. ∎

In the future we may not always be as pedantic as all this. We will often suppress forgetful functors, and write this as $THH(A,P) \xrightarrow{\sim} HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A, P)$.

If A is an $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebra and P an A-bimodule, this gives a factorization

$$THH(UA, UP) \xrightarrow{\sim} UHH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}UA, P) \to UHH^{\mathbf{Z}}(A, P).$$

Remark 1.3.7 *Some words of caution:*

1. *Note, that even if $P = A$, $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A, P)$ is not a cyclic device.*
2. *Note that if A is a simplicial ring, then $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}HA$ is not equal to $H\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A$. We will discover an interesting twist to this when we apply these lines of thought to additive categories instead of rings (see section 2.4).*
3. *In view of the equivalence $H\mathbf{Z} \wedge A \simeq \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}A$, lemma 1.3.6 result should be interpreted as a change of ground ring equivalence*

   $$HH^{\mathbf{S}}(A, UP) \simeq UHH^{H\mathbf{Z}}(H\mathbf{Z} \wedge A, P).$$

   More generally, if $k \to K$ is a map of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, A a cofibrant k-algebra and P a $K \wedge_k A$-bimodule, then

   $$HH^{k}(A, f^*P) \simeq f^* HH^{K}(K \wedge_k A, P)$$

   where $f\colon A \cong k \wedge_k A \to K \wedge_k A$.

For comparison purposes the following lemmas are important (see [191, 4.2])

Lemma 1.3.8 *If A is a ring and P an A-bimodule, then there is a spectral sequence*

$$E^2_{p,q} = HH_p(A, \pi_q THH(\mathbf{Z}, P; X); Y) \Rightarrow \pi_{p+q} THH(A, P; X \wedge Y).$$

Proof: For a proof, see Pirashvili and Waldhausen [191]. ∎

On a higher level, it is just the change of ground ring spectral sequence: let $k \to K$ be a map of commutative $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, A a K-algebra and P a $K \wedge_k A$-bimodule, and assume A and K cofibrant as k-modules, then

$$HH^{k}(A, P) \simeq HH^{K}(K \wedge_k A, P) \simeq HH^{K}(A, HH^{k}(K, P))$$

where by abuse of notation P is regarded as a bimodule over the various algebras in question through the obvious maps.

Lemma 1.3.9 *If A is a ring and P an is A-bimodule, then the map*

$$THH(A,P) \to HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P)$$

(and all the other variants) is a point-wise equivalence after rationalization, and also after profinite completion followed by rationalization.

Proof: In the proof of the spectral sequence of lemma 1.3.8, we see that the edge homomorphism is induced by the map $\pi_*THH(A,P) \to \pi_*HH(A,P)$. From Bökstedt's calculation of $\pi_*THH(\mathbf{Z},P)$ we get that all terms in the spectral sequence above the base line are torsion groups of bounded order. Thus, $\pi_jTHH(A,P)$ and $\pi_jHH^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P) = \pi_jHH(A,P)$ differ at most by groups of this sort, and so the homotopy groups of the profinite completions $THH(A,P)\widehat{}$ and $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P)\widehat{}$ will also differ by torsion groups of bounded order, and hence we have an equivalence $THH(A,P)\widehat{}_{(0)} \to HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P)\widehat{}_{(0)}$. ∎

If the reader prefers not to use the calculation of $THH(\mathbf{Z})$, one can give a direct proof of the fact that the fiber of $THH(A,P) \to HH(A,P)$ has homotopy groups of bounded order directly from the definition.

Sketch:

1. Enough to do it in each simplicial dimension.

2. As A and P are flat as abelian groups we may resolve each by free abelian groups (multiplication plays no role), and so it is enough to prove it for free abelian groups.

3. Must show that $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]\wedge\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[Y]\wedge Z \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X\wedge Y]\wedge Z$ has fiber whose homotopy is torsion of bounded order in a range depending on the connectivity of X, Y and Z, and this follows as the homology groups of the integral Eilenberg–Mac Lane spaces are finite in a range.

1.4 THH is determined by its values on simplicial rings

In theorem III.3.2.1, we showed that algebraic K-theory is determined by its values on simplicial rings. In this section we prove the analogous statement of theorem for topological Hochschild homology.

Let A be an **S**-algebra. Recall the definition of the functorial cube $\mathcal{A} = \{S \mapsto (A)_S\}$ of **S**-algebras from III.3.1.9 whose nodes $(A)_S$ were all equivalent to simplicial rings by proposition III.3.1.11. In particular, the S'th node was obtained by applying the free-forgetful pair $(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}},U)$ as many times as there are elements in S. The functor $S \mapsto (-)^n_S$ can clearly be applied to A-bimodules as well, and $S \mapsto (P)^n_S$ will be a cube of $S \mapsto (A)^n_S$-bimodules.

We will need the following result about the smashing of cubes. For the definition of f-cartesian cubes, see III.3.1.7.

Lemma 1.4.1 *Let $\mathcal{X}^i$ be $id + x_i$ cartesian cubes for $i = 1, \dots, n$. Then*

$$\mathcal{X} = \{S \mapsto \bigwedge_{1 \le i \le n} \mathcal{X}^i_S\}$$

is $id + \sum_i x_i$ cartesian.

Proof: Note that each d-subcube of $\mathcal{X}$ can be subdivided into d-cubes, each of whose maps are the identity on all the smash factors but one. Each of these d-cubes are by induction $2 \cdot id + \sum_i x_i - 1$-cocartesian, and so the d-subcube we started with was $2 \cdot id + \sum_i x_i - 1$-cocartesian. ∎

Proposition 1.4.2 *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an id-cartesian cube of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, and $\mathcal{P}$ an id-cartesian cube of $\mathcal{A}$-bimodules (i.e., each $S \to T$ induces a map of natural bimodules $(\mathcal{A}_S, \mathcal{P}_S) \to (\mathcal{A}_T, \mathcal{P}_T)$) and X a k-connected space. Then $THH(\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{P}; X)$ is $id + k + 1$ cartesian.*

Proof: By applying the monoidal fibrant replacement functor T_0 of II.2.2.2, we may assume that for each S, $\mathcal{A}_S$ and $\mathcal{P}_S$ are stably fibrant, so that the id-cartesian conditions actually hold point-wise: for each finite pointed set Y, the cubes of spaces $\mathcal{A}(Y)$ and $\mathcal{P}(Y)$ are id-cartesian.

Since realization commutes with homotopy colimits, the claim will follow if we can prove that for each $q \ge 0$, $S \mapsto THH(\mathcal{A}_S, \mathcal{P}_S; X)_q$ is $2 \cdot id + k$ cocartesian.

For any $q \ge 0$ the lemma above tells us that

$$S \mapsto X \wedge \mathcal{P}_S(S^{x_0}) \wedge \bigwedge_{1 \le i \le q} \mathcal{A}_S(S^{x_i})$$

is $id + k + 1 + \sum_{i=0}^q x_i$ cartesian. Looping down the appropriate number of times, this is $id + k + 1$ cartesian, and so

$$S \mapsto THH(\mathcal{A}_S, \mathcal{P}_S; X)_q$$

is $id + \mathrm{conn}(X) + 1$ cartesian. ∎

Theorem 1.4.3 (THH) *Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra and P an A-bimodule. Then the natural map*

$$THH(A, P) \to \underset{\overleftarrow{S \in \mathcal{P} - \emptyset}}{\mathrm{holim}} THH((A)_S, (P)_S)$$

is an equivalence.

Proof: This is a direct consequence of the above proposition applied to

$$\mathcal{A} = \{S \mapsto (A)_S\} \text{ and } \mathcal{P} = \{S \mapsto (P)_S\}$$

since the hypotheses are satisfied by theorem III.3.1.10, using the same method as we used in theorem III.3.2.2 to pass from finite to infinite cubes. ∎

This means that we can reduce many questions about THH of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras to questions about THH of (simplicial) rings, which again may often be reduced to questions about integral Hochschild homology by means of the spectral sequence of lemma 1.3.8.

As an example of this technique consider the following proposition.

Proposition 1.4.4 *Let A be an* **S***-algebra and P an A-bimodule, then Morita invariance holds for THH, i.e., the natural map*

$$THH(A,P) \xrightarrow{\sim} THH(Mat_n A, Mat_n P)$$

is a point-wise equivalence. If B is another **S***-algebra and Q a B-bimodule, then THH preserves products, i.e., the natural map*

$$THH(A\times B, P\times Q) \xrightarrow{\sim} THH(A,P)\times THH(B,Q)$$

is a point-wise equivalence.

Proof: Since the composites

$$\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[Mat_n A(X)] \cong \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[\prod_n \bigvee_n A(X)] \longleftarrow \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[\bigvee_n \bigvee_n A(X)] \cong \oplus_n \oplus_n \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[A(X)] \longleftarrow Mat_n \tilde{\mathbf{Z}} A(X)$$

and

$$\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[A(X)\times B(Y)] \longleftarrow \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[A(X)\vee B(Y)] \cong \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[A(X)]\oplus \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[B(Y)] \longleftarrow \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[A(X)]\vee \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[B(X)]$$

are stable equivalences, it is, in view of theorem 1.4.3, enough to prove the corresponding statements for rings. Appealing to the spectral sequence of lemma 1.3.8 together with the easy facts that

$$\pi_q THH(\mathbf{Z}, M_n P) \cong M_n(\pi_q THH(\mathbf{Z},P))$$

and

$$\pi_q THH(\mathbf{Z}, P\oplus Q) \cong \pi_q THH(\mathbf{Z},P)\oplus \pi_q THH(\mathbf{Z},Q)$$

it follows from the corresponding statements in Hochschild homology, see e.g. [152, page 17] (use that matrices (resp. products) of flat resolutions of are flat resolutions of matrices (resp. products)). ∎

There are of course direct proofs of these statements, and they are essentially the same as in [152, page 17], except that one has to remember that sums are just equivalent to products (not isomorphic), see e.g. [61].

1.5 An aside: A definition of the trace from the K-theory space to topological Hochschild homology for S-algebras

In chapter V we will give a natural construction of the (Bökstedt–Dennis) trace on the categorical level. However, for those not interested in this construction we give an outline of the trace map construction as it appeared in the unpublished MSRI notes [92], and later in [18]. Some of the elements showing up in the general definitions make an early appearance in the one we are going to give below.

This is only a *weak transformation*, in the sense that we will encounter weak equivalences going the wrong way, but this will cause no trouble in our context. Indeed, such arrows pointing the wrong way can always be rectified by changing our models slightly.

Furthermore, as we present it here, this only gives rise to a map of spaces, and not of spectra. We give a quick outline at the end, of how this can be extended to a map of spectra.

For any **S**-algebra A we will construct a weak map (i.e., a chain of maps where the arrows pointing the wrong way are weak equivalences) from $BA^* = B\widehat{GL}_1(A)$, the classifying space of the monoid of homotopy units of A, to $THH(A)(S^0)$. Applying this to the **S**-algebras Mat_nA, we get weak maps from $B\widehat{GL}_n(A)$ to $THH(Mat_nA)(S^0) \xleftarrow{\sim} THH(A)(S^0)$. The map produced will respect stabilization, in the sense that

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
B\widehat{GL}_n(A) & \longrightarrow & THH(Mat_nA)(S^0) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
B\widehat{GL}_n(A) \times B\widehat{GL}_1(A) & \longrightarrow & THH(Mat_nA)(S^0) \times THH(Mat_1A)(S^0) \\
\simeq\uparrow & & \simeq\uparrow \\
B((Mat_nA \times Mat_1A)^*) & \longrightarrow & THH(Mat_nA \times Mat_1A)(S^0) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
B\widehat{GL}_{n+1}(A) & \longrightarrow & THH(Mat_{n+1}A)(S^0)
\end{array}$$

commutes, where the upper vertical maps are induced by the identity on the first factor, and the inclusion of $1 \in \widehat{M}_1(A) = THH_0(Mat_1A)$ into the second factor. (Note that the horizontal maps are just weak maps, and that some of the intermediate stages may not have the property that the upwards pointing map is an equivalence, but this does not affect the argument.) Stabilizing this with respect to n and take the plus construction on both sides to get a weak transformation from $B\widehat{GL}(A)^+$ to $\lim_{n\to\infty} THH(M_nA)^+ \simeq THH(A)$.

1.5.1 Construction

If M is a monoid, we may use the free forgetful adjoint pair to form a functorial free simplicial resolution $F(M) \overset{\sim}{\twoheadrightarrow} M$. This extends to a functorial free resolution of any simplicial monoid, and in particular of $A^* = \widehat{GL}_1(A)$. The forgetful functor from groups to monoids has a left adjoint $M \mapsto M^{-1}M = \lim_{\leftarrow} G$ where the limit is over the category of groups under M. In the case M is free this is obtained by just adjoining formal inverses to all generators, and the adjunction $M \to M^{-1}M$ induces a weak equivalence $BM \to B(M^{-1}M)$ ($|BM|$ is just a wedge of circles, and the "inverses" are already included as going the opposite way around any circle. Alternatively, consider the "fiber" of $M \subset M^{-1}M$, that is, the category C with objects elements in $M^{-1}M$, and a single morphism $m\colon g \cdot m \to g$ for every $m \in M$ and $g \in M^{-1}M$. Now, C is obviously connected, and between any two objects there is at most one morphism, and so C is contractible.)

In the case of the simplicial monoids $F(M)$ we get a transformation $F(M) \to G(M) = F(M)^{-1}F(M)$. If M is a group-like, then corollary A.5.1.3 tells us that the natural map

$M \to \Omega BM$ is a weak equivalence. Furthermore, if M is group-like, then so is $F(M)$, and the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(M) & \longrightarrow & G(M) \\ \simeq\downarrow & & \simeq\downarrow \\ \Omega BF(M) & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & \Omega BG(M) \end{array}$$

tells us that $F(M) \to G(M)$ is an equivalence.

Now, for any category $\mathcal{C}$, the nerve $\mathbf{N}\mathcal{C}$ may be considered as a simplicial category whose objects in $\mathbf{N}_q\mathcal{C}$ are the q-simples in the classifying space $ob\mathbf{N}_q\mathcal{C} = B_q\mathcal{C} = \{c_0 \leftarrow c_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow c_q\}$ (see A.1.4), and morphisms simply diagrams (in $\mathcal{C}$) like

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} c_0 & \longleftarrow & c_1 & \longleftarrow & \dots & \longleftarrow & c_q \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\ d_0 & \longleftarrow & d_1 & \longleftarrow & \dots & \longleftarrow & d_q \end{array}.$$

If all morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$ are isomorphisms (i.e., $\mathcal{C}$ is a groupoid), then the face and degeneracies are all equivalences of categories. Hence, for any functor X from categories to simplicial sets sending equivalences to weak equivalences, the natural map $X(\mathcal{C}) = X(\mathbf{N}_0\mathcal{C}) \xrightarrow{\sim} X(\mathbf{N}\mathcal{C})$ is an equivalence for groupoids $\mathcal{C}$.

Also, just as we extended Hochschild homology from rings to (small) $\mathcal{A}b$-categories in I.3.2, the cyclic bar construction can be extended from monoids to categories: If $\mathcal{C}$ is a category and P is a $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule we define the *cyclic nerve* $B^{cy}(\mathcal{C}, P)$ to be the space whose q-simplices are given as

$$B^{cy}_q(\mathcal{C}, P) = \coprod_{c_0, c_1, \dots, c_q \in ob\mathcal{C}} P(c_0, c_q) \times \prod_{i=1}^{q} \mathcal{C}(c_i, c_{i-1}).$$

In particular, if G is a (simplicial) group regarded as a one point category in the ordinary sense, then we have a chain $BG = ob\mathbf{N}G \longrightarrow B^{cy}\mathbf{N}G \xleftarrow{\sim} B^{cy}G$ where the first map sends $x \in BG$ to $x = x = \cdots = x \in B^{cy}_q\mathbf{N}G$ and the last map is the weak equivalence induced by the equivalences $G \to \mathbf{N}_qG$.

Assembling this information, we have a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} BM & \xleftarrow{\sim} & BFM & & B^{cy}FM & \xrightarrow{\sim} & B^{cy}M \\ & & \simeq\downarrow & & \simeq\downarrow & & \\ & & BGM & \longrightarrow\ B^{cy}\mathbf{N}GM\ \xleftarrow{\sim} & B^{cy}GM & & \end{array},$$

where the marked arrows are weak equivalences if M is group-like, giving a weak map $BM \to B^{cy}M$.

Recall the notation T_0 and R from chapter II (T_0 is like THH_0 used as a "fibrant replacement" for **S**-algebras, and R takes a Γ-space and evaluates at $1_+ = S^0$). For any

$\mathbf{S}$-algebra A, we have a map $B^{cy}RT_0A \to THH(A)(S^0)$ given by

$$B^{cy}_q RT_0(A) = \prod_{0\leq i\leq q} \underset{\overrightarrow{x_i\in I}}{\operatorname{holim}} \Omega^{x_i}A(S^{x_i}) \to \underset{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in I^{q+1}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}} \bigwedge_{0\leq i\leq q} A(S^{x_i})$$

where the map simply smashes functions together.

Composing the weak map $BA^* \to B^{cy}A^*$ from the diagram above with the cyclic nerve of the monoid map $A^* = \widehat{GL}_1(A) \to \widehat{M}_1A(S^0) = RT_0(A)$ and $B^{cy}RT_0(A) \to THH(A)(S^0)$ we have the desired "trace map" $BA^* \to THH(A)(S^0)$. **End construction.**

If we insist upon having a transformation on the spectrum level, we may choose a Γ space approach as in [19]. The action on the morphisms is far from obvious, and we refer the reader to [19] for the details.

2 Topological Hochschild homology of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories.

Recall the definition of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories. They were just like categories except that instead of morphism *sets* $\mathcal{C}(c,d)$ we have morphism Γ-spaces $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d)$, the unit is a map $\mathbf{S} \to \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)$ and the composition is a map

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d)\wedge\underline{\mathcal{C}}(b,c) \to \underline{\mathcal{C}}(b,d)$$

of Γ-spaces subject to the usual unitality and associativity conditions. See appendix A.9.2 for details, and A.9.4 for the natural extension of bimodules to this setting.

Rings are $\mathcal{A}b$-categories with one object, and $\mathbf{S}$-algebras are $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories with one object, so just like the extension in I.3.2 of Hochschild homology to cover the case of $\mathcal{A}b$-categories, we define topological Hochschild homology of general $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories.

Definition 2.0.2 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, and P a $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule. Define for each tuple $\mathbf{x} = (x_0,\dots,x_q) \in ob\Gamma^{q+1}$

$$V(\mathcal{C},P)(\mathbf{x}) = \bigvee_{c_0,\dots,c_q\in ob\mathcal{C}} P(c_0,c_q)(S^{x_0})\wedge \bigwedge_{1\leq i\leq q} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c_i,c_{i-1})(S^{x_i})$$

and for each $X \in ob\Gamma$ and $q \geq 0$

$$THH(\mathcal{C},P;X)_q = \underset{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in \mathcal{I}^{q+1}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V(\mathcal{C},P)(\mathbf{x})).$$

This is a simplicial space as before. It is functorial in X, and we write $THH(\mathcal{C},P)$ for the corresponding Γ-object, and $\underline{T}(\mathcal{C},P;X)$ for the corresponding Ω-spectrum.

2.1 Functoriality

If $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is a map of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories, P a $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule, Q a $\mathcal{D}$-bimodule and $G\colon P \to F^*Q$ a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-natural transformation, we get a map $THH(\mathcal{C},P) \to THH(\mathcal{D},Q)$ of Γ-spaces. As a matter of fact, $THH(-,-)$ (as well any of the other versions) is a functor of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-natural bimodules $(\mathcal{C},P)$ A.9.4.2.

Example 2.1.1 The example $(\mathcal{C}^\vee, P^\vee)$ of II.1.6.3 in the case where $\mathcal{C}$ an additive category is a slight generalization of the case considered in [61, part 2]. Here $\underline{\mathcal{C}}^\vee(c,d) = H(\mathcal{C}(c,d))$, but $P^\vee(c,d) = H(P(c,d))$ only if P is "bilinear". The restriction that P has to be additive (i.e., send sums in the first variable to products) is sometimes annoying.

Note 2.1.2 Since $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories are examples of what was called ring functors in [61], it is worth noting that our current definition of THH agrees with the old one. In fact, a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category is simply a ring functor restricted to Γ^o considered as the category of discrete finite pointed simplicial sets. The distinction between $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories and ring functors is inessential in that topological Hochschild homology does not see the difference, and so all the general statements in [61, part 1] carries over to the new setting.

2.1.3 Cyclic structure and fixed points under the circle action

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category and X a space. Then, as before, $THH(\mathcal{C};X) = THH(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{C};X)$ is a cyclic space.

We promised in subsection 1.2.7 that we would take a closer look at the $\mathbf{S^1}$-fixed points. Recall that $S^1 = \Delta[1]/\partial\Delta[1]$ and $\mathbf{S^1} = \sin|S^1|$. We consider $THH(\mathcal{C};X)$ as a simplicial cyclic set, and so if we apply $\sin|-|$ in the cyclic direction we get a simplicial $\mathbf{S^1}$-space which we write $\sin|THH(\mathcal{C};X)|$. As explained in VI.1.1.4, if Z is a cyclic set, then the space of $\mathbf{S^1}$-fixed points of $\sin|Z|$ is nothing but $\lim_{\overleftarrow{\Lambda^o}} Z$, or more concretely, the set of zero-simplices $z \in Z_0$ such that $ts_0z = s_0z \in Z_1$. So, we consider the simplices in the space

$$THH(\mathcal{C};X)_0 = \underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \Omega^x(X\wedge \bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^x))$$

whose degeneracy is invariant under the cyclic action. In dimension q,

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \Omega^x(X\wedge \bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^x))_q = \bigvee_{x_0\leftarrow\cdots\leftarrow x_q\in\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{S}_*(S^{x_q}\wedge\Delta[q]_+, \sin|(X\wedge \bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^{x_q})|)_0.$$

The degeneracy sends $(x_0 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow x_q,\ f\colon S^{x_q}\wedge\Delta[q]_+ \to \sin|X\wedge \bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^{x_q})|)$ to

$$\left(\begin{matrix} x_0 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow x_q \\ 0_+ = \cdots = 0_+\end{matrix}, S^{x_q}\wedge S^0\wedge\Delta[q]_+ \to \sin|(X\wedge \bigvee_{c_0,c_1\in ob\mathcal{C}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c_0,c_1)(S^{x_q})\wedge\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c_1,c_0)(S^0))|\right)$$

where the map is determined by f and the unit map $S^0 = \mathbf{S}(S^0) \to \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^0)$. For this to be invariant under the cyclic action, we first see that we must have $x_0 = \cdots = x_q = 0_+$.

Assume f is a q-simplex in $\sin|X \wedge \bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^0)| \cong \sin(|X| \wedge \bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} |\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^0)|)$ such that

$$|\Delta[q]|_+ \xrightarrow{f} |X| \wedge \bigvee\nolimits_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} |\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^0)| \longrightarrow |X| \wedge \bigvee\nolimits_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} |\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^0)| \wedge |\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^0)|$$

is invariant under permutation, where the last map is induced by the unit map $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^0) \cong \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^0) \wedge S^0 \to \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^0) \wedge \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c)(S^0)$. Hence f only takes the value of the unit and factors through $|\Delta[q]| \to \bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} |X| \cong \sin|X| \wedge (ob\mathcal{C})_+$, i.e.,

$$\lim_{\overleftarrow{\Lambda^o}} THH(\mathcal{C};X) \cong \sin|THH(\mathcal{C};X)|^{\mathbf{S^1}} \cong \bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} \sin|X|$$

We may be tempted to say that $\bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} X$ is the "S^1-fixed point space" of $THH(\mathcal{C};X)$ because this is so after applying $\sin|-|$ to everything.

If G is a topological group and X a G-space, then $\sin(X^G) \cong (\sin X)^{\sin G}$. Likewise for homotopy fixed points (up to homotopy).

2.2 The trace

There is a map, the "Dennis trace map"

$$ob\mathcal{C} \longrightarrow THH(\mathcal{C})(S^0)_0 \xrightarrow{\text{degeneracies}} THH(\mathcal{C})(S^0)$$

sending $d \in ob\mathcal{C}$ to the image of the non-basepoint of the unit map

$$S^0 = S(S^0) \to \mathcal{C}(d,d)(S^0)$$

composed with the obvious map

$$\mathcal{C}(d,d)(S^0) \subseteq \bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} \mathcal{C}(c,c)(S^0) \to \underset{\overrightarrow{x\in ob\mathcal{I}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \Omega^x \bigvee_{c\in ob\mathcal{C}} \mathcal{C}(c,c)(S^x) = THH(\mathcal{C})(S^0)_0.$$

In other words, in view of the discussion in 2.1.3 the trace is (almost: just misses the base point) the inclusion of the $\mathbf{S^1}$-fixed points.

This type of definition of the Dennis trace map first appeared in the context of (ordinary) Hochschild homology in [173]. Its main advantage over the other definitions is that it is far easier to transport structure across the categorical definition, and it is also much easier to prove compatibility with the "epicyclic structure" on the fixed points of topological Hochschild homology (see VII.1.3.1).

2.3 Comparisons with the $\mathcal{A}b$-cases

The statements which were made for $\bar{H}\mathbf{Z}$-algebras in section 1.3.2. have their analogues for $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$-categories:

Definition 2.3.1 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$-category, P a $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule and X a finite pointed set. Consider the simplicial abelian group

$$HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\mathcal{C},P;X)_q = \underrightarrow{\operatorname{holim}}_{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}} \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}} \bigoplus_{c_0,\dots,c_q\in ob\mathcal{C}} \left(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]\otimes P(c_0,c_q)(S^{x_0})\otimes \bigotimes_{1\leq i\leq q} \mathcal{C}(c_i,c_{i-1})(S^{x_i})\right),$$

where loop and homotopy colimit is performed in simplicial abelian groups and with face and degeneracies as in Hochschild homology. Varying q and X, this defines $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\mathcal{C},P)\in ob\Gamma\mathcal{A}$.

This is natural in $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$-natural pairs $(\mathcal{C},P)$ (and is prone to all the irritating nonsense about nonflat values).

The prime examples come from ordinary $\mathcal{A}b$-categories: by using the Eilenberg–Mac Lane construction on every morphism group, an $\mathcal{A}b$-category $\mathcal{E}$ can be promoted to a $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$-category $\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ (see II.1.6.2.2). Similarly, we promote an $\mathcal{E}$-bimodule P to an $\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$-bimodule $\tilde{P}$. Since this construction is so frequent (and often in typographically challenging situations) we commit the small sin of writing $THH(\mathcal{E},P)$ when we really ought to have written $THH(\tilde{\mathcal{E}},\tilde{P})$.

Also, as in 1.3.4, it is clear that if $\mathcal{C}$ is an $\mathcal{A}b$-category and P a $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule, then $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\mathcal{C},P)$ is point-wise equivalent to $\bar{H}\,(HH(\mathcal{C},P))$

The proofs of the following statements are the same as the proofs for lemma 1.3.6 and lemma 1.3.8

Lemma 2.3.2 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, P a $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{C}$-bimodule and $X\in ob\Gamma^o$. The map $THH(\mathcal{C},UP)\to UHH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{C},P)$ is an equivalence.* ☺

Lemma 2.3.3 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an $\mathcal{A}b$-category and P a $\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule. Then there is a first quadrant spectral sequence*

$$E^2_{p,q} = HH^{\mathbf{Z}}_p(\mathfrak{C},\pi_q THH(H\mathbf{Z},HP;X);Y)\Rightarrow \pi_{p+q}THH(H\mathfrak{C},HP;X\wedge Y). \qquad ☺$$

2.4 Topological Hochschild homology calculates the homology of additive categories

There is another fact where the $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}-,-)$-construction is handy, but which has no analogy for $\mathbf{S}$-algebras.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an $\mathcal{A}b$-category, and let P be a $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule (i.e., an $\mathcal{A}b$-functor $\mathcal{C}^o\otimes\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{A}b$). Then, by the results of section 2.3 you have that

$$THH(H\mathcal{C},HP)\simeq U\,HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\bar{H}\mathcal{C},\bar{H}P),\ \text{and}\ HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\bar{H}\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{C},\bar{H}P)\simeq \bar{H}\,HH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{C},P),$$

but $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\bar{H}\mathcal{C},\bar{H}P)$ is vastly different from $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\bar{H}\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{C},\bar{H}P)$. As an example, one may note that $THH(\mathbf{Z},\mathbf{Z})$ is not equivalent to $HH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{Z},\mathbf{Z})=HH(\mathbf{Z}[t,t^{-1}],\mathbf{Z})$.

However, for additive categories ($\mathcal{A}b$-categories with sum) something interesting happens. Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category, and consider it as a $\Gamma\mathcal{A}$-category through the construction II.1.6.3: $\mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}(c,d)(k_+)=\mathfrak{C}(c,\overset{k}{\oplus}d)$. Since $\mathfrak{C}$ is additive we see that there is a canonical isomorphism $\tilde{\mathfrak{C}} \cong \mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}$, but this may not be so with the bimodules: if M is a $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule (which by adjointness is the same as a $U\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule), we define the $\mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}$-bimodule $M^{\oplus}$ by the formula $M^{\oplus}(c,d)(k_+) = M(c, \overset{k}{\oplus} d)$. If M is "linear" in either factor (i.e., M is actually a $\mathfrak{C}^o \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}$- or $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}^o \otimes \mathfrak{C}$-module) the canonical map $\tilde{M} \to M^{\oplus}$ is an isomorphism, but for the more general cases it will not even be a weak equivalence.

Theorem 2.4.1 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category and let M be a $\mathfrak{C}^o \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}$-module. Then there is a canonical equivalence*

$$THH(U\mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}, UM^{\oplus}) \simeq H\,(HH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}, M)).$$

Proof: In this proof we will use the model $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}(\mathcal{C}^{\oplus}), M^{\oplus})$ instead of $THH(U\mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}, UM^{\oplus})$ (see lemma 2.3.2), and since both expressions are very special it is enough to prove that the stabilization map $HH((\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}, M)) \to HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}(\mathcal{C}^{\oplus}), M^{\oplus})(1_+)$ is an equivalence. Since the functors in the statement are homotopy functors in M, it is enough to prove the theorem for projective M. But all projectives are retracts of sums of projectives of the standard type

$$P_{x,y}(-,-) = \mathfrak{C}(-,y) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}(x,-),$$

and hence it is enough to show that the higher homotopy groups vanish, and the map induces an isomorphism on π_0 for these projectives. For $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}(\mathcal{C}^{\oplus}), M^{\oplus})$ and $HH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}, M)$ this vanishing comes from the "extra degeneracy" defined by means of

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
P_{x,y}(c,d)(k_+) & = & \mathfrak{C}(c,x) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}(y, \overset{k}{\oplus} d) \\
 & & \Big\downarrow{\scriptstyle f\otimes|\sum g_i| \mapsto f\otimes|1_y|\otimes|\sum g_i|} \\
P_{x,y}(c,y)(1_+) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}(y, \oplus d)(k_+) & = & \mathfrak{C}(c,x) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}(y,y) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}(y, \overset{k}{\oplus} d)
\end{array}$$

(the vertical lines are supposed to remind the reader that whatever is inside these are considered as generators in a free abelian group). This defines a contracting homotopy

$$s_{q+1}\colon HH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}, P_{x,y})_q \to HH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}, P_{x,y})_{q+1},$$

and likewise for $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}, P^{\oplus}_{x,y})$.

On π_0 we proceed as follows. Notice that

$$\pi_0(HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}, P^{\oplus}_{x,y})_0) \cong \bigoplus_{c \in ob\mathfrak{C}} \mathfrak{C}(c,y) \otimes \mathfrak{C}(x,c)$$

(essentially the Hurewicz theorem: if M is an abelian group $\pi_0 \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}(M \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^k]) \cong M$) and $\pi_0(HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}, P^{\oplus}_{x,y})_1) \cong \bigoplus_{c,d \in ob\mathfrak{C}} \mathfrak{C}(c,y) \otimes \mathfrak{C}(x,d) \otimes \mathfrak{C}(d,c)$. Hence the map $\pi_0 HH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}, P_{x,y}) \to \pi_0 HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}, P_{x,y})$ is the map induced by the map of coequalizers

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\bigoplus_c \mathfrak{C}(c,y) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}(x,c) & \leftleftarrows & \bigoplus_{c,d} \mathfrak{C}(c,y) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}(x,d) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}(d,c)\ . \\
\Big\downarrow & & \Big\downarrow \\
\bigoplus_c \mathfrak{C}(c,y) \otimes \mathfrak{C}(x,c) & \leftleftarrows & \bigoplus_{c,d} \mathfrak{C}(c,y) \otimes \mathfrak{C}(x,d) \otimes \mathfrak{C}(d,c)
\end{array}$$

However, both these coequalizers are isomorphic to $\mathfrak{C}(x,y)$, as can be seen by the unit map $\mathfrak{C}(x,y) \to \mathfrak{C}(x,y) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}(y,y)$ and the composition $\mathfrak{C}(c,y) \otimes \mathfrak{C}(x,c) \to \mathfrak{C}(x,y)$ (here the linearity in the first factor is crucial: the class of $f \otimes |g| \in \mathfrak{C}(c,y) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}(x,c)$ equals the class of $fg \otimes |1_x| \in \mathfrak{C}(x,y) \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}(x,x)$), and the map comparing the coequalizers is an isomorphism. ∎

Remark 2.4.2 *The proof of this theorem is somewhat delicate in that it steers a middle course between variants. We used the nonlinearity in the second factor of M to reduce to the projectives $P_{x,y}$ where this nonlinearity gave us the contracting homotopy. We then used the linearity in the first factor to identify the π_0 parts. A more general statement is that $THH(U\mathfrak{C}^{\oplus}, UM^{\oplus})$ is $HH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}, LM)$ where L is linearization in the second factor. This first/second factor asymmetry is quite unnecessary and due to the fact that we stabilize in the second factor only. We could dualize and stabilize in the first factor only (the opposite of an additive category is an additive category), or we could do both at once. We leave the details to the interested reader.*

Corollary 2.4.3 (Pirashvili-Waldhausen [191]) *Let A be a discrete ring and M a bimodule. Then there is a natural chain of weak equivalences connecting $THH(HA, HM)$ and (the Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum associated to) $HH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{P}_A, M)$, where $\mathcal{P}_A$ is the category of finitely generated projective modules, and M is considered as a $\mathcal{P}_A$-bimodule by setting $M(c,d) = \mathcal{P}_A(c,d) \otimes M$.*

Proof: Theorem 2.5.16 below gives that the inclusion of the rank 1 bimodule gives an equivalence between the topological Hochschild homology of A and of $\mathcal{P}_A$, and theorem 2.4.1 gives the weak equivalence with the homology of the category. ∎

2.5 General results

Many results are most easily proven directly for $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories, and not by referring to a reduction to special cases. We collect a few which will be of importance.

2.5.1 THH respect equivalences

This is the first thing that we should check, so that we need not worry too much about choosing this or that model for our categories.

Lemma 2.5.2 *Let $F_0, F_1\colon (\mathcal{C}, P) \to (\mathcal{D}, Q)$ be maps of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-natural bimodules, and X a space. If there is a natural isomorphism $\eta\colon F_0 \to F_1$, then the two maps*

$$F_0, F_1\colon THH(\mathcal{C}, P)(X) \to THH(\mathcal{D}, Q)(X)$$

are homotopic.

Proof: We construct a homotopy $H\colon THH(\mathcal{C}, P)(X) \wedge \Delta[1]_+ \to THH(\mathcal{D}, Q)(X)$ as follows. If $\phi \in \Delta([q],[1])$ and $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{I}^{q+1}$ we define the map $H_{\phi,\mathbf{x}}\colon V(\mathcal{C}, P)(\mathbf{x}) \to V(\mathcal{D}, Q)(\mathbf{x})$

by sending the $c_0, \dots, c_q \in \mathcal{C}^{q+1}$ summand into the $F_{\phi(0)}(c_0), \dots, F_{\phi(q)}(c_q) \in ob\mathcal{D}$ summand via the maps

$$\mathcal{C}(c,d) \xrightarrow{(\eta_d^j)_*(\eta_c^{-i})^* F_0} \mathcal{D}(F_i(c), F_j(d))$$

for $i, j \in \{0,1\}$ (and $P(c,d) \longrightarrow Q(F_0(c), F_0(d)) \xrightarrow{(\eta_d^j)_*(\eta_c^{-i})^*} Q(F_i(c), F_j(d))$) ∎

Corollary 2.5.3 (THH respects $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalences) *Let $\mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{D}$ be $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalence of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories, P a $\mathcal{D}$-bimodule and X a space. Then*

$$THH(\mathcal{C}, F^*P)(X) \xrightarrow{\simeq} THH(\mathcal{D}, P)(X).$$

Proof: Let G be an inverse, and $\eta\colon 1_{\mathcal{C}} \xrightarrow{\cong} GF$ and $\epsilon\colon 1_{\mathcal{D}} \xrightarrow{\cong} FG$ the natural isomorphisms. Consider the (non commutative) diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} THH(\mathcal{C}, F^*P)(X) \arrow[r, "\eta"] \arrow[d, "F"] & THH(\mathcal{C}, (FGF)^*P)(X) \arrow[d, "F"] \\ THH(\mathcal{D}, P)(X) \arrow[r, "\epsilon"] & THH(\mathcal{D}, (FG)^*P)(X) \arrow[ul, "G"'] \end{tikzcd}$$

Lemma 2.5.2 then states that we get a map homotopic to the identity if we start with one of the horizontal isomorphism and go around a triangle. ∎

Recall the notion of stable equivalences of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories II.2.4.1.

Lemma 2.5.4 (THH respects stable equivalences of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories) *Consider a map $F\colon (\mathcal{C}, P) \to (\mathcal{D}, Q)$ of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-natural bimodules, and assume F is a stable equivalence of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories inducing stable equivalences*

$$P(c, c') \to Q(F(c), F(c'))$$

for every $c, c' \in ob\mathcal{C}$. Then F induces a point-wise equivalence

$$THH(\mathcal{C}, P) \to THH(\mathcal{D}, Q).$$

Proof: According to lemma II.2.4.2 we may assume that F is either a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalence, or a stable equivalence inducing an identity on the objects. If F is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalence we are done by corollary 2.5.3 once we notice that the conditions on P and Q imply that $THH(\mathcal{C}, P) \to THH(\mathcal{C}, F^*Q)$ is a point-wise equivalence.

If F is a stable equivalence inducing the identity on objects, then clearly F induces a point-wise equivalence

$$THH(\mathcal{C}, P)_q \to THH(\mathcal{C}, F^*Q)_q \to THH(\mathcal{D}, Q)_q$$

in every simplicial degree q. ∎

2.5.5 A collection of other results

The approximation in section 1.4 of $THH(A)$ for an arbitrary **S**-algebra by means of the topological Hochschild homology of simplicial rings also works, mutatis mutandis, for $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories to give an approximation of any $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category in terms of $s\mathcal{A}b$-categories.

The proof of the following lemma is just as for **S**-algebras (lemma 1.3.1)

Lemma 2.5.6 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a simplicial $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category and M a $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule (or in other words, $\{[q] \mapsto (\mathcal{C}_q, M_q)\}$ is a natural bimodule). Then there is a natural point-wise equivalence*

$$THH(\mathrm{diag}^*\mathcal{C}, \mathrm{diag}^* M) \simeq \mathrm{diag}^*\{[q] \mapsto THH(\mathcal{C}_q, M_q)\}. \qquad ☺$$

Definition 2.5.7 Let $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{B}$ be $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories and M an $\mathcal{A}^o - \mathcal{B}$-bimodule. Then the *upper triangular matrix* $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category

$$\left[\begin{smallmatrix} \mathcal{A} & M \\ & \mathcal{B} \end{smallmatrix}\right]$$

is the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category with objects $ob\mathcal{A} \times ob\mathcal{B}$ and with morphism object from (a, b) to (a', b') given by the product

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{A}(a, a') & M(a, b') \\ & \mathcal{B}(b, b') \end{bmatrix}$$

and with obvious matrix composition.

Lemma 2.5.8 *With the notation as in the definition, the natural projection*

$$THH\left(\left[\begin{smallmatrix} \mathcal{A} & M \\ & \mathcal{B} \end{smallmatrix}\right]\right) \to THH(\mathcal{A}) \times THH(\mathcal{B})$$

is a point-wise equivalence.

Proof: Exchange some products with wedges and do an explicit homotopy as in [61, 1.6.20].

For concreteness and simplicity, let's do the analogous statement for Hochschild homology of k-algebras instead, where k is a commutative ring: let A_{11} and A_{22} be k-algebras, and let A_{12} be an $A_{11}^o \otimes_k A_{22}$-module. The group of q-simplices in $HH\left(\left[\begin{smallmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ & A_{22} \end{smallmatrix}\right]\right)$ can be written as

$$\bigoplus \bigotimes_{i=0}^{q} A_{r_i, s_i}$$

where the sum is over the set of all functions $(r, s) \colon \{0, 1 \ldots, q\} \to \{(11), (12), (22)\}$. The projection to $HH(A_{11}) \oplus HH(A_{22})$ is split by the inclusion onto the summands where $r_0 = \ldots r_q = s_0 = \cdots = s_q$. We make a simplicial homotopy showing that the non-identity composite is indeed homotopic to the identity. Let $\phi \in \Delta([q], [1])$ and y in the (r, s) summand of the Hochschild homology of the upper triangular matrices. With the convention that $s_{q+1} = r_0$ we set

$$H(\phi, y) = y, \text{ if } r_k = s_{k+1} \text{ for all } k \in \phi^{-1}(0)$$

and zero otherwise. We check that for $j \in [q]$ we have equality $d_j H(\phi, y) = H(\phi d^j, d_j y)$, and so we have a simplicial homotopy. Note that $H(1,-)$ is the identity and $H(0,-)$ is the projection ($r_0 = s_1, \dots r_{q-1} = s_q, r_q = s_0$ implies that all indices are the same due to the upper triangularity).

The general result is proven by just the same method, exchanging products with wedges to use the distributivity of smash over wedge, and keeping track of the objects (this has the awkward effect that you have to talk about non-unital issues. If you want to avoid this you can obtain the general case from the $\mathcal{A}b$-case by approximating as in 1.4). Alternatively you can steal the result from I.3.6 via the equivalences

$$THH(\mathfrak{C}) \simeq H\,HH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}, \mathfrak{C}) \simeq H\,HH(\mathbf{Z}\mathfrak{C}, \mathfrak{C}) = F(\mathfrak{C}, \mathfrak{C})$$

to get an only slightly weaker result. ∎

Setting M in lemma 2.5.8 to be the trivial module you get that THH preserves products (or again, you may construct an explicit homotopy as in [61, 1.6.15] (replacing products with wedges). There are no added difficulties with the bimodule statement.

Corollary 2.5.9 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories, P a $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule, Q a $\mathcal{D}$-bimodule. Then the canonical map is a point-wise equivalence*

$$THH(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D}, P \times Q) \to THH(\mathcal{C}, P; X) \times THH(\mathcal{D}, Q; X). \qquad ☺$$

Recall from III.2.1.1 the canonical map $\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(S^1) \to S\mathfrak{C}$, which in dimension q is induced by sending the sum diagram $C \in ob\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C})(q_+)$ to $c \in obS_q\mathfrak{C}$ with $c_{ij} = C_{\{0,i+1,i+2,\dots,j-1,j\}}$ and obvious maps. This map factors through the (degreewise) equivalence of categories $T\mathfrak{C} \to S\mathfrak{C}$ discussed in I.2.2.5, where $T\mathfrak{C}$ is the simplicial category of upper triangular matrices. Since $\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C})$ is equivalent to $\mathfrak{C}^{\times q}$, we get by induction (setting $\mathcal{A} = M = \mathfrak{C}$ and $\mathcal{B} = T_{q-1}\mathfrak{C}$ in lemma 2.5.8) that, for each q and X, the map $THH(\bar{H}(\mathfrak{C})(q_+); X) \to THH(S_q\mathfrak{C}; X)$ is a weak equivalence. Letting q vary and using that THH can be calculated degreewise (just as in lemma 1.3.1), we get the following corollary:

Corollary 2.5.10 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category and X a space. Then the natural map $THH(\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}; X) \to THH(S\mathcal{C}; X)\}$ is a weak equivalence.* ☺

2.5.11 Cofinality

Another feature which is important is the fact that topological Hochschild homology is insensitive to *cofinal inclusions* (see below). Note that this is very different from the K-theory case where there is a significant difference between the K-theories of the finitely generated free and projective modules: $K_0^f(A) \to K_0(A)$ is not always an equivalence.

Definition 2.5.12 Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathcal{D}$ be a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-full inclusion of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories. We say that $\mathcal{C}$ is cofinal in $\mathcal{D}$ if for every $d \in ob\mathcal{D}$ there exist maps

$$d \xrightarrow{\eta_d} c(d) \xrightarrow{\pi_d} d$$

such that $c(d) \in ob\mathcal{C}$ and $\pi_d \eta_d = 1_d$.

Lemma 2.5.13 *Let $j\colon \mathcal{C} \subset \mathcal{D}$ be an inclusion of a cofinal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-subcategory. Let P be a $\mathcal{D}$-bimodule. Then*

$$THH(\mathcal{C},P) \to THH(\mathcal{D},P)$$

is a point-wise equivalence.

Proof: For simplicity we prove it for $P=\mathcal{D}$. For each $d \in ob\mathcal{D}$ choose

$$d \xrightarrow{\eta_d} c(d) \xrightarrow{\pi_d} d,$$

such that η_c is the identity for all $c \in ob\mathcal{C}$. Then for every $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{I}^{q+1}$ we have a map $V(\mathcal{D})(\mathbf{x}) \to V(\mathcal{C})(\mathbf{x})$ sending the $d_0,\dots,d_q \in U\mathcal{D}^{q+1}$ summand to the $c(d_0),\dots,c(d_q) \in U\mathcal{C}^{q+1}$ summand via

$$\mathcal{D}(\pi_{d_0},\eta_{d_q})(S^{x_0})\wedge\dots\wedge\mathcal{D}(\pi_{d_q},\eta_{d_{q-1}})(S^{x_q})$$

This map is compatible with the cyclic operations and hence defines a map

$$D(\pi,\eta)\colon THH(\mathcal{D}) \to THH(\mathcal{C})$$

Obviously $D(\pi,\eta)\circ THH(j)$ is the identity on $THH(\mathcal{C})$ and we will show that the other composite is homotopic to the identity. The desired homotopy can be expressed as follows. Let $\phi \in \Delta([q],[1])$ and let

$$d \xrightarrow{\eta^i_d} c^i(d) \xrightarrow{\pi^i_d} d \qquad \text{be} \qquad \begin{cases} d \xrightarrow{\eta_d} c(d) \xrightarrow{\pi_d} d & \text{if } i=1 \\ d = d = d & \text{if } i=0 \end{cases}$$

The homotopy $THH(\mathcal{D})\wedge\Delta[1]_+ \to THH(\mathcal{D})$ is given by $H_{\phi,\mathbf{x}}\colon V(\mathcal{D})(\mathbf{x}) \to V(\mathcal{D})(\mathbf{x})$ sending the $d_0,\dots,d_q \in obU\mathcal{D}^{q+1}$ summand to the $c^{\phi(0)}(d_0),\dots,c^{\phi(q)}(d_q) \in obU\mathcal{D}^{q+1}$ summand via

$$\mathcal{D}(\pi^{\phi(0)}_{d_0},\eta^{\phi(q)}_{d_q})(S^{x_0})\wedge\dots\wedge\mathcal{D}(\pi^{\phi(q)}_{d_q},\eta^{\phi(q-1)}_{d_{q-1}})(S^{x_q}).$$

∎

2.5.14 Application to the case of discrete rings

As an easy application, we will show how these theorems can be used to analyze the topological Hochschild homology of a discrete ring. The more general case of **S**-algebras will be treated later.

For a discrete ring A recall the category $\mathcal{P}_A$ of finitely generated projective modules (I.2.1.3) and the category $\mathcal{F}_A$ of finitely generated free modules (I.2.1.4).

Lemma 2.5.15 *Let A be a discrete ring, and let P be an A-bimodule, and by abuse of notation let P also denote the $\mathcal{P}_A$-bimodule $Hom_A(-,-\otimes_A P) \cong \mathcal{P}_A(-,-)\otimes_A P\colon \mathcal{P}_A \times \mathcal{P}^o_A \to \mathcal{A}b$. Then the inclusion $\mathcal{F}_A \subseteq \mathcal{P}_A$ induces a point-wise equivalence*

$$THH(\mathcal{P}_A,P) \xrightarrow{\sim} THH(\mathcal{F}_A,P). \qquad ☺$$

In the statement of the theorem we have again used the shorthand of writing $THH(A)$ when we really mean $THH(HA)$, and likewise for $THH(\mathcal{P}_A)$.

Theorem 2.5.16 *The inclusion of A in $\mathcal{P}_A$ as the rank 1 free module induces a point-wise equivalence*

$$THH(A,P) \xrightarrow{\sim} THH(\mathcal{P}_A,P).$$

Proof: Let $\mathcal{F}_A$ be the category of finitely generated free modules, and let $\mathcal{F}_A^k$ be the subcategory of free modules of rank less than or equal to k. We have a cofinal inclusion $M_kA \to \mathcal{F}_A^k$, given by regarding M_kA as the subcategory with only object: the rank k-module. Consider the diagram where the limit is taken with respect to inclusion by zeros

$$\begin{tikzcd}
THH(A,P) \arrow[r, "\text{Morita}", "\simeq"'] \arrow[d] & \lim_{k\to\infty} THH(M_kA, M_kP) \arrow[d, "\simeq"', "\text{cofinality}"] \\
THH(\mathcal{F}_A,P) \arrow[d, "\simeq"', "\text{cofinality}"] & \lim_{k\to\infty} THH(\mathcal{F}_A^k, P) \arrow[l, "\text{filtered colimits}"', "\simeq"] \\
THH(\mathcal{P}_A,P) &
\end{tikzcd}$$

The leftward pointing map is a weak equivalence as loops respect filtered colimits (A.1.5.5) and $V(\mathcal{F}_A,P)(\mathbf{x}) = \lim_{k\to\infty} V(\mathcal{F}_A^k,P)(\mathbf{x})$ for all $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{I}^{q+1}$. The other maps are weak equivalences for the given reasons and the result follows. ∎

2.5.17 Topological Hochschild homology of finitely generated free modules over an S-algebra

Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. The category of finitely generated A-modules $\mathcal{F}_A$ is the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category whose objects are the natural numbers (including zero), and where the morphisms are given by

$$\mathcal{F}_A(k,l) = \mathcal{M}_A(k_+\wedge A, l_+\wedge A) \cong \prod_k \bigvee_l A$$

An A-bimodule P is considered as an $\mathcal{F}_A$-bimodule in the obvious way. Except that the cofinality is not used in the present situation, exactly the same proof as for the discrete case above gives:

Lemma 2.5.18 *Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra and P an A-bimodule. Then the inclusion of the rank one module $A \to \mathcal{F}_A$ gives rise to an equivalence*

$$THH(A,P) \to THH(\mathcal{F}_A,P).$$ ☺

Chapter V

The trace $K \to THH$

In this chapter we explain how the Dennis trace map IV.2.2 can be lifted to a trace map from algebraic K-theory to topological Hochschild homology. We first concentrate on the $\mathcal{A}b$-case since this is somewhat easier. This case is, however, sufficient to define the trace for discrete rings, and carries all the information we need in order to complete our proofs. The general construction is more complex, but this needs not really concern us: the only thing we actually use it for is that it exists and is as functorial as anybody can wish.

The general construction occupies the second section, and tries to reconcile this construction with the others we have seen. In the third section we have another look at stable K-theory and verify that it agrees with topological Hochschild homology for **S**-algebras in general.

1 THH and K-theory: the linear case

In this section we define the trace map from algebraic K-theory to the topological Hochschild homology of an additive or exact category much as was done in [61].

Before we do so, we have to prepare the ground a bit, and since these results will be used later we work in a wider generality for a short while.

Algebraic K-theory is preoccupied with the weak equivalences, topological Hochschild homology with the enrichment. The Dennis trace map 2.2 should seek to unite these points of view.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, and recall from section II.3.1.3 the adaption $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}$ of Segal's construction. This is a functor from Γ^o to symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories such that for each $k_+ \in ob\Gamma^o$ the canonical map

$$\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+) \to \mathcal{C}^{\times k}$$

is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalence. Hence

$$THH(\bar{H}\mathcal{C})$$

is a functor from Γ^o to $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ or more symmetrically: a functor $\Gamma^o \times \Gamma^o \to \mathcal{S}_*$. For such functors we have again a notion of stable equivalences: if X and Y are functors $\Gamma^o \times \Gamma^o \to \mathcal{S}_*$, a map $X \to Y$ is a *stable equivalence* if

$$\lim_{\overrightarrow{k,l}} \Omega^{k+l} X(S^k, S^l) \to \lim_{\overrightarrow{k,l}} \Omega^{k+l} Y(S^k, S^l)$$

is a weak equivalence.

If X is a Γ-space, we will write $\Sigma^\infty X$ for the functor $\Gamma^o \times \Gamma^o \to \mathcal{S}_*$ sending (k_+, l_+) to $k_+ \wedge X(l_+)$. Notice that, by lemma II.2.1.4.3, the maps $k_+ \wedge X(l_+) \to X(k_+ \wedge l_+)$ give rise to a stable equivalence $\Sigma^\infty X \xrightarrow{\sim} X \circ \wedge$, and $\Sigma^\infty X$ should be thought of as a bispectrum representing the same spectrum as X.

For each $k_+ \in ob\Gamma^o$ there is a map $k_+ \wedge THH(\mathcal{C}) \to THH(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+))$ (induced by the k functors $\mathcal{C} \to \bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+)$ given by the injections $1_+ \to k_+$). Varying k_+, these maps assemble to a natural map $\Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{C}) \to THH(\bar{H}\mathcal{C})$ of functors $\Gamma^o \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$.

Proposition 1.0.1 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category. Then for each $l_+ \in \Gamma^o$ the Γ-space*

$$k_+ \mapsto THH(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+))(l_+)$$

is special, and the natural map

$$\Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{C}) \to THH(\bar{H}\mathcal{C})$$

is a stable equivalence.

Proof: For each $k_+, l_+ \in ob\Gamma^o$ the map

$$THH(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+))(l_+) \to THH(\mathcal{C}^{\times k})(l_+)$$

is a weak equivalence (since $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}$ is special and THH sends $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalences to point-wise equivalences IV.2.5.4), and so is

$$THH(\mathcal{C}^{\times k})(l_+) \to THH(\mathcal{C})(l_+)^{\times k}$$

(since THH respects products 2.5.9), and so the first part of the proposition is shown: $THH(\bar{H}\mathcal{C})(l_+)$ is special. For each k_+, the composite

$$k_+ \wedge THH(\mathcal{C}) \longrightarrow THH(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+)) \longrightarrow THH(\mathcal{C})^{\times k}$$

is a stable equivalence, and the last map is a point-wise equivalence, hence the first map is a stable equivalence, assembling to the stated result. ∎

This is a special case of a more general statement below which is proved similarly. A functor $(\mathcal{C}, P)$ from Γ^o to $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-natural bimodules is nothing but a functor $\mathcal{C}\colon \Gamma^o \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories and for each $X \in ob\Gamma^o$ a $\mathcal{C}(X)$-bimodule $P(X)$, such that for every $f\colon X \to Y \in \Gamma^o$ there is a map of $\mathcal{C}(X)$-bimodules $\bar{f}\colon P(X) \to f^*P(Y)$ such that $\overline{gf} = f^*(\bar{g}) \circ \bar{f}$. (i.e., if in addition $g\colon Y \to Z$, then the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} P(X) \arrow[r, "\bar{f}"] \arrow[dr, "\overline{gf}"'] & f^*P(Y) \arrow[d, "f^*(\bar{g})"] \\ & (gf)^*P(Z) = f^*(g^*P(Z)) \end{tikzcd}$$

commutes). In particular, $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C})$ will serve as an easy example.

Proposition 1.0.2 *Let $(\mathcal{C}, P)$ be a functor from Γ^o to $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-natural bimodules. Assume that $\mathcal{C}$ is quite special (see II.3.2.1) and for all $X, Y \in ob\Gamma^o$ the map*

$$P(X \vee Y) \xrightarrow{(\overline{pr_X}, \overline{pr_Y})} pr_X^* P(X) \times pr_Y^* P(Y)$$

is a stable equivalence of $\mathcal{C}(X \vee Y)$-bimodules. Then

$$THH(\mathcal{C}, P) \xleftarrow{\sim} \Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{C}(1_+), P(1_+))$$

is a stable equivalence. ☺

Preparing the way for the trace from the algebraic K-theory of exact categories, we make the following preliminary nerve construction (a more worked-out version will be needed later, see section 2.1.4 below, but this will do for now). Note the connections to the nerve construction used in the proof of corollary I.2.3.2.

Definition 1.0.3 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category. The *nerve of $\mathcal{C}$ with respect to the isomorphisms* is the simplicial category $\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, i)$ whose simplicial set of object is the classifying space $Bi\mathcal{C}$ of the subcategory of isomorphisms, and whose set of morphisms between $c_0 \leftarrow c_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow c_q$ and $c'_0 \leftarrow c'_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow c'_q$ is the set of all commuting diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
c_0 & \xleftarrow{\simeq} & c_1 & \xleftarrow{\simeq} & \dots & \xleftarrow{\simeq} & c_q \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
c'_0 & \xleftarrow{\simeq} & c'_1 & \xleftarrow{\simeq} & \dots & \xleftarrow{\simeq} & c'_q
\end{array}$$

in $\mathcal{C}$.

Note that the vertical maps need not be isomorphisms. Furthermore we have that

Lemma 1.0.4 *For all q the map $\mathcal{C} = \mathbf{N}_0(\mathcal{C}, i) \to \mathbf{N}_q(\mathcal{C}, i)$ induced by the degeneracies (i.e., sending c to $c = c = \cdots = c$) is an equivalence of categories.* ☺

Lastly, if $\mathcal{C}$ is an $\mathcal{A}b$-category, $\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, i)$ will be a simplicial $\mathcal{A}b$-category.

If $\mathcal{C}$ is an $\mathcal{A}b$-category we will abuse notation by writing $THH(\mathcal{C})$ when we really should have written $THH(\tilde{\mathcal{C}})$ (where the functor $\mathcal{C} \mapsto \tilde{\mathcal{C}}$ from $\mathcal{A}b$-categories to $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories of example II.1.6.2.2 allows us to consider all $\mathcal{A}b$-categories as $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories).

A consequence of lemma 1.0.4 is that if $\mathcal{C}$ is an $\mathcal{A}b$-category the map

$$THH(\mathcal{C}) \to THH(\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, i))$$

induced by the degeneracies becomes a point-wise equivalence (since the functor $\mathcal{C} \mapsto \tilde{\mathcal{C}}$ sends $\mathcal{A}b$-equivalences to $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalences and THH sends $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalences to point-wise equivalences).

This paves the way for our first definition of the trace from algebraic K-theory to topological Hochschild homology:

Definition 1.0.5 (The trace for additive categories) Let $\mathcal{E}$ be an additive category. The trace map for $\mathcal{E}$ in the Segal formalism is the following chain of natural transformations where the leftward pointing arrows are all stable equivalences

$$\Sigma^\infty Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{E} = \Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}(\bar{H}\mathcal{E}, i) \longrightarrow THH(\mathbf{N}(\bar{H}\mathcal{E}, i)) \overset{\sim}{\longleftarrow} THH(\bar{H}\mathcal{E}) \overset{\sim}{\longleftarrow} \Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{E})$$

where the first map is the Dennis trace of IV.2.2, the second is the equivalence coming from the equivalences of categories $\mathcal{E} \to \mathbf{N}_q(\mathcal{E}, i)$ and the third from from lemma 1.0.1.

1.1 The Dennis trace with the S-construction

We may also use the S-construction of Waldhausen (see definition I.2.2.1). This has simplicial exact categories as output, and we may apply THH degreewise to these categories.

If $\mathfrak{C}$ is an exact category and X a space, there is a map $S^1 \wedge THH(S^{(k)}\mathfrak{C}; X) \to THH(S^{(k+1)}\mathfrak{C}; X)$ (since $S_0\mathfrak{C}$ is trivial), and so $THH(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathfrak{C}; X) = \{k \mapsto THH(S^{(k)}\mathfrak{C}; X)\}$ defines a spectrum. It is proven in [61] that the adjoint

$$THH(S^{(k)}\mathfrak{C}; X) \to \Omega THH(S^{(k+1)}\mathfrak{C}; X)$$

is an equivalence for $k > 0$. Furthermore if $\mathfrak{C}$ is split exact, that is, all short exact sequences split, then it is an equivalence also for $k = 0$. Note that any additive category can be viewed as a split exact category by choosing exactly the split exact sequences as the admissible exact sequences. In fact, if we apply the S-construction to an additive category with no mention of exact sequences, this is what we mean.

1.1.1 Split exact categories

Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category. We defined the $n \times n$ *upper triangular matrices*, $T_n\mathfrak{C}$, in I.2.2.4, to be the category with objects $ob\mathfrak{C}^{\times n}$, and morphisms

$$T_n\mathfrak{C}((c_1, \dots, c_n), (d_1, \dots, d_n)) = \bigoplus_{1 \le j \le i \le n} \mathfrak{C}(c_i, d_j)$$

with composition given by matrix multiplication. Since $\mathfrak{C}$ is additive, so is $T_n\mathfrak{C}$. Consider the two functors

$$\mathfrak{C}^{\times n} \to T_n\mathfrak{C} \to \mathfrak{C}^{\times n}.$$

The first is the inclusion of $\mathfrak{C}^{\times n}$ as the diagonal subcategory of $T_n\mathfrak{C}$, the second forgets about off-diagonal entries, and the composite is the identity.

Proposition 1.1.2 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category. Then the inclusion of the diagonal $\mathfrak{C}^{\times n} \to T_n\mathfrak{C}$ induces a point-wise equivalence*

$$THH(\mathfrak{C}^{\times n}) \to THH(T_n\mathfrak{C}).$$

Proof: Using the stable equivalence of products and wedges, we see that the map of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathfrak{C}^{\oplus} & (\mathfrak{C}^{\times n-1})^{\oplus} \\ & (T_{n-1}\mathfrak{C})^{\oplus} \end{bmatrix} \to (T_n\mathfrak{C})^{\oplus},$$

(where the left hand category is defined in IV.2.5.7), is a stable equivalence. Hence the statement follows by induction on n from lemma IV.2.5.4 and lemma IV.2.5.8.

Alternatively you can steal the result from I.3.6 via the equivalences

$$THH(\mathfrak{C}) \simeq HHH(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathfrak{C}, \mathfrak{C}) \simeq HHH(\mathbf{Z}\mathfrak{C}, \mathfrak{C}) = F(\mathfrak{C}, \mathfrak{C}).$$

∎

Considering the additive category $\mathfrak{C}$ as a split exact category, the forgetful map $T_n\mathfrak{C} \to \mathfrak{C}^{\times n}$ factors through $S_n\mathfrak{C}$

$$T_n\mathfrak{C} \to S_n\mathfrak{C} \to \mathfrak{C}^{\times n}$$

The first map is given by sending $(c_1, \dots, c_n)$ to $i \leq j \mapsto c_{i+1} \oplus \dots \oplus c_j$, and the second projects $i \leq j \mapsto c_{ij}$ onto $i \mapsto c_{i-1,i}$.

Corollary 1.1.3 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be a additive category. Then*

$$THH(\mathfrak{C}^{\times n}) \to THH(S_n\mathfrak{C})$$

is a point-wise equivalence, and so for every $X \in \Gamma^o$ the natural map

$$THH(\mathfrak{C}; X) \to \Omega THH(S\mathfrak{C}; X)$$

is a weak equivalence.

Proof: This follows by proposition 1.1.2 since by I.2.2.5 $T_n\mathfrak{C}$ is equivalent to $S_n\mathfrak{C}$, and THH sends equivalences to point-wise equivalences. ∎

Corollary 1.1.4 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category. Then for every $k \geq 0$ the natural map $\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(S^k) \to S^{(k)}\mathfrak{C}$ induces a point-wise equivalence*

$$THH(\bar{H}\mathfrak{C}(S^k)) \xrightarrow{\sim} THH(S^{(k)}\mathfrak{C}).$$

Substituting $\mathfrak{C}$ with $S^{(k)}\mathfrak{C}$ in corollary 1.1.3 we get

Corollary 1.1.5 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category. Then the natural map*

$$THH(S^{(k)}\mathfrak{C}) \to \Omega THH(S^{(k+1)}\mathfrak{C})$$

is a point-wise equivalence for all $k \geq 0$. ☺

Exactly the same proof gives the

Corollary 1.1.6 *Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an additive category, and M a bilinear $\mathfrak{C}$-bimodule. Then the natural map*

$$THH(S^k\mathfrak{C}, S^kM) \to \Omega THH(S^{k+1}\mathfrak{C}, S^{k+1}M)$$

is a point-wise equivalence for all $k \geq 0$. ☺

These results allow us to define the trace used in [61], competing with the one we gave in 1.0.5. Just as we converted Γ-spaces M to spectra $\underline{M} = \{n \mapsto M(S^n)\}$ in II.2.1.12, we can view a functor $X\colon \Gamma^o \times \Gamma^o \to \mathcal{S}_*$ as a bispectrum with (n, m)-space $X(S^n, S^m)$. If E is a spectrum, we have a bispectrum $\Sigma^\infty E$ with (n, m)-space $S^n \wedge E_m$. If M is a Γ-space, the bispectrum corresponding to $\Sigma^\infty M$ will be exactly $\Sigma^\infty \underline{M}$.

Definition 1.1.7 (The nerveless trace for split exact categories) Let $\mathcal{E}$ be an additive category. The trace map for $\mathcal{E}$ in the Waldhausen formalism is the following chain of natural transformations (of functors from additive categories to Γ-spectra) where the leftward pointing arrow is a stable equivalence

$$\Sigma^\infty ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{E} \longrightarrow THH(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{E}) \xleftarrow{\sim} \Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{E})$$

where the first map is the Dennis trace of IV.2.2 and the second is the equivalence coming from corollary 1.1.3.

1.1.8 Comparison of traces for the Waldhausen and Segal approaches

As a last step, we want to know that the two definitions of the trace for additive categories agree. This information is collected in the following commutative diagram of bispectra (the Γ-spaces are tacitly evaluated on spheres)

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\Sigma^\infty ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{E} \arrow[d, "\sim", "\mathrm{I.2.3.2}"'] \arrow[drr] & & & \\
\Sigma^\infty Bi\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{E} \arrow[r] & \underline{T}(\mathbf{N}(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{E}, i)) & \underline{T}(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{E}) \arrow[l, "\sim"'] & \\
\Sigma^\infty Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{E} \arrow[u, "\sim"', "\mathrm{III.2.1.7}"] \arrow[r] & \underline{T}(\mathbf{N}(\bar{H}\mathcal{E}, i)) \arrow[u, "\sim"] & \underline{T}(\bar{H}\mathcal{E}) \arrow[l, "\sim"'] \arrow[u, "\sim"] & \Sigma^\infty \underline{T}(\mathcal{E}) \arrow[l, "1.0.1", "\sim"'] \arrow[ul, "1.1.3", "\sim"']
\end{tikzcd}$$

where each number refer to the result showing that the corresponding arrow is a weak equivalence.

1.2 Comparison with the homology of an additive category and the S-construction

One thing that needs clarification is the relationship with the homology $F(\mathfrak{C}, M)$ of a category which we used in I.3, and which we showed is equivalent to stable K-theory when applied to an additive category. We used the S-construction there, and we use it here, and in both places the outcome are Ω-spectra, and these coincide. As a comparison tool we use the model for topological Hochschild homology by means of simplicial abelian groups $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{C}, M)$ of lemma IV.2.3.2 .

Remark 1.2.1 *If $\mathfrak{C}$ is an additive category, and M an additive bimodule, we have strict (point-wise) equivalences of spectra (indexed by m)*

$$F(S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M) \xrightarrow{\sim} HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M) \xleftarrow{\sim} THH(S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M).$$

We have two independent proofs that these spectra are Ω-spectra (the first was given in proposition I.3.6.5). Furthermore, the maps

$$F_0(S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M) \xrightarrow{\sim} HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M)_0 \xleftarrow{\sim} THH(S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M)_0$$

are also strict equivalences, and so all maps in

$$\begin{tikzcd}
F_0(S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M) \arrow[r, "\sim"] \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] & HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M)_0 \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] & THH(S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M)_0 \arrow[l, "\sim"'] \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] \\
F(S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M) \arrow[r, "\sim"] & HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M) & THH(S^{(m)}\mathfrak{C}, S^{(m)}M) \arrow[l, "\sim"']
\end{tikzcd}$$

are (stable) equivalences of spectra. ∎

1.3 More on the trace map $K \to THH$ for rings

For comparison with earlier constructions, it is often fruitful to give a slightly different view of the trace map, where the cyclic nerve plays a more prominent rôle. Furthermore, the comparison with the map defining the equivalence between stable K-theory and topological Hochschild homology has not yet been seen to relate to the trace. This will be discussed further in the next section.

In this section we let $\mathbf{T}(A, P; X)$ be the Ω-spectrum

$$\{k \mapsto THH(S^{(k)}\mathcal{P}_A, S^{(k)}\mathcal{M}_A(-, - \otimes_A P); X).$$

Consider

$$\begin{tikzcd}
ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A \arrow[r, "c\mapsto c=c"] & \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{x\in I}} \Omega^x \bigvee_{c\in ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A} \underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A(c,c) \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^x] \arrow[d, equal] \\
\mathbf{T}(A, A; S^0) & \mathbf{T}_0(A, A; S^0) \arrow[l, "\text{degeneracies}"']
\end{tikzcd}$$

This map agrees with the trace map given in the previous section, and displays the map as the composite $\mathbf{K}(A) \cong \mathbf{T}(A)^{S^1} \subset \mathbf{T}(A)$ by IV.2.1.3, and so tells you that the circle action on THH is important. You do not expect to be able to calculate fixed point sets in general, and so any approximation to the fixed points which are calculable should be explored.

If one want maps from $Bi\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A$ instead of from $ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A$, one can either do as we did in section 1.1.8, or one may rewrite this slightly. As for groups, there is a map $Bi\mathfrak{C} \to B^{cy}i\mathfrak{C}$ for any category $\mathfrak{C}$, where B^{cy} is the cyclic nerve construction introduced in 1.5.1, given by sending $c_0 \xleftarrow{\alpha_1} c_1 \xleftarrow{\alpha_2} \dots \xleftarrow{\alpha_q} c_q \in B_q i\mathfrak{C}$ to

$$c_q \xleftarrow{(\prod \alpha_i)^{-1}} c_0 \xleftarrow{\alpha_1} c_1 \xleftarrow{\alpha_2} \dots \xleftarrow{\alpha_q} c_q \in B_q^{cy} i\mathfrak{C}\,.$$

This splits the natural map $B^{cy}i\mathfrak{C} \to Bi\mathfrak{C}$ given by forgetting (which is there regardless of maps being isomorphisms). If $\mathfrak{C}$ is a linear category we have a map $B^{cy}i\mathfrak{C} \to B^{cy}\mathfrak{C} \to THH(\mathfrak{C})$, where the first one is given by the inclusion of the isomorphism into all of $\mathfrak{C}$, and the second is stabilization. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Bi\mathfrak{C} & \longleftarrow & B_0 i\mathfrak{C} = ob\mathfrak{C} \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ B^{cy}i\mathfrak{C} & \longrightarrow & THH(\mathfrak{C}) \end{array}$$

commutes, where the rightmost map is defined as above. Setting $\mathfrak{C} = S^{(m)}\mathcal{P}_A$ and letting m vary, we obtain the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Bi\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A & \longleftarrow & ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A \\ \big\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle tr}\big\downarrow \\ B^{cy}i\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{T}(A) \end{array}\,.$$

Note that the fact that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Bi\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A & \longrightarrow & \underline{T}(\mathbf{N}(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A, i)) \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\uparrow{\scriptstyle \sim} \\ B^{cy}i\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A & \longrightarrow & \underline{T}(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A) \end{array}$$

does not commute does not give rise to a contradiction.

1.4 The trace and the K-theory of endomorphisms

Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be an exact category and let $End(\mathfrak{C})$ be the category of endomorphisms in $\mathfrak{C}$. That is, it is the exact category with objects (c, f), with $f\colon c \to c \in \mathfrak{C}$, and where a morphism $(c, f) \to (d, g)$ is a commuting diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} c & \longrightarrow & d \\ {\scriptstyle f}\big\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle g}\big\downarrow \\ c & \longrightarrow & d \end{array}$$

A sequence $(c', f') \to (c, f) \to (c'', f'')$ in $End(\mathfrak{C})$ is exact if the underlying sequence $c' \to c \to c''$ in $\mathfrak{C}$ is exact. We note that

$$obSEnd(\mathfrak{C}) \cong \coprod_{c \in obS\mathfrak{C}} End(c)$$

There are two functors $\mathfrak{C} \to End(\mathfrak{C})$ given by $c \mapsto \{c \xrightarrow{0} c\}$ and $c \mapsto \{c = c\}$ splitting the forgetful projection $End(\mathfrak{C}) \to \mathfrak{C}$ given by $(c, f) \mapsto c$. We let

$$\mathbf{End}(\mathfrak{C}) = \bigvee_{c \in ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathfrak{C}} End(c) \simeq fiber\{ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}End(\mathfrak{C}) \to ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathfrak{C}\}$$

(the $End(c)$s are here pointed at the zero maps) and note that the first step in the trace, $ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathfrak{C} \to \mathbf{T}(\mathfrak{C})_0$ factors through $ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathfrak{C} \to \mathbf{End}(\mathfrak{C})$ via the map $c \mapsto c = c$.

If $\mathfrak{C} \subseteq \mathfrak{D}$ is cofinal then $End(\mathfrak{C}) \subseteq End(\mathfrak{D})$ is also cofinal, and a quick calculation tells us that $K_0(End(\mathfrak{D}))/K_0(End(\mathfrak{C})) \cong K_0(\mathfrak{D})/K_0(\mathfrak{C})$, and hence by [227] we get that $\mathbf{End}(\mathfrak{C}) \to \mathbf{End}(\mathfrak{D})$ is an equivalence. This tells us that the "strong" cofinality of THH IV.2.5.13 appears at a very early stage in the trace; indeed before we have started to stabilize.

2 The general construction of the trace

In order to state the trace in the full generality we need, it is necessary to remove the dependence on the enrichment in abelian groups we have used so far. This is replaced by an enrichment in Γ-spaces, which is always present for categories with sum by II.1.6.3. The second thing we have to relax is our previous preoccupation with isomorphisms. In general this involves a choice of weak equivalences, but in order to retain full functoriality of our trace construction we choose to restrict to the case where the weak equivalences come as a natural consequence of the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category structure. This is sufficient for all current applications of the trace, and the modifications one would want in other (typically geometric) applications are readily custom built from this.

2.1 Localizing at the weak equivalences

The weak equivalences are typically independent of the enrichment of our categories, in the sense that they only form an $\mathcal{S}$-category; much like the units in a ring only form a group, disregarding the additive structure. When one wants to localize a ring A, one considers "multiplicatively closed subsets", or in other words, submonoids of A considered as a monoid under multiplications. In order to compare $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories and $\mathcal{S}$-categories we use the functor R from $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories to $\mathcal{S}$-categories, sending a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category $\mathcal{C}$ to the $\mathcal{S}$-category $R\mathcal{C}$ with the same objects, but with morphism spaces $R\mathcal{C}(c, c') = \mathcal{C}(c, c')(1_+)$. In the analogy with rings, R is like the forgetful functor from rings to monoids (under multiplication).

Definition 2.1.1 The category of *free pairs* $\mathfrak{P}^{\text{free}}$ is the category whose objects are pairs $(\mathcal{C}, w)$ where $\mathcal{C}$ is a small $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category and $w\colon \mathcal{W} \to R\mathcal{C}$ an $\mathcal{S}$-functor of small $\mathcal{S}$-categories.

A morphism $(\mathcal{C}, w) \to (\mathcal{C}', w')$ in $\mathfrak{P}^{\text{free}}$ is a pair $(F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}',\ G\colon \mathcal{W} \to \mathcal{W}')$, where F is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functor and G is an $\mathcal{S}$-functor such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{W} & \xrightarrow{w} & R\mathcal{C} \\ {\scriptstyle G}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle RF} \\ \mathcal{W}' & \xrightarrow{w'} & R\mathcal{C}' \end{array}$$

commutes. The morphism (F, G) is a *weak equivalence* of free pairs if F is a stable equivalence of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories and G is a weak equivalence of $\mathcal{S}$-categories.

Definition 2.1.2 The *category of pairs* (without qualifications) is in our context the full subcategory $\mathfrak{P} \subseteq \mathfrak{P}^{\text{free}}$ whose objects are the pairs $(\mathcal{C}, w)$ that have the property that $w: \mathcal{W} \to R\mathcal{C}$ is the identity on objects.

The subcategory of *fixed pairs* $\mathfrak{P}^{\text{fix}} \subseteq \mathfrak{P}$ contains all objects, but a morphism of fixed pairs is a morphism of pairs $(F, G): (\mathcal{C}, w) \to (\mathcal{C}', w')$ where F (and hence also G) is the identity on objects.

A morphism of pairs or of fixed pairs is a *weak equivalence* if it is so when considered as a morphism of free pairs.

If $(\mathcal{C}, w: \mathcal{W} \to R\mathcal{C})$ is a free pair, we let the set of objects, $ob(\mathcal{C}, w)$, be the set of objects of the small $\mathcal{S}$-category $\mathcal{W}$.

2.1.3 Making a free pair a pair

The inclusion $\mathfrak{P} \subseteq \mathfrak{P}^{\text{free}}$ has a right adjoint $\phi: \mathfrak{P}^{\text{free}} \to \mathfrak{P}$, "forcing the set of objects of the $\mathcal{S}$-categories on the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category". That is to say, if $(\mathcal{C}, w: \mathcal{W} \to R\mathcal{C})$ is a free pair, then $\phi(\mathcal{C}, w)$ is the pair $(\phi_w\mathcal{C}, \phi w)$ defined as follows: The set of objects in $\phi_w\mathcal{C}$ is $ob\mathcal{W}$ and given two objects c and d the Γ-space of morphism is defined by $\phi_w\mathcal{C}(c, d) = \mathcal{C}(wc, wd)$, and finally ϕw is given by

$$\mathcal{W}(c, d) \xrightarrow{w} R\mathcal{C}(wc, wd) = R\phi_w\mathcal{C}(c, d).$$

Note that the composite

$$\mathfrak{P} \subseteq \mathfrak{P}^{\text{free}} \xrightarrow{\phi} \mathfrak{P}$$

is the identity. Considered as an endofunctor of free pairs, ϕ is idempotent ($\phi^2 = \phi$) and there is a natural transformation $\phi \to id_{\mathfrak{P}^{\text{free}}}$ given by the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functor $\phi_w\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}$ which is w on objects and the identity on morphisms.

2.1.4 The nerve of a pair

If $\mathcal{W}$ is an $\mathcal{S}$-category, we get a bisimplicial category $\mathbf{N}\mathcal{W}$ which in bidegree p, q is the functor category $(\mathbf{N}_q\mathcal{W})_p = [[q], \mathcal{W}_p]$. Here $\mathcal{W}_p$ is the category with the same objects as $\mathcal{W}$, and with morphisms the set of p-simplices of morphisms in $\mathcal{W}$, or in other words, $\mathcal{W}_p$ is the category of p-simplices of $\mathcal{W}$ considered as a simplicial category.

Note that $\mathbf{N}\mathcal{W}$ is not a *simplicial $\mathcal{S}$-category* since the set of objects may vary in both the p and q direction. However, it is convenient to consider $\mathbf{N}\mathcal{W}$ as a bisimplicial $\mathcal{S}$-category with discrete morphism spaces. Likewise, if $\mathcal{C}$ is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, $\mathbf{N}\mathcal{C}$ is the bisimplicial $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category $[p],[q] \mapsto [[q],\mathcal{C}_p]$.

Definition 2.1.5 The *free nerve* $\mathbf{N}^{\mathrm{free}}\colon \mathfrak{P}^{\mathrm{free}} \to [\Delta^o \times \Delta^o, \mathfrak{P}^{\mathrm{free}}]$ is the functor which sends $(\mathcal{C}, w\colon \mathcal{W} \to R\mathcal{C})$ to the bisimplicial pair which in bidegree q,p is given by

$$\mathbf{N}^{\mathrm{free}}_q(\mathcal{C},w)_p = (\mathbf{N}_q\mathcal{C}_p, \mathbf{N}_q\mathcal{W}_p \xrightarrow{\mathbf{N}_q w} \mathbf{N}_q R\mathcal{C}_p = R\mathbf{N}_q\mathcal{C}_p).$$

The *nerve* $\mathbf{N}\mathfrak{P} \to [\Delta^o \times \Delta^o, \mathfrak{P}]$ is the composite

$$\mathfrak{P} \subseteq \mathfrak{P}^{\mathrm{free}} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{N}^{\mathrm{free}}} [\Delta^o \times \Delta^o, \mathfrak{P}^{\mathrm{free}}] \xrightarrow{\phi} [\Delta^o \times \Delta^o, \mathfrak{P}].$$

When we need to have names for the individual components of the bisimplicial $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category $\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C},w)$ we will write $(\mathbf{N}^w\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{N}w)$ instead.

Note that $ob\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C},w)$ is (the simplicial set of objects of) the degreewise nerve of $\mathcal{W}$, that is $ob\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C},w) = B\mathcal{W}$.

If $\mathcal{B}$ is an $\mathcal{S}$-category we let $\pi_0\mathcal{B}$ be the category with the same objects as $\mathcal{B}$, but with morphism sets from a to b the path components $\pi_0\mathcal{B}(a,b)$. Recall that a category is a *groupoid* is all its morphisms are isomorphisms.

Definition 2.1.6 We say that an $\mathcal{S}$-category $\mathcal{B}$ is a *groupoid* if for every q the category $\mathcal{B}_q$ is a groupoid. We say that $\mathcal{B}$ is *groupoid-like* if $\pi_0\mathcal{B}$ is a groupoid. A pair $(\mathcal{C}, w\colon \mathcal{W} \to R\mathcal{C}) \in \mathfrak{P}$ is called a *groupoid pair* (resp. a *groupoid-like pair*) if $\mathcal{W}$ is a groupoid (resp. groupoid-like). We say that a functor

$$(\mathcal{C}, w\colon \mathcal{W} \to R\mathcal{C})\colon \Gamma^o \longrightarrow \mathfrak{P}$$

is *groupoid-like* if $\mathcal{W}(X)$ is groupoid-like for all $X \in \Gamma^o$.

2.1.7 Localization of pairs

Given a pair $(\mathcal{C},w)$ we think of the map $w\colon \mathcal{W} \to R\mathcal{C}$ as an inclusion of a subcategory of "weak equivalences" (hence the choice of letters like w). The purpose of the localization functor is to "invert the weak equivalences". We list the properties we will need, see [57] for further details:

Theorem 2.1.8 *There are two functors $L, B\colon \mathfrak{P} \to \mathfrak{P}$ connected by natural transformations*

$$(\mathcal{C},w) \longleftarrow B(\mathcal{C},w) \longrightarrow L(\mathcal{C},w)$$

consisting of maps of fixed pairs, satisfying the following properties

lo1 Given a pair $(\mathcal{C},w)$ the map $B(\mathcal{C},w) \to (\mathcal{C},w)$ is a weak equivalence.

lo2 *Given a pair* $(\mathcal{C}, w)$ *the localization* $L(\mathcal{C}, w)$ *is a groupoid pair.*

lo3 *If* $(\mathcal{C}, w) \to (\mathcal{C}', w')$ *is a weak equivalence of fixed pairs, then* $L(\mathcal{C}, w) \to L(\mathcal{C}', w')$ *is a weak equivalence.*

lo4 *If* $(\mathcal{C}, w)$ *is a groupoid-like pair, then* $B(\mathcal{C}, w) \to L(\mathcal{C}, w)$ *is a weak equivalence.*

lo5 *On the subcategory of* $\mathfrak{P}^{fix}$ *of groupoid pairs* $(\mathcal{C}, w)$ *there is a natural weak equivalence* $L(\mathcal{C}, w) \xrightarrow{\sim} (\mathcal{C}, w)$ *such that*

$$\begin{tikzcd} L(\mathcal{C}, w) \arrow[dr] & B(\mathcal{C}, w) \arrow[l] \arrow[d] \\ & (\mathcal{C}, w) \end{tikzcd}$$

commutes.

☺

We call $L(\mathcal{C}, w)$ the *localization* of $(\mathcal{C}, w)$.

Note that in the triangular diagram of the last property, all the arrows are equivalences.

2.1.9 A definition giving the K-theory of a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category using the uniform choice of weak equivalences

We are ready for yet another definition of algebraic K-theory to be used in this book. This formulation uses the uniform choice of weak equivalences we made in section II.3.3, which to a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category $\mathcal{C}$ associates a map of $\mathcal{S}$-categories $w_{\mathcal{C}} \colon \omega\mathcal{C} \to RT_0\mathcal{C}$ by pulling back along the inclusion of the isomorphisms in $\pi_0\mathcal{C}$. Here T_0 is the monoidal fibrant replacement discussed in II.2.2.2.

Definition 2.1.10 Let $W \colon \Gamma\mathcal{S}_* -$ categories $\to \mathfrak{P}$ be the functor with $W(\mathcal{C}) = (T_0\mathcal{C}, w_{\mathcal{C}})$. Let

$$\mathfrak{k} \colon \text{symmetric monoidal } \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*\text{-categories} \longrightarrow [\Gamma^o, \mathfrak{P}]_*$$

(the $_*$ subscript means that the functors are pointed) be the composite

$$\text{symmetric monoidal } \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*\text{-categories} \xrightarrow{\bar{H}} [\Gamma^o, \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*\text{-categories}]_* \xrightarrow{W} [\Gamma^o, \mathfrak{P}]_*.$$

This is the first part of our model $\mathcal{K}$ of algebraic K-theory: If $\mathcal{D}$ is a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, then we call $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D}) = \mathbf{N}L\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D}$ the *algebraic K-theory category* of $\mathcal{D}$, where the functors $\mathbf{N}$ and L were defined in 2.1.4 and 2.1.8.

The objects $ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D})$ is referred to as the *algebraic K-theory spectrum* of $\mathcal{D}$.

2.2 Comparison with other definitions of algebraic K-theory

The morphism objects in $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D})$ are there for the purpose of the trace, but if one is only interested in the objects, i.e., in the algebraic K-theory spectrum, much of the structure is superfluous.

Lemma 2.2.1 *Let $(\mathcal{C}, w)$ be a groupoid-like pair. Then the natural maps*

$$ob\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w) \longleftarrow ob\mathbf{N}B(\mathcal{C}, w) \longrightarrow ob\mathbf{N}L(\mathcal{C}, w)$$

are weak equivalences.

Proof: This follows from the properties 2.1.8 of the localization since, by [65, 9.5], the nerve preserves weak equivalences of $\mathcal{S}$-categories (with fixed sets of objects). ∎

Together with lemma II.3.3.2 this gives the following theorem, justifying our claim that $\mathcal{K}$ measures algebraic K-theory. Recall that $Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{C}$ (the nerve of the isomorphisms of the Segal construction which we call $\bar{H}$) is one of the formulae for the algebraic K-theory, which we in III.2 compared with Waldhausen's construction and in III.3 compared with the plus construction.

Theorem 2.2.2 *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category. Then $ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D})$ is connected to $ob\mathbf{N}\mathfrak{k}(\mathcal{D}) = B\omega(\bar{H}\mathcal{D})$ by a chain of natural weak equivalences, where ω is the uniform choice of weak equivalences of section II.3.3. If $\mathcal{D}$ has discrete morphism spaces it is naturally isomorphic to $Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{D}$.*

2.3 The trace

We define topological Hochschild homology on the level of pairs $(\mathcal{C}, w) \in \mathfrak{P}$ by

$$THH(\mathcal{C}, w) = \{[q] \mapsto THH(\mathcal{C}_q)\}.$$

By an argument just like the proof of lemma IV.1.3.1 regarding THH of simplicial $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, we get that there is a chain of natural stable equivalences between (the diagonal of) $THH(\mathcal{C}, w)$ and $THH(\mathcal{C})$.

Consider the transformation

$$THH(\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w)) \longleftarrow THH(\mathbf{N}_0(\mathcal{C}, w)) =\!=\!= THH(\mathcal{C}, w)$$

induced by the degeneracies.

Lemma 2.3.1 *If $(\mathcal{C}, w\colon \mathcal{W} \to R\mathcal{C}) \in \mathfrak{P}$ is a groupoid pair, then the natural map*

$$THH(\mathcal{C}, w) \longrightarrow THH(\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w))$$

is a point-wise equivalence.

Proof: Fix a simplicial dimension p. Note that since all maps in $\mathcal{W}_p$ are isomorphisms, the map induced by the degeneracy maps

$$(\mathcal{C}, w)_p = \mathbf{N}_0(\mathcal{C}, w)_p \to \mathbf{N}_q(\mathcal{C}, w)_p$$

gives an equivalence $\mathcal{C}_p = \mathbf{N}_0^w \mathcal{C}_p \to \mathbf{N}_q^w \mathcal{C}_p$ of (Γ-set)-categories for each $q \geq 0$. The statement follows immediately. ∎

Because of naturality, we immediately get the result also if $(\mathcal{C}, w)\colon \Gamma^o \to \mathfrak{P}$ is a Γ-groupoid pair.

2.3.2 The Dennis trace for $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories

Recall the Dennis trace map of 2.2. For a pair $(\mathcal{C}, w) \in \mathcal{P}$ it takes the form

$$ob\mathcal{C} \longrightarrow THH(\mathcal{C}_0, w)(S^0)_0 \xrightarrow{\text{degeneracies}} THH(\mathcal{C}, w)(S^0)_\cdot$$

Here the first map is defined by sending $d \in ob\mathcal{C}$ to the image of the non-base point under the unit map

$$S^0 = 1_+ = \mathbf{S}(1_+) \longrightarrow \mathcal{C}_0(d, d)(1_+)$$

composed with the obvious map

$$\mathcal{C}_0(d, d)(S^0) \subseteq \bigvee_{c \in ob\mathcal{C}} \mathcal{C}_0(c, c)(S^0) \longrightarrow \left(\underset{\overrightarrow{x \in ob\mathcal{I}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \Omega^x \bigvee_{c \in ob\mathcal{C}} \mathcal{C}_0(c, c)(S^x) \right)_0 = THH(\mathcal{C}_0, w)(S^0)_0.$$

If $\mathcal{C}$ has an initial object, then the Dennis trace is a pointed map, and we get a map of Γ-spaces $\Sigma^\infty ob\mathcal{C} \to THH(\mathcal{C}, w)$ given by the "assembly"

$$X \wedge ob\mathcal{C} \longrightarrow X \wedge THH(\mathcal{C}, w)(S^0) \longrightarrow THH(\mathcal{C}, w)(X).$$

Note that since the morphism spaces are pointed by a map we may call 0, being an initial object is the same as being final. It simply means that the identity morphism is the 0-map.

Definition 2.3.3 The *Dennis trace of symmetric monoidal* $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$*-categories* is the natural transformation of "bispectra" (or, more precisely $\Gamma^o \times \Gamma^o$-spaces) which to a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category $\mathcal{D}$ gives the map

$$\Sigma^\infty ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D}) \longrightarrow THH(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D}))$$

induced by the Dennis trace.

This definition is relevant in view of a natural equivalence between $THH(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D}))$ and $\Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{D})$ which we will establish below as theorem 2.3.7. The proof of theorem 2.3.7 contains ingredients that are important in their own right and we will need to refer to later. Let

$$(\mathcal{C}, w)\colon \Gamma^o \longrightarrow \mathfrak{P}$$

and consider the commutative diagram of bispectra

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C},w) \arrow[r] & THH(\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C},w)) & THH(\mathcal{C},w) \arrow[l] \\
\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}(B(\mathcal{C},w)) \arrow[r] \arrow[u, "\simeq"] \arrow[d, "i_K"'] & THH(\mathbf{N}(B(\mathcal{C},w))) \arrow[u] \arrow[d] & THH(B(\mathcal{C},w)) \arrow[l] \arrow[u, "\simeq"'] \arrow[d, "i_{THH}"'] \\
\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}(L(\mathcal{C},w)) \arrow[r] & THH(\mathbf{N}(L(\mathcal{C},w))) & THH(L(\mathcal{C},w)) \arrow[l, "\simeq"']
\end{tikzcd} \tag{2.3.4}$$

Lemma 2.3.5 *The arrows marked with $\simeq$ in diagram 2.3.4 are stable equivalences.*

If $(\mathcal{C},w)$ is groupoid-like (definition 2.1.6), then also the arrows marked i_K and i_{THH} in diagram 2.3.4 are stable equivalences.

Proof: First consider the two maps induced by $B(\mathcal{C},w) \to (\mathcal{C},w) \in \mathfrak{P}^{\mathrm{fix}}$. By 2.1.8 $B(\mathcal{C},w) \to (\mathcal{C},w)$ is a weak equivalence, giving the result since both $\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}$ and THH send weak equivalences to stable equivalences.

The lower right hand map

$$THH(\mathbf{N}(L(\mathcal{C},w))) \xleftarrow{\sim} THH(L(\mathcal{C},w))$$

is a stable equivalence by 2.3.1 since $L(\mathcal{C},w)$ is a groupoid pair.

Assume that $(\mathcal{C},w)$ is groupoid-like. That i_K is a stable equivalence follows from lemma 2.2.1. That i_{THH} is a stable equivalence follows by 2.1.8 since THH preserves stable equivalences by lemma IV.2.5.4. ∎

Lemma 2.3.6 *Consider a Γ-pair $(\mathcal{C},w)\colon \Gamma^o \to \mathfrak{P}$. If $\mathcal{C}$ is quite special, then there is a chain of natural stable equivalences between $THH(\mathcal{C},w)$ and $\Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{C}(1_+))$.*

Proof: If $\mathcal{C}$ is quite special we obtain a chain of stable equivalences since THH preserves products and stable equivalences, following the idea of the proof of Proposition 1.0.1 and lastly using the equivalence between the degreewise version used for pairs and the usual definition of THH. ∎

If $\mathcal{D}$ is a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category and $(\mathcal{C},w) = \mathfrak{k}(\mathcal{D})$ as in 2.1.9, diagram 2.3.4 takes the form

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D} \arrow[r] & THH(\mathbf{N}\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D}) & THH(\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D}) \arrow[l] \\
\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}(B(\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D})) \arrow[r] \arrow[u, "\simeq"] \arrow[d, "i_K"'] & THH(\mathbf{N}(B(\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D}))) \arrow[u] \arrow[d] & THH(B(\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D})), \arrow[l] \arrow[u, "\simeq"'] \arrow[d, "i_{THH}"'] \\
\Sigma^\infty ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D}) \arrow[r] & THH(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D})) & THH(L(\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D})) \arrow[l, "\simeq"']
\end{tikzcd}$$

and the lower left hand horizontal map in the diagram is exactly the trace $\Sigma^\infty ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D}) \to THH(\mathcal{K}\mathcal{D})$ of 2.3.3.

Theorem 2.3.7 *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category. Then $THH(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D}))$ is naturally equivalent to $\Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{D})$.*

Proof: This is essentially lemma 2.3.5 and 2.3.6 applied to the group-like and quite special case $(\mathcal{C}, w) = \mathfrak{k}(\mathcal{D})$, since $\mathcal{C}(1_+) = T_0\mathcal{D}$. In essence, if $\mathcal{D}$ is a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, then diagram 2.3.4 gives a natural chain of stable equivalences

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & THH((\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D}) \simeq \Sigma^\infty THH(T_0\mathcal{D}) & \Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{D}) \arrow[l, "\sim"'] \\
 & THH(B(\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D})) \arrow[u, "\simeq"] \arrow[d, "\simeq"', "i_{THH}"] & \\
THH(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D})) & THH(L(\mathfrak{k}\mathcal{D})) \arrow[l, "\sim"'] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

∎

2.4 The weak trace

The price we have to pay for having a single map representing our trace is that the models of either side are more involved than their classical counterparts. At the cost of having to talk about *weak transformations* (a composite of natural transformations where the transformations pointing in the "wrong" direction are weak equivalences) this can be remedied by just exchanging the complicated models with their simpler, but equivalent, cousins.

Definition 2.4.1 If

$$\begin{tikzcd}
A_0 \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & B_0 \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] & C_0 \arrow[l, "\sim"'] \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] & \dots & Y_0 \arrow[l, "\sim"'] \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] & Z_0 \arrow[d, equal] \\
A_1 \arrow[r] & B_1 & C_1 \arrow[l, "\sim"'] \arrow[r] & \dots & Y_1 \arrow[l, "\sim"'] \arrow[r] & Z_1
\end{tikzcd}$$

is a diagram of natural transformations of functors to a category with a notion of weak equivalences, we say that the weak transformations $A_0 \to Z_0$ given at the top and at the bottom *agree up to homotopy*. More generally, we use the term *agree up to homotopy* for the equivalence relation this generates.

This is useful when we want to compare our definition to previous definitions of traces which were all examples of quite special groupoid-like pairs.

Definition 2.4.2 1. Let

$$(\mathcal{C}, w)\colon \Gamma^o \to \mathfrak{P}$$

be quite special and groupoid-like. Then the *weak trace* is the functorial weak composite

$$\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w) \to THH(\mathcal{C}, w) \simeq \Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{C}(1_+)).$$

Along the lower outer edge of diagram 2.3.4.

2. If $\mathcal{D}$ is a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, then the *weak trace* of $\mathcal{D}$ is the composite weak map

$$\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}\mathfrak{k}(\mathcal{D}) \longrightarrow \Sigma^\infty THH(\mathfrak{k}(\mathcal{D})(1_+)) = \Sigma^\infty THH(T_0\mathcal{D}) \stackrel{\sim}{\longleftarrow} \Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{D})$$

where the leftmost weak map is the weak trace of $\mathfrak{k}(\mathcal{D})$ (which is quite special and groupoid-like).

Note that the only map in the weak trace of $\mathcal{D}$ that is not a weak equivalence is the trace $\Sigma^\infty ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D}) \to THH(\mathcal{K}(D))$ of definition 2.3.3 (recall that by definition $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{D}) = \mathbf{N}L\mathfrak{k}(\mathcal{D})$).

2.4.3 The quite special groupoid case

If $(\mathcal{C}, w) \in \mathfrak{P}$ is a groupoid pair, then lemma 2.3.1 says that

$$THH(\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w)) \longleftarrow THH(\mathcal{C}, w)$$

is an equivalence, and we are free to consider the weak map

$$\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w) \longrightarrow THH(\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w)) \stackrel{\sim}{\longleftarrow} THH(\mathcal{C}, w)$$

from the upper line of the main diagram 2.3.4. This gives rise to the simpler definition of the trace which was used in the $\mathcal{A}b$-case in section 1 using either Segal's or Waldhausen's constructions. In our context we have to keep the nerves in place, and in view of the commutativity of

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
obS\mathcal{E} & \longrightarrow & THH(S\tilde{\mathcal{E}})(S^0) \\
\simeq\downarrow & & \simeq\downarrow \\
BiS\mathcal{E} & \longrightarrow & THH(\mathbf{N}(S\tilde{\mathcal{E}}, iS\mathcal{E} \subseteq S\mathcal{E}))(S^0) \\
\simeq\uparrow & & \simeq\uparrow \\
obBi\bar{H}\mathcal{E} & \longrightarrow & THH(\mathbf{N}(\bar{H}\tilde{\mathcal{E}}, i\bar{H}\mathcal{E} \subseteq \bar{H}\mathcal{E}))(S^0)
\end{array}$$

the relevant translation is the following:

Definition 2.4.4 Let $\mathcal{E}$ be a symmetric monoidal $\mathcal{A}b$-category. The weak trace of $\mathcal{E}$ is the weak map

$$\Sigma^\infty Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{E} \longrightarrow THH(\mathbf{N}(\bar{H}\tilde{\mathcal{E}}, i\bar{H}\mathcal{E} \subseteq \bar{H}\mathcal{E})) \stackrel{\sim}{\longleftarrow} THH(\bar{H}\tilde{\mathcal{E}}) \stackrel{\sim}{\longleftarrow} \Sigma^\infty THH(\tilde{\mathcal{E}})$$

obtained from the top row of the main diagram 2.3.4 with $(\mathcal{C}, w) = (\bar{H}\tilde{\mathcal{E}}, i\bar{H}\mathcal{E} \subseteq \bar{H}\mathcal{E})$.

Proposition 2.4.5 *Let $\mathcal{E}$ be a symmetric monoidal $\mathcal{A}b$-category. Then the weak trace of $\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ precomposed with the map $\Sigma^\infty Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{E} \stackrel{\sim}{\to} \Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}\mathfrak{k}\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ agrees up to homotopy with the weak trace of $\mathcal{E}$.*

Proof: If we let $(\mathcal{C}, w) = (\bar{H}\tilde{\mathcal{E}}, i\bar{H}\mathcal{E} \subseteq \bar{H}\mathcal{E}))$, in the main diagram 2.3.4, we have by 2.1.8.5 that there are natural vertical equivalences from the bottom to the top rows making everything commute

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w) & \longrightarrow & THH(\mathbf{N}(\mathcal{C}, w)) & \xleftarrow{\sim} & THH(\mathcal{C}, w) \simeq \Sigma^\infty THH(\mathcal{C}(1_+)) \\
\simeq \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \simeq \uparrow \\
\Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}(L(\mathcal{C}, w)) & \longrightarrow & THH(\mathbf{N}(L(\mathcal{C}, w))) & \xleftarrow{\simeq} & THH(L(\mathcal{C}, w)).
\end{array}$$

The top row is the weak trace of $\mathcal{E}$ whereas going around the lower edge agrees up to homotopy with the weak trace of $(\mathcal{C}, w)$. But all nodes of the weak trace are homotopy invariants, and so the weak equivalence $(\mathcal{C}, w) \to \mathfrak{k}\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ shows that the weak trace of $(\mathcal{C}, w)$ agrees up to homotopy with the weak trace of $\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ precomposed with the map $\Sigma^\infty Bi\bar{H}\mathcal{E} \xrightarrow{\sim} \Sigma^\infty ob\mathbf{N}\mathfrak{k}\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$. ∎

2.5 The category of finitely generated A-modules

Recall the definition of the category of "finitely generated free" A-modules III.2.4.1 for an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra A. Consider the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-full subcategory of the category of A-modules with objects $k_+ \wedge A$ for $k \geq 0$. More precisely, we could equally well describe it as the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category whose objects are the natural numbers (including zero), and where the morphisms are given by

$$\mathcal{F}_A(k, l) = \mathcal{M}_A(k_+ \wedge A, l_+ \wedge A) \cong \prod_k \bigvee_l A$$

This forms a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category via the sum. Let

$$\mathfrak{k}(\mathcal{F}_A) = (\mathcal{C}_A, w_A) \colon \Gamma^o \to \mathfrak{P}$$

be the functor produced by the machinery of section 2: $\mathcal{C}_A = T_0\bar{H}\mathcal{F}_A$ and $w_A \colon \mathcal{W}_A \to R\mathcal{C}_A$ the pullback of $i\pi_0\mathcal{C}_A \to \pi_0\mathcal{C}_A \leftarrow R\mathcal{C}_A$.

By Morita invariance IV.1.4.4, the map $THH(\mathcal{F}_A) \leftarrow THH(A)$ induced by the inclusion of the rank one module is also a stable equivalence.

Definition 2.5.1 The algebraic K-theory of an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra A is the Γ-space

$$K(A) = ob\mathbf{N}\mathfrak{k}(\mathcal{F}_A)$$

and the *trace* for $\mathbf{S}$-algebras is the weak natural transformation

$$\Sigma^\infty K(A) \longrightarrow \Sigma^\infty THH(A)$$

given by the weak trace for $\mathcal{F}_A$ followed by the equivalence induced by the inclusion of the rank one module

$$THH(\mathcal{F}_A) \xleftarrow{\sim} THH(A).$$

This definition of K-theory agrees with the one given by the plus construction, and this definition of the trace agrees with the one already defined for discrete rings:

Theorem 2.5.2 *Let A be an* $\mathbf{S}$*-algebra There is a natural chain of weak equivalences*

$$\Omega^\infty ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{F}_A) \simeq \Omega^\infty K(A) \simeq K_0^f(\pi_0 A) \times B\widehat{GL}(A)^+$$

where $\widehat{GL}_k(A)$ was defined in III.2.3.1

Proof: The first weak equivalence follows from lemma 2.2.1. To simplify notation, let $W = \omega \bar{H}\mathcal{F}_A$. Recall from theorem 2.2.2 the chain of natural equivalences $K(A) \simeq BW$. Since the associated spectrum is special

$$\Omega^\infty K(A) \simeq \Omega BW(S^1),$$

and for each $n_+ \in \Gamma^o$ we have that $BW(n_+) \simeq (BW(1_+))^{\times n}$. For each $k \geq 0$, let W^k be the full subcategory of $W(1_+)$ whose only object is $k_+ \wedge A$. Note that by definition, this is nothing but $\widehat{GL}_k(A)$ considered as a simplicial category with only one object. Hence we are done, for by Segal [216] there is a chain of weak equivalences

$$\Omega BW(S^1) \simeq K_0^f(\pi_0 A) \times \varinjlim_k (BW^k)^+ = K_0^f(\pi_0 A) \times B\widehat{GL}(A)^+.$$

∎

Theorem 2.5.3 *Let A be a discrete ring. The definition of the weak trace 2.4.2 of the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category $\mathcal{F}_{HA}$ agrees up to homotopy with the ones given in 1.1.8 with $\mathcal{E}$ the category of free finitely generated A-modules.*

Proof: There are two steps to this. The first is to note that if A is a discrete ring, then the definition we have given of the category $\mathcal{F}_{HA}$ of finitely generated free HA-modules, agrees with the more down-to-earth definition of the category $\mathcal{F}_A$ of finitely generated free A-modules. We choose the usual skeleton for $\mathcal{F}_A$: the objects are the natural numbers (including zero), and a morphism from m to n is an $n \times m$-matrix with entries in A. Let $\mathcal{F}_A^\oplus$ be the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category obtained through the procedure described in II.1.6.3. We see that there is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-weak equivalence $\mathcal{F}_A \to \mathcal{F}_A^\oplus$ given by sending $\vee$ to $\oplus$, and so also an equivalence

$$RT_0\mathcal{F}_A \xrightarrow{\sim} RT_0\mathcal{F}_A^\oplus \xleftarrow{\sim} \mathcal{F}_A.$$

Hence the K-theory and THH as given here are naturally equivalent to the usual ones in the discrete case when we choose the weak equivalences to be the isomorphisms, since $\widehat{GL}_k(HA) \simeq GL_k(A)$.

The second thing we have to see is that the two definitions of the trace agree, but this follows from proposition 2.4.5. ∎

3 Stable K-theory and topological Hochschild homology.

In this section we are going to give a proof of Waldhausen and Goodwillie's conjecture $K^S \simeq THH$ for **S**-algebras. For rings, this is almost clear already, but for **S**-algebras we need to know that some of the maps used in the ring case have their analog in the **S**-algebra world. These considerations run parallel with a need which will be apparent in chapter VII, namely: we need to know what consequences the equivalence $K^S \simeq THH$ has for the trace map.

3.1 Stable K-theory

Let A be a simplicial ring and P an A-bimodule. Recall the discussion of stable K-theory in section I.3.5, and in particular the equivalence between $\mathbf{K}^S(A,P)$ and the first differential of the functor C_A defined in I.3.4.4, and the homology $\mathbf{F}(A,P)$ of I.3.3.

As before $\mathbf{T}(A,P)$ is the Ω-spectrum $\{k \mapsto THH(S^{(k)}\mathcal{P}_A, S^{(k)}\mathcal{M}_A(-,-\otimes_A P))\}$. Notice that there is a map

$$\begin{aligned} D_1\mathsf{C}_A(P) =& \{n \mapsto \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k \bigvee_{c\in obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A} S^{(n)}Hom_A(c, c\otimes_A B^kP)\} \\ \to& \{n \mapsto \operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{x\in I}} \Omega^x \bigvee_{c\in obS^{(n)}\mathcal{P}_A} S^{(n)}Hom_A(c, c\otimes_A P\otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^x])\} = \mathbf{T}(A,P)_0 \end{aligned}$$

which is an equivalence by Bökstedt's approximation lemma II.2.2.3.

Theorem 3.1.1 *Let A be a simplicial ring and P a simplicial A bimodule. Then we have an equivalence*

$$\mathbf{K}^S(A,P) \simeq \mathbf{T}(A,P)$$

induced by

$$\mathbf{K}^S(A,P) \simeq D_1\mathsf{C}_A(P) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{T}(A,P)_0 \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{T}(A,P).$$

This equivalence is compatible with the equivalence to the $\mathbf{F}$ *construction of of theorem I.3.5.2.*

Proof: As both K-theory (of radical extensions) and THH may be computed degreewise we may assume that A and P are discrete. Then the only thing which needs verification is the compatibility. Recall that the equivalence $\mathbf{K}^S(A,P) \simeq \mathbf{F}(A,P)$ of theorem I.3.5.2 was given by a chain

$$D_1\mathsf{C}_A(-) \xrightarrow{\simeq} D_1\mathbf{F}_0(A,-) \xleftarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{F}_0(A,-) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{F}(A,-)$$

of equivalences. Consider the diagram

$$
\begin{tikzcd}
D_1\mathsf{C}_A(P) \arrow[r, "\simeq"] \arrow[d, "\simeq"] & \mathbf{T}(A,P)_0 \arrow[r, "\simeq"] \arrow[d, "\simeq"] & \mathbf{T}(A,P) \arrow[d, "\simeq"] \\
D_1\mathbf{F}_0(A,-)(P) \arrow[r] & \mathbf{HH}^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P)_0 \arrow[r, "\simeq"] & \mathbf{HH}^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P) \\
 & \mathbf{F}_0(A,P) \arrow[r, "\simeq"] \arrow[u, "\simeq"] \arrow[ul, "\simeq"] & \mathbf{F}(A,P) \arrow[u, "\simeq"]
\end{tikzcd}
\quad ,
$$

where $\mathbf{HH}^{\mathbf{Z}}(A,P)$ represents the spectrum $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}(\mathbf{Z}\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A, \underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{M}_A(-,-\otimes_A P))$ and $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}$ is the abelian group version of THH as in IV.2.3.1. The right side of the diagram is simply the diagram of remark 1.2.1 (rotated), and the map from F_0 to $HH^{\mathbf{Z}}_0$ is stabilization and so factors thorough the map to the differential. ∎

3.2 THH of split square zero extensions

Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra and P an A-bimodule. Let $A \vee P$ be given the $\mathbf{S}$-algebra structure we get by declaring that the multiplication $P \wedge P \to P$ is trivial. We want to study $THH(A \vee P)$ closer. If R is a simplicial ring and Q an R-bimodule, we get that the inclusion of wedge into product, $HR \vee HQ \to H(R \ltimes Q)$, is a stable equivalence of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, and so $A \vee P$ will cover all the considerations for split square zero extensions of rings.

The first thing one notices, is that the natural distributivity of smash and wedge give us a decomposition of $THH(A \vee P; X)$, or more precisely a decomposition of $V(A \vee P)(\mathbf{x})$ for every $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{I}^{q+1}$, as follows. Let

$$V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}) = \bigvee_{\phi \in \Delta_m([j-1],[q])} \bigwedge_{0 \le i \le q} F_{i,\phi}(x_i)$$

where $\Delta_m([j-1],[q])$ is the set of order preserving injections $[j-1] \to [q]$ and

$$F_{i,\phi}(x) = \begin{cases} A(S^x) & \text{if } i \notin im\phi \\ P(S^x) & \text{if } i \in im\phi \end{cases}$$

Then

$$V(A \vee P)(\mathbf{x}) \cong \bigvee_{j \ge 0} V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})$$

(note that $V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}) = *$ for $j > q+1$). Set

$$THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)_q = \underrightarrow{\operatorname{holim}}_{\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{I}^{q+1}} \Omega^{\vee \mathbf{x}}(X \wedge V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}))$$

and

$$\underline{T}^{(j)}(A,P;X) = \{k \mapsto THH^{(j)}(A,P;S^k \wedge X)\}.$$

We see that this defines cyclic objects (the transformations used to define THH respect the number of occurrences of the bimodule), when varying q. The inclusions and projections

$$V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}) \subseteq V(A\vee P)(\mathbf{x}) \to V^{(i)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})$$

define cyclic maps

$$\bigvee_{j\geq 0} THH^{(j)}(A,P;X) \to THH(A\vee P;X) \to \prod_{j\geq 0} THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)$$

The approximation lemma II.2.2.3 assures us that

$$\underrightarrow{\operatorname{holim}}_{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}} \prod_{j\geq 0} \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})) \to \prod_{j\geq 0} THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)_q$$

is an equivalence. In effect, we have shown the first statement in the proposition below, and the second statement follows since $THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)$ is $j-1$ reduced.

Proposition 3.2.1 *Let A be a connected $\mathbf{S}$-algebra and P an A-bimodule. Then the cyclic map*

$$THH(A\vee P;X) \xrightarrow{\sim} \prod_{0\leq j} THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)$$

is a weak equivalence.

If P is $k-1$ connected and X is $m-1$ connected, then $THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)$ is $jk+m-1$ connected, and so

$$THH(A\vee P;X) \to THH(A;X)\times THH^{(1)}(A,P;X)$$

is $2k+m$ connected. ☺

This means that the space $THH^{(1)}(A,P;X)$ merits special attention as a first approximation to the difference between $THH(A\vee P;X)$ and $THH(A;X)$.

Also, since $THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)$ is $j-1$ reduced, the product is equivalent to the weak product, and we obtain

Corollary 3.2.2 *Both maps in*

$$\bigvee_{j\geq 0} \underline{T}^{(j)}(A,P;X) \to \underline{T}(A\vee P;X) \to \prod_{j\geq 0} \underline{T}^{(j)}(A,P;X)$$

are equivalences. ☺

See also VII.1.2 for the effect on fixed points.

3.3 Free cyclic objects

In this section we review the little we need at this stage about free cyclic objects. See section VI.1.1 for a more thorough treatment. Recall that Λ is Connes' cyclic category. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category with finite coproducts. The forgetful functor from cyclic $\mathcal{C}$ objects to simplicial $\mathcal{C}$ objects has a left adjoint, the free cyclic functor j_* defined as follows.

If $\phi \in \Lambda$ we can write $\tau^{-s}\phi\tau^s = \psi\tau^r$ in a unique fashion with $\psi \in \Delta$. If X is a simplicial object, j_*X is given in dimension q by $\coprod_{C_{q+1}} X_q$, and with ϕ^* sending x in the $s \in C_{q+1}$ summand to ψ^*x in the $r+s$th summand.

Example 3.3.1 If X is a pointed set, then $j_*(X) \cong S^1_+ \wedge X$. If A is a commutative ring, then $j_*(A) \cong HH(A)$.

Lemma 3.3.2 *The map*

$$j_*\underline{T}(A, P; X) \to \underline{T}^{(1)}(A, P; X)$$

adjoint to the inclusion $\underline{T}(A, P; X) \subseteq \underline{T}^{(1)}(A, P; X)$ is an equivalence. More precisely, if P is $k-1$ connected and X is $m-1$ connected, then

$$j_*THH(A, P; X) \to THH^{(1)}(A, P; X)$$

is a $2k+2m$ connected cyclic map.

Proof: Note that $V(A, P)(\mathbf{x}) \subseteq V^{(1)}(A, P)(\mathbf{x})$ defines the summand in which the P appears in the zeroth place. There are q other possibilities for placing P, and we may encode this by defining the map

$$C_{q+1_+} \wedge THH(A, P; X)_q \to THH^{(1)}(A, P; X)_q$$

taking $t^i \in C_{q+1}$, $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{I}^{q+1}$ and $f\colon S^{\vee\mathbf{x}} \to X \wedge V(A, P)(\mathbf{x})$ and sending it to

$$t^i\mathbf{x}, \qquad \begin{array}{ccccc} S^{\vee t^i\mathbf{x}} & & & & X\wedge V^{(1)}(A,P)(t^i\mathbf{x}) \\ \cong\uparrow & & & & \uparrow \\ S^{\vee\mathbf{x}} & \xrightarrow{f} & X\wedge V(A,P)(\mathbf{x}) & \xrightarrow{\subseteq} & X\wedge V^{(1)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}) \end{array}$$

Varying q, this is the cyclic map

$$j_*THH(A, P; X) \to THH^{(1)}(A, P; X)$$

Let $V^{(1,i)}(A, P)(\mathbf{x}) \subset V^{(1)}(A, P)(\mathbf{x})$ be the summand with the P at the ith place. The map may be factored as

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bigvee_{t^i\in C_{q+1}} \underset{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}}{\mathrm{holim}}\,\Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V(A,P)(\mathbf{x})) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \underset{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}}{\mathrm{holim}} \bigvee_{t^i\in C_{q+1}} \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V^{(1,i)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})) \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \underset{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}}{\mathrm{holim}}\,\Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V^{(1)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})) \end{array}$$

where the first map is given by the same formula with $V^{(1,i)}$ instead of $V^{(1)}$, and where the latter is induced by the inclusions

$$V^{(1,j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}) \subseteq \bigvee_{t^i \in C_{q+1}} V^{(1,i)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}) \cong V^{(1)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}).$$

We may exchange the wedges by products

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\underset{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}{\underrightarrow{\mathrm{holim}}} \bigvee_{t^i\in C_{q+1}} \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V^{(1,i)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & \underset{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}{\underrightarrow{\mathrm{holim}}} \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V^{(1)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})) \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] \\
\underset{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}{\underrightarrow{\mathrm{holim}}} \prod_{t^i\in C_{q+1}} \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V^{(1,i)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})) \arrow[r, "\cong"] & \underset{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}{\underrightarrow{\mathrm{holim}}} \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge \prod_{t^i\in C_{q+1}} V^{(1,i)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}))
\end{tikzcd}$$

and the left vertical arrow is $2(k+m)$ connected and the right vertical arrow is an equivalence by Blakers–Massey. ∎

When A is a discrete ring and P an A-bimodule (not necessarily discrete), these considerations carry over to the $\mathbf{T}(A\ltimes P)$ spectra. Recall the notation from I.2.5 where we defined a category $\mathcal{D}_A P$ with objects $ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A$, and where $\mathcal{D}_A P(c,d) \cong \underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A(c,d) \oplus \underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{M}_A(c, d\otimes_A P)$ (where we have suppressed the index n running in the spectrum direction, and identified the morphism objects via the lemma I.2.5.1 and I.2.5.2).

We saw in I.2.5.5 that $\mathcal{D}_A^{(m)}P \subseteq S^{(m)}\mathcal{P}_{A\ltimes P}$ is a degreewise equivalence of categories, so $THH(\mathcal{D}_A P) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{T}(A\ltimes P)$. Furthermore, recall that the objects of $\mathcal{D}_A P$ were $ob\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A$, and $\mathcal{D}_A P(c,d) = \underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A(c,d) \oplus \underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{M}_A(c, d\otimes_A P)$. Substituting $X \mapsto \mathcal{D}_A P(c,d) \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ with the stably equivalent $X \mapsto \underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A(c,d) \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X] \vee \underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{M}_A(c, d\otimes_A P) \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ we may define $\mathbf{T}^{(j)}(A,P)$ as we did in 3.2, and we get that the cyclic map

$$\bigvee_{j\geq 0} \mathbf{T}^{(j)}(A,P;X) \to THH(\mathcal{D}_A P) \to \mathbf{T}(A\ltimes P)$$

is an equivalence. If P is $k-1$ connected then

$$\mathbf{T}(A;X) \vee \mathbf{T}^{(1)}(A,P;X) \to \mathbf{T}(A\ltimes P;X)$$

is $2k-1$ connected. Furthermore, as j_* preserves equivalences (see lemma VI.1.1.3), we have that the composite

$$S^1_+ \wedge \mathbf{T}_0(A,P;X) \cong j_*(\mathbf{T}_0(A,P;X)) \to j_*\mathbf{T}(A,P;X) \to \mathbf{T}^{(1)}(A\ltimes P)$$

is an equivalence, and so the weak natural transformation $j_*\mathbf{T}(A,P;X) \to S^1_+ \wedge \mathbf{T}(A,P;X)$ is an equivalence.

3.4 Relations to the trace $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A \ltimes P) \to \tilde{\mathbf{T}}(A \ltimes P)$

Our definition of the ("nerveless") trace $\tilde{K}(A \ltimes P) \to \widetilde{THH}(A \ltimes P)$ in 1.1.7 is the map

$$\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A \ltimes P) = \widetilde{ob}\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_{A\ltimes P} \xrightarrow{tr} \widetilde{THH}(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_{A\ltimes P}) = \tilde{\mathbf{T}}(A \ltimes P).$$

Recall that, by I.3.4.3 $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A \ltimes P) \simeq \mathsf{C}_A(BP)$, so another definition of this map could be via

$$\mathsf{C}_A(BP) \longrightarrow \mathsf{C}_A(B^{cy}P) \cong \widetilde{B^{cy}}t\mathcal{D}_AP \longrightarrow \widetilde{THH}(\mathcal{D}_AP) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \widetilde{THH}(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_{A\ltimes P}).$$

The two are related by the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathsf{C}_A(BP) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \tilde{N}t\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_{A\ltimes P} & \xleftarrow{\sim} & \widetilde{ob}\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_{A\ltimes P} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathsf{C}_A(B^{cy}P) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \widetilde{B^{cy}}t\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_{A\ltimes P} & \longrightarrow & \widetilde{THH}(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_{A\ltimes P}) \end{array} \tag{3.4.0}$$

Lemma 3.4.1 *If P is $k-1$ connected, and X a finite pointed simplicial set, then*

$$X\wedge\mathsf{C}_A(P) \to \mathsf{C}_A(P \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X])$$

is $2k$-connected.

Proof: It is enough to prove it for a finite set X. The smash moves past the wedges in the definition of C_A, and the map is simply $\bigvee_{c\in obS_q^{(m)}\mathcal{P}_A}$ of the inclusion

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X\wedge S_q^{(m)}\mathcal{M}(c, c\otimes_A P) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \bigvee_{X-*} S_q^{(m)}\mathcal{M}(c, c\otimes_A P) \\ & & \subseteq\big\downarrow \\ \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X] \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} S_q^{(m)}\mathcal{M}(c, c\otimes_A P) & \xleftarrow{\cong} & \prod_{X-*} S_q^{(m)}\mathcal{M}(c, c\otimes_A P) \end{array}$$

which is $2k$-connected by Blakers Massey. The usual considerations about m-reducedness in the q direction(s), give the lemma. ∎

Lemma 3.4.2 *If P is $k-1$ connected, then the middle map in*

$$\mathsf{C}_A(BP) \longrightarrow \mathsf{C}_A(B^{cy}P) \longleftarrow S^1_+\wedge\mathsf{C}_A(P) \longrightarrow S^1\wedge\mathsf{C}_A(P)$$

is $2k$-connected, and in degrees less than $2k$ the induced composite on homotopy groups is an isomorphism.

Proof: Follows from lemma 3.4.1, and the commuting diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathsf{C}_A(BP) \arrow[r] \arrow[dr, equal] & \mathsf{C}_A(B^{cy}P) \arrow[d] & S^1_+\wedge\mathsf{C}_A(P) \arrow[l] \arrow[d] \\ & \mathsf{C}_A(BP) & S^1\wedge\mathsf{C}_A(P) \arrow[l] \end{tikzcd}.$$

∎

Consider the diagram (of bispectra)

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\tilde{\mathbf{T}}(A \ltimes P) \arrow[r, "\sim"] & \underline{\tilde{\mathbf{T}}}(A \ltimes P) & \underline{\tilde{T}}(A \ltimes P) \arrow[l, "\sim"'] \\
j_*\mathbf{T}(A,P) \arrow[u] \arrow[r, "\sim"] & j_*\underline{\mathbf{T}}(A,P) \arrow[u] & j_*\underline{T}(A,P) \arrow[u] \arrow[l, "\sim"'] \\
S^1_+\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P)_0 \arrow[u, "\simeq"] \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] \arrow[r, "\sim"] & S^1_+\wedge\underline{\mathbf{T}}(A,P)_0 \arrow[u] \arrow[d] & S^1_+\wedge\underline{T}(A,P)_0 \arrow[u] \arrow[d] \arrow[l] \\
S^1_+\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P) \arrow[d] \arrow[r, "\sim"] & S^1_+\wedge\underline{\mathbf{T}}(A,P) \arrow[d] & S^1_+\wedge\underline{T}(A,P) \arrow[d] \arrow[l, "\sim"'] \\
S^1\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P) \arrow[r, "\sim"] & S^1\wedge\underline{\mathbf{T}}(A,P) & S^1\wedge\underline{T}(A,P) \arrow[l, "\sim"']
\end{tikzcd}$$

The upwards pointing arrows are induced by the inclusion $V(A,P)(\mathbf{x}) \subseteq V(A \ltimes P)(\mathbf{x})$ (likewise with $V(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\mathcal{P}_A, P)$ instead of $V(A,P)$). The rightmost upper vertical map is $2k$-connected by the considerations in 3.2, and so all up-going arrows are $2k$-connected. Note that the middle layer of 0-simplices could have been skipped if we preformed geometric realization all over the place, using the equivalence $|j_*X| \simeq |S^1_+\wedge X|$ of lemma VI.1.1.3.

Proposition 3.4.3 *If P is $k-1$ connected, then the undecorated leftward pointing arrows in*

$$\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A \ltimes P) \longrightarrow \tilde{\mathbf{T}}(A \ltimes P) \longleftarrow S^1_+\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P)_0 \longrightarrow S^1\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P)$$

and

$$\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A \ltimes P) \longrightarrow \underline{\tilde{\mathbf{T}}}(A \ltimes P) \longleftarrow S^1_+\wedge\underline{\mathbf{T}}(A,P)_0 \longrightarrow S^1\wedge\underline{\mathbf{T}}(A,P) \xleftarrow{\sim} S^1\wedge\underline{T}(A,P)$$

are $2k$-connected, and in degree less than $2k$, the induced composites on homotopy groups are isomorphisms.

Proof: The second statement follows from the first. As $\mathsf{C}_A(P) \to (D_1\mathsf{C}_A)(P) \simeq \mathbf{T}(A,P)_0$ is $2k$-connected (I.3.5.2), lemma 3.4.2 gives that all the induced composites on homotopy groups in degree less than $2k$ from top left to bottom right in

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\mathsf{C}_A(BP) \arrow[r] & \mathsf{C}_A(B^{cy}P) \arrow[d] & S^1_+\wedge\mathsf{C}_A(P) \arrow[l] \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & S^1\wedge\mathsf{C}_A(P) \arrow[d] \\
 & \tilde{\mathbf{T}}(A \ltimes P) & S^1_+\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P)_0 \arrow[l] \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] & S^1\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P)_0 \arrow[d, "\simeq"'] \\
 & & S^1_+\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P) \arrow[r] & S^1\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P)
\end{tikzcd}$$

are isomorphisms.

∎

3.5 Stable K-theory and THH for S-algebras

The functor $S \mapsto A^n_S$ from section III.3.1.9, can clearly be applied to A-bimodules as well, and $S \mapsto P^n_S$ will be a cube of $S \mapsto A^n_S$-bimodules, which ultimately gives us a cube $S \mapsto A^n_S \vee P^n_S$ of **S**-algebras. If P is an A-bimodule, so is $X \mapsto \Sigma^m P(X) = P(S^m \wedge X)$. We defined

$$K^S(A, P) = \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k \text{fiber}\{K(A \vee \Sigma^{k-1}P) \to K(A)\}$$

The trace map induces a map to

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k \text{fiber}\{THH(A \vee \Sigma^{k-1}P) \to THH(A)\}$$

and we may compose with the weak map to

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k(S^1 \wedge THH(A, \Sigma^{k-1}P))$$

given by the discussion of the previous section. We know that this is an equivalence for A a ring and P a simplicial A-bimodule.

Theorem 3.5.1 *Let A be an* **S***-algebra and P an A-bimodule. Then the trace induces an equivalence $K^S(A, P) \simeq THH(A, P)$.*

Proof: If A is discrete and P a simplicial A-bimodule this has already been covered. If A is a simplicial ring P a simplicial A-bimodule this follows by considering each degree at a time, using that K-theory of simplicial radical extensions may be calculated degreewise, I.1.4.2. In the general case we reduce to the simplicial case as follows. There is a stable equivalence $A^n_S \vee P^n_S \to (A \vee P)^n_S$, consisting of repeated applications of the $2k$-connected map $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[A(S^k)] \vee \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[P(S^k)] \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[A(S^k)] \oplus \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[P(S^k)] \cong \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[A(S^k) \vee P(S^k)]$. The noninitial nodes in these cubes are all equivalent to a simplicial ring case, and is hence taken care of by theorem 3.1.1 (or rather proposition 3.4.3 since the identification of the equivalence in theorem 3.1.1 with the trace map is crucial in order to have functoriality for **S**-algebras), and all we need to know is that

$$K(A \vee P) \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S \neq \emptyset}} K(A^n_S \vee P^n_S)$$

in $n+1$ connected, and that

$$THH(A \vee P) \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S \neq \emptyset}} THH(A^n_S \vee P^n_S)$$

and

$$THH(A, P) \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S \neq \emptyset}} THH(A^n_S, P^n_S)$$

are n-connected. These follow from the theorems III.3.2.2 and IV.1.4.3. ∎

Chapter VI

Topological Cyclic homology

A motivation for the definitions to come can be found by looking at the example of a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category $\mathcal{C}$. Consider the trace map

$$ob\mathcal{C} \to THH(\mathcal{C})(S^0)$$

Topological Hochschild homology is a cyclic space, $ob\mathcal{C}$ is merely a set. However, the trace IV.2.2 is universal in the sense that $ob\mathcal{C} \cong \lim_{\overleftarrow{\Lambda^o}} THH(\mathcal{C})(S^0)$. A more usual way of putting this, is to say that $ob\mathcal{C} \to |THH(\mathcal{C})(S^0)|$ is **the inclusion of the $\mathbb{T}$-fixed points**, which also makes sense since the realization of a cyclic space is a topological space with a circle action (see 1.1 below).

In particular, the trace from K-theory has this property. The same is true for the other definition of the trace (IV.1.5), but this follows more by construction than by fate. In fact, any reasonable definition of the trace map should factor through the $\mathbb{T}$-fixed point space, and so, if one wants to approximate K-theory one should try to mimic the $\mathbb{T}$-fixed point space by any reasonable means. The awkward thing is that forming the $\mathbb{T}$-fixed point space as such is really not a reasonable thing to do, in the sense that it does not preserve weak equivalences. Homotopy fixed point spaces are nice approximations which are well behaved, and strangely enough it turns out that so are the actual fixed point spaces with respect to finite subgroups of the circle. The aim is now to assemble as much information from these nice constructions as possible.

0.1 Connes' Cyclic homology

The first time the circle comes into action for trace maps, is when Alain Connes defines his cyclic cohomology [46]. We are mostly concerned with homology theories, and in one of its many guises, *cyclic homology* is just the $\mathbb{T}$-homotopy orbits of the Hochschild homology spectrum. This is relevant to K-theory for several reasons, and one of the more striking reasons is the fact discovered by Loday and Quillen [153] and Tsygan [242]: just as the K-groups are rationally the primitive part of the group homology of $GL(A)$, cyclic homology is rationally the primitive part of the Lie-algebra homology of $\mathfrak{gl}(A)$.

However, in the result above there is a revealing dimension shift, and, for the purposes of comparison with K-theory via trace maps, it is not the homotopy orbits, but the homotopy fixed points which play the central rôle. The homotopy fixed points of Hochschild homology give rise to Goodwillie and J. D. S. Jones' *negative cyclic homology* $HC^-(A)$. In [89] Goodwillie proves that if $A \to B$ is a map of simplicial $\mathbf{Q}$-algebras inducing a surjection $\pi_0(A) \to \pi_0(B)$ with nilpotent kernel, then the relative K-theory $K(A \to B)$ is equivalent to the relative negative cyclic homology $HC^-(A \to B)$.

All told, the cyclic theories associated with Hochschild homology seem to be right rationally, but just as for the comparison with stable K-theory, we must replace Hochschild homology by topological Hochschild homology to obtain integral results.

0.2 Bökstedt, Hsiang, Madsen and $TC\hat{}_p$

Topological cyclic homology, also known as TC, appears for the first time in Bökstedt, Hsiang and Madsen's proof on the algebraic K-theory analog of the Novikov conjecture [19], and is something of a surprise. The obvious generalization of negative cyclic homology would be the homotopy fixed point space of the circle action on topological Hochschild homology, but this turns out not to have all the desired properties. Instead, they consider actual fixed points under the actions of the finite subgroups of $\mathbb{T}$.

After completing at a prime, looking only at the action of the finite subgroups is not an unreasonable thing to do, since you can calculate the homotopy fixed points of the entire circle action by looking at a tower of homotopy fixed points with respect to cyclic groups of prime power order (see example A.6.6.4). The equivariant nature of Bökstedt's formulation of THH is such that the actual fixed point spaces under the finite groups are nicely behaved 1.4.7, and in one respect they are highly superior to the homotopy fixed point spaces: The fixed point spaces with respect to the finite subgroups of $\mathbb{T}$ are connected by more maps than you would think of by considering the homotopy fixed points or the linear analogs, and the interplay between these maps can be summarized in topological cyclic homology to give an amazingly good approximation of K-theory.

Topological cyclic homology, as we define it, is a non-connective spectrum, but its completions $\underline{TC}(-)\hat{}_p$ are all -2-connected. As opposed to topological Hochschild homology, the topological cyclic homology of a discrete or simplicial ring is generally not an Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum.

In [19] the problem at hand is reduced to studying topological cyclic homology and trace maps of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras of the form $\mathbf{S}[G]$, where $\mathbf{S}$ is the sphere spectrum and G is some simplicial group (see example II.1.4.4), i.e., the $\mathbf{S}$-algebras associated to Waldhausen's A theory of spaces (see section III.2.3.4). In this case, TC is particularly easy to describe: for each prime p, there is a cartesian square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{TC}(\mathbf{S}[G])\hat{}_p & \longrightarrow & (\Sigma \underline{T}(\mathbf{S}[G])_{h\mathbf{S}^1})\hat{}_p \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ \underline{T}(\mathbf{S}[G])\hat{}_p & \longrightarrow & \underline{T}(\mathbf{S}[G])\hat{}_p \end{array}$$

(in the homotopy category) where the right vertical map is the "circle transfer", and the lower horizontal map is analogous to something like the difference between the identity and a pth power map.

0.3 TC of the integers

Topological cyclic homology is much harder to calculate than topological Hochschild homology, but – and this is the main point of this book – it exhibits the same "local" behavior as algebraic K-theory, and so is well worth the extra effort. The first calculation to appear is in fact one of the hardest ones produced to date, but also the most prestigious: in [20] Bökstedt and Madsen set forth to calculate $TC(\mathbf{Z})^{\widehat{}}_p$ for $p > 2$, and found that they could describe $TC(\mathbf{Z})^{\widehat{}}_p$ in terms of objects known to homotopy theorists:

$$TC(\mathbf{Z})^{\widehat{}}_p \simeq imJ^{\widehat{}}_p \times BimJ^{\widehat{}}_p \times SU^{\widehat{}}_p,$$

where imJ is the image of J, c.f. [3], and SU is the infinite special unitary group – provided a certain spectral sequence behaved as they suspected it did. In his thesis "The equivariant structure of topological Hochschild homology and the topological cyclic homology of the integers", [Ph.D. Thesis, Brown Univ., Providence, RI, 1994] Stavros Tsalidis proved that the spectral sequence was as Bökstedt and Madsen had supposed, by adapting an argument in G. Carlsson's proof of the Segal conjecture [42] to suit the present situation. Using this Bökstedt and Madsen calculates in [21] $TC(A)^{\widehat{}}_p$ for A the Witt vectors of finite fields of odd characteristic, and in particular get the above formula for $TC(\mathbf{Z})^{\widehat{}}_p \simeq TC(\mathbf{Z}^{\widehat{}}_p)^{\widehat{}}_p$. See also Tsalidis' papers [240] and [241]. Soon after J. Rognes showed in [204] that an analogous formula holds for $p = 2$ (you do not have the splitting, and the image of J should be substituted with the complex image of J).

A bit more on the story behind this calculation, and also the others briefly presented in this introduction, can be found in section VII.3.

0.4 Other calculations of TC

All but the last of the calculations below are due to the impressive effort of Hesselholt and Madsen. As the calculations below were made after the p-complete version of theorem VII.0.0.2 on the correspondence between K-theory and TC was known for rings, they were stated for K-theory whenever possible, even though they were actually calculations of TC.

For a ring A, let $W(A)$ be the p-typical Witt vectors, see [217] or more briefly section 3.2.9 for the commutative case and [107] for the general case. Let $W(A)_F$ be the coinvariants under the Frobenius action, i.e., the cokernel of $1 - F\colon W(A) \to W(A)$. Note that $W(\mathbf{F}_p) = W(\mathbf{F}_p)_F = \mathbf{Z}^{\widehat{}}_p$.

1. Hesselholt [107] $\pi_{-1}\underline{TC}(A)^{\widehat{}}_p \cong W(A)_F$.

2. Hesselholt and Madsen (cf. [110] and [162]) Let k be a perfect field of characteristic $p > 0$. Then $\underline{TC}(A)$ is an Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum for any k-algebra A. Furthermore, we have isomorphisms

$$\pi_i \underline{TC}(k)\hat{_p} \cong \begin{cases} W(k)_F & \text{if } i = -1 \\ \mathbf{Z}\hat{_p} & \text{if } i = 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

and

$$\pi_i \underline{TC}(k[t]/t^n)\hat{_p} \cong \begin{cases} \pi_i \underline{TC}(k)\hat{_p} & \text{if } i = -1 \text{ or } i = 0 \\ \mathbf{W}_{nm-1}/V_n \mathbf{W}_{m-1} & \text{if } i = 2m-1 > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

where $\mathbf{W}_j(k) = (1 + tk[[t]])^\times/(1 + t^{j+1}k[[t]])^\times$ is the truncated Witt vectors, and $V_n \colon \mathbf{W}_{m-1}(k) \to \mathbf{W}_{nm-1}(k)$ is the Vershiebung map sending $f(t) = 1 + t\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i t^i$ to $f(t^n)$. Let C be the cyclic group of order p^N. Then

$$\pi_i \underline{TC}(k[C])\hat{_p} \cong \begin{cases} \pi_i \underline{TC}(k)\hat{_p} & \text{if } i = -1 \text{ or } i = 0 \\ K_1^{\oplus n} & \text{if } i = 2n-1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

where K_1 is the p-part of the units $k[C]^*$.

3. Hesselholt ([107]). Let A be a free associative $\mathbf{F}_p$-algebra. Then

$$\pi_i \underline{TC}(A)\hat{_p} \cong \begin{cases} W(A)_F & \text{if } i = -1 \\ \mathbf{Z}\hat{_p} & \text{if } i = 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

On the other hand, the free *commutative* $\mathbf{F}_p$-algebras are generally not concentrated in non-positive degrees:

$$\pi_i \underline{TC}(\mathbf{F}_p[t_1, \dots t_n])\hat{_p} \cong \begin{cases} (\bigoplus_{g \in G_m} \mathbf{Z}\hat{_p})\hat{_p} & \text{for } -1 \le i \le n-2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

where G_m is some explicit (non-empty) set (see [107, page 140])

4. Hesselholt and Madsen [113]. Let K be a complete discrete valuation field of characteristic zero with perfect residue field k of characteristic $p > 2$. Let A be the valuation ring of K. Hesselholt and Madsen analyze $TC(A)\hat{_p}$, and in particular they give very interesting algebraic interpretations of the relative term of the transfer map $TC(k)\hat{_p} \to TC(A)\hat{_p}$ (obtained by inclusion of the k-vector spaces into the torsion modules of A). See VI.3.3.3 for some further details.

5. Rognes and Ausoni [8]. As a first step towards calculating the algebraic K-theory of connective complex K-theory ku, Ausoni and Rognes calculate topological cyclic homology of the Adams summand ℓ_p. See section VI.3.1 where the Adams summand is one of the examples.

0.5 Where to read

The literature on TC is naturally even more limited than on THH. Böksted, Hsiang and Madsen's original paper [19] is still very readable. The first chapters of Hesselholt and Madsen's [111] can serve as a streamlined introduction for those familiar with equivariant G-spectra. For more naïve readers, the unpublished lecture notes of Goodwillie can be of great help. Again, the survey article of Madsen [162] is recommendable.

1 The fixed point spectra of THH.

We will define TC by means of a homotopy cartesian square of the type (i.e., it will be the homotopy limit of the rest of the diagram)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} TC(-) & \longrightarrow & THH(-)^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \prod_{p \text{ prime}} TC(-;p)\widehat{_p} & \longrightarrow & (\prod_{p \text{ prime}} THH(-)\widehat{_p})^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \end{array}$$

(as it stands, this strictly does not make sense: there are some technical adjustments we shall return to). The $\mathbf{S^1}$-homotopy fixed points are formed with respect to the cyclic structure.

In this section we will mainly be occupied with preparing the ground for the lower left hand corner of this diagram. Let $C_n \subseteq \mathbf{S^1}$ be the subgroup consisting of the n-th roots of unity. We choose our generator of the cyclic group C_n to be $t_{n-1} = t = e^{2\pi i/n}$. For each prime number p, the functor $TC(-;p)$ is defined as the homotopy limit of a diagram of fixed point spaces $|THH(-)|^{C_{p^n}}$. The maps in the diagrams are partially inclusion of fixed points $|THH(-)|^{C_{p^{n+1}}} \subseteq |THH(-)|^{C_{p^n}}$, and partially some more exotic maps - the "restriction maps" - which we will describe below. The contents of this section is mostly fetched from the unpublished MSRI notes [92]. If desired, the reader can consult appendix A.8 for some facts on group actions.

1.1 Cyclic spaces and the edgewise subdivision

Recall Connes' category Λ (see e.g., IV.1.1.2). Due to the inclusion $j\colon \Delta \subset \Lambda$, any cyclic object X gives rise to a simplicial object j^*X.

As noted by Connes [45], cyclic objects are intimately related to objects with a circle action (see also [128], [64] and [19]). In analogy with the standard n-simplices $\Delta[n] =$

$\{[q] \mapsto \Delta([q],[n])\}$, we define the cyclic sets

$$\Lambda[n] = \Lambda(-,[n])\colon \Lambda^o \to \mathcal{E}ns.$$

The starting point for the connection to $\mathbb{T}$-spaces (topological spaces with a circle action) is the following lemma, whose proof may be found, for instance, in [64, 2.7].

Lemma 1.1.1 *For all n, $|j^*\Lambda[n]|$ is a $\mathbb{T}$-space, where $\mathbb{T} = |S^1|$ is the circle group, naturally (in $[n] \in ob\Lambda^o$) homeomorphic to $\mathbb{T} \times |\Delta[n]|$.* ☺

This gives us the building blocks for a realization/singular functor pair connecting $\mathbb{T}$-spaces with (pointed) cyclic sets:

$$\mathbb{T} - Top_* \underset{\sin_\Lambda}{\overset{|-|_\Lambda}{\leftrightarrows}} \mathcal{E}ns_*{}^{\Lambda^o}$$

given by sending a cyclic set X to

$$|X|_\Lambda = \int^{[q]\in\Lambda^o} |j^*\Lambda[q]|_+ \wedge X_q \cong \coprod_{[q]\in\Lambda^o} |j^*\Lambda[q]|_+ \wedge X_q/\sim$$

considered as a $\mathbb{T}$-space through lemma 1.1.1, and sending a $\mathbb{T}$-space Z to

$$\sin_\Lambda Z = \{[q] \mapsto (\mathbb{T} - Top_*)(|j^*\Lambda[q]|_+, Z)\}.$$

An equivalent way of stating this is to say that the realization is the left Kan extension in

$$\begin{tikzcd} \Lambda \arrow[r, "q\mapsto|j^*\Lambda[q]|_+"] \arrow[d, "y"] & \mathbb{T} - Top_* \\ \mathcal{E}ns_*{}^{\Lambda^o} \arrow[ur, dotted] & \end{tikzcd} .$$

Letting U be the forgetful functor from $\mathbb{T}$-spaces to pointed topological spaces (right adjoint to $\mathbb{T}_+\wedge-$) we get

Lemma 1.1.2 *There are natural isomorphisms*

$$j^* \sin_\Lambda Z \cong \sin(UZ) \qquad \textit{and} \qquad U|X|_\Lambda \cong |j^*X|$$

where X is a cyclic set and Z a $\mathbb{T}$-space. ☺

Proof: The first follows by the isomorphism $|\Lambda[q]|_\Lambda \cong \mathbb{T} \times |\Delta[n]|$, and the adjointness of U with $\mathbb{T}_+\wedge-$; and the second is formal and follows by writing out the definitions. ∎

If one is familiar with coends a formal writeup of the second isomorphism reads quite compactly

$$\begin{aligned} U|X|_\Lambda = \int^{[q]\in\Lambda^o} |j^*\Lambda[q]_+\wedge X_q &\cong \int^{[s]\in\Delta^o} |\Delta[s]|_+\wedge \int^{[q]\in\Lambda^o} \Lambda(j[s],[q])_+\wedge X_q \\ &\cong \int^{[s]\in\Delta^o} |\Delta[s]|_+\wedge j^*X_s = |j^*X|, \end{aligned}$$

where we have used that $|j^*\Lambda[q]| = \int^{[s]\in\Delta^o} |\Delta[s]| \times \Lambda(j[s],[q])$ and "Fubini's theorem" (saying that coends commute) in the first isomorphism and the "dual Yoneda lemma" in the second isomorphism.

These isomorphisms will mean that we won't be fanatical about remembering to put the subscript Λ on sin and $|-|$.

The functor j^* from cyclic to simplicial sets given by precomposition with $j\colon \Delta^o \subseteq \Lambda^o$ has a left adjoint j_* (it also has a right adjoint, but that is not important to us right now). We have already encountered j_* in section V.3.3.

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a category with finite coproducts we get an adjoint pair

$$\mathcal{C}^{\Lambda^o} \underset{j^*}{\overset{j_*}{\leftrightarrows}} \mathcal{C}^{\Delta^o}$$

where j_* is the cyclic bar construction (with respect to the coproduct $\vee$) $j_* = B^{cy}_\vee$ given in degree q by $(j_*X)_q = \bigvee_{C_{q+1}} X_q$, but with a twist in the simplicial structure. To be precise, consider the bijection

$$\Lambda([m],[n]) \xrightarrow{f\mapsto\psi(f)=(\psi_\Delta(f),\psi_C(f))} \Delta([m],[n]) \times C_{m+1} \cong (j_*\Delta[n])_m,$$

where the components are given by the unique factorization of maps in Λ. The inverse of ψ is given by composition: $\psi^{-1}(\sigma,t^a) = \sigma t^a$. Hence we can identify $\Lambda[n]$ with $j_*\Delta[n]$ where the latter has the cyclic structure $\phi^*\left((\sigma,t^a)\right) = \psi(\sigma t^a\phi)$. In general, for $y \in (j_*X)_m$ in the t^a-summand this reads $\phi^*\left(y\right) = \phi_\Delta(t^a\phi)^*y$ in the $\psi_C(t^a\phi)$-summand.

The adjoint of the first isomorphism in lemma 1.1.2 then reads

Lemma 1.1.3 *There is a natural isomorphism*

$$|j_*Y|_\Lambda \cong \mathbb{T}_+\wedge|Y|$$

where Y a simplicial set.

Lemma 1.1.4 *Let X be a pointed cyclic set. Then*

$$\lim_{\overleftarrow{\Lambda^o}} X \cong \{x\in X_0 | s_0x = ts_0x\} \cong |X|_\Lambda^{\mathbb{T}}$$

Proof: The first equation is a direct calculation, and the second from the adjunction isomorphism $|X|^{\mathbb{T}}_{\Lambda} = (\mathbb{T} - Top_*)(S^0, |X|_\Lambda) \cong \mathcal{E}ns_*^{\Lambda^o}(S^0, X) = \lim_{\overleftarrow{\Lambda^o}} X$. ∎

Note in particular that if we consider a cyclic space as a simplicial cyclic set, then the formula always holds true if applied degreewise. For those who worry about the difference between spaces (simplicial sets) and topological spaces, we note that if G is a finite discrete group and X a simplicial G-set, then the two fixed-point constructions $|X^G|$ and $|X|^G$ are naturally homeomorphic (realization commutes with finite limits, A.1.1.1), and if K is a topological group and Y is a K-space, then $\sin\left(Y^K\right)$ and $(\sin Y)^{\sin K}$ are naturally isomorphic.

1.2 The edgewise subdivision

Let a be a natural number. The *edgewise subdivision* functor $sd^a\colon \Delta \to \Delta$ is the composite of the diagonal $\Delta \to \Delta^{\times a}$ composed with the concatenation $\Delta^{\times a} \to \Delta$ which sends $(S_1, \dots S_a)$ to the concatenation $S_1 \sqcup \dots \sqcup S_a$ which as a set is the disjoint union, but with ordering such that $s \in S_i$ is less that $t \in S_k$ if either $i < k$ or $i = k$ and $s < t \in S_i$. Note that $sd^a[k-1] = [ka-1]$. This construction extends to the cyclic world as follows

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta & \xrightarrow{sd^a} & \Delta \\ \Big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \text{inclusion}} & & \Big\downarrow{\scriptstyle j} \\ \Lambda \times C_a & \longrightarrow & \Lambda \end{array}$$

where the cyclic group C_a is considered as a category with one object, and where the lower map sends $(t^m, T^n) \in (\Lambda \times C_a)([k-1],[k-1])$ to $t^{am+kn} \in \Lambda([ka-1],[ka-1])$, and T is our chosen generator for C_a.

Precomposing any simplicial object X with sd^a gives $sd_a X = X \circ sd^a$, the *a-fold edgewise subdivision of* X. We note that $(sd_a X)_{k-1} = X_{ak-1}$.

Furthermore, given a cyclic object X, we see that $sd_a X$ becomes a new cyclic object, with a C_a-action.

Lemma 1.2.1 ([19]) *Let X be a cyclic space. There is a natural C_a-equivariant homeomorphism $|sd_a X| \cong |X|$, where the action on $|sd_a X|$ comes from the C_a-action on $sd_a X$, and the action on $|X|$ comes from the cyclic structure on X. The resulting homeomorphism $|sd_a X^{C_a}| \cong |X|^{C_a}$ is $\mathbb{T}$-equivariant if we let $\mathbb{T}$ act on $|sd_a X^{C_a}|$ via the cyclic structure, and on $|X|^{C_a}$ through the isomorphism $\mathbb{T} \cong \mathbb{T}/C_q$.* ☺

1.3 The restriction map

Let A be an **S**-algebra and X a space. We will now define an important cyclic map

$$R\colon sd_q THH(A;X)^{C_q} \to THH(A;X),$$

called the *restriction map*. This map is modeled on the fact that if C is a group and $f\colon Z \to Y$ is a C-map, then f sends the C-fixed points to C-fixed points; and hence we get a map

$$Map_*(Z,Y)^C \to Map_*(Z^C,Y^C)$$

by restricting to fixed points. Notice that the $j-1$ simplices of $sd_aTHH(A;X)$ are given by

$$THH(A,X)_{aj-1} = \underset{\overrightarrow{x_{k,l}\in\mathcal{I},1\le k\le a,1\le l\le j}}{\text{holim}} Map_*(\bigwedge_{k,l} S^{x_{k,l}}, X\wedge V(A)(x_{k,l})),$$

where we, as before, use the notation $V(A)(x_{k,l}) = \bigwedge_{k,l} A(S^{x_{k,l}})$. The C_a-fixed points under the action on $\mathcal{I}^{aj}$ are exactly the image of the diagonal $\mathcal{I}^j \to \mathcal{I}^{aj}$ sending $\mathbf{x}$ to $\mathbf{x}^a = (\mathbf{x},\dots,\mathbf{x})$, and the C_a fixed points are given by

$$THH(A,X)^{C_a}_{aj-1} \cong \underset{\overrightarrow{x_1,\dots,x_j\in\mathcal{I}^j}}{\text{holim}} Map_*\left((\bigwedge_{1\le i\le j} S^{x_i})^{\wedge a}, X\wedge V(A)((x_1,\dots x_j)^a)\right)^{C_a}$$

Note the C_a-equivatiant isomorphism

$$V(A)((x_1,\dots x_j)^a) \cong V(A)(x_1,\dots,x_j)^{\wedge a} \cong (\bigwedge_{1\le i\le j} A(S^{x_i}))^{\wedge a}.$$

In the mapping space, both the domain and target are a-fold smash products with C_a-action given by permutation (except for the C_a-fixed space X which just stays on for the ride) and so we get a restriction map to the mapping space of the fixed points:

$$Map_*(\bigwedge_{1\le i\le j} S^{x_i}, X\wedge V(A)(x_1,\dots,x_j)).$$

Taking the homotopy colimit we get a map $sd_aTHH(A;X)^{C_a}_{j-1} \to THH(A;X)_{j-1}$ which assembles to a cyclic map

$$R\colon sd_aTHH(A,X)^{C_a} \to THH(A;X)$$

giving the pair $(THH(A;X),R)$ the structure of an *epicyclic space* in the following sense:

Definition 1.3.1 An *epicyclic space* (Y,ϕ) is a cyclic space Y equipped with maps

$$\phi_q\colon Y^{C_q}_{qj-1} \to Y_{j-1}$$

for all $q,j\ge 1$ satisfying

1. $\phi_q\colon (sd_qY)^{C_q} \to Y$ is simplicial
2. $\phi_q t = t\phi_q$ (which implies that $\phi_q(Y^{C_{aq}}_{qaj-1}) \subseteq Y^{C_a}_{aj-1}$)
3. $\phi_a\phi_q = \phi_{aq}\colon Y^{C_{aq}}_{aqj-1} \to Y_{j-1}$

4. $\phi_1 = 1$.

Note that ϕ_q can be regarded as a cyclic map $(sd_qY)^{C_q} \to Y$, and also as a C_a-equivariant simplicial map $(sd_{aq}Y)^{C_q} \to sd_aY$ for any a. For $a \geq 1$, let

$$Y\langle a\rangle = |(sd_aY)^{C_a}|.$$

In addition to the map $\phi_q \colon Y\langle aq\rangle \to Y\langle a\rangle$ we have a map – the "inclusion of fixed points" – given as $i_q \colon Y\langle aq\rangle \cong |Y|^{C_{qa}} \subseteq |Y|^{C_a} \cong Y\langle a\rangle$. By the definition of an epicyclic space we get that these maps obey the following relations

$$\begin{array}{ll} \phi_q\phi_r = \phi_{qr} & \phi_1 = i_1 = id \\ i_qi_r = i_{qr} & i_q\phi_r = \phi_r i_q \end{array}$$

In other words, $a \mapsto Y\langle a\rangle$ is a functor to topological spaces from the category $\mathcal{RF}$:

Definition 1.3.2 Let $\mathcal{RF}$ be the category whose objects are the positive integers, and where there is a morphism $f_{r,s} \colon a \to b$ whenever $a = rbs$ for positive integers r and s, with composition $f_{r,s} \circ f_{p,q} = f_{rp,qs}$. An epicyclic space (Y, ϕ) gives rise to a functor from $\mathcal{RF}$ to spaces by sending a to $Y\langle a\rangle$, $f_{q,1}$ to ϕ_q and $f_{1,q}$ to i_q. Sloppily, we write $R = f_{r,1}$ and $F = f_{1,r}$ for any unspecified r (and range), hence the name of the category. For any given prime p, the full subcategory of $\mathcal{RF}$ containing only the powers of p is denoted $\mathcal{RF}_p$.

Example 1.3.3 We have seen that topological Hochschild homology defines an epicyclic space, and a map of **S**-algebras gives rise to a map respecting the epicyclic structure.

Another example is the cyclic nerve. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be any (simplicial small) category, and consider the *cyclic nerve* $B^{cy}\mathcal{C}$ discussed in section IV1.5.1. This is a straight-forward generalization of the cyclic bar of a monoid:

$$B^{cy}_q\mathcal{C} = \{c_q \leftarrow c_0 \leftarrow c_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow c_{q-1} \leftarrow c_q \in \mathcal{C}\}$$

with face and degeneracies given by composition and insertion of identities, and with cyclic structure given by cyclic permutation. This is a cyclic set, and $|B^{cy}\mathcal{C}|^{\mathbb{T}} \cong \lim_{\overleftarrow{\Lambda^o}} B^{cy}\mathcal{C} = ob\mathcal{C}$ where an object is identified with its identity morphism in $B^{cy}_0\mathcal{C}$. The fixed point sets under the finite subgroups of the circle are more interesting as $sd_rB^{cy}\mathcal{C}^{C_r} \cong B^{cy}\mathcal{C}$. In fact, an element $x \in (sd_rB^{cy}\mathcal{C})_{q-1} = B^{cy}_{rq-1}\mathcal{C}$ which is fixed by the C_r-action must be of the form

$$c_q \xleftarrow{f_1} c_1 \xleftarrow{f_2} \dots \xleftarrow{f_q} c_q \xleftarrow{f_1} c_1 \xleftarrow{f_2} \dots \xleftarrow{f_q} c_q \xleftarrow{f_1} c_1 \xleftarrow{f_2} \dots \xleftarrow{f_q} c_q$$

and we get an isomorphism $\phi_r \colon sd_rB^{cy}\mathcal{C}^{C_r} \cong B^{cy}\mathcal{C}$ by forgetting the repetitions. This equips the cyclic nerve with an epicyclic structure, and a functor of categories give rise to a map of cyclic nerves respecting the epicyclic structure.

An interesting example is the case where A is an **S**-algebra and $\mathcal{C}$ is the simplicial monoid $M = THH_0(A) = \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{x \in \mathcal{I}}} \Omega^x A(S^x)$. We have a map $B^{cy}M \to THH(A)$ given by smashing together functions

$$\prod_{0\leq i\leq q} \underset{\overrightarrow{x_i \in \mathcal{I}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \Omega^{x_i} A(S^{x_i}) \to \underset{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{I}^{q+1}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \Omega^{\vee \mathbf{x}} \bigwedge_{0\leq i\leq q} A(S^{x_i})$$

This map preserves the epicyclic structure.

Remark 1.3.4 *Our notion of an epicyclic space is* **not** *the same as the one proposed in [90], and which later was used by Burghelea, Fiedorowicz, and Gajda in [38] to compare Adams operators. This older definition generalized the so-called power maps* $P_q = \phi_q^{-1}\colon B^{cy}\mathcal{C} \to (sd_q B^{cy}\mathcal{C})^{C_q}$ *instead. Cyclic nerves are epicyclic spaces under either definition.*

Remark 1.3.5 *An epicyclic space* (Y,ϕ) *is more than a functor from* $\mathcal{RF}$ *to spaces. In fact, as each* $(sd_aY)^{C_a}$ *is again a cyclic space, each* $Y\langle a\rangle = |(sd_aY)^{C_a}|$ *comes equipped with a* $\mathbb{T}$*-action. However,* $Y\langle a\rangle$ *is not a functor to* $\mathbb{T}$*-spaces: the inclusion of fixed point spaces under the finite subgroups of* $\mathbb{T}$ *are not* $\mathbb{T}$*-equivariant, but speeds up the action. We may encode this as a continuous functor sending* $\theta \in \mathbf{R}/\mathbf{Z} \cong \mathbb{T}$ *to* $\rho_\theta\colon Y\langle a\rangle \to Y\langle a\rangle$ *with the additional relations*

$$\phi_q\rho_\theta = \rho_\theta\phi_q \qquad i_q\rho_\theta = \rho_{q\theta}i_q \qquad \rho_\theta\rho_\tau = \rho_{\theta+\tau}.$$

This can again be encoded in a topological category $S\mathcal{RF}$ *with objects the natural numbers and morphisms* $S\mathcal{RF}(a,b) = \mathbb{T}\times\mathcal{RF}(a,b)$*. Composition is given by*

$$(\theta, f_{r,s})(\tau, f_{p,q}) = (\theta + s\tau, f_{rp,qs}).$$

Sending θ *to* ρ_θ *we see that any epicyclic space give rise to a continuous functor* $a \mapsto Y\langle a\rangle$ *from* $S\mathcal{RF}$ *to topological spaces. In the MSRI notes [92] Goodwillie defines*

$$\underline{TC}(A;X) = \{k \mapsto \underset{\substack{\longleftarrow \\ a\in S\mathcal{RF}}}{\operatorname{holim}} |sd_aTHH(A;S^k\wedge X)^{C_a}|\}$$

(the homotopy limit remembers the topology in $\mathbb{T}$*), and gives a proof that this elegant definition agrees with the one we are going to give. The only reasons we have chosen to refrain from giving this as our definition is that our definition is custom built for our application (and for computations), and the proof that they agree would lengthen the discussion further.*

1.4 Properties of the fixed point spaces

We now make a closer study of the C_q-fixed point spaces of THH. The most important result is proposition 1.4.2, often referred to as "the fundamental cofibration sequence" which guarantees that the actual (and not just the homotopy) fixed point spaces will have good homotopical properties.

Definition 1.4.1 Let

$$T\langle\ \rangle(A;X)\colon \mathcal{RF} \to \mathcal{S}_*$$

with $T\langle a\rangle(A,X) = \sin|sd_aTHH(A,X)^{C_a}|$, be the functor associated with the epicyclic space $(THH(A;X),R)$. We set $R = T\langle f_{r,1}\rangle$ (for "Restriction", which it is) and $F = T\langle f_{1,r}\rangle$ (for "Frobenius", see section 3.2.9), which here is the inclusion of fixed points

$$T\langle rq\rangle(A,X) \cong \sin|THH(A,X)|^{C_{rq}} \subseteq \sin|THH(A,X)|^{C_q} \cong T\langle q\rangle(A,X)).$$

This construction is functorial in A and X, and we set

$$\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(A;X)=\{k\mapsto T\langle a\rangle(A;S^k\wedge X)\}.$$

Remember that each $\underline{T}\langle a\rangle$ can be considered as functors to cyclic spaces (but they do not assemble when varying a). We will not distinguish notationally whether we think of $\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(A;X)$ as a simplicial or cyclic space, and we offer the same ambiguity to $\underline{T}(A;X)\cong\underline{T}\langle 1\rangle(A;X)$.

The spectra $\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(A;X)$ are Ω-spectra for all positive integers a and are homotopy functors in A. This important fact can be seen by analyzing the restriction maps as in proposition 1.4.2 below, establishing the "fundamental cofiber sequence" ("cofiber" since the result is most often used in the spectrum version where cofiber and fiber sequences agree). A variant of this proposition was proven by Madsen in a letter to Hsiang around 1988. It does not play a major role in [19], but it is vital for all calculations of TC, and appears as Theorem 1.10 in Bökstedt and Madsen's first paper [20] on the topological cyclic homology of the integers. In [92] it is used to simplify many of the arguments in [19]. This is how we will use it. For instance, the mentioned properties of the $\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(A;X)$-spectra follows as corollaries, noting that homotopy orbits preserve equivalences.

Proposition 1.4.2 *Let p be a prime. Then there is a chain of natural equivalences from the homotopy fiber of*

$$\underline{T}\langle p^n\rangle(A;X)\xrightarrow{R}\underline{T}\langle p^{n-1}\rangle(A;X)$$

to $sd_{p^n}\underline{T}(A;X)_{hC_{p^n}}$. Indeed, for each j, the homotopy fiber of

$$(sd_{p^n}THH(A,X)^{C_{p^n}})_{j-1}\xrightarrow{R}(sd_{p^{n-1}}THH(A,X)^{C_{p^{n-1}}})_{j-1}$$

is naturally weakly equivalent to $\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{k}}\Omega^k((sd_{p^n}THH(A,S^k\wedge X)_{j-1})_{hC_{p^n}})$.

More generally, if q is a positive integer, consider the map

$$\underline{T}\langle q\rangle(A)\to\underset{\overleftarrow{1\neq r|q}}{\operatorname{holim}}\,\underline{T}\langle q/r\rangle(A)$$

induced by the restriction map and where the homotopy limit is over the positive integers r dividing q. Its homotopy fiber is degreewise naturally weakly equivalent to $\underline{T}(A)_{hC_q}$.

Proof: Since maps of simplicial spaces that induce weak equivalences in every degree induce weak equivalences on diagonals (theorem A.5.0.2) the first statement follows from the second. Let $q=p^n$, $G=C_q$ and $H=C_p$. For $\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^j$, let

$$Z(\mathbf{x})=\left(\bigwedge_{1\leq i\leq j}S^{x_i}\right)^{\wedge q},\text{ and }W(\mathbf{x})=X\wedge\left(\bigwedge_{1\leq i\leq j}A(S^{x_i})\right)^{\wedge q}$$

By the approximation lemma II.2.2.3, the (homotopy) fiber of the restriction map R is naturally equivalent to

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^j}}{\operatorname{holim}} \operatorname{fiber}\{Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x}),W(\mathbf{x}))^G \to Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x})^H,W(\mathbf{x})^H)^{G/H}\}$$

which, by the isomorphism

$$Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x})^H,W(\mathbf{x})^H)^{G/H} \cong Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x})^H,W(\mathbf{x}))^G$$

is isomorphic to

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^j}}{\operatorname{holim}} Map_*(U(\mathbf{x}),W(\mathbf{x}))^G$$

where $U(\mathbf{x}) = Z(\mathbf{x})/(Z(\mathbf{x})^H)$. As $U(\mathbf{x})$ is a free finite based G-complex, corollary 2.2.7 tells us that there is a natural chain

$$\begin{aligned} Map_*(U(\mathbf{x}),W(\mathbf{x}))^G &\longrightarrow Map_*(U(\mathbf{x}),\lim_{\overrightarrow{k}}\Omega^k(S^k\wedge W(\mathbf{x})))^G \\ &\xleftarrow{\sim} \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}}(\Omega^k Map_*(U(\mathbf{x}),S^k\wedge W(\mathbf{x}))_{hG}), \end{aligned}$$

and that the first map is $\sum\mathbf{x}-1$ connected. Furthermore, the cofiber sequence $Z(\mathbf{x})^H \subseteq Z(\mathbf{x}) \to U(\mathbf{x}) = Z(\mathbf{x})/(Z(\mathbf{x})^H)$ induces a fiber sequence

$$Map_*(U(\mathbf{x}),S^k\wedge W(\mathbf{x})) \longrightarrow Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x}),S^k\wedge W(\mathbf{x})) \longrightarrow Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x})^H,S^k\wedge W(\mathbf{x})).$$

Since $Z(\mathbf{x})^H$ is $\mathbf{x}q/p$-dimensional and $S^k\wedge W(\mathbf{x})$ is $\mathbf{x}q+k-1$-connected, the first map in the fiber sequence is $\mathbf{x}(q-q/p)+k-1$-connected, and since, by lemma A.6.3.1, taking homotopy orbits preserves connectivity we get that the map

$$\Omega^k(Map_*(U(\mathbf{x}),S^k\wedge W(\mathbf{x}))_{hG}) \to \Omega^k(Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x}),S^k\wedge W(\mathbf{x}))_{hG})$$

is $\mathbf{x}(q-q/p)-1$-connected. Taking the homotopy colimit over $\mathcal{I}^j$, this gives the statement for fixed j and prime p.

The proof of the statement for composite q is obtained quite similarly, letting $G = C_q$, $Z(\mathbf{x})$ and $W(\mathbf{x})$ be as before, but forgetting that q was a prime power. Assume by induction that the statement has been proven for all groups of cardinality less than G, and so that all for these groups the fixed point spectra of THH are homotopy functors and Bökstedt's approximation lemma applies.

This means that the canonical map

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}^j}}{\operatorname{holim}}\underset{\overleftarrow{0\neq H\subset G}}{\operatorname{holim}} Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x})^H,W(\mathbf{x})^H)^{G/H} \longrightarrow \underset{\overleftarrow{0\neq H\subset G}}{\operatorname{holim}}\underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}^j}}{\operatorname{holim}} Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x})^H,W(\mathbf{x})^H)^{G/H}$$

is an equivalence. The right hand side is isomorphic to

$$\underset{\overleftarrow{0\neq H\subset G}}{\operatorname{holim}}\left(\underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}^{j\cdot|G/H|}}}{\operatorname{holim}} Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x})^H,W(\mathbf{x})^H)\right)^{G/H} = \underset{\overleftarrow{0\neq H\subset G}}{\operatorname{holim}} sd_{|G/H|}THH(A,X)^{G/H},$$

and the left hand side is isomorphic to

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}^j}}{\mathrm{holim}}\,\underset{\overleftarrow{0\neq H\subset G}}{\mathrm{holim}}\,Map_*(Z(\mathbf{x})^H, W(\mathbf{x}))^G$$

which is equivalent to

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}^j}}{\mathrm{holim}}\,Map_*(\cup_{0\neq H\subset G}Z(\mathbf{x})^H, W(\mathbf{x}))^G$$

(the union can be replaced by the corresponding homotopy colimit). Via this equivalence, the homotopy fiber of

$$sd_{|G|}THH(A,X)^G_{j-1} \longrightarrow \underset{\overleftarrow{0\neq H\subset G}}{\mathrm{holim}}\,sd_{|G/H|}THH(A,X)^{G/H}_{j-1}$$

is equivalent to

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{x\in\mathcal{I}^j}}{\mathrm{holim}}\,Map_*(U(\mathbf{x}), W(\mathbf{x}))^G,$$

where $U(\mathbf{x}) = Z(\mathbf{x})/\cup_{0\neq H\subset G} Z(\mathbf{x})^H$. Then the same argument leads us to our conclusion, using that $U(\mathbf{x})$ is a free finite based G-space. ∎

Corollary 1.4.3 *Let q be a positive integer, $A \to B$ a map of* **S***-algebras inducing an equivalence $THH(A) \to THH(B)$ and X a space (in particular, $A \to B$ may be a stable equivalence). Then*

1. *the induced map $\underline{T}\langle q\rangle(A;X) \to \underline{T}\langle q\rangle(B;X)$ is an equivalence,*
2. *$\underline{T}\langle q\rangle(A;X)$ is a connective Ω-spectrum.*
3. *$\underline{T}\langle q\rangle(-;X)$ is Morita invariant.*
4. *$\underline{T}\langle q\rangle(-;X)$ preserves products up to equivalence.*

Proof: Follows by 1.4.2 and the corresponding properties of THH, plus the fact that homotopy orbits preserve loops and products of spectra. ∎

1.4.4 $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories

Essentially just the same construction can be applied to the case of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories.

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, $THH(\mathcal{C};X)$ also has its restriction map R, and $(THH(\mathcal{C};X), R)$ is an epicyclic space: If $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{I}^q$, then we have a restriction map

$$(\Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}^a}(X\wedge V(\mathcal{C})(\mathbf{x}^a)))^{C_a} \to \Omega^{\vee\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V(\mathcal{C})((\mathbf{x}^a))^{C_a})$$

as before, and note the canonical isomorphism $V(\mathcal{C})(\mathbf{x}^a)^{C_a} \cong V(\mathcal{C})(\mathbf{x})$. Proceeding just as for **S**-algebras we see that

$$a \mapsto T\langle a\rangle(\mathcal{C};X) = \sin|sd_aTHH(\mathcal{C};X)^{C_a}|$$

defines a functor from the category $\mathcal{RF}$ of definition 1.3.2 (or better: from the category $S\mathcal{RF}$ of remark 1.3.5) to spaces.

Lemma 1.4.5 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category and X a space. If p is a prime, the restriction map R fits into a fiber sequence*

$$\underline{T}(\mathcal{C};X)_{hC_{p^n}} \longrightarrow \underline{T}\langle p^n\rangle(\mathcal{C};X) \xrightarrow{R} \underline{T}\langle p^{n-1}\rangle(\mathcal{C};X).$$

More generally, if a is a positive integer we have a fiber sequence

$$\underline{T}(\mathcal{C};X)_{hC_a} \to \underline{T}\langle a\rangle(\mathcal{C};X) \to \underset{\overleftarrow{1\neq r|q}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \underline{T}\langle q/r\rangle(\mathcal{C};X)$$

induced by the restriction map and where the homotopy limit is over the positive integers r dividing q.

Proof: Exactly the same proof as for the **S**-algebra case proves that this is indeed true in every simplicial degree. ∎

As before, this gives a series of corollaries.

Corollary 1.4.6 *Let a be positive integer and X a space. Any $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functor $F\colon \mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{D}$ inducing an equivalence $THH(\mathcal{C})\to THH(\mathcal{D})$ induces an equivalence*

$$\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(\mathcal{C};X)\to\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(\mathcal{D};X).$$ ☺

Corollary 1.4.7 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, a be positive integer and X a space. Then*

1. *$\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(\mathcal{C};X)$ is a connective Ω-spectrum.*
2. *The functor $\underline{T}\langle p^n\rangle(-;X)$ takes $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalences of categories to equivalences.*
3. *If A is a ring, then the inclusion $A\subseteq\mathcal{P}_A$ as a rank one module induces an equivalence $\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(A;X)\xrightarrow{\sim}\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(\mathcal{P}_A;X)$*
4. *$\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(-;X)$ preserves products up to equivalence.* ☺

Corollary 1.4.8 *Let a be positive integer and X a space. If $\mathcal{C}$ is a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, then $T\langle a\rangle(\bar{H}\mathcal{C};X)=\{k\mapsto T\langle a\rangle(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^k);X)\}$ is an Ω-spectrum, equivalent to $\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(\mathcal{C};X)$.*

Proof: That $T\langle a\rangle(\bar{H}\mathcal{C};X)$ is an Ω-spectrum follows for instance from 1.4.7.2 and 1.4.7.4 since $\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+)$ is $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalent to $\mathcal{C}^{\times k}$. That the two Ω-spectra are equivalent follows by comparing both to the bispectrum $\underline{T}\langle a\rangle(\bar{H}\mathcal{C};X)$. ∎

Corollary 1.4.9 *If $\mathcal{C}$ is an additive category, then*

$$T\langle a\rangle(\bar{H}\mathcal{C};X)\to\{k\mapsto T\langle p^n\rangle(S^{(k)}\mathcal{C};X)\}$$

is an equivalence of Ω-spectra.

Proof: Follows by corollary 1.4.6 since $THH(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^k);X)\to THH(S^{(k)}\mathcal{C};X)$ is an equivalence by IV.2.5.10. ∎

1.5 Spherical group rings

In the special case of spherical group rings II.1.4.4.2 the restriction maps split, making it possible to give explicit models for the C_{p^n}-fixed point spectra of topological Hochschild homology.

Lemma 1.5.1 *The restriction maps split for spherical group rings.*

Proof: Let G be a simplicial group. We will prove that, for each space X and positive integers a and b, the restriction map $sd_{ab}THH(\mathbf{S}[G],X)^{C_{ab}} \to sd_aTHH(\mathbf{S}[G],X)^{C_a}$ splits. We fix an object $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{I}^j$, and consider the restriction map

$$\begin{array}{c} Map_*\left(\left(\bigwedge_{i=1}^j S^{x_i}\right)^{\wedge ab}, X\wedge\left(\bigwedge_{i=1}^j (S^{x_i}\wedge G_+)\right)^{\wedge ab}\right)^{C_{ab}} \\ \downarrow \\ Map_*\left(\left(\bigwedge_{i=1}^j S^{x_i}\right)^{\wedge a}, X\wedge\left(\bigwedge_{i=1}^j (S^{x_i}\wedge G_+)\right)^{\wedge a}\right)^{C_a} \end{array}.$$

Let $S = \left(\bigwedge_{i=1}^j S^{x_i}\right)^{\wedge a}$ and $n = a\cdot|\vee\mathbf{x}|$, and consider the isomorphism

$$|S^{\wedge b}| \cong |S|\wedge S^{\perp}$$

coming from the one-point compactification of

$$\mathbf{R}^n\otimes\mathbf{R}^b \cong \mathbf{R}^n\otimes(\mathrm{diag}\oplus\mathrm{diag}^{\perp}) \cong \mathbf{R}^n\oplus(\mathbf{R}^n\otimes\mathrm{diag}^{\perp})$$

where $\mathrm{diag}\subseteq R^b$ is the diagonal line. The desired splitting

$$Map_*(S, X\wedge S\wedge G_+^{\times ja})^{C_a} \to Map_*(S^{\wedge b}, X\wedge S^{\wedge b}\wedge G_+^{\times jab})^{C_{ab}}$$

is determined by sending $f\colon |S|\to|X\wedge S\wedge G_+^{\times ja}|$ to

$$\begin{array}{cccc} |S^{\wedge b}|\cong|S|\wedge S^{\perp} & \xrightarrow{f\wedge id} & |X\wedge S\wedge G_+^{\times ja}|\wedge S^{\perp} & \\ \cong & & |X\wedge S|\wedge S^{\perp}\wedge|G_+^{\times ja}| & \\ \cong & & |X\wedge S^{\wedge b}\wedge G_+^{\times ja}| & \xrightarrow{id\wedge\mathrm{diag}} |X\wedge S^{\wedge b}\wedge G_+^{\times jab}| \end{array}.$$

∎

Example 1.5.2 To see how the isomorphism $|S|^{\wedge b}\cong|S|\wedge S^{\perp}$ of the above proof works, consider the following example.

$S = S^1$, $b=2$, $|S^{\wedge 2}|\cong|S|\wedge S^{\perp}$ is obtained by

$$\mathbf{R}^2\cong\mathbf{R}\oplus\mathbf{R}, \qquad \left[\begin{smallmatrix} a \\ b\end{smallmatrix}\right]\mapsto((a+b)/2,(a-b)/2)$$

and the $\mathbf{Z}/2$-action is trivial in the first factor and mult by -1 in the other. Notice that if $f\colon |S| \to |X\wedge S\wedge G_+|$ sends $a \in \mathbf{R}^* = |S|$ to $x_a\wedge s_a\wedge g_a$, then the composite

$$|S^2| \cong |S|\wedge S^\perp \xrightarrow{f\wedge id} |X\wedge S\wedge G_+|\wedge S^\perp \cong |X\wedge S^2\wedge G_+| \to |X\wedge S^2\wedge G_+^{\times 2}|$$

sends $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} a \\ b \end{smallmatrix}\right]$ to $((a+b)/2, (a-b)/2)$ to

$$x_{(a+b)/2}\wedge s_{(a+b)/2}\wedge g_{(a+b)/2}\wedge (a-b)/2$$

to

$$x_{(a+b)/2}\wedge \left[\begin{smallmatrix} s_{(a+b)/2}+(a-b)/2 \\ s_{(a+b)/2}-(a-b)/2 \end{smallmatrix}\right]\wedge g_{(a+b)/2}$$

to

$$x_{(a+b)/2}\wedge \left[\begin{smallmatrix} s_{(a+b)/2}+(a-b)/2 \\ s_{(a+b)/2}-(a-b)/2 \end{smallmatrix}\right]\wedge g_{(a+b)/2}\wedge g_{(a+b)/2}.$$

Exchanging a and b in this formula transforms it to

$$x_{(a+b)/2}\wedge \left[\begin{smallmatrix} s_{(a+b)/2}-(a-b)/2 \\ s_{(a+b)/2}+(a-b)/2 \end{smallmatrix}\right]\wedge g_{(a+b)/2}\wedge g_{(a+b)/2}.$$

From this splitting and from the "fundamental cofibration sequence" 1.4.2 we get the following calculation of the fixed points:

Corollary 1.5.3 *Let a be a positive integer. The splitting of the restriction map induces a natural equivalence*

$$\bigvee_{r|a} |THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|_{hC_r} \to |THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|^{C_a},$$

where the sum ranges over the positive integers r dividing a. Under this equivalence, the restriction map corresponds to the projection. ☺

Coupled with the equivalence $THH(\mathbf{S}[G]) \simeq \mathbf{S}[B^{cy}(G)]$ of example IV.1.2.9, this gives an effective calculation of the fixed points of topological Hochschild homology of spherical group rings. The inclusion of fixed points maps F and their relation to this splitting are discussed in 3.2.10 below.

2 (Naïve) G-spectra

Let G be a simplicial monoid. The category of *G-spectra*, *GSpt* is the category of simplicial functors from G to the category of spectra. A map of G-spectra is called a pointwise (resp. stable) equivalence if the underlying map of spectra is.

This notion of G-spectra is much less rigid than what most people call G-spectra (see e.g., [148]), and they would prefer to call these spectra something like "naïve pre-G-spectra". To make it quite clear: our G-spectra are just sequences of G-spaces together with structure maps $S^1 \wedge X^n \to X^{n+1}$ that are G-maps. A map of G-spectra $X \to Y$ is simply a collection of G-maps $X^n \to Y^n$ commuting with the structure maps.

Again, G-spectra form a simplicial category, with function space

$$\underline{G\mathcal{S}pt}^0(X,Y) = \{[q] \mapsto G\mathcal{S}pt(X \wedge \Delta[q]_+, Y)\}.$$

Even better, it has function spectra

$$\underline{G\mathcal{S}pt}(X,Y) = \{k \mapsto \underline{G\mathcal{S}pt}^0(X, Y^{k+?})\}.$$

If X is a G-spectrum we could define the homotopy orbit and fixed point spectra pointwise, i.e., X_{hG} would be $\{k \mapsto (X^k)_{hG})\}$ and "X^{hG}" would be $\{k \mapsto (X^k)^{hG}\}$. These construction obviously preserve pointwise equivalences, but just as the homotopy limit naïvely defined (without the $\sin|-|$, see appendix A.6) may not preserve weak equivalences, some care is needed in the stable case.

Pointwise homotopy orbits always preserve stable equivalences, but pointwise homotopy fixed points may not. However, if the spectrum X is an Ω-spectrum, stable and pointwise equivalences coincide, and this may always be assured by applying the construction $QX = \{k \mapsto Q^k X = \lim_{\overrightarrow{n}} \Omega^n X^{k+n}\}$ of appendix A.2.2.1 (if we were operating with "genuine G-spectra" the colimit would not have been over the natural numbers, but rather over G-representations). This is encoded in the real definition.

Definition 2.0.4 Let G be a simplicial monoid and X a G-spectrum. Then the *homotopy orbit spectrum* is given by

$$X_{hG} = \{k \mapsto (X^k)_{hG})\}$$

whereas the *homotopy fixed point spectrum* is given by

$$X^{hG} = \{k \mapsto (Q^k X)^{hG}\}.$$

Lemma 2.0.5 *Let G be a simplicial monoid and $f\colon X \to Y$ a map of G-spectra. If f is a stable equivalence of spectra, then $f_{hG}\colon X_{hG} \to Y_{hG}$ and $f^{hG}\colon X^{hG} \to Y^{hG}$ are stable equivalences.* ☺

For G-spectra X there are spectral sequences

$$E^2_{p,q} = H_p(BG; \pi_q X) \Rightarrow \pi_{p+q}(X_{hG})$$

and

$$E^2_{p,q} = H^{-p}(BG; \pi_q X) \Rightarrow \pi_{p+q}(X^{hG})$$

which can be obtained by filtering EG.

2.1 Circle and finite cyclic actions

If X is an $\mathbf{S^1}$-spectrum, we can also consider the homotopy fixed points under the finite subgroups $C \subset \mathbf{S^1}$. As $Map_*(E\mathbf{S^1}_+, X) \to Map_*(EC_+, X)$ is a C-equivariant homotopy equivalence we can calculate X^{hC} equally well as $Map_*(E\mathbf{S^1}_+, X)^C$. Thus, if $C' \subseteq C$ is a subgroup, we can think of $X^{hC} \to X^{hC'}$ most conveniently as the inclusion $Map_*(E\mathbf{S^1}_+, X)^C \subseteq Map_*(E\mathbf{S^1}_+, X)^{C'}$.

Lemma 2.1.1 *If X is an $\mathbf{S^1}$-spectrum and p some prime, then the natural map*

$$X^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{r}} X^{hC_{p^r}}$$

is an equivalence after p-completion.

Proof: This is just a reformulation of A.6.6.4 ∎

2.2 The norm map

The theory for finite groups has a nice continuation to a theory for compact Lie groups. We will only need one case beyond finite groups: $G = \mathbf{S^1} = \sin|S^1|$, and in an effort to be concrete, we cover that case in some detail. In these cases the theory simplifies considerably, so although some of the considerations to follow have more general analogs (see e.g., [148] or [101]) we shall restrict our statements to these cases, and we use ideas close to [259]. We have to define the *norm map* $\Sigma^{Ad(G)} X_{hG} \to X^{hG}$ (where "$Ad(G)$" is a place holder for the dimension of the "adjoint representation", which is 0 for finite groups and 1 for the circle group).

Lemma 2.2.1 *Let G be a finite discrete group. Then the inclusion*

$$\underline{\mathbf{S}} \wedge G_+ \to \prod_G \underline{\mathbf{S}} \cong \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(G_+, \underline{\mathbf{S}})$$

of the finite wedge into the finite product is a stable equivalence and a $G \times G$-map where $G \times G$ acts on G to the left via $(a, b) \cdot g = a \cdot g \cdot b^{-1}$, and permutes the factors to the right accordingly.

Proof: This is a special case of corollary A.7.2.4. ∎

Lemma 2.2.2 *Let Y be a spectrum, and let the functorial (in Y) $\mathbf{S^1} \times \mathbf{S^1}$-map of spectra*

$$f' \colon \mathbf{S^1}_+ \wedge Y \xrightarrow{\sim} Map_*(\mathbf{S^1}_+, S^1 \wedge Y)$$

be the adjoint of the composite

$$\mathbf{S^1}_+ \wedge \mathbf{S^1}_+ \wedge Y \xrightarrow{\mu \wedge 1} \mathbf{S^1}_+ \wedge Y \xrightarrow{pr \wedge 1} \mathbf{S^1} \wedge Y \longrightarrow \sin|S^1 \wedge Y|$$

(where the last map is the adjoint of $Y \to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1, S^1 \wedge Y) \to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\sin|S^1|, \sin|S^1 \wedge Y|)$). Then f' is an equivalence of spectra.

Proof: The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
Y^l & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{S^1}_+\wedge Y^l & \xrightarrow{pr} & \mathbf{S^1}\wedge Y^l \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow\simeq \\
Map_*(\mathbf{S^1}, S^1\wedge Y^l) & \xrightarrow{pr^*} & Map_*(\mathbf{S^1}_+, S^1\wedge Y^l) & \longrightarrow & \sin|S^1\wedge Y^l|
\end{array}$$

commutes, and both horizontal sequences are (stable) fiber sequences of spectra (when varying l). The outer vertical maps are both stable equivalences, and the so the middle map (which is the map in question) must also be a stable equivalence. ∎

Corollary 2.2.3 *If Y is a spectrum, then there are natural chains of stable equivalences $(\mathbf{S^1}_+\wedge Y)^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \simeq S^1\wedge Y$ and $(G_+\wedge Y)^{hG} \simeq Y$, for G a finite group.*

Proof: Lemma 2.2.2 gives us that

$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{S^1}_+\wedge Y)^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \xrightarrow{\sim} & Map_*(\mathbf{S^1}_+, \mathbf{S^1}\wedge Y)^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \simeq Map_*(E\mathbf{S^1}_+\wedge\mathbf{S^1}_+, Q(\mathbf{S^1}\wedge Y))^{\mathbf{S^1}} \\ \cong & Map_*(E\mathbf{S^1}_+, Q(\mathbf{S^1}\wedge Y)) \simeq Q(\mathbf{S^1}\wedge Y) \simeq S^1\wedge Y.\end{aligned}$$

Likewise for the discrete case. ∎

Let G be a simplicial group and assume given a functorial (in the spectrum Y) $G\times G$-map

$$G_+\wedge Y \to Map_*(G_+, \Sigma^a Y)$$

which is a stable equivalence when Y is the sphere spectrum. When G is finite we use the map from lemma 2.2.1 and $a=0$, and when G is the circle group we use the map from lemma 2.2.2 with $a=1$.

The construction $Q^n X = \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k X^{k+n}$ of appendix A.2.2.1 sends this stable equivalence to a weak equivalence $Q^0(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\wedge G_+) \xrightarrow{\sim} Map_*(G_+, Q^0(\Sigma^a Y))$.

Since homotopy fixed points preserve equivalences we get an equivalence

$$\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^a, Q^0(G_+\wedge\underline{\mathbf{S}}))^{h(G\times G)} \xrightarrow{\sim} Map_*(G_+\wedge S^a, Q^0(\Sigma^a\underline{\mathbf{S}}))^{h(G\times G)}$$

We have a preferred point Δ in the latter space, namely the one defined by

$$E(G\times G)_+\wedge G_+\wedge S^a \to S^a \to \Omega^k S^{k+a}$$

where the first map is the (ath suspension of the) projection and the second map is the adjoint to the identity. Note that, when G is finite, the homotopy class of Δ represents the "norm" in the usual sense:

$$[\Delta] \cong \sum_{g\in G} g \in \mathbf{Z}[G] = \pi_0\Omega^l \prod_G S^l.$$

Now, pick the $G\times G$-map

$$f\colon E(G\times G)_+\wedge S^a \to Q^0(G_+\wedge\underline{\mathbf{S}})$$

in $\mathcal{S}_*(E(G\times G)_+\wedge S^a, Q^0(\underline{\mathbf{S}}\wedge G_+))^{G\times G}$ of your choice in the component represented by Δ (we believe in the right to choose freely, the so called axiom of choice, but now that you've chosen we ask you kindly to stick to your choice).

Proposition 2.2.4 *Let G be a simplicial group, and assume given a choice of a map f as above. Then the* norm map

$$\nu_X\colon S^a\wedge X_{hG}\to X^{hG}$$

given above is natural in the G-spectrum X. In the homotopy category, the norm map is independent of the choice of f, up to isomorphism.

Proof: Consider the composite ϕ_X

$$E(G\times G)_+\wedge S^a\wedge X^k \xrightarrow{f\wedge 1} Q^0(G_+\wedge\underline{\mathbf{S}})\wedge X^k \longrightarrow Q^k(G_+\wedge X) \xrightarrow{\mu} Q^k X,$$

where the middle map is induced by $\Omega^n(S^n)\wedge X^k\to\Omega^n(S^n\wedge X^k)\to\Omega^n X^{n+k}$ and the last by the G-action on X. This is a $G\times G$-map if we let the action on the source be given by $(g_1,g_2)\cdot((e_1,e_2)\wedge s\wedge x)=(g_1e,g_2e_2)\wedge s\wedge g_2x$ and on the target by $(g_1,g_2)\cdot x=g_1x$.

However, these actions are complementary and we get a factorization through the orbit and fixed point spaces:

$$\begin{CD}
@. EG_+\wedge S^a\wedge X_k @>>> \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(EG_+,Q^kX) @.\\
@. @VVV @AAA @.\\
(X_{hG})_k @= (EG_+\wedge S^a\wedge X_k)/G @>{\nu_X}>> \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(EG_+,Q^kX)^G @= (X^{hG})_k.
\end{CD}$$

The functoriality follows since all choices involved in producing this map was done before we introduced X on the scene. The independence between two choices of f follows by choosing a $G\times G$-homotopy and tracing it through the construction. ∎

Proposition 2.2.5 *If G is a finite and discrete group and X a G-spectrum, then the composite*

$$X \twoheadrightarrow X_{hG}\xrightarrow{\nu_X} X^{hG}\hookrightarrow QX$$

induces the endomorphism of π_*X given by multiplication with $\sum_{g\in G} g\in\pi_0(G_+\wedge\underline{\mathbf{S}})$. If $X=G_+\wedge Y$ with trivial G-action on Y, then the norm map is an equivalence.

Proof: By the choice of f, we see that if G is finite, the map induces multiplication by $[\Delta]\cong\sum_{g\in G} g$ on the homotopy groups π_*X, in the sense that

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\pi_{*+k}(E(G\times G)_+\wedge S^0\wedge X^k) \arrow[r, "f_*\wedge 1"] \arrow[d] & \pi_{*+k}Q^0(G_+\wedge\underline{\mathbf{S}})\wedge X^k \arrow[r] & \pi_{*+k}Q^k(G_+\wedge X) \arrow[r, "\mu"] \arrow[d, "\cong"'] & \pi_{*+k}Q^kX \\
\pi_{*+k}Q^kX \arrow[rr, "\text{diagonal}"] & & \mathbf{Z}[G]\otimes\pi_{*+k}Q^kX \arrow[ur, "\text{multiplication}"'] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

commutes, and the left vertical map stabilizes to an isomorphism. Since EG is a contractible space, the same holds for the adjoint used in the definition of the norm.

The last statement may be proven as follows. If $X = G_+ \wedge Y$ then consider the commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\pi_*(G_+\wedge Y) \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\cong"'] & \pi_*(G_+\wedge Y)_{hG} \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\cong"'] & \pi_*(G_+\wedge Y)^{hG} \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\cong"'] & \pi_*(G_+\wedge Y) \arrow[d, "\cong"'] \\
\bigoplus_G \pi_*Y \arrow[r, "\nabla"] & \pi_*Y & \pi_*Y \arrow[r, "\Delta"] & \bigoplus_G \pi_*Y
\end{tikzcd}$$

where $\nabla(g \mapsto y_g) = \sum_g y_g$, and $\Delta(y) = \{g \mapsto y\}$. The "missing" arrow can of course be filled in as the vertical maps are isomorphisms, but there is only one map $\pi_*Y \to \pi_*Y$ making the bottom composite the norm, namely the identity. ∎

We list two corollaries that we will need in the finite case.

Corollary 2.2.6 *Let G be a finite discrete group, let U be a finite free G-space and Y a G-spectrum. Then the norm maps*

$$(U\wedge Y)_{hG} \to (U\wedge Y)^{hG}$$

and

$$\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(U,Y)_{hG} \to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(U,Y)^{hG}$$

are both equivalences.

Proof: By induction on G-cells in U, reduce to the case $U = S^n \wedge G_+$. Use a shear map as in the proof lemma A.8.2.2 to remove action from $S^n \wedge Y$ and $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^n, Y)$ in the resulting expressions. Note the stable product to sum shift in the last case. Use the proposition 2.2.5. ∎

We have one very important application of this corollary:

Corollary 2.2.7 *Let G be a finite discrete group, let U be a finite free G-space, and X any G-space. Then there is a chain of natural equivalences*

$$\varinjlim_k \Omega^k(Map_*(U, S^k\wedge X)_{hG}) \simeq Map_*(U, \varinjlim_k \Omega^k(S^k\wedge X))^{hG}.$$

If U is d-dimensional and X n-connected, then

$$Map_*(U,X)^G \to Map_*(U, \varinjlim_k \Omega^k(S^k\wedge X))^{hG}$$

is $2n-d+1$ connected.

Proof: Recall that $Map_*(-,-) = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(-, \sin|-|)$. Corollary 2.2.6 tells us that the norm map

$$\varinjlim_k \Omega^k(Map_*(U,S^k\wedge X)_{hG}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \varinjlim_k \Omega^k(\varinjlim_l \Omega^l Map_*(U, S^l\wedge S^k\wedge X))^{hG}$$

is an equivalence, and the latter space is equivalent to $Map_*(U, \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k S^k \wedge X)^{hG}$ by lemma A.1.5.3 since U and EG_+ (and G) are finite. The last statement is just a reformulation of lemma A.8.2.2 since $X \to \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k(S^k\wedge X)$ is $2n+1$ connected by the Freudenthal suspension theorem A.7.2.3. ∎

3 Topological cyclic homology.

In this section we will finally give a definition of topological cyclic homology. We first will define the pieces $TC(-;p)$ which are relevant to the p-complete part of TC, and later merge this information with the rational information coming from the homotopy fixed points of the whole circle action.

3.1 The definition and properties of $TC(-;p)$

As an intermediate stage, we define the functors $TC(-;p)$ which captures the information of topological cyclic homology when we complete at the prime p. We continue to list the case of an **S**-algebra separately, in case the reader feels uncomfortable with $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories.

Recall from 1.3.2 that $\mathcal{RF}_p \subset \mathcal{RF}$ is the full subcategory of powers of p.

Definition 3.1.1 Let p be a prime, A an **S**-algebra and X a space. We define

$$TC(A;X;p) = \underset{\overleftarrow{p^n\in\mathcal{RF}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, T\langle p^n\rangle(A;X)$$

This gives rise to the spectrum

$$\underline{TC}(A,X;p) = \underset{\overleftarrow{p^n\in\mathcal{RF}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \underline{T}\langle p^n\rangle(A;X) = \{k \mapsto TC(A;S^k\wedge X;p)\}$$

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category we define

$$TC(\mathcal{C};X;p) = \underset{\overleftarrow{p^n\in\mathcal{RF}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, T\langle p^n\rangle(\mathcal{C};X)$$

with associated spectrum

$$\underline{TC}(\mathcal{C};X;p) = \underset{\overleftarrow{p^n\in\mathcal{RF}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \underline{T}\langle p^n\rangle(\mathcal{C};X) = \{k \mapsto TC(\mathcal{C};S^k\wedge X;p)\}$$

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category we have a spectrum

$$TC(\bar{H}\mathcal{C};X;p) = \{k \mapsto TC(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^k);X;p)\}$$

We get the analogs of the results in the previous chapter directly:

Lemma 3.1.2 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, X a space and p a prime. Then*

1. *$\underline{TC}(\mathcal{C};X;p)$ is an Ω-spectrum.*
2. *The functor $\underline{TC}(-;X;p)$ takes $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalences of categories to equivalences.*
3. *If A is a ring, then the inclusion $A \subseteq \mathcal{P}_A$ as a rank one module induces an equivalence $\underline{TC}(A;X;p) \xrightarrow{\sim} \underline{TC}(\mathcal{P}_A;X;p)$*

4. *$\underline{TC}(-;X;p)$ preserves products up to pointwise equivalence.*

5. *If $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-functor inducing an equivalence $THH(\mathcal{C}) \to THH(\mathcal{D})$, then it induces an equivalence*
$$\underline{TC}(\mathcal{C};X;p) \to \underline{TC}(\mathcal{D};X;p)$$

6. *If $\mathcal{C}$ is a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category, then $TC(\bar{H}\mathcal{C};X;p)$ is an Ω-spectrum equivalent to $\underline{TC}(\mathcal{C};X;p)$.*

Proof: This follows from the corresponding properties for $\underline{T}\langle p^n\rangle$ from section 1.4, c.f. in particular corollary 1.4.6, corollary 1.4.7 and corollary 1.4.8, and the properties of homotopy limits. ∎

Here we see that it made a difference that we considered $T\langle a\rangle(\bar{H}\mathcal{C};X)$ as the spectrum $\{n \mapsto T\langle a\rangle(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(S^n);X)\}$, and not as a Γ-space $\{k_+ \mapsto T\langle a\rangle(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+);X)\}$: the spectrum associated to the (pointwise) homotopy limit of a Γ-space is not the same as the (pointwise) homotopy limit of the spectrum, since the homotopy limits can destroy connectivity. We will shortly see that this is not a real problem, since it turns out that $\underline{TC}(\mathcal{C};X;p)$ is always -2-connected, and so $TC(\bar{H}\mathcal{C};X;p)$ and the spectrum associated with $\{k_+ \mapsto TC(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+);X;p)\}$ will be equivalent once X is connected. In any case, it may be that the correct way of thinking of this is to view TC of symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories as Γ-spectra:
$$\{k_+ \mapsto \underline{TC}(\bar{H}\mathcal{C}(k_+);X;p)\}.$$
This point will become even more acute when we consider the homotopy fixed point spectra for the entire circle actions since these are not even bounded below.

If $\mathcal{C}$ is exact we have an equivalent Ω-spectrum
$$\mathbf{TC}(\mathcal{C};X;p) = \underset{\overleftarrow{p^n\in\mathcal{RF}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, T\langle p^n\rangle(S\mathcal{C};X) = \{k \mapsto TC(S^{(k)}\mathcal{C};X;p)\}$$

If A is a ring we let
$$\mathbf{TC}(A,X;p) = \mathbf{TC}(\mathcal{P}_A,X)\}$$
and we see that $\mathbf{TC}(A;X;p)$ is equivalent to $\underline{TC}(A;X;p)$.

3.2 Some structural properties of $TC(-;p)$

A priori, the category $\mathcal{RF}_p$ can seem slightly too big for comfort, but it turns out to be quite friendly, especially if we consider the F and R maps separately. This separation gives us good control over the homotopy limit defining $TC(-;p)$. For instance, we shall see that it implies that $\underline{TC}(-;p)$ is -2-connected, can be computed degreewise and almost preserves id-cartesian cubes (see III.3.1.7 and more thoroughly, section A.7 for terminology), and hence is “determined” by its value on discrete rings.

3.2.1 Calculating homotopy limits over $\mathcal{RF}_p$

Consider the two subcategories $\mathcal{F}_p$ and $\mathcal{R}_p$ of $\mathcal{RF}_p$, namely the ones with only the F (Frobenius = inclusion of fixed points) maps or only the R (restriction) maps. We will typically let

$$TR(A;X;p) = \underset{\overleftarrow{p^n\in\mathcal{R}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, T\langle p^n\rangle(A;X) \qquad \text{and} \qquad TF(A,X;p) = \underset{\overleftarrow{p^n\in\mathcal{F}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, T\langle p^n\rangle(A;X)$$

and similarly for the spectra and the related functors of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories.

Let $\langle x, y, \dots\rangle$ be the free symmetric monoid generated by the letters $x, y, \dots$. If $\langle x\rangle$ acts on a space Y, we write $\mathrm{holim}_{\overleftarrow{\langle x\rangle}} Y$ as Y^{hx}, in analogy with the group case, and it may be calculated as the homotopy pullback

$$Y^{hx} \simeq \underset{\leftarrow}{\mathrm{holim}} \left(\begin{array}{ccc} & & Map_*(I_+, Y) \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle f\mapsto(f(0),f(1))} \\ Y & \xrightarrow{y\mapsto(y,xy)} & Y\times Y \end{array} \right)$$

Let L be any functor from $\mathcal{RF}_p$ to spaces, and suppose it has fibrant values so that we may suppress some fibrant replacements below. We see that $\langle R, F\rangle$ acts on $\prod_{p^n\in\mathcal{RF}_p} L(p^n)$, and writing out the cosimplicial replacement carefully, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \underset{\overleftarrow{\mathcal{RF}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, L \cong & Tot(q \mapsto \prod_{N_q\langle F,R\rangle} (\prod_{p^n\in\mathcal{RF}_p} L(p^n))) \\ & \cong \underset{\overleftarrow{\langle R,F\rangle}}{\mathrm{holim}} (\prod_{p^n\in\mathcal{RF}_p} L(p^n)) \cong \underset{\overleftarrow{\langle R\rangle\times\langle F\rangle}}{\mathrm{holim}} (\prod_{p^n\in\mathcal{RF}_p} L(p^n)). \end{aligned}$$

We may take the homotopy limit over the product $\langle R\rangle\times\langle F\rangle$ in the order we choose. If we take the R map first we get

Lemma 3.2.2 *Let L be a functor from $\mathcal{RF}_p$ to spaces. Then*

$$\begin{aligned} \underset{\overleftarrow{\mathcal{RF}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, L & \cong \underset{\overleftarrow{\langle F\rangle}}{\mathrm{holim}} (\underset{\overleftarrow{\langle R\rangle}}{\mathrm{holim}} (\prod_{p^n\in\mathcal{RF}_p} L(p^n))) \\ & \cong \underset{\overleftarrow{\langle F\rangle}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, \underset{\overleftarrow{p^n\in\mathcal{R}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, L(p^n) = (\underset{\overleftarrow{p^n\in\mathcal{R}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, L(p^n))^{hF} \end{aligned}$$

☺

Similarly we may take the F map first and get the same result with R and F interchanged.

For our applications we note that

$$TC(A;X;p) \simeq TR(A;X;p)^{hF} \simeq TF(A;X;p)^{hR}$$

Lemma 3.2.3 *The spectrum $\underline{TC}(-;p)$ is -2 connected, and likewise for the other variants.*

Proof: Consider the short exact sequence

$$0 \to \lim_{\substack{\leftarrow \\ p^n \in \mathcal{R}_p}}{}^{(1)} \pi_{k+1}\underline{T}\langle p^n\rangle(\mathcal{C};X) \to \pi_k \underline{TR}(\mathcal{C};X;p) \to \lim_{\substack{\leftarrow \\ p^n \in \mathcal{R}_p}} \pi_k \underline{T}\langle p^n\rangle(\mathcal{C};X) \to 0$$

of the tower defining TR. Since $\pi_0\underline{T}\langle p^n\rangle(\mathcal{C};X) \to \pi_0\underline{T}\langle p^{n-1}\rangle(\mathcal{C};X)$ is always surjective (its cokernel is $\pi_{-1} sd_{p^n}\underline{T}\langle p^n\rangle(\mathcal{C};X)_{C_{p^n}} = 0$), the $\lim_{\overleftarrow{R}}{}^{(1)}$ part vanishes, and $\underline{TR}$ is always -1-connected (alternatively, look at the spectral sequence of the R tower, and note that all the fibers are -1-connected). Hence the pullback $\underline{TC}(\mathcal{C};p) \simeq TR(\mathcal{C};p)^{hF}$ cannot be less than -2-connected. ∎

Lemma 3.2.4 *If A is a simplicial $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, then $\underline{TC}(A;X;p)$, may be calculated degreewise in the sense that*

$$\operatorname{diag}^*\{[q] \mapsto \underline{TC}(A_q;X;p)\} \simeq \underline{TC}(\operatorname{diag}^* A;X;p).$$

Proof: This is true for THH (lemma IV.1.3.1), and so, by the fundamental cofibration sequence 1.4.2 it is true for all $sd_{p^n}THH(A;X)^{C_{p^n}}$. By corollary A.7.2.7, homotopy limits of towers of connective simplicial spectra may always be computed degreewise, so

$$\underline{TR}(A;p) = \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{R}} sd_{p^n}\underline{T}(A)^{C_{p^n}}$$

is naturally equivalent to $\operatorname{diag}^*\{[q] \mapsto \underline{TR}(A_q;p)\}$. Now, $\underline{TC}(A;p) \simeq \underline{TR}(A;p)^{hF}$, a homotopy pullback construction which may be calculated degreewise. ∎

Lemma 3.2.5 *Let $f\colon A \to B$ be a k-connected map of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras and X an l-connected space. Then*

$$\underline{TC}(A;X;p) \to \underline{TC}(B;X;p)$$

is $k+l-1$-connected.

Proof: Since $THH(-;X)$, and hence the homotopy orbits of $THH(-;X)$, rise connectivity by l, we get by the tower defining TR that $\underline{TR}(-;X;p)$ also rises connectivity by l. We may loose one when taking the fixed points under the F-action to get $\underline{TC}(-;X;p)$. ∎

When restricted to simplicial rings, there is a cute alternative to this proof using the fact that any functor from simplicial rings to n-connected spectra which preserves equivalences and may be computed degreewise, sends $k \geq 0$-connected maps to $n+k+1$-connected maps.

Lemma 3.2.6 *Assume $\mathcal{A}$ is a cube of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras such that $\underline{T}(\mathcal{A};X)$ is id-cartesian. Then $\underline{TR}(\mathcal{A};X;p)$ is also id-cartesian.*

Proof: Choose a big k such that $THH(\mathcal{A}, S^k \wedge X)$ is $id + k$ cartesian Let $\mathcal{X}$ be any m subcube and $\mathcal{X}^l = sd_{p^l}\mathcal{X}^{C_{p^l}}$. We are done if we can show that $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{R}} \mathcal{X}^l$ is $(m+k)$-cartesian. Let Z^l be the iterated fiber of $\mathcal{X}^l$ (i.e., the homotopy fiber of $\mathcal{X}^l_\emptyset \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S \neq \emptyset}} \mathcal{X}^l_S$). Then $Z = \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{R}} Z^l$ is the iterated fiber of $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{R}} \mathcal{X}^l$, and we must show that Z is $m+k-1$ connected. Since homotopy orbits preserve connectivity and homotopy colimits, $THH(\mathcal{A}, S^k \wedge X)_{hC_{p^l}}$ must be $id + k$ cartesian, and so the fiber of $R\colon \mathcal{X}^l \to \mathcal{X}^{l-1}$ is $id + k$ cartesian. Hence $\pi_q Z^l \to \pi_q Z^{l-1}$ is surjective for $q = m + k$ and an isomorphism for $q < m + k$, and so $\pi_q Z \cong \lim_{\overleftarrow{R}}{}^{(1)} \pi_{q+1} Z^l \times \lim_{\overleftarrow{R}} \pi_q Z^l = 0$ for $q < m + k$. ∎

Proposition 3.2.7 *Assume $\mathcal{A}$ is a cube of* $\mathbf{S}$*-algebras such that $\underline{T}(\mathcal{A}; X)$ is id-cartesian. Then $\underline{TC}(\mathcal{A}; X; p)$ is $id - 1$ cartesian.*

Proof: This follows from the lemma, plus the interpretation of $\underline{TC}(-;p) \simeq \underline{TR}(-;p)^{hF}$ as a homotopy pullback. ∎

When applying this to the canonical resolution of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras by $H\mathbf{Z}$-algebras of III.3.1.9, we get the result saying essentially that TC is determined by its value on simplicial rings:

Theorem 3.2.8 *Let A be an* $\mathbf{S}$*-algebra and X a space. Let $S \mapsto (A)_S$ be the cubical diagram of III.3.1.9. Then*

$$\underline{TC}(A; X; p) \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S \neq \emptyset}} \underline{TC}(\mathcal{A}_S; X; p)$$ ☺

3.2.9 The Frobenius maps

The reason the map F, given by the inclusion of fixed points, is now often called the *Frobenius map*, is that Hesselholt and Madsen [111] have shown that if A is a commutative ring, then $\pi_0 TR(A;p)$ is isomorphic to the p-typical Witt vectors $W(A) = W(A;p)$, and that the F-map corresponds to the Frobenius map.

Even better, they prove that there is an isomorphism

$$\pi_0 THH(A)^{C_{p^n}} \cong W_n(A)$$

where $W_n(A)$, is the ring of truncated p-typical Witt vectors, i.e., it is A^n as set, but with addition and multiplication defined by requiring that the “ghost map”

$$w\colon W_n(A) \to A^n, \qquad (a_0, \dots, a_{n-1}) \mapsto (w_0, \dots, w_{n-1})$$

where

$$w_i = a_0^{p^i} + p a_1^{p^{i-1}} + \dots + p^i a_i$$

is a ring map. If A has no p-torsion the ghost map is injective.

The map

$$R\colon W_{n+1}(A) \to W_n(A) \qquad (a_0, \dots, a_n) \mapsto (a_0, \dots, a_{n-1}),$$

is called the restriction and the isomorphisms

$$\pi_0 THH(A)^{C_{p^n}} \cong W_n(A)$$

respect the restriction maps.

On the Witt vectors the Frobenius and Verschiebung are given by

$$F, V : W(A) \to W(A)$$

$$F(w_0, w_1, \dots) = (w_1, w_2, \dots)$$
$$V(a_0, a_1, \dots) = (0, a_0, a_1, \dots).$$

satisfying the relations

$$x \cdot V(y) = V(F(x) \cdot y), \quad FV = p, \quad VF = \text{multiplication by} V(1)$$

(if A is an $\mathbf{F}_p$-alg. then $V(1) = p$).

3.2.10 $TC(-;p)$ of spherical group rings

Let G be a simplicial group. We briefly sketch the argument of [19] giving $TC(\mathbf{S}[G];p)$ (see also [207]). Recall from corollary 1.5.3 that

$$|THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|^{C_{p^n}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \prod_{j=0}^{n} |THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|_{hC_{p^j}},$$

and that the restriction map corresponds to the projection

$$\prod_{j=0}^{n} |THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|_{hC_{p^j}} \to \prod_{j=0}^{n-1} |THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|_{hC_{p^j}}.$$

What is the inclusion of fixed point map $|THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|^{C_{p^n}} \subseteq |THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|^{C_{p^{n-1}}}$ in this factorization? Write T as shorthand for $|THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|$, and consider the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & T_{hC_p} \vee T \arrow[d] \arrow[dr, "\mathrm{proj}"] & \\
T_{hC_p} \arrow[r] \arrow[dr, "\mathrm{trf}"'] & T^{C_p} \arrow[r, shift left, "R"] \arrow[d, "F"] & T \arrow[l, shift left, "S"] \\
 & T &
\end{tikzcd}$$

where S is the section of R defined in the proof of lemma 1.5.1.

The trf in the diagram above is the composite (in the homotopy category)

$$T_{hC_p} = (E\mathbf{S^1}_+ \wedge T)_{C_p} \simeq (E\mathbf{S^1}_+ \wedge T)^{C_p} \xrightarrow{F} E\mathbf{S^1}_+ \wedge T \simeq T$$

and is called the *transfer*. Generally we will let the transfer be any (natural) map in the stable homotopy category making

$$\begin{tikzcd}
T_{hC_{p^n}} \simeq \arrow[d, "\mathrm{trf}"'] & (E\mathbf{S^1}_+ \wedge T)^{C_{p^n}} \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "F"'] & T^{C_{p^n}} \arrow[d, "F"'] \\
T_{hC_{p^{n-1}}} \simeq & (E\mathbf{S^1}_+ \wedge T)^{C_{p^{n-1}}} \arrow[r] & T^{C_{p^{n-1}}}
\end{tikzcd}$$

commute.

Hence, the inclusion of fixed points $F\colon T^{C_{p^{n+1}}} \to T^{C_{p^n}}$ acts as $FS\colon T \to T$ on the zero'th factor, and as trf: $T_{hC_{p^n}} \to T_{hC_{p^{n-1}}}$ on the others:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
T \arrow[d, "FS"'] & \times & T_{hC_p} \arrow[dll, "\mathrm{trf}"] & \times & T_{hC_{p^2}} \arrow[dll, "\mathrm{trf}"] \\
T \arrow[d, "FS"'] & \times & T_{hC_p} \arrow[dll, "\mathrm{trf}"] & & \\
T & & & &
\end{tikzcd}$$

Using this, we see that

$$TC(\mathbf{S}[G];p) = \underset{\overleftarrow{\mathcal{RF}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, T\langle p^n\rangle(\mathbf{S}[G]) \simeq \left(\underset{\overleftarrow{R}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, T\langle p^n\rangle(\mathbf{S}[G])\right)^{hF}$$

is equivalent to the homotopy equalizer of the map

$$\begin{tikzcd}
T \arrow[d, "FS"'] & \times & T_{hC_p} \arrow[dll, "\mathrm{trf}"] & \times & T_{hC_{p^2}} \arrow[dll, "\mathrm{trf}"] & \times & \cdots \arrow[dll, "\mathrm{trf}"] \\
T & \times & T_{hC_p} & \times & T_{hC_{p^2}} & \times & \cdots
\end{tikzcd}$$

and the identity; or equivalently, the "diagram"

$$\begin{tikzcd}
TC(\mathbf{S}[G];p) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & \underset{\overleftarrow{\mathrm{trf}}}{\operatorname{holim}} |THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|_{hC_{p^n}} \arrow[d] \\
|THH(\mathbf{S}[G])| \arrow[r, "FS-1"] & |THH(\mathbf{S}[G])|
\end{tikzcd}$$

is homotopy cartesian (in order to make sense of this, one has to have chosen models for all the maps, see e.g., [207]).

We will identify these terms more closely in VII.3

3.3 The definition and properties of TC

Note that the topological Hochschild spectrum $\underline{T}$ is stably fibrant (in the sense of A.6: it is an Ω-spectrum and each of the spaces constituting the spectrum are Kan complexes), and so the fibrant replacements (Q and $\sin|-|$) in definition 2.0.4 of homotopy fixed points are redundant. In the interest of having lean models, we write $\underline{T}^{hG}$ for the spectrum without these extra fibrant replacements (so that we actually get an honest map $\underline{T}^{hG} \to \underline{T}$, and not to some blown-up version of $\underline{T}$).

Definition 3.3.1 We define $\underline{TC}$ as the functor from **S**-algebras, or more generally $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories, to spectra obtained as the homotopy limit of

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \underline{T}(-)^{h\mathbf{S}^1} \\ & & \downarrow \\ \prod_{p \text{ prime}} \underline{TC}(-;p)^{\frown}_p & \longrightarrow & \prod_{p \text{ prime}} \underset{\overleftarrow{p^r \in \mathcal{F}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}} \underline{T}(-)^{hC_{p^r}}{}^{\frown}_p \end{array}$$

where the lower map is given by the projection onto $\mathcal{F}_p \subseteq \mathcal{RF}_p$

$$\underline{TC}(-;p) = \underset{\overleftarrow{p^r \in \mathcal{RF}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}} \underline{T}\langle p^r \rangle(-) \to \underset{\overleftarrow{p^r \in \mathcal{F}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}} \underline{T}\langle p^r \rangle(-)$$

followed by the map from the fixed points to the homotopy fixed points

$$\underline{T}\langle p^r \rangle(-) \cong \underline{T}(-)^{C_{p^r}} \to \underline{T}(-)^{hC_{p^r}}$$

(using that the map from fixed points to homotopy fixed points is compatible with inclusion of fixed points).

More useful than the definition is the characterization given by the following lemma, where $X^{\frown} = \underline{\mathcal{S}pt}(\Sigma^{-1}\mathbf{Q}/\mathbf{Z}, X) \simeq \prod_{p \text{ prime}} X^{\frown}_p$ signifies the profinite completion of the spectrum X of section A.6.6.

Lemma 3.3.2 *All the squares in*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \underline{TC}(-) & \longrightarrow & \underline{T}(-)^{h\mathbf{S}^1} & \longrightarrow & (\underline{T}(-)_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{TC}(-)^{\frown} & \longrightarrow & (\underline{T}(-)^{\frown})^{h\mathbf{S}^1} & \longrightarrow & (\underline{T}(-)^{\frown}_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1} \end{array}$$

are homotopy cartesian, where the upper left horizontal maps are given by the definition of TC, the lower is its profinite completion composed with the isomorphism $(\underline{T}(-)^{h\mathbf{S}^1})^{\frown} \cong (\underline{T}(-)^{\frown})^{h\mathbf{S}^1}$ and the right horizontal arrows are induced by rationalization.

Proof: The rightmost square is cartesian as it is an arithmetic square A.6.6.1 to which $-^{h\mathbf{S}^1}$ is applied, and the leftmost square is cartesian by the definition of TC since by lemma 2.1.1 one leg of the defining square of TC becomes an equivalence after profinite completion, and so we have an equivalence

$$\underline{TC}(-)\hat{} \cong \prod_{p \text{ prime}} \underline{TC}(-)\hat{}_p \xrightarrow{\sim} \prod_{p \text{ prime}} \underline{TC}(-;p)\hat{}_p,$$

and by the equivalence

$$\underset{\overleftarrow{p^r \in \mathcal{F}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}} \underline{T}(-)^{hC_{p^r}}\hat{}_p \longleftarrow \underline{T}(-)^{h\mathbf{S^1}}\hat{}_p.$$

∎

Corollary 3.3.3 *Let A be a simplicial ring. Then*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{TC}(A;X) & \longrightarrow & (\underline{HH}(A;X)_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{TC}(A;X)\hat{} & \longrightarrow & (\underline{HH}(A;X)\hat{}_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian.

Proof: This follows from lemma 3.3.2 by extending the square to the right with the $\mathbf{S^1}$-homotopy fixed point spectra of the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{T}(-)_{(0)} & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & \underline{HH}(-)_{(0)} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{T}(-)\hat{}_{(0)} & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & \underline{HH}(-)\hat{}_{(0)} \end{array}$$

which is cartesian by lemma IV.1.3.9 which says that the horizontal maps are equivalences.

∎

Theorem 3.3.4 *Let A be an* $\mathbf{S}$*-algebra and X a space. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be the cubical diagram of III.3.1.9. Then*

$$\underline{TC}(A;X) \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S\neq\emptyset}} \underline{TC}(\mathcal{A}_S;X).$$

Proof: By theorem 3.2.8 this is true for $TC(-;X)\hat{}$ (products and completions of spectra commute with homotopy limits). Since $\underline{T}(\mathcal{A};X)$ is *id*-cartesian, so are $\underline{T}(\mathcal{A};X)_{(0)}$ and $\underline{T}(\mathcal{A};X)\hat{}_{(0)}$, and hence

$$\underline{T}(A;X)_{(0)} \xrightarrow{\sim} \underset{\overleftarrow{S\neq\emptyset}}{\operatorname{holim}}(\underline{T}(\mathcal{A}_S;X)_{(0)})$$

and

$$\underline{T}(A;X)\hat{}_{(0)} \xrightarrow{\sim} \underset{\overleftarrow{S\neq\emptyset}}{\operatorname{holim}}(\underline{T}(\mathcal{A}_S;X)\hat{}_{(0)})$$

Since homotopy fixed points commute with homotopy limits we are done since we have proved the theorem for all the theories but TC in the outer homotopy cartesian square of lemma 3.3.2.

∎

4 The connection to cyclic homology of simplicial rings

Theorem 3.3.4 tells us that we can obtain much information about TC from our knowledge of simplicial rings. We have seen (corollary 3.3.3) that, when applied to a simplicial ring A, TC fits into the cartesian square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{TC}(A;X) & \longrightarrow & (\underline{HH}(A;X)_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{TC}(A;X)\hat{} & \longrightarrow & (\underline{HH}(A;X)\hat{}_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \end{array}$$

We can say something more about the right hand column, especially in some relative cases. As a matter of fact, it is calculated by *negative cyclic homology*, a theory which we will recall the basics about shortly.

To make the comparison to negative cyclic homology easier we first give some general results about (naïve) $\mathbf{S^1}$-spectra, and then describe spectral sequences computing the homotopy groups of the homotopy fixed and orbit spectra.

4.1 On the spectral sequences for the $\mathbb{T}$-homotopy fixed point and orbit spectra

Let $\mathbf{S^1}$ be the circle group and let X be a $\mathbf{S^1}$-spectrum. The collapse maps $|S^1|_+ \to |S^1|$ and $|S^1|_+ \to |S^0|$ give an isomorphism

$$\pi_*(\Sigma^\infty \mathbf{S^1}_+) \cong \pi_*(\Sigma^\infty S^1) \oplus \pi_*(\Sigma^\infty S^0)$$

(this isomorphism is realized after a single suspension since the topological spaces $|S^1 \wedge (S^1_+)|$ and $|S^2 \vee S^1|$ are homotopy equivalent), and let σ be the element in $\pi_1(\Sigma^\infty \mathbf{S^1}_+)$ projecting down to the identity class

$$\{|S^{n+1}| = |S^{n+1}|\} \in \pi_1(\Sigma^\infty S^1) \cong \mathbf{Z}$$

and η be the element in $\pi_1(\Sigma^\infty \mathbf{S^1}_+)$ projecting down to the stable Hopf map

$$\{|S^n| \wedge |S^3| \to |S^n| \wedge \mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^1 \cong |S^n| \wedge |S^2|\} \in \pi_1(\Sigma^\infty S^0) \cong \mathbf{Z}/2\mathbf{Z}.$$

The spectral sequences coming from the homotopy fixed point and orbit spectral sequences have interesting E^1-terms. The following is shown in [101], and for the identification of the differential, see [106, 1.4.2].

Lemma 4.1.1 *Let $\mathbf{S^1}$ be the circle group and let X be a $\mathbf{S^1}$-spectrum. The E^2-sheet of the spectral sequence for $X_{h\mathbb{T}}$, comes from an E^1-sheet with*

$$E^1_{s,t}(X_{h\mathbb{T}}) = \pi_{t-s} X, \qquad t \geq s \geq 0$$

and where the differentials

$$d^1_{s,t}\colon E^1_{s,t} = \pi_{t-s}X \to \pi_{t-s+1}X = E^1_{s-1,t}$$

are induced by the map $\sigma + s\cdot\eta\colon \pi_{t-s}X \to \pi_{t-s+1}(\mathbf{S^1}_+\wedge X)$ *composed with* $\pi_{t-(s-1)}$ *of the* $\mathbb{T}$*-action* $\mathbb{T}_+\wedge X \to X$*.*

Likewise, the E^2*-sheet of the spectral sequence for* $X^{h\mathbb{T}}$*, comes from an* E^1*-sheet with*

$$E^1_{s,t}(X^{h\mathbb{T}}) = \pi_{t-s}X, \qquad t \geq s \leq 0$$

and where the differentials are the same as for the homotopy orbit spectral sequence. ☺

The E^1-sheet for $X^{h\mathbb{T}}$ is as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\
\xleftarrow{d^1_{-2,2}} & & \pi_{2-(-2)}X & \xleftarrow{d^1_{-1,2}} & \pi_{2-(-1)}X & \xleftarrow{d^1_{0,2}} & \pi_{2-0}X \\
\xleftarrow{d^1_{-2,1}} & & \pi_{1-(-2)}X & \xleftarrow{d^1_{-1,1}} & \pi_{1-(-1)}X & \xleftarrow{d^1_{0,1}} & \pi_{1-0}X \\
\xleftarrow{d^1_{-2,0}} & & \pi_{0-(-2)}X & \xleftarrow{d^1_{-1,0}} & \pi_{0-(-1)}X & \xleftarrow{d^1_{0,0}} & \pi_{0-0}X \\
\xleftarrow{d^1_{-2,-1}} & & \pi_{-1-(-2)}X & \xleftarrow{d^1_{-1,-1}} & \pi_{-1-(-1)}X & & \\
\xleftarrow{d^1_{-2,-2}} & & \pi_{-2-(-2)}X & & & &
\end{array}$$

Note that for rational $\mathbf{S^1}$-spectra – like the ones we are talking about in connection with TC – or more generally, Eilenberg–Mac Lane $\mathbf{S^1}$-spectra, the Hopf map η is trivial, and so the differentials are simply the $\mathbf{S^1}$-action:

Corollary 4.1.2 *Let* X *be a* $\mathbf{S^1}$*-spectrum such that* $\eta\colon \pi_*X \to \pi_{*-1}X$ *is trivial, then the differential*

$$d^1_{s,t}\colon E^1_{s,t} = \pi_{t-s}X \to \pi_{t-s+1}X = E^1_{s-1,t}$$

is induced by $S^1\wedge X \subseteq S^1\wedge X \vee S^0\wedge X \simeq \mathbf{S^1}_+\wedge X \to X$ *where the latter map is the* $\mathbf{S^1}$*-action.* ☺

4.1.3 The inner life of the spectral sequence

For convenience we reconstruct the bare essentials of the spectral sequence in a pedestrian language. The filtrations come from filtrations of topological spaces, and for notational convenience, we allow ourselves to use the notation S^n also for the topological n-sphere.

There is a particularly convenient model for $E(\mathbb{T})$ given as follows. Consider S^{2n-1} as the subspace of vectors in $\mathbf{C}^n$ of length 1. $\mathbb{T} = S^1 \subset \mathbf{C}$ acts on S^{2n-1} by complex multiplication in each coordinate, and this action is (unbased) free. The inclusion $\mathbf{C}^{n-1} \subseteq \mathbf{C}^n$ into the first coordinates gives a $\mathbb{T}$-inclusion $S^{2n-3} \subseteq S^{2n-1}$. Taking the union of all S^{2n-1} as n varies we get a contractible free $\mathbb{T}$-space which we call $E(\mathbb{T})$. This space comes with a filtration, namely by the S^{2n-1}s, and this filtration is exactly the one giving rise to the above mentioned spectral sequence.

In order to analyze the spectral sequence we need to know the subquotients of the filtration, but this is easy enough: The inclusion $S^{2n-1} \subseteq S^{2n+1}$ is obtained by attaching a free $\mathbb{T}$-cell to S^{2n-1} along the action:

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathbb{T} \times S^{2n-1} \arrow[r, "id \times \text{inclusion}"] \arrow[d, "\text{action}"'] & \mathbb{T} \times D^{2n} \arrow[d] \\ S^{2n-1} \arrow[r] & S^{2n+1}, \end{tikzcd}$$

and so the quotient S^{2n+1}/S^{2n-1} is $\mathbb{T}$-isomorphic to $\mathbb{T}^1_+ \wedge S^{2n}$. The $\mathbb{T}$-isomorphism can be seen quite concretely by considering S^{2n} as $\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^n/\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^{n-1}$ (with trivial $\mathbb{T}$-action) and sending the class of $(z_0, \dots z_n)$ in S^{2n+1}/S^{2n-1} to the class of $\left(\frac{z_n}{|z_n|} \wedge [z_0, \dots z_n]\right)$ in $\mathbb{T}^1_+ \wedge \mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^n/\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^{n-1}$ (if $z_0 = 0$ this is interpreted as the base point).

The spectral sequence for $X_{h\mathbb{T}}$ comes from this filtration, and there are no convergence issues associated to this spectral sequence.

The spectral sequence for $X^{h\mathbb{T}}$ is from the point of view of [101] simply dual, but for the more pedestrian users we note that this actually makes sense even if you are very naïve about things. Using that $X^{h\mathbb{T}} = Map_*(E\mathbb{T}, X)^{\mathbb{T}}$, and $E\mathbb{T} = \varinjlim_k S^{2k+1}$ we can write $X^{h\mathbb{T}}$ as the limit

$$X^{h\mathbb{T}} \cong \varprojlim_n Map_*(S^{2n+1}_+, -)^{\mathbb{T}}$$

Recall the Bousfield–Kan spectral sequence of a tower of fibrations

$$\varprojlim_k (M^k) \twoheadrightarrow \dots \twoheadrightarrow M^{n+1} \twoheadrightarrow M^n \twoheadrightarrow M^{n-1} \twoheadrightarrow \dots M^1 \twoheadrightarrow M^0 = *.$$

Its first page is $E_1^{s,t} = \pi_{t-s} F^s$, where F^s is the fiber of M^s. The differential $d^1 \colon E_1^{s,t} \to E_1^{s+1,t}$ is given by $\pi_{t-s} F^s \to \pi_{t-s} M^s \to \pi_{t-s-1} F^{s+1}$.

This means that $F^s = Map_*(\mathbb{T}^1_+ \wedge S^{2s}, X)^{\mathbb{T}} \cong \Omega^{2s} X$, and we get that $E^1_{s,t} = \pi_{t-s} \Omega^{2s} X \cong \pi_{t+s} X$.

Strictly speaking, the Bousfield-Kan spectral sequence is set to zero outside $0 \leq s \leq t$, but in our case this restriction is not really relevant since we are going to apply the spectral sequence to (connective) $\mathbb{T}$-spectra. By reindexing, we shall think of this as a homologically indexed spectral sequence in the left half plane with

$$E^1_{s,t}(X^{h\mathbb{T}}) = \pi_{t-s} X, \qquad t \geq s \leq 0.$$

These spectral sequences fit into a bigger spectral sequence (corresponding to the Tate spectrum of [101])

$$E^1_{s,t}(\mathrm{Tate}) = \pi_{t-s}X, \qquad t \geq s$$

and there is a short exact sequence of spectral sequences

$$0 \to E^1_{s,t}(X^{h\mathbb{T}}) \to E^1_{s,t}(\mathrm{Tate}) \to E^1_{s-1,t-1}(X_{h\mathbb{T}}) \to 0$$

and the norm map induces the edge homomorphism. This has the following consequence:

Lemma 4.1.4 *Let X be an $\mathbb{T}$-spectrum. If the Tate spectral sequence converges to zero, then the norm map*

$$S^1 \wedge X_{h\mathbb{T}} \to X^{h\mathbb{T}}$$

is a stable equivalence. ☺

4.2 Cyclic homology and its relatives

Let Z be a cyclic module, i.e., a functor from Λ^o to simplicial abelian groups. Let $B\colon Z_q \to Z_{q+1}$ be Connes' operator

$$Z_q \xrightarrow{N=\sum(-1)^{qj}t^j} Z_q \xrightarrow{(-1)^q s_q} Z_{q+1} \xrightarrow{(1+(-1)^q t)} Z_{q+1}$$

satisfying $B \circ B = 0$ and $B \circ b + b \circ B = 0$ where $b = \sum(-1)^j d_j$. Due to these relations, the B-operator defines a complex

$$(\pi_* Z, B) = (\pi_0 Z \xrightarrow{B} \pi_1 Z \xrightarrow{B} \dots \xrightarrow{B} \pi_q Z \xrightarrow{B} \dots)$$

whose homology $H^{dR}_*(Z) = H_*(\pi_* Z, B)$ we call the *de Rham cohomology* of Z.

Using the b and the B, and their relations one can form bicomplexes (called (b,B)-bicomplexes, see e.g., [152, 5.1.7] for more detail) with s,t-entry Z_{t-s} connected by the bs vertically and the Bs horizontally (the relations guarantee that this becomes a bicomplex).

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & \vdots \arrow[d, "b"'] & \vdots \arrow[d, "b"'] & \\
\dots & Z_2 \arrow[l, "B"'] \arrow[d, "b"'] & Z_1 \arrow[l, "B"'] \arrow[d, "b"'] & \dots \arrow[l, "B"'] \\
\dots & Z_1 \arrow[l, "B"'] \arrow[d, "b"'] & Z_0 \arrow[l, "B"'] & \\
\dots & Z_0 \arrow[l, "B"'] & &
\end{tikzcd}$$

If you allow all $t \geq s$ you get the so-called *periodic* (b, B)*-bicomplex* $B^{per}(Z)$ (called $\mathcal{B}Z^{\mathrm{per}}$ in [152]), if you allow $t \geq s \geq 0$ you get the *positive* (b, B)*-bicomplex* $B^+(Z)$ and if you allow $t \geq s \leq 0$ you get the *negative* (b, B)*-complex* $B^-(Z)$.

If $-\infty \leq m \leq n \leq \infty$ we let $T^{m,n}Z$ be the total complex of the part of the normalized (b, B)–bicomplex which is between the mth and nth column: $T^{m,n}_q Z = \prod_{k=m}^n C^{\mathrm{norm}}_{k,q-k}(Z)$ (where C^{norm} denotes the normalized chains defined in A.2.1.4). The associated homologies $H_*(T^{-\infty,0}Z)$, $H_*(T^{-\infty,\infty}Z)$ and $H_*(T^{0,\infty}Z)$ are called *periodic*, *negative* and (simply) *cyclic* homology, and often denoted $HP_*(Z)$, $HC^-(Z)$ and $HC(Z)$. The associated short exact sequence of complexes

$$0 \to T^{-\infty,0}Z \to T^{-\infty,\infty}Z \to T^{1,\infty}Z \to 0$$

together with the isomorphism $T^{1,\infty}_q Z \cong T^{0,\infty}_{q-2} Z$ gives rise to the well-known long exact sequence

$$\dots \longrightarrow HC_{q-1}(Z) \longrightarrow HC^-_q(Z) \longrightarrow HP_q(Z) \longrightarrow HC_{q-2}(Z) \longrightarrow \dots,$$

and similarly one obtains the sequence

$$\dots \longrightarrow HC_{q-1}(Z) \xrightarrow{B} HH_q(Z) \xrightarrow{I} HC_q(Z) \xrightarrow{S} HC_{q-2}(Z) \longrightarrow \dots$$

(the given names of the maps are the traditional ones, and we will have occasion to discuss the S-map a bit further).

Notice that $T^{-\infty,n}Z = \lim_{\overleftarrow{m}} T^{m,n}Z$, and so if $\dots \twoheadrightarrow Z^{k+1} \twoheadrightarrow Z^k \twoheadrightarrow \dots$ is a sequence of surjections of cyclic modules with $Z = \lim_{\overleftarrow{k}} Z^k$, then $T^{-\infty,n}Z \cong \lim_{\overleftarrow{k}} T^{-\infty,n}Z^k$, and you have $\lim_{\leftarrow}{}^{(1)}$-$\lim_{\leftarrow}$ exact sequences, e.g.,

$$0 \to \lim_{\overleftarrow{k}}{}^{(1)} HC^-_{q+1}(Z^k) \to HC^-_q(Z) \to \lim_{\overleftarrow{k}} HC^-_q(Z^k) \to 0.$$

Also, from the description in terms of bicomplexes we see that we have a short exact sequence

$$0 \to \lim_{\overleftarrow{k}}{}^{(1)} HC_{q+1+2k}(Z) \to HP_q(Z) \to \lim_{\overleftarrow{k}} HC_{q+2k}(Z) \to 0$$

describing the periodic homology of a cyclic complex Z in terms of the cyclic homology and the S-maps connecting them.

We see that filtering $B^{\mathrm{per}}(Z)$ by columns we get a spectral sequence for $HP_*(Z)$ with E^2 term given by $H^{dR}(Z)$.

These homology theories have clear geometrical meaning in terms of orbit and fixed point spectra as is apparent from theorem 4.2.5 below.

Connes used the B-operator to define cyclic homology, and probably documented a variant of the following fact somewhere. The only available source we know is Jones [128], see also the closely related statements in [87] and [152, chap. 7]. Note that the identification between the $\mathbf{S^1}$-action and the differentials in the Tate spectral sequence follows by 4.1.2 since $|HM|_\Lambda$ is an Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum.

Lemma 4.2.1 *Let M be a cyclic abelian group. Then the Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum $|HM|_\Lambda$ is a $\mathbb{T}$-spectrum, and the $\mathbb{T}$-action and the B-maps agree on homotopy groups in the sense that the diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \pi_*M & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \pi_*|HM|_\Lambda \\ {\scriptstyle B}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle d^1}\downarrow \\ \pi_{*+1}M & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \pi_{*+1}|HM|_\Lambda \end{array}$$

commutes where the horizontal isomorphisms are the canonical isomorphisms relating the homotopy groups of simplicial abelian groups and their related Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectra, and d^1 is induced by the $\mathbb{T}$-action (and so is the differential in the spectral sequences of the homotopy orbit and fixed point spectra of $|HM|$ in lemma 4.1.1). ☺

Notice that if we filter by columns, lemma 4.2.1 says that the resulting E^1-sheet agrees with the Tate, orbit and fixed point spectrum spectral sequences of lemma 4.1.1. For the record:

Corollary 4.2.2 *Let M be a cyclic abelian group. Then $E^1(Tate)$ (resp. $E^1(|HM|_{h\mathbb{T}})$, resp. $E^1(|HM|^{h\mathbb{T}})$) equals the E^1 term of the spectral sequence given by filtering the periodic (resp. positive, resp. negative) (b,B)-bicomplex by columns.* ☺

As a matter of fact, there is a natural isomorphism between the periodic (resp. negative, resp. cyclic) homology of M and the homotopy groups of the Tate spectrum (resp. $\mathbb{T}$-fixed point spectrum, resp. $\mathbb{T}$-orbit spectrum). See [101] in general, or [152] for the cyclic homology part. We won't need all that much, but only the following fact.

Corollary 4.2.3 *Let M be a cyclic abelian group. If the periodic homology of M vanishes, then the $\mathbb{T}$-norm map $S^1\wedge|HM|_{h\mathbb{T}} \to |HM|^{\mathbb{T}}$ is a stable equivalence.*

Proof: Since the periodic homology of M vanishes, the spectral sequence obtained by filtering by columns must converge to zero. Hence by corollary 4.2.2 the Tate spectral sequence converges to zero, and we get the result from 4.1.1. ∎

4.2.4 Negative cyclic homology and fixed point spectra

The above statements say that the spectral sequences coming from the cyclic actions have E^1-sheets that are naturally isomorphic to the E^1-sheets we get by filtering the associated cyclic homology theories by columns. This is all we need to make our argument work, but it is satisfactory to know that these natural isomorphisms come from spectrum level equivalences.

By a *spectrum* M of simplicial abelian groups, we mean a sequence $\{n \mapsto M^n\}$ of simplicial abelian groups together with homomorphisms $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1]\otimes M^n \to M^{n+1}$ (according to the notion of spectra in any simplicial model category). A map $f\colon M \to N$ between spectra is, as usual, a sequence of homomorphisms $f^n\colon M^n \to N^n$ respecting the structure maps.

There is a correspondence between spectra of simplicial abelian groups and (unbounded) chain complexes given by

$$C_*^{\mathrm{spt}} M = \varinjlim_n C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(M^n)[n]$$

where the maps in the colimit are given by

$$\begin{aligned} C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(M^n)[n] &\cong (\mathbf{Z}[-1] \otimes C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(M^n))[n+1] \cong (C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1]) \otimes C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(M^n))[n+1] \\ &\xrightarrow{\sim} C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1] \otimes M^n)[n+1] \to C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(M^{n+1})[n+1] \end{aligned}$$

induced by the isomorphism $C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1] \cong \mathbf{Z}[-1]$, the shuffle map relating the tensor products of simplicial abelian groups and chain complexes and lastly the structure maps of M. A more refined approach gives rise to (suitably monoidal) Quillen equivalences between $H\mathbf{Z}$-modules, spectra of abelian groups and chain complexes, see Schwede and Shipley [214].

Theorem 4.2.5 *Let $M\colon \Lambda^o \to s\mathcal{A}b$ be a cyclic simplicial abelian group. There are natural chains of weak equivalences*

$$C_*^{spt} \sin |HM|_{h\mathbf{S^1}} \simeq T^{0,\infty} M$$

$$C_*^{spt} \sin |HM|^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \simeq T^{-\infty,0} M.$$

Proof: The first statement follows from the corresponding statement in Loday's book [152] which shows that there is a natural chain of weak equivalences between $C^{\mathrm{norm}} \sin |M|_{h\mathbf{S^1}}$ and $T^{0,\infty}M$ and the fact that $\sin |HM|_{h\mathbf{S^1}}$ is a connected Ω-spectrum.

Both statements can be proved hands on by the standard filtration on $E\mathbf{S^1}$ used in 4.1.3: Choose as your model for the contractible free $\mathbb{T}$-space $E\mathbb{T}$ in the definition of the homotopy fixed points to be the colimit of

$$|S^1| \to |S^3| \to \cdots \to |S^{2n+1}| \to \dots$$

Then we have a natural equivalence

$$\sin |HM|^{h\mathbf{S^1}}(X) \xleftarrow{\ \sim\ } \varprojlim_n (\mathbb{T} - Top_*)(|S^{2n+1}|_+, |M \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]|)$$

(this is only a natural equivalence and not an isomorphism since the definition of the homotopy fixed points of a topological spectrum involves a fibrant replacement, which is unnecessary since HM is an Ω-spectrum).

Hence we are done once we have shown that there is a natural (in n and M) chain of maps connecting

$$C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(\mathbb{T} - Top_*)(|S^{2n+1}|_+, |M|), \text{ and } T^{-n,0}M$$

inducing an isomorphism in homology in positive dimensions.

This is done by induction on n taking care to identify all maps in question. In particular, you need a refinement of the statement in lemma 4.2.1 to a statement about natural homotopies between the $\mathbb{T}$-action and the B-map. ∎

An important distinction for our purposes between homotopy orbits and fixed points is that homotopy orbits may be calculated degreewise. This is false for the homotopy fixed points.

Lemma 4.2.6 *Let X be a simplicial $\mathbf{S^1}$-spectrum. Then* $\operatorname{diag}^*(X_{h\mathbf{S^1}})$ *is naturally equivalent to* $(\operatorname{diag}^* X)_{h\mathbf{S^1}}$*. In particular, if A is a simplicial ring, then $HC(A)$ can be calculated degreewise.*

Proof: True since homotopy colimits commute, and the diagonal may be calculated as $\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{[q]\in\Delta}} X_q$. ∎

4.2.7 Derivations

The following is lifted from [87] (see also [152, 4.1]), and we skip the gory calculations. Let A be a simplicial ring. A *derivation* is a simplicial map $D\colon A \to A$ satisfying the Leibniz relation $D(ab) = D(a)b + aD(b)$. A derivation $D\colon A \to A$ induces an endomorphism of cyclic modules $L_D\colon HH(A) \to HH(A)$ by sending $a = a_0 \otimes \dots a_q \in A_p^{\otimes q+1}$ to

$$L_D(a) = \sum_{i=0}^{q} a_0 \otimes \dots a_{i-1} \otimes D(a_i) \otimes a_{i+1} \otimes \dots a_q$$

If A is a simplicial ring, let $(C_*(A), b)$ be the chain (normalized) complex associated to the bisimplicial abelian group $HH(A)$.

One then constructs maps

$$e_D\colon C_q(A) \to C_{q-1}(A), \text{ and } E_D\colon C_q(A) \to \bar{C}_{q+1}(A)$$

satisfying

Lemma 4.2.8 *Let $D\colon A \to A$ be a derivation. Then*

$$e_D b + b e_D = 0,$$

$$e_D B + B e_D + E_D b + b E_D = L_D$$

and

$$E_D B + B E_D$$

is degenerate. ☺

To be explicit, the maps are given by sending $a = a_0 \otimes \dots \otimes a_q \in A_p^{\otimes q+1}$ to

$$e_D(a) = (-1)^{q+1} D(a_q) a_0 \otimes a_1 \otimes \dots \otimes a_{q-1}$$

and

$$E_D(a) = \sum_{1 \le i \le j \le q} (-1)^{iq+1} \otimes a_i \otimes a_{i+1} \otimes \dots \otimes a_{j-1} \otimes D(a_j) \otimes a_{j+1} \otimes \dots \otimes a_q \otimes a_0 \otimes a_{i-1}$$
$$+ \text{ degenerate terms}$$

The first equation of lemma 4.2.8 is then a straightforward calculation, but the second is more intricate (see [87] or [152]).

Corollary 4.2.9 ([87]) *Let D be a derivation on a flat ring A. Then*

$$L_D S \colon HC_* A \to HC_{*-2} A$$

is the zero map.

Proof: Collecting the relations in lemma 4.2.8 we get that $(E_D+e_D)(B+b)+(B+b)(E_D+e_D) = L_D$ on the periodic complex. However, this does not respect the truncation to the positive part of the complex. Hence we shift once and get the formula $((E_D+e_D)(B+b)+(B+b)(E_D+e_D))S = L_D S$ which gives the desired result. ∎

Corollary 4.2.10 *Let $f\colon A \to B$ be a map of simplicial rings inducing a surjection $\pi_0 A \to \pi_0 B$ with nilpotent kernel. Let X be the homotopy fiber of $HH(A) \to HH(B)$. Then $HP_*(X_{(0)}) = HP_*(\widehat{X_{(0)}}) = 0$.*

Proof: By considering the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \pi_0 A & \longrightarrow & \pi_0 B \end{array}$$

we see that it is enough to prove the case where f is a surjection with nilpotent kernel and f is a surjection with connected kernel separately.

Let P be completion followed by rationalization or just rationalization. The important thing is that P is an exact functor with rational values.

The basic part of the proof, which is given in [87, II.5], is the same for the connected and the nilpotent cases. In both situations we end up by proving that the shift map S is nilpotent on the relative part, or more precisely: for every q and every $k > q$ the map

$$S^k \colon HC_{q+2k} Y \to HC_q Y$$

is zero, where Y is the homotopy fiber of $P(HH(A)) \to P(HH(B))$ (actually in this formulation we have assumed that the kernel was square zero in the nilpotent case, but we will see that this suffices for giving the proof). From this, and from the fact that periodic homology sits in a $\lim\limits_{\overleftarrow{S}}{}^{(1)}$-$\lim\limits_{\overleftarrow{S}}$ short exact sequence, we conclude the vanishing of periodic homology.

The main difference between our situation and the rational situation of [87] is that we can not assume that our rings are flat. That means that HH is not necessarily calculated by the Hochschild complex.

In the connected case, this is not a big problem, since the property of being connected is a homotopy notion, and so we can replace everything in sight by degreewise free rings and we are in business as explained in [87, IV.2.1]. Being nilpotent is not a homotopy notion, and so must be handled with a bit more care. First, by considering

$$A \to A/I^n \to A/I^{n-1} \to \cdots \to A/I^2 \to A/I = B$$

we see that it is enough to do the square zero case. Let $X \overset{\sim}{\twoheadrightarrow} B$ be a free resolution of B and consider the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A & \longrightarrow & B \end{array}.$$

Since the vertical maps are equivalences (using "properness" of simplicial rings: pullbacks of maps that are fibrations and weak equivalences – on underlying simplicial sets – are fibrations and weak equivalences), we have reduced to the case where $A \to B$ is a surjection of simplicial rings with discrete square zero kernel I and where B is free in every degree. But since cyclic homology can be calculated degreewise by lemma 4.2.6, it is enough to prove this in every degree, but since B is free in every degree it is enough to prove it when $A \to B$ is a split surjection of discrete rings with square zero kernel I. Choosing a splitting we can write $A \cong B \ltimes I$, where I is a B-bimodule with square zero multiplication. Let $J \overset{\sim}{\twoheadrightarrow} I$ be a free resolution of I as B-bimodules. Then we have an equivalence $B \ltimes J \overset{\sim}{\to} B \ltimes I$, and again since cyclic homology can be calculated degreewise we have reduced to the case $B \ltimes I \to B$ where B is free and I is a free B-bimodule.

Hence we are in the flat case with $A = B \ltimes I \to B$ with $I^2 = 0$, and can prove our result in this setting. Then the distributive law provides a decomposition of $A^{\otimes q+1} \cong (B \oplus I)^{\otimes q+1}$, and if we let F_q^k consist of the summands with k or more I-factors we get a filtration

$$0 = F^\infty = \bigcap_n F^n \subset \cdots \subset F^2 \subset F^1 \subset F^0 = HH(A)$$

(it is of finite length in each degree, in fact $F_k^n = 0$ for all $n - 1 > k$). Note that we have isomorphisms of cyclic modules $HH(B) = F^0/F^1$, $HH(A) = F^0 \cong \oplus_{k \geq 0} F^k/F^{k+1}$.

We must show that for every q and every $k > q$ the map

$$S^k \colon HC_{q+2k}(P(F^1)) \to HC_q(P(F^1))$$

is zero. Since $F_k^n = 0$ for all $n - 1 > k$ we have that $HC_q(P(F^n)) = 0$ for all $q < n - 1$. Hence it is enough to show that for every q

$$S^k \colon HC_{q+2k}(P(F^1/F^{k+1})) \to HC_q(P(F^1/F^{k+1}))$$

is zero.

Since I is square zero, the projection followed by inclusion $D \colon B \ltimes I \to I \subseteq B \ltimes I$ is a derivation $(D((b,i)\cdot(b',i')) = D((bb', bi' + ib')) = (0, bi' + ib') = (b,i)\cdot(0,i') + (0,i)\cdot(b',i') =$

$(b,i)\cdot D(b',i')+D(b,i)\cdot(b',i'))$, and it acts as multiplication by m on F^m/F^{m+1}. Therefore we have by corollary 4.2.9 (whose proof is not affected by the insertion of P) that

$$m\cdot S = L_D S = 0$$

on $HC_*(P(F^m/F^{m+1}))$.

Since $m\geq 0$ is invertible in $\mathbf{Q}$, we get that $S=0$ on $HC_*(P(F^m/F^{m+1}))$, and by induction $S^k=0$ on $HC_*(P(F^1/F^{k+1}))$.

The proof of the connected case is similar: first assume that I is *reduced* (has just one zero-simplex: this is obtained by the lemma 4.2.11 we have cited below). Use the "same" filtration as above (it no longer splits), and the fact that F^k is zero in degrees less than k since I is reduced.

Filter A by the powers of I:

$$\dots\subseteq I^m\subseteq\dots\subseteq I^1\subseteq I^0=A$$

This gives rise to a filtration of the Hochschild homology

$$0=F^\infty=\bigcap_n F^n\subset\dots\subset F^2\subset F^1\subset F^0=HH(A)$$

by defining

$$F^k_q = im\left\{\bigoplus_{\sum k_i=k}\bigotimes_{i=0}^{q} I^{k_i}\to HH(A)_q\right\}.$$

Consider the associated graded ring $gr(A)$ with $gr_kA=I^k/I^{k+1}$. Note that we have isomorphisms of cyclic modules $HH(B)=F^0/F^1$, $HH(A)=F^0$ and $HH(grA)\cong\oplus_{k\geq 0}F^k/F^{k+1}$.

We define a derivation D on grA by letting it be multiplication by k in degree k. Note that L_D respects the filtration and acts like k on F^k/F^{k+1}. The proof then proceeds as in the nilpotent case. ∎

In the above proof we used the following result of Goodwillie [89, I.1.7]:

Lemma 4.2.11 *Let $f\colon A\twoheadrightarrow B$ be a k-connected surjection of simplicial rings. Then there is a diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & \xrightarrow{\sim} & A \\ {\scriptstyle g}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle f}\downarrow \\ S & \xrightarrow{\sim} & B \end{array}$$

of simplicial rings such that the horizontal maps are equivalences, the vertical maps surjections, and the kernel of g is k-reduced (i.e., its $(k-1)$-skeleton is a point). If A and B were flat in every degree, then we may choose R and S flat too. ☺

Proposition 4.2.12 *Let $f\colon A \to B$ be a map of simplicial rings inducing a surjection $\pi_0 A \to \pi_0 B$ with nilpotent kernel, then the diagrams induced by the norm map*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S^1\wedge(THH(A)_{(0)})_{h\mathbf{S}^1} & \longrightarrow & (THH(A)_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ S^1\wedge(THH(B)_{(0)})_{h\mathbf{S}^1} & \longrightarrow & (THH(B)_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1} \end{array}$$

and

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S^1\wedge(THH(A)\hat{}_{(0)})_{h\mathbf{S}^1} & \longrightarrow & (THH(A)\hat{}_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ S^1\wedge(THH(B)\hat{}_{(0)})_{h\mathbf{S}^1} & \longrightarrow & (THH(B)\hat{}_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1} \end{array}$$

are homotopy cartesian.

Proof: Recall that by lemma IV.1.3.9 THH is equivalent to HH after rationalization, or profinite completion followed by rationalization, and so can be regarded as the Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum associated with a cyclic module.

By corollary 4.2.3, lemma A.4.1.4 and corollary 4.2.2 we are done if the corresponding periodic cyclic homology groups vanish, and this is exactly the contents of corollary 4.2.10. ∎

Remark 4.2.13 *A priori $(\underline{T}_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1}$ should not preserve connectivity, and does not do so (look e.g., at the zero-connected map $\mathbf{Z} \twoheadrightarrow \mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z}$: $(\underline{T}(\mathbf{Z})_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1}$ is not connective (its homotopy groups are the same as rational negative cyclic homoloy of the integers and so have a $\mathbf{Q}$ in in every even nonpositive dimension), but $(\underline{T}(\mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z})_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1}$ vanishes.*

However, since homotopy colimits preserve connectivity proposition 4.2.12 gives that we do have the following result.

Corollary 4.2.14 *Let $A \to B$ be a $k > 0$-connected map of simplicial rings, and let X be either ${THH_{(0)}}^{h\mathbf{S}^1}$ or ${THH\hat{}_{(0)}}^{h\mathbf{S}^1}$ considered as a functor from simplicial rings to spectra. Then $X(A) \to X(B)$ is $k+1$ connected. If $A \to B$ induces a surjection $\pi_0 A \to \pi_0 B$ with nilpotent kernel, then $X(A) \to X(B)$ is -1-connected.* ☺

4.3 Structural properties for integral TC

As remarked earlier, the importance of the results about the $\mathbf{S}^1$-homotopy fixed point spectra in section 4.2.4 above comes from the homotopy cartesian square of lemma 3.3.2

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{TC}(-) & \longrightarrow & (\underline{T}(-)_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{TC}(-)\hat{} & \longrightarrow & (\underline{T}(-)\hat{}_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1} \end{array}.$$

So combining these facts with the properties of $TC(-;p)$ exposed in section 3 we get several results on TC quite for free.

Proposition 4.3.1 *If $A \to B$ is $k > 0$-connected map of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, then $TC(A) \to TC(B)$ is $(k-1)$-connected. If $A \to B$ induces a surjection $\pi_0 A \to \pi_0 B$ with nilpotent kernel, then $TC(A) \to TC(B)$ is -1-connected.*

Proof: Consider the cubical approximation in III.3.1.9. In this construction the conditions on the maps of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras are converted to conditions on homomorphisms of simplicial rings (that the maps in the cubes are not themselves homomorphisms does not affect the argument). Hence by theorem 3.3.4 the result follows from the homotopy cartesian square, corollary 4.2.14 and lemma 3.2.5. ∎

In fact, for the same reason this applies equally well to higher dimensional cubes:

Proposition 4.3.2 *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be cubical diagram (of positive dimension) of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, and assume that all maps are k-connected and induce surjections with nilpotent kernel on π_0. Assume that we have shown that $\underline{T}(\mathcal{A})$ is $id - k$ cartesian. Then $\underline{TC}(\mathcal{A})$ is $id - k - 1$ cartesian.*

Proof: Again we do the proof for each of the vertices in the cartesian square giving TC. For $TC(-)\hat{} \simeq \prod_{p \text{ prime}} TC(-;p)\hat{}_p$ this is proposition 3.2.7. For the two other vertices we again appeal to theorem 3.3.4 which allow us to prove it only for simplicial rings, and then to proposition 4.2.12 which tells us that the cubes involving $(\underline{T}_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1}$ and $(\underline{T}\hat{}_{p(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1}$ are as (co)cartesian as the corresponding cubes, $\Sigma(\underline{HH}(\mathcal{A})_{(0)})_{h\mathbf{S}^1}$ and $\Sigma(\underline{HH}(\mathcal{A})\hat{}_{(0)})_{h\mathbf{S}^1}$. Thus we are done since homotopy colimits preserve cocartesianness. ∎

Notice that this is slightly stronger than what we used in theorem 3.3.4 to establish the approximation property for TC: There we went all the way in the limit, obtaining stable equivalences before taking the homotopy fixed point construction. Here we actually establish that the connectivity grows as expected in the tower, not just that it converges.

Proposition 4.3.3 *Topological cyclic homology of simplicial rings can locally be calculated degreewise. That is, given a map of simplicial connective $\mathbf{S}$-algebras $A \to B$ inducing a surjection with nilpotent kernel on π_0 in every degree, let $\underline{TC}^\delta(A) = \operatorname{diag}^*\{[q] \mapsto \underline{TC}(A_q)\}$ and $\underline{TC}(A) = \underline{TC}(\operatorname{diag}^* A)$. Then there is a natural equivalence between the homotopy fibers of $\underline{TC}^\delta(A) \to \underline{TC}^\delta(B)$ and $\underline{TC}(A) \to \underline{TC}(B)$.*

Proof: Consider the homotopy cartesian square of lemma 3.3.2

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\underline{TC}(-) & \longrightarrow & (\underline{T}(-)_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\underline{TC}(-)\hat{} & \longrightarrow & (\underline{T}(-)\hat{}_{(0)})^{h\mathbf{S}^1}
\end{array}.$$

If we can show that each of the three other vertices can be calculated degreewise, so can $\underline{TC}$ (homotopy pullbacks of simplicial spectra can be performed degreewise). That $\underline{TC}(-)\hat{}$ has this property follows since profinite completion of simplicial spectra can be performed degreewise, since $TC \simeq TC(-;p)$ after p-completion and since lemma 3.2.4 gave us that $TC(-;p)$ could be calculated degreewise. Hence the statement that TC can be calculated degreewise is equivalent to the statement that the last two vertices can be calculated degreewise locally.

Now, by inspection we see that $\mathrm{diag}^*A \to \mathrm{diag}^*B$ itself induces a surjection with nilpotent kernel on π_0. Let X be either $\underline{T}_{(0)}$ or $\underline{T}\hat{}_{(0)}$, and apply X to $\mathrm{diag}^*A \to \mathrm{diag}^*B$. By lemma 4.2.12 the fiber of $X(\mathrm{diag}^*A)^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \to X(\mathrm{diag}^*B)^{h\mathbf{S^1}}$ is equivalent to the fiber of $S^1 \wedge X(\mathrm{diag}^*A)_{h\mathbf{S^1}} \to S^1 \wedge X(\mathrm{diag}^*B)_{h\mathbf{S^1}}$ which can be calculated degreewise (homotopy colimits can be calculated degreewise) and since the condition on $A \to B$ was satisfied in every degree we can translate back to the homotopy $\mathbf{S^1}$-fixed points in each degree. ∎

4.3.4 Summary of results

In addition to the above results depending on the careful analysis of the homotopy fixed points of topological Hochschild homology we have the following more trivial results following from our previous analyses of $TC(-;p)$ and the general properies of homotopy fixed points:

- TC is an Ω-spectrum.
- TC can be calculated degreewise in certain relative situations
- TC preserves $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-equivalences
- TC is Morita-equivariant
- TC preserves finite products
- TC of triangular matrices give the same result as products.
- TC satisfies strict cofinality
- TC of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras “depends only” on its values on simplicial rings.

Chapter VII

The comparison of K-theory and TC

At long last we come to the comparison between algebraic K-theory and topological cyclic homology. First and foremost, we define the *cyclotomic trace* as a factorization of the Dennis trace for symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories of V.2.3.3:

Theorem 0.0.1 *Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. Then the Dennis trace map $K(A) \to THH(A)$ factors naturally as*

$$K(A) \xrightarrow{trc} TC(A) \longrightarrow THH(A).$$

This theorem is proved in section 1.1 and presupposes using proper models for all the functors, as made precise in the statement and proof of lemma 1.1.1 and permanently frozen by the definition of the cyclotomic trace 1.1.2 below when applied to the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category of finite free A-modules $\mathcal{F}_A$ of definition III.2.4.1. In the interest of readability we have used undecorated symbols for these precise models.

The Dennis trace map was originally a map from algebraic K-theory to Hochschild homology. When Connes used cyclic homology to produce an analogue of de Rham cohomology for non-commutative rings, he also indicated how the classical Chern character from algebraic K-theory to de Rham cohomology for commutative rings could, at least rationally, be obtained by a factorization of the Dennis trace map through cyclic homology. Several others, perhaps most notably Jones and Goodwillie, gave an integral factorization of the Dennis trace map through negative cyclic homology, which rationally recovered Connes earlier constructions. In an influential letter [90] to Waldhausen, Goodwillie showed how one could recover the Jones-Goodwillie Chern character to negative cyclic homology using a cyclic bar construction in conjunction with the S-construction I.2.2 which factored though actual fixed points for every finite subgroup of the natural circle action. Using methods of Illuise in [123], Bökstedt constructed the conjectured topological Hochschild homology and the factorization of the Dennis trace map through the linearization map IV.1.3.5 $THH \to HH$. Using edgewise subdivision, Bökstedt, Hsiang and Madsen factored the Dennis trace in [19] compatibly though the fixed points of topological Hochschild homology. In his ICM lecture [91], Goodwillie further indicated how to map algebraic K-theory to TC, essentially unifying the various character and trace constructions obtained previously as factorizations of the original Dennis trace map.

The reader should be aware, that even though we propose topological cyclic homology as an approximation to algebraic K-theory, there are marked differences between the two functors. This is exposed by a number of different formal properties, as well as the fact that in most cases they give radically different output.

However, the local structure is the same. We immediately get that this is the case if we use the myopic view of stabilizing (see corollary 1.2.7, which is stated for simplicial rings only, but obviously extends to all $\mathbf{S}$-algebras by denseness), but we will see that algebraic K-theory and topological cyclic homology have the same local structure even with the eyes of deformation theory.

More precisely, we prove

Theorem 0.0.2 *Let $B \to A$ be a map of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras inducing a surjection $\pi_0 B \to \pi_0 A$ with nilpotent kernel, then the square induced by the naturality of the cyclotomic trace*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(B) & \xrightarrow{trc} & TC(B) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K(B) & \xrightarrow{trc} & TC(A) \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian.

The version where the map $B \to A$ is 1-connected was proposed as a conjecture by the second author at the ICM in Kyoto 1990, [91].

The study of algebraic K-theory of nilpotent extensions has a long history. Already in [13] Bloch studies the "tangent space" of algebraic K-theory and compares it with the Käler differentials. In the 1980's there were several rational results. Soulé calculated the rational K-groups of the dual numbers of a ring of algebraic integers in [223], and Dwyer, Hsiang and Staffeldt calculated the rational homotopy groups of the homotopy fiber of $K(\mathbf{S}[G]) \to K(\mathbf{S}[\pi_0 G])$ in [62], [63] when G is a simplicial group. In the following years, many papers focused on finding the rational K-groups of $\mathbf{S}[G]$ for connected groups G, see for instance [122], [121], [39], [40], [37], and finally, in [89] the rational version of theorem 0.0.2 appears.

A variant of theorem 0.0.2 can be found in Carlson, Cohen, Goodwillie and Hsiang's paper [41], for the case $\mathbf{S}[\Omega\Sigma X_+] \to \mathbf{S}$ when X is a connected space. Since $\mathbf{S}[\Omega\Sigma X_+]$ is equivalent to the free tensor algebra over the sphere spectrum of the suspension spectrum of X, the conjecture for 1-connected maps of algebras could be deduced by taking free resolutions – only the at the time a good category of "ring spectra" and the corresponding constructions for them had not yet been invented. See also [18]. The conjecture was made for 1-connected maps of ring spectra, since there was some concern about commuting a homotopy colimit with a homotopy inverse limit as this case was at the boundary of the radius of analyticity for the constructions in terms of their calculus as functors.

The profinite statement was proved by the third author in 1993 for simplicial rings in [174], and extended to connective $\mathbf{S}$-algebras by the first author in 1995 in [54]. The full statement is somewhat more than the sum of the rational and the profinite statements, mostly concerned with technicalities as to when homotopy limits and colimits commute. Most of the fine points have already been covered in chapter VI. The proof for the full statement was found in 1996, but depended on quite a lot that was known to the experts, but not documented elsewhere in the literature. We apologize for the long delay in the publication.

We prove theorem 0.0.2 in two steps. In section 2.1 we prove the result for the case where $B \to A$ is a split surjection of simplicial rings with square zero kernel. This case is possible to attack by means of a concrete cosimplicial resolution calculating the loops of the classifying space of the kernel of $B \to A$. Some connectedness bookkeeping then gives the result. In section 2.2 we get rid of the square zero condition and the condition that $B \to A$ is split. This last point requires some delicate handling made possible by the fact that we know that in the relative situations both K-theory and TC can be calculated degreewise. Using the "denseness" of simplicial rings in $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, and the "continuity" of K and TC we are finished.

In the last section we give an overview of instances where the cyclotomic trace map has been used to prove theorems about algebraic K-theory. Apart from the original application of Bökstedt, Hsiang and Madsen to the algebraic K-theory Novikov conjecture in section 3.6, we give a brief overview in section 3.1 of Bökstedt and Madsen's setup for calculating topological cyclic homology, made concrete by three central examples. We also make some inadequate comments about the connection to the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture and the redshift conjecture in section 3.2. One of the striking structures emerging from Hesselholt and Madsen's work is the deRham–Witt complex discussed in section 3.4, which has been crucial in many situations, but most prominently appears in their calculation of the K-theory of local number fields, cited as theorem 3.3.3 below.

Several other applications are discussed, giving a picture of the rich collection of calculations of algebraic K-theory that has become available through trace methods. The reader will find them most easily by consulting the index under "K-theory of". The section ends by giving an insultingly weak presentation of the interplay with algebraic geometry. It is the nature of the choices made in the previous chapters that issues about commutative algebra have been downplayed. This is deplorable for several reasons, not the least because motivic cohomology has provided some of the most striking tools and interesting avenues for algebraic K-theory, but also because of the recent interest in the arithmetical properties of commutative ring spectra.

1 Lifting the trace and square zero extensions

The purpose of this section is twofold. First and foremost, we lift the Dennis trace map to a map to cyclic homology, and so proving theorem 0.0.1. The use of categorical input makes the checking that our construction of the cyclotomic trace is well defined fairly straightforward at the price of having ridiculously complicated models for the source and target.

Secondly, we investigate the special case where the input is a split zero extension of

S-algebras. This special case of theorem 0.0.2 and is used in its proof.

1.1 The cyclotomic trace

Lemma 1.1.1 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category. Then the Dennis trace map $ob\mathcal{C} \to THH(\mathcal{C}; S^0) \to \sin|THH(\mathcal{C}; S^0)| = \underline{T}(\mathcal{C})_0$ of section IV.2.2 factors through $\underline{TC}(\mathcal{C})_0$.*

Proof: Remember that the Dennis trace map was defined as the composite

$$ob\mathcal{C} \to \bigvee_{c \in ob\mathcal{C}} \mathcal{C}(c,c)(S^0) \to THH(\mathcal{C})_0 \to THH(\mathcal{C})$$

where the first map assign to every object its identity map, and the last map is the inclusion by degeneracies. With some care, using the simplicial replacement description of the homotopy colimit, one sees that this inclusion can be identified with the inclusion $\lim_{\overleftarrow{\Lambda^o}} THH(\mathcal{C}) \subseteq THH(\mathcal{C})$ (see lemma VI.1.1.4), and so is invariant under the circle action on $|THH(\mathcal{C})|$. In particular, the Dennis trace map yields maps $ob\mathcal{C} \to sd_r THH(\mathcal{C})^{C_r}$. To see that it commutes with the restriction maps, one chases an object $c \in ob\mathcal{C}$ through

$$ob\mathcal{C} \to sd_{rs} THH(\mathcal{C})^{C_{rs}} \xrightarrow{R} sd_r THH(\mathcal{C})^{C_r},$$

and sees that it coincides with its image under $ob\mathcal{C} \to sd_r THH(\mathcal{C})^{C_r}$. ∎

By naturality this applies equally well if we take as input any of our K-theory machines producing diagrams of $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories. In particular, if $\mathcal{C}$ is a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category we may apply the cyclotomic trace to the $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C})$-construction of V.2.1.9. The letter combination $\underline{TC}(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}))$ is supposed to signify the bispectrum $m, n \mapsto \underline{TC}(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}, w)(S^n); S^m)$. In order to have the following definition well defined, we consider K-theory as a bispectrum in the trivial way: $\Sigma^\infty ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}) = \{m, n \mapsto ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C})(S^n) \wedge S^m\}$.

Definition 1.1.2 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category. Then the *cyclotomic trace* is the lifting of the Dennis trace for symmetric monoidal $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories (definition V.2.3.3)

$$\Sigma^\infty ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}) \to \underline{TC}(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C})) \to \underline{T}(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}))$$

considered as a map of bispectra.

With this we have established theorem 0.0.1 which uses the simplified notation

$$K(A) = \Sigma^\infty ob\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{F}_A) \to \underline{TC}(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{F}_A)) = TC(A),$$

where $\mathcal{F}_A$ is the category of finitely generated free A-modules of III.2.4.1 (its objects were natural numbers and its morphisms were matrices).

That the source and target actually model algebraic K-theory and topological cyclic homology follows: for the K-theory side this is theorem V.2.2.2, and for the TC-side the proof of theorem V.2.3.7 establishes that $\underline{T}(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}))$ is naturally equivalent to $\Sigma^\infty \underline{T}(\mathcal{C})$ through a chain of equivalences that immediately lifts by lemma VI.3.1.2 and the definition VI.3.3.1 of TC to a chain of equivalences between $\underline{TC}(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}))$ and $\Sigma^\infty \underline{TC}(\mathcal{C})$. Lastly, Morita equivalence VI.3.1.2 gives that the map $\underline{TC}(\mathcal{F}_A) \leftarrow \underline{TC}(A)$ induced by the inclusion of the rank one module is an equivalence.

1.2 Split square zero extensions and the trace

Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra and P an A-bimodule. We define $A\vee P$ as in V.3.2, and recall that, for every $\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}$, we have a decomposition $V(A\vee P)(\mathbf{x})\cong\bigvee_{j\geq 0}V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})$, with

$$V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})=\bigvee_{\phi\in\Delta_m([j-1],[q])}\bigwedge_{0\leq i\leq q}F_{i,\phi}(x_i)$$

where

$$F_{i,\phi}(x)=\begin{cases}A(S^x) & \text{if } i\notin im\phi\\ P(S^x) & \text{if } i\in im\phi\end{cases}.$$

This gives an equivalence $THH(A\vee P;X)\stackrel{\sim}{\to}\prod_{j\geq 0}THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)$ of cyclic spaces, where

$$THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)_q=\underset{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in\mathcal{I}^{q+1}}}{\operatorname{holim}}\,\Omega^{\sqcup\mathbf{x}}(X\wedge V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x})).$$

In order to get a description of $TC(A\vee P)$ we investigate the effect of the restriction maps on this decomposition.

Lemma 1.2.1 *For every positive integer a the canonical map*

$$sd_aTHH(A\vee P;X)^{C_a}\xrightarrow{\sim}\prod_{j\geq 0}sd_aTHH^{(j)}(A,P;X)^{C_a}$$

is an equivalence.

The restriction maps respects this decomposition, sending $sd_aTHH^{(j)}(A,P;X)^{C_a}$ to $sd_{a/p}THH^{(j/p)}(A,P;X)^{C_{a/p}}$ (which is defined to be trivial if p does not divide j).

Proof: This follows by analysis of the proof of the fundamental cofiber sequence VI.1.4.2. Note that $X\wedge V(A\vee P)(\mathbf{x}^a)\cong\bigvee_{j\geq 0}(X\wedge V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}^a))$ is a C_a-isomorphism, and furthermore that

$$V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}^a)^{C_a}\cong\begin{cases}V^{(j/a)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}) & \text{if } j\equiv 0\mod a\\ * & \text{otherwise}\end{cases}.$$

We have maps of fibrations (we have deleted "(A,P)" from the V's to fit the linewidth)

$$\begin{array}{ccc}Map_*(S^{\sqcup\mathbf{x}^a},X\wedge\bigvee_{j\geq 0}V^{(j)}(\mathbf{x}^a))^{C_a} & \longrightarrow & Map_*(\bigcup_{1\neq b|a}(S^{\sqcup\mathbf{x}^a})^{C_b},X\wedge\bigvee_{j\geq 0}V^{(j)}(\mathbf{x}^a))^{C_a}\\ \downarrow & & \downarrow\\ \prod_{j\geq 0}Map_*(S^{\sqcup\mathbf{x}^a},X\wedge V^{(j)}(\mathbf{x}^a))^{C_a} & \longrightarrow & \prod_{j\geq 0}Map_*((\bigcup_{1\neq b|a}(S^{\sqcup\mathbf{x}^a})^{C_b},X\wedge V^{(j)}(\mathbf{x}^a))^{C_a}\end{array}$$

whose map of homotopy homotopy fibers is, by the proof of Proposition VI.1.4.2, after stabilization given by

$$\begin{array}{c}\underset{\overrightarrow{k}}{\operatorname{holim}}\,\Omega^kMap_*(S^{\sqcup\mathbf{x}^a},S^k\wedge X\wedge\bigvee_{j\geq 0}V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}^a))_{hC_a}\\ \downarrow\\ \prod_{j\geq 0}\underset{\overrightarrow{k}}{\operatorname{holim}}\,\Omega^kMap_*(S^{\sqcup\mathbf{x}^a},S^k\wedge X\wedge V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}^{ap}))_{hC_a}\end{array}.$$

The map of homotopy fibers factors through

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{k}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \Omega^k(\prod_{j\geq 0} Map_*(S^{\sqcup \mathbf{x}^a}, S^k \wedge X \wedge V^{(j)}(A,P)(\mathbf{x}^a)))_{hC_a}$$

By Blakers–Massey, the map into this space is an equivalence, and also the map out of this space (virtually exchange the product for a wedge to tunnel it through the orbits, which is possible as the connectivity goes to infinity with j).

Hence

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
sd_a THH(A\vee P;X)^{C_a} & \xrightarrow{R} & \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{1\neq b|a}} sd_{a/b}THH(A\vee P;X)^{C_{a/b}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\prod_{j\geq 0} sd_a THH^{(j)}(A\vee P;X)^{C_a} & \xrightarrow{R} & \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{1\neq b|a}} \prod_{j\geq 0} sd_{a/b}THH^{(j/b)}(A\vee P;X)^{C_{a/b}}
\end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian. Since the map in question is an equivalence when $a = 1$, this homotopy cartesian square gives the proposition by induction over a. ∎

Proposition 1.2.2 *Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, P an $n-1$ connected A-bimodule, X an $m-1$ connected space and p a prime. Then the projection to the terminal pieces of the R-towers*

$$\begin{aligned}
TR(A\vee P;X;p) &\to TR(A;X;p)\times \prod_{r\geq 0} \underset{\overleftarrow{p^t\in\mathcal{R}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, sd_{p^{t+r}}THH^{(p^t)}(A,P;X)^{C_{p^{t+r}}} \\
&\to TR(A;X;p)\times \prod_{r\geq 0} sd_{p^r}THH^{(1)}(A,P;X)^{C_{p^r}}
\end{aligned}$$

is $2n+m$-connected.

Proof: Consider the restriction map

$$sd_{ap}THH^{(jp)}(A,P;X)^{C_{ap}} \xrightarrow{R} sd_a THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)^{C_a},$$

where a is a power of p. The homotopy fiber is

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{k}}{\operatorname{holim}}(\Omega^k sd_{ap}THH^{(jp)}(A,P;S^k\wedge X)_{hC_{ap}})$$

and is by assumption $jpn+m-1$ connected. If p does not divide j, we get an equivalence

$$sd_a THH^{(j)}(A,P;X)^{C_a} \simeq \underset{\overrightarrow{k}}{\operatorname{holim}}(\Omega^k sd_a THH^{(j)}(A,P;S^k\wedge X)_{hC_a}) \tag{1.2.3}$$

(since the target of the restriction map is contractible), and since homotopy orbits preserve connectivity, this is $jn+m-1$ connected. So, consider

$$sd_{p^r}THH^{(lp^s)}(A,P;X)^{C_{p^r}}$$

where p does not divide l. If $s \geq r$ the R maps will compose to an $lp^{s-r+1}n+m$ connected map to $THH^{(lp^{s-r})}(A,P;X)$, which is $lp^{s-r}n+m-1$ connected. If $r \geq s$ the R-maps will compose to an $lpn+m$ connected map to $sd_{p^{r-s}}THH^{(l)}(A,P;X)^{C_{p^{r-s}}} \simeq \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{k}} \Omega^k(sd_{p^{r-s}}THH^{(l)}(A,P;S^k \wedge X))_{hC_{p^{r-s}}}$, which is $ln+m-1$ connected.

Hence

$$\underset{\overleftarrow{p^t \in \mathcal{R}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, sd_{p^{r+t}}THH^{(lp^{s+t})}(A,P;X)^{C_{p^{r+t}}}$$

will be $max(ln+m-1, lp^{s-r}n+m-1)$ connected. This means that there is a $2n+m$ connected map (first discarding all terms with $l \geq 2$, then projecting down to the terminal term in each tower)

$$\begin{aligned} TR(A \vee P;X;p) &\to TR(A;X;p) \times \prod_{r \geq 0} \underset{\overleftarrow{p^t \in \mathcal{R}_p}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, sd_{p^{t+r}}THH^{(p^t)}(A,P;X)^{C_{p^{t+r}}} \\ &\to TR(A;X;p) \times \prod_{r \geq 0} sd_{p^r}THH^{(1)}(A,P;X)^{C_{p^r}} \end{aligned}$$

(the last map is $pn+m \geq 2n+m$ connected as all maps in the homotopy limit on the first line are $pn+m$ connected). ∎

Lemma 1.2.4 *Let A, P, X and a be as before. Then the map of fixed points into homotopy fixed points*

$$|THH^{(1)}(A,P;X)|^{C_a} \longrightarrow |THH^{(1)}(A,P;X)|^{hC_a}$$

is an equivalence.

Proof: Recall from lemma V.3.3.2 that $j_*\underline{T}(A,P;X) \to \underline{T}^{(1)}(A,P;X)$ is a map of cyclic spectra and an equivalence, where j_* is the left adjoint to the forgetful functor from cyclic to simplicial sets. From lemma VI.1.1.3 we have a $\mathbb{T}$-equivariant homeomorphism $|j_*\underline{T}(A,P;X)| \cong \mathbb{T}_+ \wedge |\underline{T}(A,P;X)|$, and for a finite subgroup G of the circle, we have a G-equivariant homeomorphism (since $\mathbb{T}$ is a free G-space) $\mathbb{T} \cong G \wedge_G \mathbb{T} \cong G \wedge \mathbb{T}/G$. Consider the commuting diagram (in the homotopy category)

$$\begin{tikzcd} {|T^{(1)}(A,P,X)|_{hG}} \arrow[r, "\simeq"] & {|T^{(1)}(A,P,X)|^G} \arrow[r] & {|T^{(1)}(A,P,X)^{hG}} \\ {|j_*T(A,P;X)|_{hG}} \arrow[u, "\simeq"] \arrow[rr, "\text{norm}", "\simeq"'] & & {|j_*T(A,P;X)|^{hG}} \arrow[u, "\simeq"'] \end{tikzcd}$$

where the first upper horizontal map is the map from the homotopy fiber of the restriction map as in the proof of proposition 1.2.2 and the second is the map from the fixed point to the homotopy fixed point spectra. The top composite is then homotopic to the norm of section VI.2.2. Once we have shown that the marked arrows are weak equivalences we are done.

By proposition VI.2.2.5, the G-norm map for the G-free spectrum $|j_*T(A,P;X)|$ is an equivalence, so the bottom arrow is an equivalence. Since homotopy orbits and homotopy fixed points preserve naïve G-equivalences, the two vertical maps in the diagram are equivalences as well. The map $|T^{(1)}(A,P,X)|_{hG} \to |T^{(1)}(A,P,X)|^G$ is an equivalence as shown in 1.2.3 in the proof of proposition 1.2.2. Hence the second map $|T^{(1)}(A,P,X)|^G \to |T^{(1)}(A,P,X)^{hG}$ is an equivalence, as claimed. ∎

Collecting the information so far, and recalling from lemma V.3.3.2 that $\underline{T}^{(1)}(A,P;X) \leftarrow j_*\underline{T}(A,P;X) \to S^1_+\wedge\underline{T}(A,P;X)$ are equivalences, where j_* is the free cyclic functor, we get

Lemma 1.2.5 *There is a $2n+m$ connected map*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{TC}(A\vee P;X;p) & \longrightarrow & \underline{TC}(A;X;p)\times \underset{\overleftarrow{p^r\in\mathcal{F}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}|\underline{T}^{(1)}(A,P;X)|^{hC_{p^r}} \\ & & \uparrow\simeq \\ & & \underline{TC}(A;X;p)\times \underset{\overleftarrow{p^r\in\mathcal{F}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}|j_*\underline{T}(A,P;X)|^{hC_{p^r}} \end{array},$$

Proof: Take $-^{h\langle F\rangle}$ of the TR expression, and insert lemma 1.2.4 to get connectivity of the horizontal map. ∎

Theorem 1.2.6 (Hesselholt) *Let A, P, X and p be as above. The "composite"*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \widetilde{\underline{TC}}(A\vee P;X;p) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\tilde{T}}(A\vee P;X) & \longleftarrow & j_*\underline{T}(A,P;X) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & S^1_+\wedge\underline{T}(A,P;X) \\ & & & & & & \downarrow \\ & & & & & & S^1\wedge\underline{T}(A,P;X) \end{array}$$

is $2n+m-1$ connected after p completion.

Proof: In a $2n+m-1$ range, the "composite" looks like

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \underset{\overleftarrow{p^r\in\mathcal{F}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}(j_*\underline{T}(A,P;X))^{hC_{p^r}} & \longrightarrow & Qj_*\underline{T}(A,P;X) & \xleftarrow{\sim} & j_*\underline{T}(A,P;X) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & S^1_+\wedge\underline{T}(A,P;X) \\ & & & & & & \downarrow \\ & & & & & & S^1\wedge\underline{T}(A,P;X) \end{array}$$

but the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \underset{\overleftarrow{p^r\in\mathcal{F}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}(j_*\underline{T}(A,P;X))^{hC_{p^r}} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \underset{\overleftarrow{p^r\in\mathcal{F}_p}}{\mathrm{holim}}(S^1_+\wedge\underline{T}(A,P;X))^{hC_{p^r}} & \longleftarrow & (S^1_+\wedge\underline{T}(A,P;X))^{hS^1} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \simeq\downarrow \\ Qj_*\underline{T}(A,P;X) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & Q(S^1_+\wedge\underline{T}(A,P;X)) & \longrightarrow & Q(S^1\wedge\underline{T}(A,P;X)) \end{array}$$

gives the result as the left hand maps are the equivalence from lemma VI.1.1.2 and the upper right hand map is an equivalence after p-completion by lemma 2.1.1. The right hand vertical map is an equivalence by corollary VI.2.2.3. ∎

Corollary 1.2.7 *Let A be a simplicial ring and P a simplicial A-bimodule. The trace induces an equivalence*

$$D_1K(A\ltimes -)(P)\to D_1TC(A\ltimes -)(P).$$

Proof: Comparing proposition V.3.4.3 and theorem 1.2.6, we see that the map of differentials $D_1\mathbf{K}(A\ltimes -)(P)\to D_1\mathbf{TC}(A\ltimes -;p)(P)$ is an equivalence after p-completion, and so by the definition of topological cyclic homology, the cyclotomic trace induces an equivalence on differentials after profinite completion. Hence we must study what happens for the other corners in the definition of $\underline{TC}$. But here we may replace the S^1 homotopy fixed points by the negative cyclic homology, and as we are talking about square zero extensions, even by shifted cyclic homology. But as cyclic homology respects connectivity we see that the horizontal maps in

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
(j_*\underline{T}(A,P;X)_{(0)})^{hS^1} & \longrightarrow & (\tilde{\underline{T}}(A\ltimes P;X)_{(0)})^{hS^1}\\
\downarrow & & \downarrow\\
(j_*\underline{T}(A,P;X)^{\widehat{}}_{(0)})^{hS^1} & \longrightarrow & (\tilde{\underline{T}}(A\ltimes P;X)^{\widehat{}}_{(0)})^{hS^1}
\end{array}$$

are both $2k+m$ connected if P is $k-1$ connected and X is $m-1$ connected.

Summing up: both maps going right to left in

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\tilde{\mathbf{K}}(A\ltimes P) & \longrightarrow & \widetilde{\mathbf{TC}}(A\ltimes P) & \longleftarrow & (j_*\mathbf{T}(A,P))^{hS^1} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & (S^1_+\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P))^{hS^1}\\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow\\
 & & \tilde{\mathbf{T}}(A\ltimes P) & \longleftarrow & Qj_*\mathbf{T}(A,P) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & Q(S^1_+\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P))\\
 & & & & \simeq\uparrow & & \simeq\uparrow\\
 & & & & j_*\mathbf{T}(A,P) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & S^1_+\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P)\\
 & & & & & & \downarrow\\
 & & & & & & S^1\wedge\mathbf{T}(A,P)
\end{array}$$

are $2k$-connected, and all composites from top row to the bottom are $2k$-connected. ∎

2 Goodwillie's ICM'90 conjecture

2.1 The split algebraic case

Recall that if A is a ring and P is an A-bimodule we write $A\ltimes P$ for the ring whose underlying abelian group is $A\oplus P$ and whose multiplication is defined by $(a_1,p_1)\cdot(a_2,p_2)=(a_1a_2,a_1p_2+p_1a_2)$. Then the projection $A\ltimes P\to A$ is a surjection of rings whose kernel is a the square zero ideal which we identify with P.

Definition 2.1.1 For A a simplicial ring and P an A-bimodule, let $\mathbf{F}_A P$ be the iterated homotopy fiber (A.7.0.3) of

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{K}(A \ltimes P) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{TC}(A \ltimes P) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{K}(A) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{TC}(A) \end{array}$$

regarded as a functor from A-bimodules to spectra.

Theorem 2.1.2 *Let A be a simplicial ring and P an A-bimodule. Then $\mathbf{F}_A P$ is contractible.*

That is, the diagram in definition 2.1.1 is homotopy cartesian.

The proof of this theorem will occupy the rest of this section. In the next, we will show how the theorem extends to $\mathbf{S}$-algebras to prove theorem 0.0.2.

Proof: In view of the propositions III.1.4.2 and VI.4.3.3, we may, without loss of generality, assume that A is discrete. We know by corollary 1.2.7 (or more precisely, by the diagram that ends the proof of corollary 1.2.7) that if P is k-connected, then $\mathbf{F}_A P$ is $2k$-connected; so for general P it is natural to study $\Omega^k \mathbf{F}_A(B^k P)$ (whose connectivity goes to infinity with k), or more precisely, the map

$$\mathbf{F}_A P \xrightarrow{\eta_P^k} \Omega^k \mathbf{F}_A(B^k P).$$

The map $\eta \colon \mathbf{F}_A P \to \Omega \mathbf{F}_A BP$ appears naturally as the map of fibers of $\mathbf{F}_A$ applied to the homotopy (co)cartesian square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & BP \end{array}$$

Since $\mathbf{F}_A$ does not à priori preserve homotopy cartesian diagrams, we don't know that η_P is an equivalence, but we will show that η_P is as connected as $\mathbf{F}_A(BP)$ is. This means that $\mathbf{F}_A P$ is as connected as $\Omega \mathbf{F}_A(BP)$, and by induction $\mathbf{F}_A P$ must be arbitrarily connected, and we are done.

To see this, model $P \simeq \Omega BP$ by means of the cosimplicial object

$$\omega(*, BP, *) = \{[q] \mapsto \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1_q, BP) \cong BP^{\times q}\}.$$

More precisely, the weak equivalence $\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{[q]\in\Delta^o}} S^1_q \xrightarrow{\sim} S^1$ of A.6.1.2 induces a weak equivalence

$$\Omega B = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1, \sin|B|) \xrightarrow{\sim} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{[q]\in\Delta^o}} S^1_q, \sin|B|) \cong \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{[q]\in\Delta}} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1_q, B) = \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{[q]\in\Delta}} \omega(*, B, *).$$

This is a special case of the *cobar construction* of coalgebras and cobimodules, dual to Hochschild homology. We don't need the full generality of this construction and write out the slight extension we need explicitly. For simplicity, write B for BP and E for EP and $p\colon E \to B$ for the projection. Then $\omega(*, B, E)$ is the cosimplicial simplicial A-bimodule which in codegree q is $\omega(*, B, E)_q = B^{\times q} \times E$, with coface maps

$$d^i(b_1, \ldots, b_q, e) = \begin{cases} (0, b_1, \ldots, b_q, e) & \text{if } i = 0 \\ (b_1, \ldots, b_{i-1}, b_i, b_i, b_{i+1}, \ldots, b_q, e) & \text{if } 0 < i \leq q \\ (b_1, \ldots, b_q, pe, e) & \text{if } i = q+1 \end{cases},$$

and codegeneracy maps by removing appropriate factors.

We notice that the map $\omega(*, B, *) \to \omega(*, B, E)$ is a pointwise equivalence of cosimplicial spaces, and so induces an equivalence on total spaces, or rather on homotopy limits:

$$\underset{\overleftarrow{[q]\in\Delta}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \omega(*, B, *) \xrightarrow{\sim} \underset{\overleftarrow{[q]\in\Delta}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \omega(*, B, E).$$

However, the latter model for ΩBP has the benefit of coming with an augmentation $P = \omega(*, *, P) \to \omega(*, B, E)$ modelling the equivalence $P \xrightarrow{\sim} \Omega BP$.

Letting Δ' be the category of finite and nonempty sets of positive integers and order preserving maps, we see that the usual Δ is a skeleton, and so $\omega(*, B, E)$ extends to Δ'. The augmentation $P \to \omega(*, B, E)$ allows us furthermore to remove the restriction that the sets be nonempty. Let $\mathcal{P} \subseteq \Delta' \cup \emptyset$ be the category of finite sets of positive integers and inclusions.

Fix, for the moment, $n \geq 0$, and let $\mathcal{P}\mathbf{n} \subseteq \mathcal{P}$ be the full subcategory of subsets of $\mathbf{n} = \{1, \ldots, n\}$. Let $S \mapsto \mathcal{P}^n_S$ be the composite

$$\mathcal{P}\mathbf{n} \xrightarrow{\subset} \Delta' \cup \emptyset \xrightarrow{\omega(*,B,E)\cup P} \text{simplicial } A\text{-bimodules.}$$

Notice that this becomes a strongly cocartesian n-cube (in the sense that all subsquares are homotopy pushouts of simplicial abelian groups, c.f. A.7.2).

For any n-cube $\mathcal{X}$ and $1 \leq j \leq n$, consider the subcube you get by restricting $\mathcal{X}$ to $\mathcal{P}\mathbf{j} \subseteq \mathcal{P}\mathbf{n}$. For instance $\mathcal{X}|\mathcal{P}\emptyset$ is the object $\mathcal{X}_\emptyset$, $\mathcal{X}|\mathcal{P}\mathbf{1}$ is the map $\mathcal{X}_{\{1\}} \to \mathcal{X}_\emptyset$, and $\mathcal{X}|\mathcal{P}\mathbf{2}$ is the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{X}_{\{1\}} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{X}_\emptyset \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ \mathcal{X}_{\{2\}} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{X}_{\{1,2\}} \end{array}.$$

Let F_j be the iterated fiber of $\mathcal{X}|\mathcal{P}\mathbf{j}$, and consider the resulting sequence

$$F_n \to F_{n-1} \to \cdots \to F_1 \to F_0 = \mathcal{X}_\emptyset.$$

This is nothing more than a specific choice of path for computing the iterated homotopy fiber (A.7.0.3).

Let $\overline{\mathcal{P}\mathbf{j}} = \{S \in \mathcal{P}\mathbf{j} | j \in S\} \subseteq \mathcal{P}\mathbf{n}$ (the set of all subsets of $\{1, \ldots, j\}$ that actually contain j; for instance $\overline{\mathcal{P}\mathbf{2}} = \{\{2\} \subseteq \{1,2\}\}$), and notice that $\mathcal{X}|\mathcal{P}\mathbf{j}$ can be viewed as a map

$$\mathcal{X}|\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{j-1}) \to \mathcal{X}|\overline{\mathcal{P}\mathbf{j}}$$

of $j-1$-cubes. Hence, if we define $\Phi_1 = \mathcal{X}_{\{1\}}$ and Φ_j for $1 < j \leq n$ as the iterated fiber of $\mathcal{X}|\overline{\mathcal{P}\mathbf{j}}$, we get fiber sequences

$$F_j \to F_{j-1} \to \Phi_j$$

for all $1 \leq j \leq n$

In the case $\mathcal{X} = \mathbf{F}_A\mathcal{P}^n$ we get $F_1 \xrightarrow{\sim} F_0 = \mathbf{F}_A P$ and $\Phi_2 \simeq \mathrm{hofib}\{* \simeq F_A(E) \to F_A(B)\} \simeq \Omega\mathbf{F}_A BP$. Theorem 2.1.2 follows from the claim that F_2 is as connected as $\Omega\mathbf{F}_A BP$ is. This will again follow if we know this to be true for the Φ_is and for F_{n+1}.

We first consider the question for the Φ_js. Note that the maps in $\overline{\mathcal{P}\mathbf{j}}$ always preserve j. Translated to Δ, for all $0 < l < j$, it has all the inclusions $d^i \colon [l] \to [l+1]$ but the one omitting $l+1$. This leaves some room for a change of base isomorphism of j-cubes $\mathcal{P}^n|\overline{\mathcal{P}\mathbf{j}} \cong \mathcal{Q}^j$ given by sending d^i to δ^i which omits the $i+1$st coordinate, and is the identity on the vertices of cardinality ≤ 1. Here we have used that the cubes are strongly (co)cartesian. The important outcome is that $\mathcal{Q}^j$ can be constructed iteratively by taking products with BP (no diagonals).

Thus $\Phi_j \cong$ iterated fiber$\mathbf{F}_A\mathcal{Q}^j$, which can be analyzed as follows. Let $P_0, \ldots P_n$ be A-bimodules, and define

$$\mathbf{F}_A(P_0; P_1 \ldots, P_j)$$

inductively by letting $\mathbf{F}_A(P_0)$ be as before, and setting

$$\mathbf{F}_A(P_0; P_1, \ldots, P_j) = \mathrm{hofib}\{\mathbf{F}_A(P_0; P_1, \ldots, P_{j-1}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{F}_A(P_0 \times P_j; P_1, \ldots, P_{j-1})\}$$

We see that

$$\mathbf{F}_A(*; BP, \ldots, BP) \simeq \mathbf{F}_A(EP; BP, \ldots, BP) \simeq \Phi_j.$$

Now, assume that we know that $\mathbf{F}_A(*; BP) \simeq \Omega\mathbf{F}_A BP$ is m-connected for all A and P.

We will show that $\Phi_j \simeq \mathbf{F}_A(*; BP, \ldots, BP)$ is also m-connected. This will follow from the more general statement, that if all the P_i are 1-reduced (their zero-skeleta are trivial), then $\mathbf{F}_A(-; P_1, \ldots, P_j)$ is m-connected. For $j = 1$ this is immediate as

$$\mathbf{F}_A(P_0; P_1) = fiber\{\mathbf{F}_A(P_0) \to \mathbf{F}_A(P_0 \times P_1)\} \simeq \Omega\mathbf{F}_{A \ltimes P_0}(P_1)\}$$

is m-connected by assumption. So assume inductively that $\mathbf{F}_A(-; P_1, \ldots, P_{j-1})$ is m-connected. In particular $\mathbf{F}_A(P_0; P_1, \ldots, P_{j-1})$ and $\mathbf{F}_A(P_0 \times (P_j)_q; P_1, \ldots, P_{j-1})$ are m-connected, and using that $\mathbf{F}_A(-)$ may be calculated degreewise we see that

$$\mathbf{F}_A(P_0; P_1, \ldots, (P_j)_q) \text{ is } \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } q = 0 \\ m-1\text{-connected} & \text{if } q > 0 \end{cases}$$

and hence the conclusion follows.

We are left with showing that the iterated fiber ("F_{n+1}") of $\mathbf{F}_A\mathcal{P}^n$ is as highly connected as we need. In fact, we will show that $\mathbf{F}_A\mathcal{P}^n$ is $(n-3)$-cartesian, and so choosing n large enough we are done. In order to prove this – and so to prove the triviality of $\mathbf{F}_AP$ – it is enough to prove the lemmas 2.1.3 and 2.1.4 below. ∎

Lemma 2.1.3 *The n-cube $K(A \ltimes \mathcal{P}^n)$ is n-cartesian.*

Proof: Follows from lemma I.2.5.8 with $k = 0$. ∎

Lemma 2.1.4 *The n-cube $TC(A \ltimes \mathcal{P}^n)$ is $n-3$ cartesian.*

Proof: By proposition VII.4.3.2 with $k = -2$, this follows from the corresponding statement about topological Hochschild homology. This is proved in lemma 2.1.7 below. ∎

For each $0 \leq i \leq n$, let P_i be an A-bimodule, and let $\underline{T}(A; P_0, \dots, P_n) = \{k \mapsto \underline{T}(A; P_0, \dots, P_n; S^k)\}$ be the n-reduced simplicial spectrum given by

$$[q] \mapsto \underset{\overrightarrow{\mathbf{x}\in I^{q+1}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \Omega^{\sqcup\mathbf{x}}(S^k \wedge \bigvee_{\phi\in\Delta_m([n],[q])} \bigwedge_{0\leq i\leq q} F^j \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}S^{x_i})$$

for $q \geq n$, where $\Delta_m([n],[q]) \subseteq \Delta([n],[q])$ is the set of *injective* and order preserving functions $\phi\colon [n] \to [q]$, and where $F^j = A$ if $j \notin im\phi$ and $F^j = P_{\phi^{-1}(j)}$ otherwise. The simplicial operations are the ordinary Hochschild ones, where the Ps multiply trivially. This is a functor from simplicial A-bimodules to spectra, and restricted to each factor it preserves homotopy cartesian diagrams. We let $\underline{T}^{(n+1)}(A, P) = \underline{T}(A; P, \dots, P)$ be the composite with the diagonal. We see that this agrees with our earlier definition.

Lemma 2.1.5 *Let $\mathcal{M}$ be a strongly (co)cartesian S-cube of simplicial A-bimodules. Then $\underline{T}^{(n)}(A, \mathcal{M})$ is cartesian if $|S| > n$.*

Proof: We define a new S-cube $\mathcal{Z}$ as follows. If $T \subseteq S$, let $S_T \subseteq \mathcal{P}S$ be the full subcategory with objects U containing T and with $|S - U| \leq 1$, let

$$\mathcal{Z}_T = \underset{\overleftarrow{U_1\in S_T}}{\operatorname{holim}} \dots \underset{\overleftarrow{U_n\in S_T}}{\operatorname{holim}} \underline{T}(A, \{\mathcal{M}_{U_i}\}).$$

As $\mathcal{M}$ is strongly cartesian $\mathcal{M}|S_T$ is cartesian, and so the map $\underline{T}^{(n)}(A, \mathcal{M}_T) \to \mathcal{Z}_T$ is an equivalence for each T. The homotopy limits may be collected to be over $S_T^{\times n}$ which may be written as $\cap_{s\in T}\mathcal{A}_s$ where $\mathcal{A}_s$ is the full subcategory of $\mathcal{A} = S_\emptyset^{\times n}$ such that s is in every factor. As $|S| > n$ the $\mathcal{A}_s$ cover $\mathcal{A}$ as in the hypothesis of [93, lemma 1.9], and so $\mathcal{Z}$ is cartesian. ∎

Lemma 2.1.6 *If P is $(k-1)$-connected, then*

$$\underline{T}(A \ltimes P) \xleftarrow{\sim} \bigvee_{0\leq j<\infty} \underline{T}^{(j)}(A, P) \longrightarrow \bigvee_{0\leq j<n} \underline{T}^{(j)}(A, P)$$

is $(n(k+1)-1)$-connected.

Proof: In view of the equivalence $HA \vee HP \xrightarrow{\sim} H(A \ltimes P)$ corollary VI.3.2.2 gives that

$$\underline{T}(A \ltimes P) \xleftarrow{\sim} \bigvee_{0 \le j < \infty} \underline{T}^{(j)}(A, P).$$

Since P is $(k-1)$-connected each simplicial dimensions contains smash of j copies of P, we get that

$$\underline{T}^{(j)}(A,P)_q \text{ is } \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } q < j-1 \\ kj-1 \text{ connected} & \text{if } q \ge j-1 \end{cases}$$

and so $\underline{T}^{(j)}(A, P)$ is $j-1+kj-1 = (k+1)j-2$ connected. ∎

Lemma 2.1.7 *$\underline{T}(A \ltimes \mathcal{P}^n)$ is $id-2$ cartesian.*

Proof: Consider

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{T}(A \ltimes P) & \xrightarrow{a} & \prod_{0 \le j < n} \underline{T}^{(j)}(A, P) \\ {\scriptstyle d}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle b}\downarrow \\ \underset{\overleftarrow{S \neq \emptyset}}{\operatorname{holim}} \underline{T}(A \ltimes \mathcal{P}^n_S) & \xrightarrow{c} & \underset{\overleftarrow{S \neq \emptyset}}{\operatorname{holim}} \prod_{0 \le j < n} \underline{T}^{(j)}(A, \mathcal{P}^n_S) \end{array}$$

By lemma 2.1.6, the map a is $(n-1)$-connected. By lemma 2.1.5 $\underline{T}^{(j)}(A, -)$ is n-excisive for $j < n$, and so

$$\bigvee_{0 \le j < n} \underline{T}^{(j)}(A, P) \xrightarrow{\sim} \bigvee_{0 \le j < n} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S \neq \emptyset}} \underline{T}^{(j)}(A, \mathcal{P}^n_S).$$

Since the map from finite wedges to products of spectra is a stable equivalence, this implies that b is an equivalence.

Again, by lemma 2.1.6

$$\underline{T}(A \ltimes \mathcal{P}^n_S) \xrightarrow{a} \bigvee_{0 \le j < n} \underline{T}^{(j)}(A, \mathcal{P}^n_S)$$

is $(2n-1)$-connected for $S \neq \emptyset$, with fiber, say $\mathcal{F}_S$, $(2n-2)$-connected. The fiber of c equals $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S \neq \emptyset}} \mathcal{F}_S$, and must then be $2n-2-n+1 = n-1$ connected (an n-cube consisting of l-connected spaces must have $(l-n)$-connected iterated fiber: by induction). Hence c is n-connected.

This means that d must be $(n-2)$-connected. Likewise for all subcubes (some are id-cartesian). ∎

2.2 The general case

In this section we will finally prove theorem 0.0.2:

Theorem 2.2.1 *Let $B \to A$ be a map of connective* **S***-algebras inducing a surjection $\pi_0 B \to \pi_0 A$ with nilpotent kernel, then the square induced by the naturality of the cyclotomic trace*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(B) & \longrightarrow & TC(B) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K(A) & \longrightarrow & TC(A) \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian.

Following the procedure of [89] we first prove it in the case $B \to A$ is a map of simplicial ring, and then use the density argument to extend it to **S**-algebras.

We start up with some consequences of the split square zero case.

Lemma 2.2.2 *Let $f\colon B \to A$ be a simplicial ring map such that each f_q is an epimorphism with nilpotent kernel. Then*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(B) & \longrightarrow & TC(B) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K(A) & \longrightarrow & TC(A) \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian.

Proof: Let $I = \ker(f)$. As we may calculate the K-theory and TC of a simplicial radical extension degreewise (III.1.4.2 and VII4.3.3), the statement will follow if for each q we can prove it for the map $f_q\colon B_q \to A_q$. That is, we may assume that B and A are discrete, and that $I = \ker(f)$ satisfies $I^n = 0$. Note that each of the maps

$$B = B/I^n \to B/I^{n-1} \to \dots B/I^2 \to B/I = A$$

are square zero extensions, so it will be enough to show the lemma when $I^2 = 0$.

Let $F \overset{\sim}{\twoheadrightarrow} A$ be a free resolution of A, and consider the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & F \\ \simeq\downarrow & & \simeq\downarrow \\ B & \xrightarrow{f} & A \end{array}.$$

Using, again, that we may calculate the K-theory and TC of a simplicial radical extension degreewise, the result will follow for $P \to F$ (and hence for f) if we can prove the statement for $P_q \to F_q$ for each q. Since the ring F_q is free, the surjection $P_q \to F_q$ must be a split square zero extension, for which the theorem is guaranteed by 2.1.2. ∎

Lemma 2.2.3 *Let $f\colon B \to A$ be a 1-connected epimorphism of simplicial rings, then*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(B) & \longrightarrow & TC(B) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K(A) & \longrightarrow & TC(A) \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian.

Proof: Note that if $R \to S$ is a k-connected map of simplicial rings, then $K(R) \to K(S)$ and $\mathbf{TC}(R) \to \mathbf{TC}(S)$ will be (at least) $(k-1)$-connected. We will clearly be done if we can show that any $k \geq 1$ connected map $f \colon B \to A$ has a diagram of the following sort

$$\begin{tikzcd} B \arrow[d, "f"] & B' \arrow[l, "\simeq"'] \arrow[d] \arrow[dr, "g"] & \\ & & C \arrow[dl, "h"] \\ A & A' \arrow[l, "\simeq"] & \end{tikzcd}$$

where g is a $(k+1)$-connected epimorphism and h is a square zero extension. The horizontal maps are simply the replacement of I by a k-reduced ideal $I' \subseteq B'$ described in [89, I.1.7]. We set g to be the projection $B' \to B'/(I')^2 = C$. We have a short exact sequence of simplicial abelian groups

$$0 \longrightarrow \ker(m) \longrightarrow I' \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} I' \xrightarrow{m} (I')^2 \longrightarrow 0\cdot$$

As I' is k-reduced, so is $\ker(m)$, and $I' \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} I'$ is $(2k-1)$-connected, and accordingly $\ker(g) = (I')^2$ must be at least k-connected. ∎

Proposition 2.2.4 *Let $f \colon B \to A$ be a map of simplicial rings inducing a surjection $\pi_0 B \to \pi_0 A$ with nilpotent kernel, then*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(B) & \longrightarrow & TC(B) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K(A) & \longrightarrow & TC(A) \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian.

Proof: Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{f} & A \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \pi_0 B & \xrightarrow{\pi_0 f} & \pi_0 A \end{array}$$

The proposition will follow for f if it is true for the three other maps. This follows for the vertical maps by lemma 2.2.3, and for $\pi_0 f$ by lemma 2.2.2. ∎

Proof: [Proof of theorem 2.2.1] As in the preceding proof, it is enough to consider the maps $A \to \pi_0 A$. Consider the resolution $S \mapsto A_S$ of III.3.1.9. We know that for every $S \in ob\mathcal{P}$, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(A_S) & \longrightarrow & TC(A_S) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K(\pi_0 A) & \longrightarrow & TC(\pi_0 A) \end{array}$$

is cartesian, and furthermore, by theorem III.3.2.2 and theorem VII.3.3.4, that

$$K(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} \underset{\overleftarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}-\emptyset}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, K(A_S)$$

and

$$TC(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} \underset{\overleftarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}-\emptyset}}{\mathrm{holim}}\, TC(A_S),$$

and the result follows. ∎

3 Some hard calculations and applications

In this section we give a short presentation of the many calculations and structural results about topological cyclic homology. The calculations are the result of the Herculean efforts of first and foremost Ib Madsen, Marcel Bökstedt, Lars Hesselholt, John Rognes and Christian Ausoni, but many more have played an active and important rôle.

We refer away most details to the original sources, which in most cases are very carefully written, but explain enough so that the general idea behind the strategies might be possible to grasp. Also, we will freely use the most convenient technology, deviating sharply from our general aim of being fairly self contained. We hope the reader will follow up the references for notions and theories that are not covered elsewhere in these notes.

3.1 General framework for calculating $TC(A;p)$

In their tour de force [20], Bökstedt and Madsen give a general procedure for calculating topological cyclic homology, which has been followed in next to all calculations to date. We give a very brief account of the procedure, exposing the results at the various stages for the prime field $\mathbf{F}_p$, for the integers $\mathbf{Z}$ and for the p-complete Adams summand ℓ of complex K-theory with homotopy groups $\pi_*(\ell) = \mathbf{Z}_p[v_1]$ with v_1 in degree $2p-2$. The Adams summand can most conveniently be realized as an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra by setting $\ell = K(k)_p$ [194], where $k = \cup_{n>0}\mathbf{F}_{g^n} \subset \bar{\mathbf{F}}_p$ where g is a topological generator of the p-adic units (or equivalently, g is an integer generating the units in $\mathbf{Z}/p^2$). These three examples ($\mathbf{F}_p$, $\mathbf{Z}$ and ℓ) together give rise to a tantalizing picture which we hope will whet the reader's interest in the underlying sources for these calculations.

For simplicity, we will fix an odd prime p. We leave the case of the "macho prime" 2 to the reader/the references, with a few exceptions.

We use the notation

$$P(x_1, x_2, \dots) = \mathbf{F}_p[x_1, x_2, \dots]$$

for the polynomial algebra and

$$E(x_1, x_2, \dots) = \mathbf{F}_p[x_1, x_2, \dots]/(x_i^2)$$

for the exterior algebra on a set of generators $x_1, x_2, \dots$, and we write $|x|$ for the degree of an element x.

If X is a spectrum, we write $H_*(X) = \pi_*(H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge X)$ for the mod p spectrum homology. Let $\mathcal{A}_* = H_*(H\mathbf{F}_p) = \pi_*(H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p)$ be the dual Steenrod algebra. Using that

$$\begin{aligned}\pi_*(H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p) &\cong \pi_*((H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p) \wedge_{H\mathbf{F}_p} (H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p)) \\ &\cong \pi_*(H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p) \otimes_{\mathbf{F}_p} \pi_*(H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p)\end{aligned}$$

we get that $\mathcal{A}_*$ is a graded commutative Hopf algebra: the algebra structure is inherited by the fact that $H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p$ is an $H\mathbf{F}_p$-algebra, the comultiplication $\mathcal{A}_* \to \mathcal{A}_* \otimes_{\mathbf{F}_p} \mathcal{A}_*$ is given by the unit $\mathbf{S} \to H\mathbf{F}_p$ via (the homomorphism of homotopy groups induced by the map)

$$H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p \cong H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge \mathbf{S} \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p \to H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p,$$

the counit $\mathcal{A}_* \to \mathbf{F}_p$ by multiplication $H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p \to H\mathbf{F}_p$, and conjugation $\chi\colon \mathcal{A}_* \to \mathcal{A}_*$ given by reversing the order of the $H\mathbf{F}_p$-factors.

For $p > 2$ Milnor [179] shows that as an algebra

$$\mathcal{A}_* = \pi_*(H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p) = P(\xi_k | k > 0) \otimes E(\tau_k | k \geq 0), \qquad |\xi_k| = 2p^k - 2, |\tau_k| = 2p^k - 1.$$

With the convention $\xi_0 = 1$, the coproduct $\psi\colon \mathcal{A}_* \to \mathcal{A}_* \otimes \mathcal{A}_*$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta(\xi_k) &= \sum_{i+j=k} \xi_i^{p^j} \otimes \xi_j \\ \Delta(\tau_k) &= \tau_k \otimes 1 + \sum_{i+j=k} \xi_i^{p^j} \otimes \tau_j,\end{aligned}$$

the unit and counit are isomorphisms in degree 0 and the conjugation is given recursively by

$$\begin{aligned}\chi(\xi_0) &= 1 \\ \sum_{i+j=k} \xi_i^{p^j} \chi(\xi_j) &= 0 \text{ for } n > 0 \\ \tau_k + \sum_{i+j=k} \xi_i^{p^j} \chi(\tau_j) &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

Many formulas are easier to formulate using the conjugate of Milnor's generators, and we write $\bar{\xi}_i = \chi(\xi_i)$ and $\bar{\tau}_i = \chi(\tau_i)$.

If X is a spectrum, then the spectrum homology $H_*(X) = \pi_*(H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge X)$ is a comodule over the dual Steenrod algebra with coaction $\Delta\colon H_*(X) \to \mathcal{A}_* \otimes_{\mathbf{F}_p} H_*(X)$ induced by the map $H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge X \cong H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge \mathbf{S} \wedge X \to H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge X \cong (H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge H\mathbf{F}_p) \wedge_{H\mathbf{F}_p} (H\mathbf{F}_p \wedge X)$. Recall that an element x in an $\mathcal{A}_*$-comodule M is $\mathcal{A}_*$-comodule *primitive* if $\Delta(x) = 1 \otimes x$. Note that if $M = \mathcal{A}_* \otimes_{\mathbf{F}_p} V$ for some $\mathbf{F}_p$-vector space V, then the primitive elements are all of the form $1 \otimes v$ with $v \in V$.

Let $V(0) = \mathbf{S}/p$ be the cofiber of the map $p\colon \mathbf{S} \to \mathbf{S}$ given by multiplication by p. The mod p homotopy group of a spectrum X is the graded group $V(0)_*(X) = \pi_*(V(0) \wedge X)$, and is often (confusingly) denoted $\pi_*(X; \mathbf{F}_p)$. Note that we get a long exact sequence

$$\dots \longrightarrow \pi_* X \xrightarrow{p} \pi_* X \longrightarrow V(0)_*(X) \longrightarrow \pi_{*-1}(X) \longrightarrow \dots.$$

We identify $H_* V(0) = V(0)_* H\mathbf{F}_p = E(\tau_0)$ as an $\mathcal{A}_*$-comodule subalgebra of $\mathcal{A}_*$.

3.1.1 Commutative S-algebras vs. Γ-spaces

It is an unfortunate fact that the category of Γ-spaces, although modelling all connective spectra and connective ring spectra, does not support a good theory for E_∞-ring spectra (see Lawson [145]). This means that in order to exploit the extra structure on topological Hochschild homology in the commutative case, one must base the theory on alternative frameworks, such as symmetric spectra [120] where the E_∞-ring spectra are modelled by the strictly commutative **S**-algebras (see [166] for a comparison between the differet alternatives). This poses no real difficulty if we restrict ourselves to the connective case (and allowing some fibrant replacements that were conveniently unnecessary in the Γ-space case, see also [219] and [220] for the non-connective situation), since all the constructions are based on the associated simplicial functors evaluate on spheres. In the following we will hence tacitly refer to this framework when we talk about commutative **S**-algebras.

Recall that if A is a E_∞-ring spectrum, its homology supports the so-called Dyer-Lashof operations, see [36, III.1.1]

$$Q^k\colon H_*(A) \to H_{*+2k(p-1)}(A)$$

coming from certain classes in $H_*(S^{tp}_{h\Sigma_p})$. Explicitly, represent a class in $H_t(A)$ by a map $f\colon S^t \to H\mathbf{F}_p{\wedge}A$ (or really a fibrant replacement thereof), consider the composite

$$(S^t\wedge\ldots\wedge S^t)_{h\Sigma_p} \to ((H\mathbf{F}_p\wedge A)\wedge_{H\mathbf{F}_p}\ldots\wedge_{H\mathbf{F}_p}(H\mathbf{F}_p\wedge A))_{h\Sigma_p} \to H\mathbf{F}_p\wedge A,$$

giving a map $H_*((S^t\wedge\ldots\wedge S^t)_{h\Sigma_p}) \to H_*(A)$. These operations satisfy the Cartan formulas, Adem relations and Nishida relations [36]. For $p > 2$, and $x \in H_t(A)$, then $Q^k(x) = 0$ for $k < 2t$ and $Q^{2t}(x) = x^p$. For $A = H\mathbf{F}_p$, we have the Dyer-Lashof operations on $\mathcal{A}_*$, with $Q^{p^k}(\bar\xi_k) = \bar\xi_{k+1}$ and $Q^{p^k}(\bar\tau_k) = \bar\tau_{k+1}$.

That the cyclotomic trace is multiplicative for discrete rings is shown in the appendix of [81]. The more general situation follows by the methods of [56] or [210], and a proper reference will hopefully soon appear.

3.1.2 The Bökstedt spectral sequence

Given an **S**-algebra A, $H\mathbf{F}_p\wedge\underline{T}(A) \simeq \underline{HH}^{\mathbf{F}_p}(\tilde{\mathbf{F}}_p[A])$. This can be realized as a bisimplicial $\mathbf{F}_p$-vector space. The resulting spectral sequence is called the Bökstedt spectral sequence, and takes the form

$$E^2_{**} = HH_*(H_*(A)) \Rightarrow H_*(\underline{T}(A)).$$

This is an $\mathcal{A}_*$-comodule spectral sequence. If A is commutative, this has more structure: Angeltveit and Rognes [5, 4.2] prove that it is an augmented commutative $\mathcal{A}_*$-comodule $H_*(A)$-algebra spectral sequence.

The suspension map $\sigma\colon S^1\wedge A \to S^1_+\wedge A \to \underline{T}(A)$ (where the fist map is induced by the stable splitting of $S^0 \to S^1_+ \to S^1$ VII.4.1) corresponds to the usual suspension in Hochschild homology in the sense that if $x \in H_*A$, then the class $\sigma x \in H_*(\underline{T}(A))$ is represented by $1\otimes x$ in the normalized chain complex calculating $HH^{\mathbf{F}_p}_*(H_*(A))$.

There are important extensions in the Bökstedt spectral sequence. Most notably, in the case where A is commutative we have extensions given by the Dyer-Lashof operations

$$Q^k(\sigma x) = \sigma(Q^k x),$$

see [22, 2.9] or [5, 5.9].

The calculations below are due to Bökstedt (unpublished) and to McClure and Staffeldt [176].

Theorem 3.1.3 *There are isomorphisms of $\mathcal{A}_*$-algebras*

1. $H_*(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)) = \mathcal{A}_* \otimes P(\sigma\bar{\tau}_0)$,
2. $H_*(\underline{T}(\mathbf{Z})) = H_*(H\mathbf{Z}) \otimes E(\sigma\bar{\xi}_1) \otimes P(\sigma\bar{\tau}_1)$,
3. $H_*(\underline{T}(\ell)) = H_*(\ell) \otimes E(\sigma\bar{\xi}_1, \sigma\bar{\xi}_2) \otimes P(\sigma\bar{\tau}_2)$

Here $H_*(H\mathbf{Z})$ (resp. $H_*(\ell)$) is the $\mathcal{A}_*$-comodule subalgebra of $\mathcal{A}_*$ generated by all the $\bar{\xi}_i$ and all the $\bar{\tau}_j$ but $\bar{\tau}_0$ (resp. all but $\bar{\tau}_0$ and $\bar{\tau}_1$). In fact, the second isomorphism in the theorem above is as $H_*(H\mathbf{Z})$ algebras, and the third as $H_*(\ell)$-algebras.

McClure and Staffeldt [176] also calculate $H_*(\underline{T}(A))$ when A is complex cobordism spectrum MU and the Brown-Peterson spectrum BP.

For the first two cases, the mod-p-homotopy now follows by taking the $\mathcal{A}_*$-comodule primitives, but in the third case McClure and Staffeldt needed to enlist the help of the entire Adams spectral sequence and the answer gets rather complicated. For the sake of exposition, we therefore follow Ausoni and Rognes by giving its $V(1)$-homotopy, where $V(1)$ is the Smith-Toda spectrum given as the cofiber of a periodic self map $v_1\colon \Sigma^{2p-2}V(0) \to V(0)$ (note that $V(1)_*(\ell) = V(0)_*(H\mathbf{Z}) = \mathbf{F}_p$, and we identify $H_*(V(1)) = E(\tau_0, \tau_1)$ as an $\mathcal{A}_*$-comodule subalgebra of $\mathcal{A}_*$):

Corollary 3.1.4 *There are algebra isomorphisms*

1. $\pi_*(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)) = P(\mu_0)$,
2. $V(0)_*(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{Z})) = E(\lambda_1) \otimes P(\mu_1)$
3. $V(1)_*(\underline{T}(\ell)) = E(\lambda_1, \lambda_2) \otimes P(\mu_2)$

with $|\mu_i| = 2^i$ and $|\lambda_i| = 2^i - 1$.

Here μ_i corresponds to $1 \otimes \sigma\bar{\tau}_i + \tau_0 \otimes \sigma\bar{\xi}_i \in H_*(V(i)) \otimes H_*(\underline{T}(B)) \cong H_*(V(i) \wedge \underline{T}(B))$ and λ_i to $1 \otimes \sigma\bar{\xi}_i$.

3.1.5 Calculating the homotopy fixed points

In order to calculate the fixed point spectra of topological Hochschild homology, one compares the fundamental cofibration sequence VII.1.4.2 with a similar sequence involving the homotopy fixed point and the Tate spectrum. We now give a brief sketch the procedure.

Let G be a finite group, and consider the homotopy cofiber sequence

$$EG_+ \to S^0 \to \widetilde{EG}.$$

Thus, $\widetilde{EG}$ is a contractible space with G-action, and its fixed points satisfy $\widetilde{EG}^H \simeq S^0$ for all nontrivial subgroups $H \subseteq G$. When G is a subgroup of the circle, we can choose explicit representatives, with $EG = S(\mathbf{C}^\infty)$ the unit circle in $\mathbf{C}^\infty = \lim_{\to} \mathbf{C}^n$ and $EG_+ \to S^0$ modelled by the inclusion $S(\mathbf{C}^\infty)_+ \subseteq D(\mathbf{C}^\infty)_+$ into the unit disc, whose quotient $\widetilde{EG}$ is equal to $S^{\mathbf{C}^\infty}$, the one-point compactification of $\mathbf{C}^\infty$. When H is a nontrivial finite subgroup of the circle, we see that the only H-fixed points in $S^{\mathbf{C}^\infty}$ are 0 and ∞.

In what follows we take the notion of "G-spectra" not in the naïve sense used in the main body of the text, but rather as "genuine G-spectra" indexed on a complete universe of G-representations, see e.g., [167], [165] or [70]. The homotopy category of G-spectra in this sense has a very rich structure. In particular, one should note the presence of transfers $X^H \to X^G$ for inclusions $H \subseteq G$ of finite groups making $H \mapsto \pi_* X^H$ a so-called Mackey functor (the inclusion of fixed points making up the other half of the structure). For our applications to topological Hochschild homology, these transfers provide the Verschiebung maps considered in connection with the de Rham–Witt complex in 3.4 and which is apparent in the Witt-vector descriptions of the homotopy groups of TC and algebraic K-theory (see e.g., VI.0.4, 3.7.2 and VI.3.2.9). The intimacy between the actual fixed points used in the definition of $TC(-;p)$ and the homotopy-notions discussed here comes through the fact that topological Hochschild homology is a cyclotomic spectrum, see 3.1.9 below.

If X is a G-spectrum let the homotopy orbit spectrum be defined as $X_{hG} = EG_+ \wedge_G X$, the homotopy fixed point spectrum as $X^{hG} = Map_*(EG_+, X)^G$ and the *Tate spectrum* as $X^{tG} = [\widetilde{EG} \wedge Map_*(EG_+, X)]^G$. Consider the cofibration sequence of spectra [101]

$$X_{hG} \to X^{hG} \to X^{tG}$$

obtained by applying $[- \wedge Map_*(EG_+, X)]^G$ to the cofiber sequence $EG_+ \to S^0 \to \widetilde{EG}$ under the equivalence $[EG_+ \wedge Map_*(EG_+, X)]^G \simeq X_{hG}$. The map $X_{hG} \to X^{hG}$ may be identified with the norm map of VI.2.2.4.

Tate cohomology of a discrete group G is defined as follows: consider $\mathbf{Z}[G]$-projective resolutions of $\mathbf{Z}$

$$\cdots \leftarrow P_{-2} \leftarrow P_{-1} \leftarrow \mathbf{Z} \leftarrow 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 0 \leftarrow \mathbf{Z} \leftarrow P_0 \leftarrow P_1 \leftarrow \dots,$$

splice these together to form the "complete" resolution

$$\cdots \leftarrow P_{-2} \leftarrow P_{-1} \leftarrow P_0 \leftarrow P_1 \leftarrow \dots,$$

and apply $Hom_{\mathbf{Z}[G]}(-, M)$ for some $\mathbf{Z}[G]$-module M. Tate cohomology $\hat{H}^*(G; M)$ of G with coefficients in M is then the homology of the resulting chain complex.

The skeleton filtration for EG gives spectral sequences for the homotopy orbit and fixed point spectra, and splicing these together to the Greenlees filtration [100] for $\widetilde{EG}$ gives a spectral sequence for the Tate spectrum. For details the reader may consult [113, section 4], where they treat the comparison with the classical case and the multiplicative structure. The filtration leads to a conditionally convergent upper half plane spectral sequence

$$\hat{E}^2_{s,t}(X^{tG}) = \hat{H}^{-s}(G; \pi_t X) \Rightarrow \pi_{s+t}(X^{tG}).$$

The inclusion of the non-positive columns gives a map of spectral sequences (which is an surjection on $E^r_{s,t}$-terms for $s \leq 0$) from the spectral sequence

$$E^2_{s,t}(X^{hG}) = H^{-s}(G; \pi_t X) \Rightarrow \pi_{s+t}(X^{hG})$$

calculating the homotopy of the homotopy fixed point spectrum. On the abutment this map is induced by the map $X^{hG} \to X^{tG}$.

Likewise, associated to the boundary map $X^{tG} \to \Sigma X_{hG}$, we have a map of spectral sequences $\hat{E}^2_{s+1,t}(X^{tG}) \to E^2_{s,t}(X_{hG}) = H_s(G; \pi_t X)$ to the spectral sequence converging to $\pi_{s+t}(X^{hG})$. This map is injective for $s \geq 0$ and $r \geq 2$.

The interrelationship between these spectral sequences is described in close detail in [20, Section 2], and in particular they give the highly useful description of elements in the kernel of $E^\infty_{-s,t}(X^{hG}) \to \hat{E}^\infty_{-s,t}(X^{tG})$: if α is in this kernel (for $s \geq 0$), then there exists an $r > s$ such that α is hit by the rth differential of an element $\beta \in \hat{E}^r_{r-s,t+r-1}(X^{tG}) \subseteq E^r_{r-s-1,t-r-1}(X_{hG})$, with β surviving to $E^\infty_{r-s-1,t-r-1}(X_{hG})$, and such that the image of β is sent to α under the norm map $X_{hG} \to X^{hG}$.

If X is a ring spectrum, then $E^r(X^{hG}) \to \hat{E}^r(X^{tG})$ is a map of algebra spectral sequences (in particular, the differentials are derivations).

3.1.6 The C_p-Tate spectral sequence for THH

Consider the cyclic group $C = C_m$. We identify $\mathbf{Z}[C]$ with $\mathbf{Z}[t]/t^m - 1$ and see that

$$\mathbf{Z}[C] \xleftarrow{1-t} \mathbf{Z}[C] \xleftarrow{1+t+\cdots+t^{m-1}} \mathbf{Z}[C] \xleftarrow{1-t} \dots$$

is a free $\mathbf{Z}[C]$-resolution of $\mathbf{Z}$. If M is a trivial C-module, this becomes, after applying $Hom_{\mathbf{Z}[C]}(-, M)$,

$$M \xrightarrow{0} M \xrightarrow{m} M \xrightarrow{0} \xrightarrow{m} \dots,$$

and so the cohomology $H^k(C, M)$ is M if $k = 0$, ${}_mM = \ker\{m\colon M \to M\}$ if k is odd and M/mM if k is even and positive. In particular, if multiplication by m is trivial, then the cohomology is M in all degrees.

If m is a power of p and R is a graded commutative $\mathbf{F}_p$-algebra (considered as a C-module with trivial C-action), then the Tate homology is

$$\hat{H}^{-*}(C; R) = E(u) \otimes P(t, t^{-1}) \otimes R$$

with u in dimension -1 and t in dimension -2.

Hence, we may identify the E^2-terms of the spectral sequences for calculating the appropriate groups of the Tate spectra from corollary 3.1.4 (recall that the C-action on the homotopy groups are trivial since the C action is a restriction of the $\mathbb{T}$-action):

Corollary 3.1.7 *Let $C = C_{p^n}$. There are strongly convergent upper half plane spectral sequences*

1. $\hat{E}^2(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)) = E(u) \otimes P(t, t^{-1}) \otimes P(\mu_0) \Rightarrow \pi_*(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)^{tC})$
2. $\hat{E}^2(V(0) \wedge \underline{T}(H\mathbf{Z})) = E(u) \otimes P(t, t^{-1}) \otimes E(\lambda_1) \otimes P(\mu_1) \Rightarrow V(0)_*(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{Z})^{tC})$
3. $\hat{E}^2(V(1) \wedge \underline{T}(\ell)) = E(u) \otimes P(t, t^{-1}) \otimes E(\lambda_1, \lambda_2) \otimes P(\mu_1) \Rightarrow V(1)_*(\underline{T}(\ell)^{tC})$

where the bidegree of u is $(-1, 0)$, of t is $(-2, 0)$ of μ_i is $2p^i$ and of λ_i is $2p^i - 1$.

The structure of the differentials in these spectral sequences are increasingly complicated, however in all three cases they are completely determined by the differentials on the base line, i.e., on u and on the powers of t. The spectral sequences are conditionally convergent by construction, and since they are finite in each bidegree, Boardman's first conditional convergence theorem [17, 7.1] implies strong convergence.

In the $C = C_p$ and $H\mathbf{F}_p$-case, everything is killed off by $d^3(u) = t^2\mu_0$. This is an interesting differential in that its origin gives a first example of what seems to be a general phenomenon. In the mod p spectral sequence

$$\hat{H}^{-*}(C_p, V(0)_*(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p))) = E(u) \otimes P(t, t^{-1}) \otimes E(\epsilon_0) \otimes P(\sigma\epsilon_0) \Rightarrow V(0)_*(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)^{tC_p})$$

there is a d^2-differential $d^2(\epsilon_0) = t\sigma\epsilon_0$ coming from the calculation of $\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)$. For dimension reasons, there can be no d^2-differentials in the integral spectral sequence, so $t\mu_0$ represents a class in total degree 0 in the homotopy fixed point spectral sequence which is killed mod p. Ultimately this gives rise to the said d^3-differential which expresses that the class of $t\mu_0$ in $\pi_0(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)^{hC_p})$ comes from $\pi_0(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)_{hC_p}) \cong \mathbf{Z}/p$ in the fundamental cofiber sequence

$$\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)_{hC_p} \to \underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)^{C_p} \to \underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p),$$

reflecting that $\pi_0(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)^{hC_p}) \cong \mathbf{Z}/p^2$.

The analysis of the $H\mathbf{F}_p$-case is carried through by Hesselholt and Madsen in [111], the $\mathbf{Z}$-case by Bökstedt and Madsen in [20] and [21] with input from [240], and for $p = 2$ by Rognes in [204], and finally the ℓ-case by Ausoni and Rognes in [8].

The outcome is particularly striking when $C = C_p$:

Proposition 3.1.8 *The spectral sequences $i = 1, 2, 3$ in corollary 3.1.7 degenerate at the $2p^i + 2$nd page, leaving no room for extensions:*

1. $\pi_*(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)^{tC_p}) \cong \hat{E}^\infty(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)) = P(t, t^{-1})$
2. $V(0)_*(\underline{T}(\mathbf{Z})^{tC_p}) \cong \hat{E}^\infty(V(0) \wedge \underline{T}(H\mathbf{Z})) = E(\lambda_1) \otimes P(t^p, t^{-p})$

3. $V(1)_*(\underline{T}(\ell)^{tC_p}) \cong \hat{E}^\infty(V(1)\wedge\underline{T}(\ell)) = E(\lambda_1,\lambda_2)\otimes P(t^{p^2},t^{-p^2})$

The reader may note that in non-negative degrees (but for the class $\lambda_1\lambda_2 t^{p^2}$ in degree $2p-2$) these groups are abstractly isomorphic to the corresponding topological Hochschild homology groups. Whether this is a coincidence or not depends on your point of view.

3.1.9 Comparison of fixed point and homotopy fixed points

Recall the fundamental cofibration sequence VII.1.4.2. The map $EC_{p^n}\to *$ is a C_{p^n}-map, and induces a map Γ_n from fixed point spectra to homotopy spectra such that we get a map of cofiber sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \underline{T}(A)_{hC_{p^n}} & \longrightarrow & \underline{T}(A)^{C_{p^n}} & \longrightarrow & \underline{T}(A)^{C_{p^{n-1}}} \\ \| & & \Gamma_n\downarrow & & \hat{\Gamma}_n\downarrow \\ \underline{T}(A)_{hC_{p^n}} & \longrightarrow & \underline{T}(A)^{hC_{p^n}} & \longrightarrow & \underline{T}(A)^{tC_{p^n}} \end{array},$$

where the leftmost square commutes up to homotopy, as one sees from the constructions, forcing the existence of the slightly more mysterious map $\hat{\Gamma}_n$. In the fully equivariant world we are adopting, this map can be seen quite geometrically. In that framework, the upper sequence should be replaced by a sequence which exist for general G-spectra X formed by taking fixed points of the sequence one gets by smashing the cofibration sequence $EG_+\to S^0\to\widetilde{EG}$ with X (just as the lower sequence is obtained by taking the fixed point of the smash of this sequence with $Map_*(EG_+,X)$). The spectrum $\Phi^G X=[\widetilde{EG}\wedge X]^G$ are the so-called *geometric fixed points* and enjoy numerable good properties (for instance the geometric fixed points of the suspension spectrum of a G-space is the suspension spectrum of the G-fixed point space, see e.g., [165] for an exposition of some basic facts), and the vertical maps in the diagram are induced by the projection $EG\to S^0$. The connection to the diagram as it appears above when $G=C_p$ comes through the fact that topological Hochschild homology is a *cyclotomic spectrum*: its C_p-geometric fixed point spectrum is equivalent to THH itself. The theory of cyclotomic spectra was introduced in[20], and expanded upon in [111], and is an important tool both for calculations and foundations.

Adapting ideas from Carlsson's proof of the Segal conjecture [42], Tsalidis proved [241] the following theorem starting an induction procedure for calculating the fixed point spectra of topological Hochschild homology.

Theorem 3.1.10 (Tsalidis) *If Γ_1 induces an p-adic equivalence after smashing with a finite CW-spectrum on some connected cover, then so does Γ_n for all $n\geq 1$.*

Using knowledge about the origin in K-theory of certain classes, Hesselholt, Madsen, Bökstedt, Ausoni and Rognes consequently prove

Theorem 3.1.11 *The map $\hat{\Gamma}_1$ is a V-equivalence on k-connective covers for $A=H\mathbf{F}_p$ ($V=\mathbf{S}$, $k=-1$), $H\mathbf{Z}$ ($V=V(0)$, $k=-1$) and ℓ ($V=V(1)$, $k=2p-2$), sending λ_i to λ_i and μ_i to t^{-p^i} (up to multiplication by units).*

Not only does this show that the C_{p^n}-fixed point spectra can be calculated from the homotopy fixed point spectral sequence, it also gives important feedback to these spectral sequences.

Except for the case $A = H\mathbf{F}_p$, where $\pi_*(\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)^{C_{p^n}}) \cong \mathbf{Z}/p^{n+1}(\mu_0(n))$ with $\mu_0(0) = \mu_0$, $R(\mu_0(n)) = p\mu_0(n-1)$ and $F(\mu_0(n)) = \mu_0(n-1)$, the explicit groups for the fixed points are rather messy, and we will not list them here. However, when taking the homotopy limit over the restriction and Frobenius maps things shape up a bit. In particular, given the formula for the restriction map R above, all higher groups vanish in the homotopy limit over R, leaving

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{R}} \underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p)^{C_{p^n}} \simeq H\mathbf{Z}_p,$$

and

$$TC(H\mathbf{F}_p; p) \simeq H\mathbf{Z}_p \vee \Sigma^{-1} H\mathbf{Z}_p.$$

The most remarkable feature is perhaps that by taking fixed points we have gone from a situation where $p = 0$ to a case where p acts injectively. A similar thing happens for the two other cases:

Theorem 3.1.12 *1.* $\pi_* TC(H\mathbf{F}_p; p) = \mathbf{Z}_p[\partial]/\partial^2$

2. $V(0)_* TC(Z; p) = (E(\partial, \lambda_1) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{\lambda_1 t^i | 0 < i < p\}) \otimes P(v_1)$

3.

$$\begin{aligned} V(1)_* TC(\ell; p) = P(v_2) \otimes \\ \big(E(\partial, \lambda_1, \lambda_2) \oplus E(\lambda_2) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{\lambda_1 t^i || 0 < i < p\} \oplus E(\lambda_1) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{\lambda_2 t^{ip} || 0 < i < p\}\big) \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.12}$$

NBNB $V(1)_* TC(\ell; p) = (E(\partial, \lambda_1, \lambda_2) \oplus E(\lambda_2) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{\lambda_1 t^i || 0 < i < p\} \oplus E(\lambda_1) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{\lambda_2 t^{ip} || 0 < i < p\})$ $P(v_2)$

with $|\partial| = -1$, $|\lambda_i| = 2p^i - 1$, $|t| = -2$, $|v_i| = 2p^i - 2$.

The classes v_i has appeared above as $t\mu_i$, and are named thus since they are mapped all the way from the periodic maps in $\Sigma^{2p^{i-1}-2} V(i-1) \to V(i-1)$ of the same name.

3.1.13 Algebraic K-theory

The cyclotomic trace gives that these results have direct bearings on the algebraic K-theory. The comparison goes by a sort of induction, with the start of the induction being the case $A = H\mathbf{F}_p$.

Theorem 3.1.14 *Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra with a surjective ring map $\mathbf{Z}_p \twoheadrightarrow \pi_0 A$. Then the cyclotomic trace fits in a cofiber sequence*

$$K(A)_p \xrightarrow{trc} TC(A)_p \longrightarrow \Sigma^{-1} H\mathbf{Z}_p.$$

In particular,

1. $\pi_* K(H\mathbf{F}_p)_p \cong \mathbf{Z}_p$
2. $V(0)_* K(\mathbf{Z}_p)_p \cong (E(\lambda_1) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{\lambda_1 t^i | 0 < i < p\}) \otimes P(v_1)$
3. $$\begin{aligned} V(1)_* K(\ell)_p \cong \mathbf{F}_p\{a\} \oplus P(v_2) \otimes \\ \big(E(\lambda_1, \lambda_2) \oplus e(\lambda_2) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{\lambda_1 t^i || 0 < i < p\} \oplus E(\lambda_1) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{\lambda_2 t^{ip} || 0 < i < p\}\big) \end{aligned}$$

The class $a \in V(1)_{2p-3} K(\ell)_p$ arises as the $V(1)$-Bockstein of $1 \in \pi_0 H\mathbf{Z}_p$.

Proof: By [194] the higher homotopy groups of $K(H\mathbf{F}_p)$ are all finite torsion, but there is no p-torsion, so $K(H\mathbf{F}_p)_p \overset{\sim}{\to} H\mathbf{Z}_p$. By the appendix of [81] the cyclotomic trace map is multiplicative, and so $trc\colon K(H\mathbf{F}_p)_p \to TC(H\mathbf{F}_p)_p$ must induce the identity on π_0 (since both source and target are copies of $\mathbf{Z}_p$), and the cofiber sequence is established in the case $A = H\mathbf{F}_p$. If $\pi_0 A$ is finite, it must be a nilpotent extension of $\mathbf{F}_p$, and so

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(A)_p & \longrightarrow & TC(A)_p \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K(H\mathbf{F}_p)_p & \longrightarrow & TC(H\mathbf{F}_p)_p \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian, and we get the stated cofiber sequence. If $\pi_0 A = \mathbf{Z}_p$ we are done by using that $K(\mathbf{Z}_p)_p \overset{\sim}{\to} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{n}} K(\mathbf{Z}/p^n)_p$ [187] and $TC(\mathbf{Z}_p)_p \overset{\sim}{\to} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{n}} TC(\mathbf{Z}/p^n)_p$ [111]. ∎

Remark 3.1.15 *Note that the comparison between algebraic K-theory and topological cyclic homology goes from being a relative statement, as in the main body of the book, to an absolute statement after p-completion, thanks to the fact that the higher K-groups of $H\mathbf{F}_p$ are finite torsion away from p.*

This means that trace methods are particularly well suited to understanding K-theory at the characteristic, which should be thought of as the harder part - analyzing K-theory away from the characteristic is open to attack by a wider array of methods like comparison with étale K-theory and motivic cohomology. Another important line of reductions away from the characteristic arise through Gabber's rigidity theorem [77] which states that if (A, I) is a Hensel pair I.5 with $1/p \in A$, then $K(A)_p \simeq K(A/I)_p$.

The good behavior of both algebraic K-theory and topological cyclic homology implies that the above statements extend to a wide array of situations. For instance, generalizing a result in [111] slightly, one gets

Theorem 3.1.16 *Let k be a perfect field of characteristic $p > 0$ (so, taking the pth power is an automorphism) and A a connective $\mathbf{S}$-algebra such that $\pi_0 A$ is a $W(k)$-algebra which is finitely generated as a $W(k)$-module. Then the cyclotomic trace fits in a cofiber sequence*

$$K(A)_p \to TC(A)_p \to \Sigma^{-1} H(\operatorname{coker}\{1 - F\})$$

where $F\colon W(\pi_0 A) \to W(\pi_0 A)$ is the Frobenius endomorphism.

3.1.17 Space level descriptions and the case $p = 2$

Since $TC(H\mathbf{F}_p; p)$ is the Eilenberg-Mac Lane spectrum $H\mathbf{Z}_p \vee \Sigma^{-1} H\mathbf{Z}_p$, we get that $TC(A; p)$ is an Eilenberg-Mac Lane spectrum whenever A is an $\mathbf{F}_p$-algebra, and so is determined completely by its homotopy groups.

For other rings this is definitely not true. For instance, Bökstedt and Madsen prove in [21] that

Theorem 3.1.18 (Bökstedt and Madsen) *Let p be an odd prime, let g be a topological generator of the units in $\mathbf{Z}_p$ and let (the image of) J be the homotopy fiber of $1 - \Psi^g\colon \mathbf{Z} \times BU \to BU$, where Ψ^g is the g'th Adams operation. Then the algebraic K-theory space of $W(\mathbf{F}_p)$ is equivalent after p-completion to*

$$J \times BJ \times SU \times U^{\times(s-1)}.$$

In particular $K(\mathbf{Z}_p)_p \simeq J_p \times BJ_p \times SU_p$.

This result is stated in terms of infinite loop spaces, and B signifies the associated bar-construction, shifting homotopy groups by one. We note that neither J nor the infinite unitary group $U = \cup_{n>0} U(n)$ are Eilenberg-Mac Lane spaces. Due to Bott periodicity, the special unitary group SU could alternatively be given as BBU.

For the homotopy groups, one notices that apart from the group $\pi_0(J_p) = \mathbf{Z}_p$, the nonzero homotopy groups of J_p and U are $\pi_{2k(p-1)-1}(J_p) = \mathbf{Z}/p^{\nu_p(k)}$ and $\pi_{2k-1}(U) = \mathbf{Z}$ for $k > 0$, where ν_p is the p-adic valuation: $\nu_p(np^m) = m$ if $\gcd(n, p) = 1$. In order to get to this space level description, one of course has to reach beyond the mod p homotopy groups we have listed. In the case of the Eilenberg-Mac Lane spectrum $H\mathbf{Z}_p$, Bökstedt and Madsen [20] compare directly to the more computable topological cyclic homology of $\mathbf{S}_p$, and uses that the spectra involved are in a sense very rigid.

The case $p = 2$ is in many ways quite different. For one thing the algebraic properties (or lack thereof) of the mod p Moore spectra $\mathbf{S}/p = V(0)$ are bad for small primes p. In particular, $\mathbf{S}/2$ is not a homotopy commutative ring spectrum, even in a weak sense. In a series of papers culminating in [204], Rognes resolves this by carefully comparing with mod 4 homotopy, and also replacing Bökstedt and Madsen's comparison with $K(\mathbf{S}_p)$ with a comparison through a "Galois reduction map" $K(\mathbf{Z}_2) \to K(\mathbf{F}_3)$. Here $K(\mathbf{F}_3)$ plays the rôle as the (complex!) image of J-space, but the splitting results of the odd primary case fails, giving

Theorem 3.1.19 (Rognes) *After 2-completion, there are (non-split) fiber sequences*

$$\begin{tikzcd} B(K\mathbf{F}_3) \arrow[r] & K^{red}(\mathbf{Z}_2) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & BBU \\ & K(\mathbf{Z}_2) \arrow[d] & \\ & K(\mathbf{F}_3) & \end{tikzcd}$$

3.2 The Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture, the Milnor conjecture and the Redshift conjecture

Since we are mainly concerned with phenomena in algebraic K-theory which can be understood from trace methods, we will do the the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture grave injustice. This conjecture and its relatives has led to vast amounts of deep mathematics, and the final solution in the original cases of interest comes through motivic cohomology (although trace methods played an interesting part in the early identification). For a nice exposition, containing a chronological overview of this and related results and conjecture, see the papers of B. Kahn [130], Weibel [257] or Gajda [79].

Quillen proved that for extensions of finite fields $k_1 \subseteq k_2$, the map

$$K(k_1) \to K(k_2)^{hGal(k_2/k_1)}$$

is an equivalence. Here the Galois group $Gal(k_2/k_1)$ acts on the category of finite dimensional k_2-vector spaces and hence on $K(k_2)$. In most models of algebraic K-theory we may identify $K(k_1)$ with the actual fixed point spectrum $K(k_2)^{Gal(k_2/k_1)}$.

So, for a group G of ring-automorphisms of a given ring A, one may ask about the relationship between the algebraic K-theory $K(A^G)$ of the fixed ring A^G and the homotopy fixed point spectrum $K(A)^{hG}$.

Lichtenbaum conjectured [149] a relationship between the values of the Dedekind zeta function for a number field and the order of the (higher) K-groups of the ring of integers and Quillen conjectured [197] that there should exist a sort of analog of the Atiyah-Hirzebruch spectral sequence for algebraic K-theory built out of étale cohomology. These two conjectures are closely related and have been refined over the years in various directions. Dwyer and Friedlander [67] defined a surjective map from algebraic K-theory to something called *étale K-theory* which is the abutment of the Atiyah-Hirzebruch spectral sequence mentioned above, so that the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture amounted to the claim that the map was injective. The step towards stable homotopy theory was taken when it was realized that under favourable circumstances étale K-theory essentially was what you got when you "invert the Bott element" in algebraic K-theory [66], [237].

More precisely, in Waldhausen's description [248] of Snaith's setup [222], let $V(0) = \mathbf{S}/p$ be the homotopy cofiber of a degree p self-map $\mathbf{S} \to \mathbf{S}$. There is a self-map $v_1 \colon \Sigma^{2p-2}V(0) \to$

$V(0)$, and the Bott inverted algebraic K-theory $K(A;\mathbf{Z}/p)[\beta^{-1}]$ is equivalent to be the homotopy colimit of

$$K(A)\wedge V(0) \xrightarrow{v_1} K(A)\wedge\Sigma^{-2p+2}V(0) \xrightarrow{v_1} K(A)\wedge\Sigma^{-24+4}V(0) \xrightarrow{v_1} \dots,$$

which on the other hand (by formal properties of Bousfield's L_1-localization with respect to Morava K-theory $K(1)$, see also the discussion about the redshift conjecture below) is the same as $L_1K(A)\wedge\mathbf{S}/p$. Eventually, the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture then can be formulated to say that for suitable discrete rings A the localization map

$$K(A)_{(p)} \to L_1K(A)_{(p)}$$

is an equivalence in sufficiently high degree.

In this formulation, one sees that the calculations of Bökstedt, Madsen and Rognes confirm the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjectures in the cases they cover: the answers they provide are clearly equal to their L_1-localizations in high degrees: v_1 acts injectively. Also the calculations of Hesselholt and Madsen on unramified extensions of local number fields (see 3.3.3 below) is phrased so that this becomes apparent.

For algebraically closed fields, Suslin proved the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture, in that he proved that if $F \subseteq E$ is an extension of algebraically closed fields, then $K(F) \to K(E)$ is an equivalence after profinite completion, and both spectra have the value predicted by étale cohomology. In particular, if F is an algebraically closed field of characteristic 0, then there is an equivalence

$$K(F)_p \simeq ku_p.$$

This could be stated as saying that the proposed spectral sequence in the Quillen part of the conjecture states that the algebraic K-theory of a field k is, in fact, the homotopy fixed set of the absolute Galois group action on the K-theory of its algebraic closure.

The ultimate goal of calculating the algebraic K-theory of the integers is beyond the scope of trace methods, since topological cyclic homology is notoriously bad at distinguishing between a ring and its completions: $TC(\mathbf{Z};p)_p \xrightarrow{\sim} TC(\mathbf{Z}_p;p)_p$, whereas K-theory sees a huge difference.

Voevodsky's proof of the Milnor conjecture [244] made it possible for Rognes and Weibel [203] to complete the 2-primary piece of the Lichtenbaum-Quillen Conjecture (see also the paper by Weibel [256] and the influential preprint [129] by Kahn where the authors obtain the result upon relying on a certain multiplicative structure of the Bloch-Lichtenbaum spectral sequence). The result is most elegantly summarized by stating that a certain 2-completed homotopy commutative square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(\mathbf{Z})_2 & \longrightarrow & BO_2 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K(\mathbf{F}_3)_2 & \longrightarrow & BU_2 \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian. See also the table in section I.3 which is lifted from Weibel [256].

The situation for odd primes was much more painful, in that the odd companion of the Milnor conjecture, called the Bloch-Kato conjecture turned out to be hard to prove. Eventually this is now a theorem, the *norm residue isomorphism theorem*, due to Rost and Voevodsky, see [251]. The link between the Bloch-Kato conjecture and the desired spectral sequence is the Beilinson conjectures proved by Suslin and Voevodsky. The relevant spectral sequence was first suggested by Grayson [99] with the last pieces being laid by Suslin [230]. Voevodsky and Levine also have constructions of the spectral sequence. We are indebted to Weibel for making the status of various conjectures clear to us.

3.2.1 Redshift

In another direction, there is ongoing work trying to understand algebraic K-theory of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras intermediate between the Eilenberg-Mac Lane of rings and the sphere spectrum itself. Much of this activity draws its motivation from Waldhausen's paper [248] in which he extends beyond the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture to speculate about the homotopy theoretic significance of a filtration of the linearization map $K(\mathbf{S}) \to K(\mathbf{Z})$ through the K-theory of intermediate rings ideally extracting the "arithmetic properties" of ring spectra.

Given that we now understand the linearization map, to some degree, through a blend of motivic and trace method information (see section 3.8.1 below), this idea is especially tantalizing.

Slightly reinterpreted, let $L_n = L_{E(n)}$ be Bousfield localization with respect to the nth Johnson-Wilson spectra $E(n)$ with $\pi_* E(n) = \mathbf{Z}_p[v_1, \ldots, v_n][v_n^{-1}]$ and consider the tower

$$X \to \cdots \to L_n X \to \cdots \to L_1 X \to L_0 X \simeq H\mathbf{Q}_p \wedge X$$

approximating the finite p-local CW-spectrum X in the sense of chromatic convergence: $X \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{n}} L_n X$. See Ravenel's orange book [201] for background. In [248], Waldhausen considered a somewhat different localization functor L_n^f, characterized by its behavior on finite spectra, which turned out to be different due to the failure of the so-called telescope conjecture (it fails for $n = 2$, but is true for $n = 1$, so $L_1 = L_1^f$), see [202] and [175]. McClure and Staffeldt [175] prove that one has chromatic convergence for algebraic K-theory, in the sense that $K(\mathbf{S}_p) \simeq \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{n}} K(L_n \mathbf{S}_p)$, but it is unknown whether this holds for the L^f-version. Given the close connection between algebraic K-theory and topological cyclic homology, one is tempted to believe that this should be possible to establish through trace methods.

As touched upon above, Thomason [237] reinterpreted the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture to say that under favourable circumstances you had something resembling Bott periodicity. This was again reinterpreted by Waldhausen [248] and further developed by Mitchell [184] to say that the localization map $K(A) \to L_1 K(A)$ was an equivalence in high dimensions. As a matter of fact, Mitchell prove that for any discrete ring A, the map $L_n K(A) \to L_1 K(A)$ is an equivalence, and hence [202], so is $L_n^f K(A) \to L_1 K(A)$.

This interpretation puts the discoveries of Bökstedt and Madsen in an interesting context, and already in their first papers they emphasize that their trace calculations give exactly this sort of behavior. In [20, section 9] and [21, section 5] they show that algebraic K-theory of unramified number rings is v_1-periodic in the sense that it agrees with its L_1-localization in high degrees, cf. the formula for $V(0)_*K(\mathbf{Z}_p)$ in theorem 3.1.14 for a typical example. Later, in [113] more general local number fields are included into the picture (see 3.3.3 below).

The "redshift conjecture" of Rognes is an offspring of this line of ideas, generalizing this behavior to higher chromatic filtration. As presented in [2] Ausoni and Rognes connects this up with speculate on the interplay between algebraic K-theory and Galois theory for commutative $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, much as for the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture.

Redshift is clearly also present in their calculation of the algebraic K-theory of the Adams summand ℓ above 3.1.14, lending credibility to the speculation that this may be a more general phenomenon.

Also Ausoni's calculation of the K-theory of all of ku_p [7, theorem 8.1] supports the idea:

$$V(1)_*K(ku_p) \cong P(b) \otimes M \oplus \mathbf{F}_s\{s\}$$

where M is some finite $\mathbf{F}_p$-vector space (given explicitly by Ausoni, see also 3.3.5 below), b satisfies $b^{p-1} = -v_2$ and the degree of s is $2p-3$.

A conceptual explanation for *why* one would expect red shift for algebraic K-theory is still missing, but there is hope that the cyclotomic trace may shed some light on the phenomenon, through the rich algebraic structure on the fixed point spectra of topological Hochschild homology.

For instance, one notices that for the commutative ring spectra $A = \mathbf{S}$ and $A = MU$, one has a sort of Segal conjecture in the narrowest sense, in that $\underline{T}(\mathbf{S})^{C_n} \to \underline{T}(\mathbf{S})^{hC_n}$ and $\underline{T}(MU)^{C_n} \to \underline{T}(MU)^{hC_n}$ are both equivalences [42], [155]. In some way this reflects that both $\mathbf{S}$ and MU have "infinite chromatic height", in contrast to the more algebraic rings A where $\underline{T}(A)^{C_n} \to \underline{T}(A)^{hC_n}$ may be an equivalence in high dimension, but where the homotopy fixed point spectrum exhibits periodic phenomena in negative dimensions, starting in dimensions that somehow correspond to the chromatic height of the input. For instance, we note that in the spectral sequence VI.4.1 for the homotopy C_p-fixed points for $H\mathbf{F}_p$, $H\mathbf{Z}$ and ℓ, we have infinite cycles t, t^p and t^{p^2}, where t is a generator in $H^2(BS^1)$.

This should be contrasted with the case where one looks at the fixed point spectra of topological Hochschild homology for one degree at a time: according to Lunøe-Nilsen and Rognes [156]

$$THH_{jp-1}(A)^{C_p} \to THH_{jp-1}(A)^{hC_p}$$

is always an equivalence (recall that $THH_{jp-1}(A)$ is just a particular model for the jp-fold smash power of A). Hence the phenomenon that fixed points and homotopy fixed points differ for topological Hochschild homology is a consequence of the fact that homotopy fixed points do not commute with realization.

It seems likely that the fixed point spectra of topological Hochschild homology might shed more light on the algebraic side of redshift. The very first step, moving from a situation where the prime $v_0 = p$ is zero to where it acts injectively is encoded in the

Witt vectors, which we recognize as the path components of TR: $\pi_0 TR(A) \simeq W(\pi_0 A)$ for a commutative $\mathbf{S}$-algebra A, and for the next step much information is encoded in the deRham–Witt complex 3.4. In [34] it is shown that for commutative $\mathbf{S}$-algebras, one can extend the definition of topological Hochschild homology to a functor $X \mapsto \Lambda_X A$ such that $THH(A) \simeq \Lambda_{S^1} A$, and such that one retains full control over the equivariant structure, and in [43] this is used to study the interplay between the various fixed points of iterated topological Hochschild homology. This gives us access to classes that conjecturally detect higher chromatic phenomena, but we are still very far from understanding the interrelationship between the commutativity of the $\mathbf{S}$-algebra and the chromatic structure of the spectrum underlying the fixed point spectra.

3.3 Topological cyclic homology of local number fields

Algebraic K-theory has a localization sequence, making the connection between, examples like, the algebraic K-theory of a number field and its ring of integers quite transparent. For instance, there is a fiber sequence

$$K(\mathbf{F}_p) \to K(\mathbf{Z}_p) \to K(\mathbf{Q}_p),$$

so that the p-torsion in the K-groups of $\mathbf{Z}_p$ and of $\mathbf{Q}_p$ agree. The "transfer" $K(\mathbf{F}_p) \to K(\mathbf{Z}_p)$ is induced from the inclusion of the torsion $\mathbf{Z}_p$-modules in the category of finitely generated $\mathbf{Z}_p$-modules. By the resolution theorem I.2.7.6, the K-theory of the former category is equivalent to $K(\mathbf{F}_p)$ and the K-theory of the latter is equivalent to $K(\mathbf{Z}_p)$.

For topological cyclic homology the situation is quite different. Since p is invertible in $\mathbf{Q}_p$, the C_{p^n}-fixed points of topological cyclic homology becomes quite uninteresting: $H\mathbf{Q}_p \simeq \underline{T}(\mathbf{Q}_p) \simeq \underline{T}(\mathbf{Q}_p)_{hC_{p^n}}$, so $\underline{T}(\mathbf{Q}_p)^{C_{p^n}} \simeq \mathbf{Q}_p \times \cdots \times \mathbf{Q}_p$ and $TR(\mathbf{Q}_p;p) \simeq HW\mathbf{Q}_p$, an infinite product of copies of $H\mathbf{Q}_p$. The Frobenius action cuts this down to size so that $TC(\mathbf{Q}_p;p) \simeq H\mathbf{Q}_p$.

Hesselholt and Madsen handle this problem in [113] by forcing localization on topological cyclic homology and get a map of fiber sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} K(k) & \longrightarrow & K(A) & \longrightarrow & K(K) \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ TC(k;p) & \longrightarrow & TC(A;p) & \longrightarrow & TC(A|K;p) \end{array} \tag{3.3.1}$$

where K is a complete discrete valuation field of characteristic zero with valuation ring A and perfect residue field k of characteristic $p > 2$.

Explicitly, they introduce three categories with cofibrations and weak equivalences, which all are full subcategories of the category $C^b(\mathcal{P}_A)$ of bounded complexes of finitely generated projective A-modules

1. $C^b_z(\mathcal{P}_A)$: all objects and the weak equivalences are the homology isomorphisms,
2. $C^b_q(\mathcal{P}_A)$: all objects and the weak equivalences are the rational homology isomorphisms, and

3. $C^b_z(\mathcal{P}_A)^q$: the objects are the complexes whose homology is torsion and the weak equivalences are the homology isomorphisms.

We have maps of categories with cofibrations and weak equivalences

$$C^b_z(\mathcal{P}_A)^q \xrightarrow{\subseteq} C^b_z(\mathcal{P}_A) \longrightarrow C^b_q(\mathcal{P}_A),$$

and localization I.2.7.4 implies that this gives a fibration sequence in K-theory, and Hesselholt and Madsen shows that one has a corresponding fiber sequence for topological cyclic homology, resulting in a map of fiber sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} K(C^b_z(\mathcal{P}_A)^q) & \longrightarrow & K(C^b_z(\mathcal{P}_A)) & \longrightarrow & K(C^b_q(\mathcal{P}_A)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ TC(C^b_z(\mathcal{P}_A)^q;p) & \longrightarrow & TC(C^b_z(\mathcal{P}_A);p) & \longrightarrow & TC(C^b_q(\mathcal{P}_A);p). \end{array} \tag{3.3.2}$$

Hesselholt and Madsen now define $TC(A|K;p) = TC(C^b_q(\mathcal{P}_A);p)$, and variations on the approximation theorem I.2.7.3 can be used to identify diagram 3.3.2 with diagram 3.3.1.

Combined with the technology they develop for the de Rham–Witt complex with log poles, briefly discussed in section 3.4 below, Hesselholt and Madsen then prove in [113] that

Theorem 3.3.3 *Let K be a finite extension of $\mathbf{Q}_p$ where p is an odd prime. For an integer r let $F\Psi^r$ be the homotopy fiber of $1-\Psi^r\colon \mathbf{Z}\times BU \to BU$, where Ψ^r is the r'th Adams operation. Then the algebraic K-theory space is equivalent after p-completion to*

$$F\Psi^{g^{p^{a-1}d}} \times BF\Psi^{g^{p^{a-1}d}} \times U^{|K:\mathbf{Q}_p|},$$

where $d = (p-1)/|K(\mu_p):K|$, $a = \max\{v|\mu_{p^v} \subseteq K(\mu_p)\}$ and g is a topological generator of the units in $\mathbf{Z}_p$ (or equivalently, an integer which generate the units in Z/p^2).

3.3.4 Quotient fields in a more general framework

It should be noted that the localization idea have been extended in some cases beyond discrete rings. In particular, in [16] Blumberg and Mandell show that there is a fiber sequence

$$K(H\mathbf{Z}) \to K(ku) \to K(KU)$$

where the first map is a transfer-type homomorphism similar to the inclusion of the category of finite abelian groups into the category of finitely generated abelian groups, and where the last map is induced by the map from connective complex K-theory, ku, to (periodic) complex K-theory, KU, given by inverting the Bott class. Similar sequences holds for the Adams summand, and Hesselholt has observed that the calculations of Ausoni and Rognes could be efficiently codified if one extends the techniques from the local field case, see e.g., the discussion in [7, remark 8.4], and according to Ausoni would give the calculation [7, theorem 8.3]

$$
\begin{aligned}
V(1)_*K(KU_p) \overset{?}{\cong} & P(b) \otimes E(\lambda_1, d) \oplus P(b) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{\partial\lambda_1, \partial b, \partial a_1, \partial\lambda_1 d\} && (3.3.5)\\
& \oplus P(b) \otimes E(d) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{t^k\lambda_1 \mid 0 < k < p\} && (3.3.5)\\
& \oplus P(b) \otimes E(\lambda_1) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p\{\sigma_n, \lambda_2 t^{p^2-p} \mid 0 < n < p-1\} && (3.3.5)
\end{aligned}
$$

where b satisfies $b^{p-1} = -v_2$, and the degrees of the other generators are $|\partial| = -1$, $|\lambda_1| = 2p-1$, $|\lambda_2| = 2p^2-1$, $|a_1| = 2p+3$, $|\sigma_n| = 2n+1$ and $|t| = -2$.

This has been taken further by Ausoni and Rognes into a speculation on the rôle of quotient fields for more general **S**-algebras, and interpretations in the vein of the redshift conjecture.

3.4 The de Rham–Witt complex

In [14] Spencer Bloch outlined a connection between algebraic K-theory and the crystalline cohomology of Berthelot–Grothendieck. In [106] Hesselholt used trace methods to confirm Bloch's ideas for any smooth algebra A over a perfect field k of positive characteristic (see also section 3.5.2 below). Hesselholt's result was accomplished by showing that for any such ring A, the homotopy data in $TR(A;p)$ assembles into a bicomplex isomorphic to the de Rham–Witt complex of Bloch–Deligne–Illusie. This observation has lead Hesselholt and his collaborators (most notably Madsen and Geisser) towards a sequence of remarkable calculations of algebraic K-theory as well as new purely algebraic generalizations of the Witt vectors [107] and the de Rham–Witt complex itself (see [109] for a very readable, purely algebraic construction of these).

Two important base computations suggest the connection of $TR(A;p)$ with the de Rham–Witt complex. The first is that for A a commutative ring, $\pi_0 TR_n(A;p) \cong W_n(A)$ where $W_n(A)$ is the ring of p-typical Witt vectors of length n in A (the p is assumed, see section 3.2.9 for a brief outline of the algebraic structure). Moreover, this isomorphism can be chosen (naturally in A) so that π_0 of the restriction, Frobenius and Verschiebung maps for the fixed points of $T(A)$ correspond to the classical restriction, Frobenius and Verschiebung maps of the Witt rings (note that, since we are working with fully equivariant spectra, we have transfers, and in particular in the homotopy category we have the *Verschiebung* $T(A)^{C_{rs}} \to T(A)^{C_s}$ on the fixed points of topological Hochschild homology).

The second observation is that by the Hochschild–Kostant–Rosenberg theorem [118], for A a smooth k-algebra, the de Rham complex $(\Omega^*_{A/k}, d)$ is isomorphic to $(HH_*(A/k), B)$ where B is Connes B-operator (see section VI.4.2) and $HH(A/k) = \pi_* HH^k(A)$ is Hochschild homology of the k-algebra A. If we let δ be the map from $\pi_n T(A)$ to $\pi_{n+1} T(A)$ induced by the $\mathbb{T}$-action (c.f. VI.4.1.2), then $\delta \circ \delta = 0$ and the linearization map $T(A) \to HH(A/k)$

takes δ to B. We obtain a limit system of differential graded algebras

$$
\begin{tikzcd}
\vdots \arrow[d, "R"] & \vdots \arrow[d, "R"] & \vdots \arrow[d, "R"] & \\
\pi_0 T(A)^{C_{p^2}} \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & \pi_1 T(A)^{C_{p^2}} \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & \pi_2 T(A)^{C_{p^2}} \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & \cdots \\
\pi_0 T(A)^{C_p} \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & \pi_1 T(A)^{C_p} \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & \pi_2 T(A)^{C_p} \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & \cdots \\
\pi_0 T(A) \arrow[r, "\delta"] & \pi_1 T(A) \arrow[r, "\delta"] & \pi_2 T(A) \arrow[r, "\delta"] & \cdots
\end{tikzcd}
\tag{3.4.1}
$$

The first column is the limit system of the p-typical Witt ring of A, and after linearization to $HH_*(A/k)$ the bottom row is the de Rham cohomology of A (c.f. VI.4.2) when A is smooth as a k-algebra. Now, since $\pi_1 T(A) \cong HH_1(A/k)$ is isomorphic to the first Kähler differentials $\Omega^1_{A/k}$, and $\pi_* T(A)$ is a graded commutative algebra, one obtains a map of differential graded algebras from $\Omega^*_{A/k}$ to $\pi_* TH(A)$. After checking additional relations about how the restriction, Frobenius, and Verschiebung behave on higher homotopy groups, this implies by the universal properties of the de Rham–Witt complex shown by Illuise in [124] that one has a map of complexes from the de Rham–Witt complex

$$
\begin{tikzcd}
\vdots \arrow[d, "R"] & \vdots \arrow[d, "R"] & \vdots \arrow[d, "R"] & \\
W_3\Omega^0_A \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & W_3\Omega^1_A \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & W_3\Omega^2_A \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & \cdots \\
W_2\Omega^0_A \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & W_2\Omega^1_A \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & W_2\Omega^2_A \arrow[r, "\delta"] \arrow[d, "R"] & \cdots \\
W_1\Omega^0_A \arrow[r, "\delta"] & W_1\Omega^1_A \arrow[r, "\delta"] & W_1\Omega^2_A \arrow[r, "\delta"] & \cdots
\end{tikzcd}
$$

to the limit system 3.4.1. The map of limit systems of differential graded algebras is an isomorphism when A is smooth over a perfect field k of characteristic p and $p \neq 2$. For $p = 2$ a similar result is obtain by Costeanu in [48] and a similar unified result is obtained using the modified de Rham–Witt complex of Hesselholt in [109]. These results are obtained by showing that the isomorphism first holds for polynomial algebras $k[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$. Then using that both complexes behave well for étale maps:

Proposition 3.4.2 *If $f : A \to B$ is an étale map of $\mathbf{F}_p$-algebras then the canonical map*

$$W_r(B) \otimes_{W_r(A)} \pi_* T(A)^{C_{p^{r-1}}} \to \pi_* T(B)^{C_{p^{r-1}}}$$

is an isomorphism.

In fact, a sharper result is obtained, namely

Theorem 3.4.3 *Suppose that A is a smooth k-algebra. Then there is an isomorphism*

$$W_n\Omega^*_A \otimes_{W_n(k)} S_{W_n}\{\sigma_n\} \to \pi_* TH(A)^{C_{p^{n-1}}}, \qquad \deg \sigma_n = 2$$

Moreover, $F(\sigma_n) = \sigma_{n-1}$, $V(\sigma_n) = p\sigma_{n+1}$ and $R(\sigma_n) = p\lambda_n\sigma_{n-1}$, where λ_n is a unit of $W_n(F_p)$.

Let V be a complete discrete valuation ring of mixed characteristic $(0, p)$ with quotient field K and perfect residue field k. For A a smooth V-algebra one has a localization sequence in K-theory

$$\cdots \to \pi_q K(A \otimes_V k) \to \pi_q K(A) \to \pi_q K(A \otimes_V K) \to \cdots$$

In [113], a corresponding sequence related by trace maps is constructed

$$\cdots \to \pi_q TR(A \otimes_V k) \to \pi_q TR(A) \to \pi_q TR(A|A_K; p) \to \cdots ,$$

c.f. the discussion in section 3.3. The term $\pi_q TR(A|A_K; p)$ is calculated in [114] when p is odd and $\mu_{p^v} \subset K$, by an isomorphism of pro-abelian groups

$$W.\Omega^*_{(A,M_A)} \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} S_{\mathbf{Z}/p^v}(\mu_{p^v}) \to \pi_* TR^{\cdot}(A|A_K; p, \mathbf{Z}/p^v).$$

Here $\pi_* TR^{\cdot}(A|A_K; p, \mathbf{Z}/p^v)$ denotes the graded pro-group with coefficients in $\mathbf{Z}/p^v$ coming from the system of the restriction maps (not just the homotopy limit) and $W.\Omega^*_{(A,M_A)}$ is a universal Witt complex over the log-ring (A, M_A) with the map

$$d\log_n : M_A \to TR^n_1(A|A_K; p)$$

given by the composite

$$M_A = A \cap (A \otimes_V K)^\times \to (A \otimes_V K)^\times \to K_1(A \otimes_V K) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tr}} TR^n_1(A|A_K; p).$$

In order to describe $\Omega^*_{(A,M_A)}$ we recall that a pre-log structure on a ring R is map of monoids α from M to R considered a monoid via multiplication. A log ring (R, M) is a ring with a pre-log structure and a derivation to an R-module E is a pair of maps $(D, D\log)$ with $D : R \to E$ a derivation and $D\log : M \to E$ a map of monoids such that $\alpha(a)D\log a = D\alpha(a)$. There is a universal derivation of a log ring (R, M) given by

$$\omega^1_{R,M} = (\Omega^1_R \oplus (R \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} M^{gp}))/\langle d\alpha(a) - \alpha(a) \otimes a | a \in M\rangle$$

where M^{gp} is the group completion of M and $\langle \cdots \rangle$ is the R-submodule generated by the given set. One defines $\Omega^*_{(R,M)}$ to be the usual differential graded ring $\Lambda^*_R(\omega^1_{(R,M)})$ generated by

$$d : R \to \omega^1_{(R,M)}, \qquad da = da \oplus 0,$$
$$d\log : M \to \omega^1_{(R,M)}, \quad d\log a = 0 \oplus (1 \otimes a)$$

In [113], the relation between algebraic K-theory and the de Rham–Witt complex with log poles in this situation (p is odd) is nicely expressed as a sequence exact in degrees ≥ 1

$$\cdots \to \pi_* K(K, \mathbf{Z}/p^v) \to W\omega^*_{(A,M)} \otimes S_{\mathbf{Z}/p^v}(\mu_{p^v}) \xrightarrow{1-F} W\omega^*_{(A,M)} \otimes S_{\mathbf{Z}/p^v}(\mu_{p^v}) \xrightarrow{\partial}.$$

3.5 Curves and Nil terms

If A is a ring, there is a close connection between finitely generated modules over A and over the polynomial ring $A[t]$. For instance, Serre's problem asks whether finitely generated projective $k[t_0, \ldots, t_n]$-modules are free when k is a field (that the answer is "yes" is the Quillen–Suslin theorem, [198], [231]). Consequently, there is a close connection between $K(A)$ and $K(A[t])$, and the map $K(A) \to K(A[t])$ is an equivalence if A is regular (finitely generated free modules have finite projective dimension) and $A[s,t]$ is coherent (every finitely generated module is finitely presented), see e.g., [85] or [245] which cover a wide range of related situations.

3.5.1 The algebraic K-theory of the polynomial algebra

In the general case, $K(A) \to K(A[t])$ is not an equivalence, and one can ask questions about the cofiber $NK(A)$. By extending from the commutative case, we might think of $A[t]$ as the affine line on A, and so $NK(A)$ measures to what extent algebraic K-theory fails to be "homotopy invariant" over A. In the regular Noetherian case we have that $NK = 0$, which is essential for the comparison with the motivic literature which is based on homotopy invariant definitions, as those of Karoubi–Villamajor [133], [134] or Weibel [255].

The situation for topological Hochschild and cyclic homology is worse, in that $TC(A) \to TC(A[t])$ and $THH(A) \to THH(A[t])$ are rarely equivalences, regardless of good regularity conditions on A ($THH(A[t])$ is accessible through the methods of section 3.7 below). That said, we still can get information about the K-theory nil-term $NK(A)$. Let Nil_A be the category of nilpotent endomorphisms of finitely generated projective A-modules. That is, an object of Nil_A is a pair (P, f) where P is a finitely generated module and $f\colon P \to P$ is an A-module homomorphism for which there exist an n such that the nth iterate is trivial, $f^n = 0$. The zero endomorphisms split off, giving an equivalence $K(\mathrm{Nil}_A) \simeq K(A) \vee Nil(A)$. By [95, p. 236] there is a natural equivalence $NK(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} \Sigma Nil(A)$, and it is the latter spectrum which is accessible through trace methods.

In particular, if A is a regular Noetherian $\mathbf{F}_p$-algebra, Hesselholt and Madsen [112] give a description of $Nil(A[t]/t^n)$ in terms of the big deRham-Witt complex of 3.4.

3.5.2 Curves on K-theory

Bloch [14] defined a notion of p-typical curves built on the algebraic K-theory of truncated polynomial rings $k[t]/t^n$ as n varied, and suggested a connection to crystalline cohomology. With the connection between K-theory and topological cyclic homology of nilpotent extensions, this allows for a reinterpretation in terms of topological cyclic homology. Hesselholt redefines in [106] the *curves* $C(A)$ on $K(A)$ of a commutative ring A to be the homotopy fiber of the natural map

$$\operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{n}} \Sigma^{-1} K(A[t]/t^n) \to \Sigma^{-1} K(A).$$

When A is a $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$-algebra, there is a splitting

$$C(A) \simeq \prod_{\gcd(k,p)=1} C(A;p)$$

of $C(A)$ into copies of a spectrum $C(A;p)$, the *p-typical curves* on $K(A)$.

Theorem 3.5.3 (Hesselholt) *If A is a commutative $\mathbf{Z}/p^j$-algebra, then there is a natural equivalence*

$$C(A;p) \simeq TR(A;p).$$

If k is a perfect field of characteristic p and A is a smooth A-algebra, then the p-typical curves split as an Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum with homotopy groups

$$\pi_* C(A;p) \cong W\Omega^*_A$$

where $W\Omega^*_A$ is the deRham–Witt complex of 3.4.

This extends the results of Bloch and puts them in a new and more structured context.

3.6 The algebraic K-theory Novikov conjecture

As mentioned before, topological cyclic homology was developed by Bökstedt, Hsiang and Madsen [19] in order to prove the the analog in algebraic K-theory of the Novikov conjecture on the invariance of higher signatures. Novikov's original conjecture was reformulated by Quinn in his thesis from 1970 into a question of whether a certain map

$$L(\mathbf{Z}) \wedge BG_+ \to L(\mathbf{Z}[G]),$$

called the *L-theory assembly map*, was rationally injective. Here L is a certain functor, called *L-theory* which plays a central rôle in surgery theory, and G is a group such that BG is a manifold.

In [19] the following analog is proved:

Theorem 3.6.1 (Bökstedt, Hsiang and Madsen) *Let G be a discrete group G whose homology is finitely generated in every degree. Then the "K-theory assembly map"*

$$K(\mathbf{Z}) \wedge BG_+ \to K(\mathbf{Z}[G])$$

is injective on rational homotopy groups.

From this they deduce that the there is an inclusion

$$H_i(G;\mathbf{Q}) \oplus \bigoplus_{k\geq 1} H_{i-4k-1}(G;\mathbf{Q}) \subseteq K_i(\mathbf{Z}[G]) \otimes \mathbf{Q}.$$

The K-theory assembly map can be described in many ways, but in essence boils down to the obvious map

$$Map_*(m_+, m_+\wedge A(S^n))\wedge G_+ \to Map_*(m_+, m_+\wedge A(S^n)\wedge G_+) = Map_*(m_+, m_+\wedge A[G](S^n)),$$

"assembling" the A-matrix $M = (m_{ij})$ and the group element g to the $A[G]$-matrix $Mg = (m_{ij}g)$.

Bökstedt, Hsiang and Madsen's original argument is simplified in [162, 4.5], to a statement of Soulé's [224] comparing the K-theory of the integers and the p-adic integers and the rational equivalence $K(\mathbf{S}_p) \to K(\mathbf{Z}_p)$ combined with the following lemma:

Lemma 3.6.2 *For any discrete group G the p-completion of the assembly map*

$$K(\mathbf{S}_p)\wedge BG_+ \to K(\mathbf{S}_p[G])$$

is split injective in the homotopy category.

This last fact in turn follows, since by theorem 3.1.16 the cyclotomic trace $K(\mathbf{S}_p)_p \to TC(\mathbf{S}_p;p)_p$ is an equivalence in non-negative dimensions, and from a direct analysis of the TC-assembly map $TC(\mathbf{S}_p;p)\wedge BG_+ \to TC(\mathbf{S}_p[G])$ which shows that it is split injective after p-completion. We refer to Madsen's survey [162, 4.5] for details.

One might mention that the Novikov conjecture is a very sharp version of much more general conjectures that purport to give the K-theory of group rings of wider classes of groups. The isomorphism conjecture of Farrell and Jones, allows for deeper knowledge about the subgroup lattice than what you get by simply smashing the K-theory of the ring with the classifying space of the group. These set-ups have analogs in topological cyclic homology and a joint effort by Lück, Reich, Rognes and Varisco will hopefully give new insight. See also [154].

3.7 Pointed monoids and truncated polynomial rings

Definition 3.7.1 A *pointed monoid* is a monoid in $(\mathcal{S}_*, \wedge, S^0)$, or in other words, a pointed space M, a "unit map" $S^0 \to M$ and a "multiplication" $M\wedge M \to M$ satisfying unitality and associativity.

If A is an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, the *pointed monoid ring* $A[M]$ is given by $X \mapsto A[M](X) = A(X)\wedge M$, with unit and multiplication given by the obvious maps $X = X\wedge S^0 \to A(X)\wedge M$ and

$$\begin{aligned} A[M](X)\wedge A[M](Y) = (A(X)\wedge M)\wedge(A(Y)\wedge M) &\cong (A(X)\wedge A(Y))\wedge(M\wedge M) \\ &\to A(X\wedge Y)\wedge M = A[M](X\wedge Y). \end{aligned}$$

If G is a simplicial group, we may consider G_+ as a pointed monoid, but we write $A[G]$ instead of $A[G_+]$.

We define the *cyclic bar construction* of a pointed monoid M as before: $B^{cy}(M) = \{[q] \mapsto M^{\wedge(q+1)}\}$ with multiplication defining the face maps and the unit giving the degeneracy maps. This is a cyclic space, and we note the natural isomorphisms

$$sd_n B^{cy}(M)^{C_n} \cong B^{cy}(M)$$

given by skipping the repetitions that necessarily have to be present in the fixed points, cf. VII.1.3.3. Under these isomorphisms the cyclic bar construction for pointed monoid becomes an epicyclic object, VII.1.3.1. Now, writing out the definition of THH, we see that we have an isomorphism of cyclic spectra

$$THH(A[M], X) \cong THH(A; B^{cy}M \wedge X),$$

(the latter should be thought of as the diagonal of a bicyclic object) and under this isomorphism the restriction map $sd_n THH(A[M], X)^{C_n} \to THH(A[M], X)$ corresponds to the composite

$$sd_n THH(A; sd_n B^{cy}M \wedge X)^{C_n} \to THH(A; sd_n B^{cy}M^{C_n} \wedge X) \cong THH(A; B^{cy}M \wedge X),$$

where the first map is the obvious variant of the restriction map when there is an action on the coefficient space (in this case, the cyclic action on $sd_n B^{cy}M \wedge X$). As a matter of fact, in the equivariant framework in which much of the literature on the subject is written, the coefficients **do** come equipped with an action. This is a convenient framework, simplifying much notation, for instance, we obviously get a map of cyclic spectra

$$\underline{T}(A) \wedge B^{cy}(M) \to \underline{T}(A[M])$$

which is an stable equivalence of underlying spectra, but in order for this to be an equivalence of fixed points one should take care to work in an equivariant setting so that deloopings with respect to non-trivial representations is implicit.

The equivalence $\underline{T}(A) \wedge B^{cy}(M) \to \underline{T}(A[M])$ makes it easy to calculate $\pi_* \underline{T}(A[M])$ when A is a simplicial ring, for then $\underline{T}(A)$ is an Eilenberg-Mac Lane spectrum and $\underline{T}(A) \simeq \bigvee_{n=0}^{\infty} \Sigma^n H(\pi_n \underline{T}(A))$, so that

$$\underline{T}(A[M]) \simeq \bigvee_{n=0}^{\infty} \Sigma^n H(\pi_n \underline{T}(A)) \wedge B^{cy}M,$$

and so $\pi_* \underline{T}(A[M]) \cong \bigoplus_{n=0}^{\infty} H_{*-n}(B^{cy}M; \pi_n \underline{T}(A))$.

If R is a commutative ring, then $\pi_*(HR \wedge B^{cy}M) \cong H_*(B^{cy}M; R) \cong HH_*^R(R[M])$ (rewrite $R[M \times M]$ as $R[M] \otimes_R R[M]$), and so for $A = H\mathbf{F}_p$ or $A = H\mathbf{Z}$ where we have Bökstedt's explicit calculations of $\underline{T}(A)$ we can rewrite the above in terms of Hochschild homology:

$$\pi_* \underline{T}(H\mathbf{Z}[M]) \cong HH_*(\mathbf{Z}[M]) \oplus \bigoplus_{n=1}^{\infty} HH_{*-2n+1}(\mathbf{Z}/i[M])$$

and

$$\pi_*\underline{T}(H\mathbf{F}_p[M]) \cong \bigoplus_{n=0}^{\infty} HH_{*-2n}(\mathbf{F}_p[M]).$$

In order to calculate the topological cyclic homology of the truncated polynomial algebras $k[t]/t^{n+1}$ over a perfect field k of characteristic p, Hesselholt and Madsen do a thorough investigation of the equivariant structure on $\underline{T}(Hk[\Pi_n])$ and $N^{cy}(\Pi_n)$, where $\Pi_n = \{0, 1, t, t^2, \ldots, t^n\}$ with $t^{n+1} = 0$, so that $k[t]/t^{n+1} \cong k[\Pi_n]$, see [111, section 8 and 9] and [110], and obtain

Theorem 3.7.2 (Hesselholt and Madsen)

$$\underline{TC}(k[t]/t^n)\hat{_p} \cong \Sigma^{-1}HW(k)_F \vee H\mathbf{Z}_p \vee \bigvee_{m>0} \Sigma^{2m-1}H(\mathbf{W}_{nm-1}(k)/V_n\mathbf{W}_{m-1}(k))$$

where $\mathbf{W}_j(k) = (1+tk[[t]])^\times/(1+t^{j+1}k[[t]])^\times$ *is the group of truncated* big Witt vectors*, and* $V_n\colon \mathbf{W}_{m-1}(k) \to \mathbf{W}_{nm-1}(k)$ *is the Verschiebung map sending* $f(t) = 1 + t\sum_{i=0}^\infty a_i t^i$ *to* $f(t^n)$*.*

3.7.3 K-theory of $\mathbf{Z}/p^n$

Nonsplit nilpotent extensions can not in any good way be encoded by means of pointed monoids, and are also less well understood than, say, truncated polynomial algebras. Ironically enough, we know the K-theory of the p-adic integers and of the prime field, but we have only partial knowledge about the K-groups of the intermediate rings $\mathbf{Z}/p^n$. Using that the first p-torsion in topological Hochschild homology of the integers appears in dimension $2p-1$ (the class λ_1 appearing in corollary 3.1.4) and comparison to Hochschild homology through a spectral sequence like lemma IV.1.3.8, Brun[33, theorem 6.1] overcomes part of the problem with the extension being non-split through filtration techniques.

Theorem 3.7.4 *(Brun) Let A be a simplicial ring with a ideal I satisfying $I^m = 0$ and with both A and A/I flat. Then the square*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(A) & \longrightarrow & HH(A)^{h\mathbb{T}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K(A/I) & \longrightarrow & HH(A/I))^{h\mathbb{T}} \end{array}$$

is $p/(m-1)-1$-cartesian after p-completion. Here $HH(A)^{h\mathbb{T}}$ is the homotopy circle fixed point spectrum of the Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum associated with Hochschild homology.

Brun states this in terms of (shifted) cyclic homology groups, and does after a calculation of cyclic homology groups concludes that

Corollary 3.7.5 *For $0 < i < p-2$ the K-groups of $\mathbf{Z}/p^n$ are zero in even dimensions, and the odd groups are given by $\pi_i K(\mathbf{Z}/p^n) \cong \mathbf{Z}/p^{j(n-1)}(p^j-1)$ when $i = 2j-1$.*

3.8 Spherical group rings and Thom spectra

Recall the identification of the topological cyclic homology of spherical group rings from section VII.3.2.10. There we saw that if G is a simplicial group, then the restriction map $\underline{T}(\mathbf{S}[G])^{C_{p^n}} \to \underline{T}(\mathbf{S}[G])^{C_{p^{n-1}}}$ had a splitting S, and eventually that there was a homotopy cartesian square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{TC}(\mathbf{S}[G];p) & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{\mathrm{trf}}} \underline{T}(\mathbf{S}[G])_{hC_{p^n}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{T}(\mathbf{S}[G]) & \xrightarrow{FS-1} & \underline{T}(\mathbf{S}[G]) \end{array}$$

in the homotopy category, where the homotopy limit is over the transfer maps. Just as for A.6.6.4, we get that $BC_{p^\infty} \simeq_p BS^1$ implies that we may exchange the upper right corner with the S^1-homotopy orbit spectrum $S^1 \wedge \underline{T}(\mathbf{S}[G])_{hS^1} \simeq (\Sigma^\infty S^1 \wedge \Lambda BG_+)_{hS^1}$, and that we get a homotopy cartesian diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{TC}(\mathbf{S}[G];p) & \longrightarrow & (\Sigma^\infty S^1 \wedge \Lambda BG_+)_{hS^1} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Sigma^\infty \Lambda BG_+ & \xrightarrow{\Delta_p - 1} & \Sigma^\infty \Lambda BG_+ \end{array} \tag{3.8.0}$$

after p-completion, where $\Delta_p \colon \Lambda BG \to \Lambda BG$ is precomposition with the p-th power $S^1 \to S^1$ (an argument is presented in [162, 4.4.9 and 4.4.11]. See also [206, 1.12]).

3.8.1 The Whitehead spectrum of a point

Given that the topological cyclic homology of both $\mathbf{S}$ and $\mathbf{Z}$ has been calculated, one knows the "difference" between the K-theory of $\mathbf{S}$ and $\mathbf{Z}$ if one understands the linearization map $TC(\mathbf{S}) \to TC(\mathbf{Z})$ and the cyclotomic trace $K(\mathbf{Z}) \to TC(\mathbf{Z})$.

By Waldhausen [250], there is a splitting $K(\mathbf{S}[GX]) \simeq \mathrm{Wh}^{\mathrm{Diff}}(X) \vee \Sigma^\infty X_+$ (the map to the $\Sigma^\infty X_+$-piece is related to the trace to topological Hochschild homology), where the so-called smooth Whitehead spectrum $\mathrm{Wh}^{\mathrm{Diff}}(X)$ is strongly related to smooth pseudo-isotopies of manifolds.

If one likewise splits off $\mathbf{S}$ from $TC(\mathbf{S})$, so that $TC(\mathbf{S}) \simeq \widetilde{TC}(\mathbf{S}) \vee \mathbf{S}$, one obtains a homotopy cartesian diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Wh}^{\mathrm{Diff}}(*) & \longrightarrow & K(\mathbf{S}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{trc}} \\ \widetilde{TC}(\mathbf{S}) & \longrightarrow & TC(\mathbf{S}) \end{array}.$$

Letting $\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^\infty_{k-1}$ be the truncated complex projective space with one cell in each even dimension greater than $2k$, we get a stable equivalence $\Sigma^\infty \mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^\infty_k \simeq Th(k\gamma^1)$ to the Thom spectrum of k times the canonical line bundle over $\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^\infty$. The right hand side makes sense for negative k as well, and it is customary to write $\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^\infty_k$ even for negative k. Knapp identifies $\Sigma\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^\infty_{-1}$ with the homotopy fiber of the "S^1 transfer" (the right vertical map in the homotopy cartesian diagram 3.8.0 giving $\underline{TC}(\mathbf{S};p)$ above), and so there is an equivalence

$$\Sigma\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^\infty_{-1} \simeq_p \widetilde{TC}(\mathbf{S})$$

after p-completion.

Rognes analyzes the cohomology of the Whitehead spectrum in two papers, [206] which gives the 2-primary information and [207] which gives the information at odd regular primes. For simplicity (and for a change) we focus on the 2-primary results.

In [206] trace information is combined with information about the K-theory of the integers from the Milnor conjecture, giving

Theorem 3.8.2 (Rognes) *Let* $\mathrm{hofib}(\mathrm{trc})$ *be the fiber of the cyclotomic trace map* $K(\mathbf{S})_2 \to TC(\mathbf{S})_2$ *completed at* 2. *In positive dimensions it has homotopy groups given by the table*

j	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$\pi_{8k+j}(\mathrm{hofib}(\mathrm{trc}))$	0	0	$\mathbf{Z}_2$	$\mathbf{Z}/16$	$\mathbf{Z}/2$	$\mathbf{Z}/2$	$\mathbf{Z}_2$	$\mathbf{Z}/2^{v_2(k+1)+4}$

The only other nonzero homotopy groups are in dimension -2 *and* 0, *where there is a copy of* $\mathbf{Z}_2$. *After* 2*-completion there is a cofiber sequence*

$$\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^\infty_{-1} \to \mathrm{hofib}(\mathrm{trc}) \to \mathrm{Wh}^{\mathit{Diff}}(*).$$

Hence, calculating $\mathrm{Wh}^{\mathrm{Diff}}(*)$ is dependent upon understanding $\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^\infty_{-1}$. The homotopy groups are hard to calculate, but Rognes does obtain the 2-primary part of the homotopy groups of the smooth Whitehead spectrum in dimensions up to 20. Instead, he calculates the mod 2 spectrum cohomology

Theorem 3.8.3 (Rognes) *The mod* 2 *cohomology of the smooth Whitehead spectrum fits in an extension of left modules over the Steenrod algebra* $\mathcal{A}$

$$\Sigma^{-2}C/\mathcal{A}(Sq^1,Sq^3) \longrightarrow H^*(\mathrm{Wh}^{\mathit{Diff}}(*)) \longrightarrow \Sigma^3\mathcal{A}/\mathcal{A}(Sq^1,Sq^2),$$

where $C \subseteq \mathcal{A}$ *is the annihilator ideal of the generator for* $H^*(\mathbf{C}\mathrm{P}^\infty_{-1})$. *There exists just two extensions of* $\mathcal{A}$*-modules of this sort, and* $H^*(\mathrm{Wh}^{\mathit{Diff}}(*))$ *fits in the nontrivial extension.*

3.8.4 Thom spectra

Another line of development generalizing the case of spherical group rings is the investigations by Blumberg, Cohen and Schlictkrull [15] of topological Hochschild homology of Thom spectra. This has many refinements, but the case simplest to state is the following [15, corollary 1.1]:

Theorem 3.8.5 (Blumberg, Cohen and Schlictkrull) *Let G be either of the infinite dimensional Lie groups O, SO, $Spin$, U or Sp. Then there is a stable equivalence*

$$\underline{T}(MG) \simeq MG \wedge BBG_+.$$

These equivalences arise as chains of natural equivalences respecting the E_∞-structure (see references to preprints in [15]). The multiplicative structure of topological Hochschild homology needed for the more refined versions of the theorem above, rely on the fact [35] that if A is an **S**-algebra with a so-called E_n-structure (that is, the multiplication comes from an action by an operad equivalent to the little n-cubes operad; roughly saying that A is homotopy commutative with homotopy coherency down to the nth level), then $THH(A)$ has an E_{n-1}-structure.

Unfortunately, a priori theorem 3.8.5 does not tell us much about topological cyclic homology (the equivalence is equivariant only in the weakest sense), and more work is needed in this direction. However, the results are strong enough to give information about homotopy fixed point spectra, and in many applications this is enough. In particular, in the preprint [155] the following is proved:

Theorem 3.8.6 (Lunøe-Nilsen and Rognes) *The canonical map*

$$THH(MU)^{C_{p^n}} \to THH(MU)^{hC_{p^n}}$$

is a stable equivalence.

3.9 Topological cyclic homology of schemes and excision

In [81], Geisser and Hesselholt extend the definition of topological cyclic homology to schemes by applying Thomason's extension of the Godement construction. It is not known if their definition is the same as what you get by applying topological cyclic homology to (Waldhausen's S-construction on) the category of vector bundles on X.

They prove that if $A \to B$ is an étale map of commutative rings, then the induced map

$$HB \wedge_{HA} \underline{T}(HA) \to \underline{T}(B)$$

is an equivalence, from which it follows that their construction agrees with the original definition in the affine case:

$$TC(A;p) \xrightarrow{\sim} TC((\mathrm{Spec})_{\text{ét}};p).$$

In many cases, the topology is not really important: if X is quasi-compact and quasi separated, then [81, corollary 3.3.4] states that $TC(X_{\text{ét}};p)$ is equivalent to $TC(X_\tau;p)$ for any topology τ coarser than the étale topology.

The cyclotomic trace extends to Thomason's definition [238] of the algebraic K-theory

$$K(X) \to TC(X;p).$$

From the construction, one obtains a descent spectral sequence, which is the basis for a comparison to the étale K-theory mentioned above. Knowledge about the topological cyclic homology for fields of finite characteristic yields [83, theorem A]:

Theorem 3.9.1 (Geisser and Hesselholt) *Let X be a smooth and proper scheme over a Henselian discrete valuation ring of mixed characteristic. If the residue characteristic is p, then for all integers q and $v \geq 1$, the cyclotomic trace induces an isomorphism*

$$K^{ét}(X, \mathbf{Z}/p^v) \xrightarrow{\sim} TC(X; p, \mathbf{Z}/p^v).$$

These results are stated with "finite coefficients", i.e., after smashing with the Moore spectrum $\mathbf{S}/p^v$.

If the schemes in question are not required to be smooth, the situation is very different, unless one focuses on situation where one is working with coefficients that avoid troublesome primes, like in [253] and [252]. General excision for closed embeddings is covered rationally by Cortiñas in [47]. The line of argument is interesting in the context of these notes, in that Cortiñas approximates by means of nilpotent extensions, using ideas of among others Cuntz and Quillen [49] and thereby getting a comparison with cyclic homology. To tackle the difference between the nilpotent approximations and the problem at hand, Cortiñas adapts the technique of Suslin and Wodzicki [234].

The result was shown to hold also after p-completion by Geisser and Hesselholt [82]. The results extend to $\mathbf{S}$-algebras by techniques very similar to those discussed in the main body of the text, and this extension was undertaken in [58] and [59] resulting in

Theorem 3.9.2 *Let*

$$\mathcal{A} = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} A^0 & \longrightarrow & A^1 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle f^1} \\ A^2 & \underset{f^2}{\longrightarrow} & A^{12} \end{array} \right\}$$

be a homotopy cartesian square of connective $\mathbf{S}$-algebras and 0-connected maps. Then the resulting cube

$$trc_{\mathcal{A}} \colon K(\mathcal{A}) \to TC(\mathcal{A})$$

is homotopy cartesian.

Notice that there are no commutativity requirements. As an example of how this closed excision property is useful for concrete calculations, Hesselholt [108] uses the excision result to calculate the K-theory of the coordinate axes in the following sense

Theorem 3.9.3 (Hesselholt) *Let k be a regular $\mathbf{F}_p$-algebra. Then there is a canonical isomorphism between $K_q(k[x,y]/xy)$ and the group $K_q(k) \oplus \bigoplus_{m \geqslant 1} \mathbf{W}_m \Omega_k^{q-2m}$, where $\mathbf{W}_m \Omega_k^j$ is the group of big de Rham-Witt j-forms of k.*

Appendix A

Homotopical foundations

Part of the reason for the existence of this book is that, when writing down the proof of the local correspondence between algebraic K-theory and topological cyclic homology (theorem VII.0.0.2), we found that we needed quite a number of results that were either not in the literature (but still probably well known), or else appearing in a context that was just *similar* to the one we needed. Though not adding mathematical contents, the effort to fit all these pieces together turned out to be more formidable than we had anticipated.

Much of this effort has made it into the preceding chapters, but certain topics – i.e., those included in this appendix – were needed at places where the flow of ideas would be severely disrupted if one were to digress into them, and yet others are used at several places that are logically independent of each other.

We collect these results in this appendix, along with as much background as is convenient for readability and for setting the notation. Most standard results are referred away (but stated for reference in the form we need them), and we only provide proofs when no convenient reference was available, or when the proofs have some independent interest.

For a general background on simplicial techniques the reader may consult the books of May [170], Gabriel and Zisman [78], Bousfield and Kan [31] or Goerss and Jardine [86]. For model categories, the books of Quillen [199], Hovey [119], Hirschhorn [117] and Dwyer, Hirschhorn and Kan [68] are all warmly recommended. For questions pertaining to algebraic topology, one may consult Spanier [225], Hatcher [104] or May [169] (the two latter available online). Finally, the basics of category theory is nicely summed up by Mac Lane [161] and Borceux [23, 24, 25]

0.10 The category Δ

Let Δ be the category consisting of the finite ordered sets $[n] = \{0 < 1 < 2 < \cdots < n\}$ for every nonnegative integer n, and monotone (non-decreasing) maps. In particular, for

$0 \leq i \leq n$ we have the maps

$$d^i\colon [n-1] \to [n], \qquad d^i(j) = \begin{cases} j & j < i \\ j+1 & i \leq j \end{cases} \qquad \text{“skips } i\text{”}$$

$$s^i\colon [n+1] \to [n], \qquad s^i(j) = \begin{cases} j & j \leq i \\ j-1 & i < j \end{cases} \qquad \text{“hits } i \text{ twice”.}$$

Every map in Δ has a factorization in terms of these maps. Given $\phi \in \Delta([n],[m])$, let $\{i_1 < i_2 < \cdots < i_k\} = [m] - im(\phi)$, and $\{j_1 < j_2 < \cdots < j_l\} = \{j \in [n] | \phi(j) = \phi(j+1)\}$. Then

$$\phi(j) = d^{i_k} d^{i_{k-1}} \cdots d^{i_1} s^{j_1} s^{j_2} \cdots s^{j_l}(j)$$

This factorization is unique, and hence we could describe Δ as being generated by the maps d^i and s^i subject to the “cosimplicial identities” :

$$d^j d^i = d^i d^{j-1} \quad \text{for } i < j$$

$$s^j s^i = s^{i-1} s^j \quad \text{for } i > j$$

and

$$s^j d^i = \begin{cases} d^i s^{j-1} & \text{for } i < j \\ id & \text{for } i = j, j+1 \\ d^{i-1} s^j & \text{for } i > j+1 \end{cases}$$

0.11 Simplicial and cosimplicial objects

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a category, the *opposite* category, $\mathcal{C}^o$ is the same category, but where you have reversed the direction of all arrows. A functor from $\mathcal{C}^o$ is sometimes called a *contravariant functor*.

If $\mathcal{C}$ is any category, a *simplicial* $\mathcal{C}$*-object* (or *simplicial object in* $\mathcal{C}$) is a functor $\Delta^o \to \mathcal{C}$, and a *cosimplicial* $\mathcal{C}$*-object* is a functor $\Delta \to \mathcal{C}$.

If X is a simplicial object, we let X_n be the image of $[n]$, and for a map $\phi \in \Delta$ we will often write ϕ^* for $X(\phi)$. For the particular maps d^i and s^i, we write simply d_i and s_i for $X(d^i)$ and $X(s^i)$, and call them *face* and *degeneracy maps*. Note that the face and degeneracy maps satisfy the “simplicial identities” which are the duals of the cosimplicial identities. Hence a simplicial object is often defined in the literature to be a sequence of objects X_n and maps d_i and s_i in $\mathcal{C}$ satisfying these identities.

Dually, for a cosimplicial object X, we let $X^n = X([n])$, $\phi_* = X(\phi)$, and the coface and codegeneracy maps are written d^i and s^i.

A map between two (co)simplicial $\mathcal{C}$-objects is a natural transformation. Generally, we let $s\mathcal{C}$ and $c\mathcal{C}$ be the categories of simplicial and co-simplicial $\mathcal{C}$-objects.

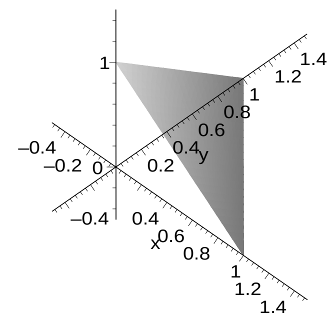
Functor categories like $s\mathcal{C}$ and $c\mathcal{C}$ inherits limits and colimits from $\mathcal{C}$ (and in particular sums and products), when these exist. We say that (co)limits are formed degreewise.

Example 0.11.1 (the topological standard simplices) There is an important cosimplicial topological space $[n] \mapsto \Delta^n$, where Δ^n is the *standard topological n-simplex*

$$\Delta^n = \{(x_0, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbf{R}^{n+1} | \sum x_i = 1, x_i \geq 0\}$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} d^i(x_0, \dots, x_{n-1}) =& (x_0, \dots, x_i, 0, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_{n-1}) \\ s^i(x_0, \dots, x_{n+1}) =& (x_0, \dots, x_{i-1}, x_i + x_{i+1}, x_{i+2}, \dots, x_{n+1}) \end{aligned}$$



The standard topological 2-simplex $\Delta^2 \in \mathbf{R}$.

0.12 Resolutions from adjoint functors

Adjoint functors are an important source of (co)simplicial objects. Let

$$\mathcal{D} \underset{U}{\overset{F}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{C}$$

be a pair of adjoint functors: we have a natural bijection of morphism sets

$$\mathcal{C}(F(d), c) \cong \mathcal{D}(d, U(c))$$

induced by the unit $\sigma_d \colon d \to UF(d)$ (corresponding to $id_{F(d)} \in \mathcal{D}(F(d), F(d))$) and counit $\delta_c \colon FU(c) \to c$ (corresponding to $id_{U(c)} \in \mathcal{C}(U(c), U(c))$). Then

$$[q] \mapsto (FU)^{q+1}(c)$$

defines a simplicial $\mathcal{C}$-object with structure maps defined by

$$d_i = (FU)^i \delta_{(FU)^{q-i+1}} \colon (FU)^{q+2}(c) \to (FU)^{q+1}(c)$$

and

$$s_i = (FU)^i F \sigma_{U(FU)^{q-i}} \colon (FU)^q(c) \to (FU)^{q+1}(c).$$

Dually, $[q] \mapsto (UF)^{q+1}(d)$ defines a cosimplicial $\mathcal{D}$-object. These (co)simplicial objects are called the *(co)simplicial resolutions associated with the adjoint pair.*

The composite $T = UF$ (together with the associated natural transformations $1 \to T$ and $TT \to T$) is occasionally referred to as a *triple* or *monad* (probably short for "monoid in the monoidal category of endofunctors and composition"), and likewise FU a *cotriple* or *comonad*, but never mind: the important thing to us are the associated (co)simplicial resolutions.

1 Simplicial sets

Let $\mathcal{E}ns$ be the category of sets (when we say "sets" they are supposed to be small in some fixed universe). Let $\mathcal{S} = s\mathcal{E}ns$ the category of simplicial sets. Since all (co)limits exist in $\mathcal{E}ns$, all (co)limits exist in $\mathcal{S}$. The category of simplicial sets has close connections with the category $\mathcal{T}op$ of topological spaces. In particular, the realization and singular functors (see 1.1) induce equivalences between their respective "homotopy categories" (see 3.3 below).

In view of this equivalence, we let a "*space*" mean a simplicial set (unless explicitly called a *topological* space). We also have a pointed version. A *pointed set* is a set with a preferred element, called the base point, and a pointed map is a map respecting base points. The category of pointed spaces (= pointed simplicial sets = simplicial pointed sets) is denoted $\mathcal{S}_*$. Being a category of functors to sets, the category $\mathcal{S}_*$ has (co)limits. In particular the coproduct is the wedge

$$X \vee Y = X \coprod_* Y$$

and we define the *smash* by

$$X \wedge Y = X \times Y / X \vee Y.$$

If $X \in \mathcal{S}$ we can add a disjoint basepoint and get the pointed simplicial set

$$X_+ = X \coprod *$$

1.1 Simplicial sets vs. topological spaces

There are adjoint functors

$$\mathcal{T}op \underset{\sin}{\overset{|-|}{\leftrightarrows}} \mathcal{S}$$

defined as follows. For $Y \in \mathcal{T}op$, the *singular functor* is defined as

$$\sin Y = \{[n] \mapsto \mathcal{T}op(\Delta^n, Y)\}$$

(the set of unbased continuous functions from the topological standard simplex to Y). As $[n] \mapsto \Delta^n$ was a cosimplicial space, this becomes a simplicial set. For $X \in \mathcal{S}$, the *realization functor* is defined as

$$|X| = \left(\coprod_n X_n \times \Delta^n \right) / (\phi^* x, u) \sim (x, \phi_* u).$$

The realization functor is left adjoint to the singular functor, i.e., there is a bijection

$$\mathcal{T}op(|X|, Y) \leftrightarrow \mathcal{S}(X, \sin Y)$$

The bijection is induced by the adjunction maps

$$\begin{aligned} X &\to \sin|X| \\ x \in X_n &\mapsto (\Delta^n \overset{u\mapsto(x,u)}{\to} X_n \times \Delta^n \to |X|) \in \sin|X|_n \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} |\sin Y| &\to Y \\ (y,u) \in \sin(Y)_n \times \Delta^n &\mapsto y(u) \in Y \end{aligned}$$

From the adjointness we see that the singular functor preserves all limits and the realization functor preserves all colimits.

What is not formal, but very useful, is the following result

Proposition 1.1.1 *The geometric realization of a simplicial set is compactly generated. As a functor to the category of compactly generated spaces, the geometric realization preserves finite limits.*

Sketch proof: See e.g., [119, 3.1.8], or alternatively see [52] and its references, where the geometric realization is written as a filtered colimit. ☺

The singular and realization functors also define adjoint functors between the category of simplicial pointed sets, $\mathcal{S}_*$ and the category of pointed topological spaces, $\mathcal{T}op_*$.

Definition 1.1.2 If $x \in X \in \mathcal{S}$, we define the homotopy groups to be that of the realization:

$$\pi_*(X,x) = \pi_*(|X|,x).$$

In the based situation we simply write $\pi_*(X)$.

Definition 1.1.3 A space X is 0-*connected* (or simply *connected*) if $\pi_0 X$ is a point, and if it is connected it is k-*connected* for a $k > 0$ if for all vertices $x \in X_0$ we have that $\pi_q(X,x) = 0$ for $0 \leq q \leq k$. A space is -1-connected by definition if it is nonempty. A space X is k-*reduced* if $X_j = *$ for all $j < k$. A space is *reduced* if it is 1-reduced.

A map $X \to Y$ is k-*connected* if its homotopy fiber over each 0-simplex is $(k-1)$-connected.

So, a k-reduced space is $k-1$-connected.

1.2 The standard simplices, and homotopies

We define a cosimplicial space (cosimplicial simplicial set)

$$[n] \mapsto \Delta[n] = \{[q] \mapsto \Delta([q],[n])\}.$$

The spaces $\Delta[n]$ are referred to as the *standard simplices*. Note that the realization $|\Delta[n]|$ of the standard simplex equals Δ^n, the *topological* standard simplex. The standard simplices are in a precise way, the building blocks (representing objects) for all simplicial sets: if X is a simplicial set, then there is a functorial isomorphism (an instance of the Yoneda lemma)

$$\mathcal{S}(\Delta[n], X) \cong X_n, \qquad f \mapsto f([n] = [n]).$$

We often abbreviate and write I for the standard 1-simplex $\Delta[1]$, and refer to it as the (simplicial) interval. We let $S^1 = \Delta[1]/\partial\Delta[1]$, where $\partial\Delta[1]$ is the discrete subspace of the vertices of $\Delta[1]$ (the "endpoints"). To us, the q-sphere is the q-fold smash $S^q = S^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge S^1$. This is not equal to the competing model "$\Delta[q]/\partial\Delta[q]$" used in other texts, but their realizations are homeomorphic.

A *homotopy* between two maps $f_0, f_1 \colon X \to Y \in \mathcal{S}$ is a map $H \colon X \times I \to Y$ such that the composites

$$X \cong X \times \Delta[0] \xrightarrow{id \times d_i} X \times \Delta[1] \xrightarrow{H} Y, \qquad i = 0, 1$$

are f_1 and f_0. Since $|X \times \Delta[1]| \cong |X| \times |\Delta[1]|$, we see that the realization of a homotopy is a homotopy in $\mathcal{T}op$. The pointed version of a homotopy is a map

$$H \colon X \wedge \Delta[1]_+ \to Y$$

(the subscript $_+$ means a disjoint basepoint added).

We say that f_0 and f_1 are *strictly homotopic* if there is a homotopy between them, and *homotopic* if there is a chain of homotopies which connect f_0 and f_1. In this way, "homotopic" forms an equivalence relation.

Another way to say this is that two maps $f_0, f_1 \colon X \to Y$ are homotopic if there is a map

$$H \colon X \times I \to Y, \text{ or in the pointed case } H \colon X \wedge I_+ \to Y$$

which is equal to f_0 and f_1 at the "ends" of I, where I is a finite number of $\Delta[1]$s glued together at the endpoints, i.e., for some sequence of numbers $i_j \in \{0, 1\}$, $1 \le j \le n$, I is the colimit of

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\Delta[1] & & \Delta[1] & & {} & \cdots & {} & & \Delta[1] \\
& \Delta[0] \arrow[ul, "d^1"] \arrow[ur, "d^{i_1}"'] & & \Delta[0] \arrow[ul, "d^{1-i_1}"] \arrow[ur, "d^{i_2}"'] & & & & \Delta[0] \arrow[ul, "d^{1-i_n}"] \arrow[ur, "d^0"'] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

We still denote the two end inclusions $d^0, d^1 \colon * = \Delta[0] \to I$.

We note that elements in $\pi_1(X)$ can be represented by maps $\alpha \colon I \to X$ such that $\alpha d^0 = \alpha d^1 = 0$.

1.3 Function spaces

In analogy with the mapping space, we define the simplicial function space of maps from X to Y to be the simplicial set

$$\underline{\mathcal{S}}(X, Y) = \{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{S}(X \times \Delta[q], Y)\},$$

the cosimplicial structure of the standard simplices $[q] \to \Delta[q]$ makes this into a simplicial set. In the pointed case we set

$$\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X,Y) = \{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{S}_*(X \wedge \Delta[q]_+, Y)$$

We reserve the symbol Y^X for the pointed case: $Y^X = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X,Y)$|textbf, and so $Y^{X_+} = \underline{\mathcal{S}}(X,Y)$. Unfortunately, these definition are not homotopy invariant; for instance, the weak equivalence $B\mathbf{N} \to \sin|B\mathbf{N}|$ does not induce an equivalence $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1, B\mathbf{N}) \to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1, \sin|B\mathbf{N}|)$ (on π_0 it is the inclusion $\mathbf{N} \subset \mathbf{Z}$). To remedy this we define

$$Map(X,Y) = \underline{\mathcal{S}}(X, \sin|Y|)$$

and

$$Map_*(X,Y) = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X, \sin|Y|)$$

In fact, using the adjointness of the singular and realization functor, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} Map(X,Y) \cong& \{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{T}op(|X| \times |\Delta[q]|, |Y|\} \cong \{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{T}op(\Delta^q, \mathcal{T}op(|X|,|Y|)\} \\ =& \sin(\mathcal{T}op(|X|,|Y|)) \end{aligned}$$

and likewise in the pointed case.

These function spaces still have some sort of adjointness properties, in that

$$Map(X \times Y, Z) \cong \mathcal{S}(X, Map(Y,Z)) \xrightarrow{\sim} Map(X, Map(Y,Z))$$

and

$$Map_*(X \wedge Y, Z) \cong \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X, Map_*(Y,Z)) \xrightarrow{\sim} Map_*(X, Map_*(Y,Z))$$

where the equivalences have canonical left inverses.

1.4 The nerve of a category

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a small category. For every $n \geq 0$, regard $[n] = \{0 < 1 < \cdots < n\}$ as a category (if $a \leq b$ there is a unique map $a \leftarrow b$: beware that many authors let the arrow point in the other direction. The choice of convention does not matter to the theory). Furthermore, we identify the maps in Δ with the corresponding functors, so that Δ sits as a full subcategory of the category of (small) categories.

Definition 1.4.1 The *nerve* $N\mathcal{C}$ of the small category $\mathcal{C}$ is the simplicial category

$$[q] \mapsto N_q\mathcal{C} = \{\text{category of functors } [q] \to \mathcal{C}\}$$

The nerve is a functor from the category of small categories to simplicial categories.

We see that the set of objects $B_q\mathcal{C} = obN_q\mathcal{C}$, is the set of all chains $c_0 \leftarrow c_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow c_q$ in $\mathcal{C}$, and in particular $obN_0\mathcal{C} = ob\mathcal{C}$. Frequently, the underlying simplicial set $B\mathcal{C} = obN\mathcal{C}$ is also referred to as the nerve or *classifying space* of $\mathcal{C}$. Note that $B[q] \cong \Delta[q]$.

The classifying space functor $B = obN$, as a functor from small categories to spaces, has a left adjoint given by sending a simplicial set X to the category CX defined as follows. The set of objects is X_0. The set of morphisms is generated by X_1, where $y \in X_1$ is regarded as an arrow $y\colon d_0y \to d_1y$, subject to the relations that $s_0x = 1_x$ for every $x \in X_0$, and for every $z \in X_2$

$$\begin{tikzcd} d_0d_0z \arrow[rr, "d_0z"] \arrow[dr, "d_1z"'] & & d_1d_0z \arrow[dl, "d_2z"] \\ & d_1d_1z & \end{tikzcd}$$

commutes. The adjunction map $CB\mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}$ is an isomorphism, and the classifying space B is a full and faithful functor (recall that a functor $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is *full* (resp. faithful) if it induces a surjection (resp. injection) $\mathcal{C}(c, c') \to \mathcal{D}(F(c), F(c'))$ of morphism sets for $c, c' \in ob\mathcal{C}$).

1.4.2 Natural transformations and homotopies

The classifying space takes natural transformations to homotopies: if $\eta\colon F_1 \to F_0$ is a natural transformation of functors $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$, regard it as a functor $\eta\colon \mathcal{C} \times [1] \to \mathcal{D}$ by sending $(c \leftarrow c', 0 < 1)$ to

$$\begin{tikzcd} F_1(c) \arrow[d, "\eta_c"] & F_1(c') \arrow[l] \arrow[d, "\eta_{c'}"] \\ F_0(c) & F_0(c') \arrow[l] \end{tikzcd}$$

Thus we have defined a homotopy between F_0 and F_1:

$$B\mathcal{C} \times \Delta[1] \cong B\mathcal{C} \times B[1] \cong B(\mathcal{C} \times [1]) \to B\mathcal{D}.$$

In view of this, and of the isomorphisms between the category of small categories and its image in $\mathcal{S}$ (resulting from the fact that the classifying space is full and faithful and injective on objects), it is customary to use language that normally refers to spaces to categories. For instance, a functor may be said to be a weak equivalence if the induced map of classifying spaces is.

1.4.3 Over and under categories

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a category and c an object in $\mathcal{C}$, the category over c, written $\mathcal{C}/c$, is the category whose objects are maps $f\colon d \to c \in \mathcal{C}$, and a morphism from f to g is a factorization $f = g\alpha$. More generally, if $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is a functor and d is an object of $\mathcal{D}$, the *over category* F/d is the category whose objects are pairs (c, f), where $c \in ob\mathcal{C}$ and $f\colon F(c) \to d \in \mathcal{D}$. A morphism from (c, f) to (c', f') is a morphism $\alpha\colon c \to c' \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $f = f'F(\alpha)$. The *under categories* $c/\mathcal{C}$ and d/F are defined dually. Over and under categories are frequently referred to as *comma categories* in the literature.

The over category can be used to define simplicial homotopies for simplicial objects in an arbitrary category $\mathcal{C}$ as follows. A homotopy between two maps in $\mathcal{S}$ is a map $X \times \Delta[1] \to Y$. In dimension q, this is simply a function $\coprod_{\phi \in \Delta([q],[1])} X_q \cong X_q \times \Delta[1]_q \to Y_q$, or in other word a collection of functions $\eta_\phi \colon X_q \to Y_q$ indexed over $\phi \in \Delta([q],[1])$, satisfying compatibility conditions. This can be summarized and generalized as follows:

Definition 1.4.4 Let X and Y be simplicial objects in a category $\mathcal{C}$, and consider two maps $F_0, F_1 \colon X \to Y$. Let $S \colon \Delta/[1] \to \Delta$ be the forgetful functor, sending $\phi \colon [q] \to [1]$ to $[q]$. A *simplicial homotopy* from F_0 to F_1 is a natural transformation $H \colon X \circ S \to Y \circ S$ such that for $i = 0$ and $i = 1$, $F_i = H(\phi_i)$, where $\phi_i[q] \to [1]$ is the constant order preserving function with value i.

This makes it clear that

Lemma 1.4.5 *Any functor $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$, when applied degreewise to simplicial objects, takes simplicial homotopies to simplicial homotopies.* ☺

1.5 Filtered colimits in $\mathcal{S}_*$

1.5.1 Subdivisions and Kan's Ex^∞

Consider the subcategory $\Delta_m \subset \Delta$ with all objects, but just monomorphisms. For any $n \geq 0$ we consider the *subdivision* of the standard n-simplex $\Delta[n]$. To be precise, it is $B(\Delta_m/[n])$, the classifying space of the category of order preserving monomorphisms into $[n]$. For every $\phi \colon [n] \to [m] \in \Delta$ we get a functor $\phi_* \colon \Delta_m/[n] \to \Delta_m/[m]$ sending $\alpha \colon [q] \subseteq [n]$ to the unique monomorphism $\phi_*(\alpha)$ such that $\phi\alpha = \phi_*(\alpha)\phi$ where ϕ is an epimorphism (see section 0.10). This means that $B(\Delta_m/-)$ is a cosimplicial space, and the functor $\Delta_m/[n] \to [n]$ sending $\alpha \colon [p] \subseteq [n]$ to $\alpha(p) \in [n]$ defines a cosimplicial map to the standard simplices $\{[n] \mapsto \Delta[n] = B[n]\}$.

For any simplicial set X, Kan then defines

$$Ex(X) = \{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{S}(B(\Delta_m/[q]), X)\}.$$

This is a simplicial set, and $B(\Delta_m/[q]) \to \Delta[q]$, defines an inclusion $X \subseteq Ex(X)$. Set

$$Ex^\infty X = \varinjlim_k Ex^{(k)}(X).$$

The inclusion $X \subseteq Ex^\infty X$ is a weak equivalence, and $Ex^\infty X$ is always a *Kan complex*, that is a *fibrant* object in the sense of section 3. In fact, they give the possibility of defining the homotopy groups without reference to topological spaces via

$$\pi_q X = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^q, Ex^\infty X)/\text{homotopy}.$$

1.5.2 Filtered colimits in $\mathcal{S}_*$

Recall that a *filtered category* J is a nonempty category such that for any $j, j' \in obJ$ there are maps $j \to k$, $j' \to k$ to a common object, and such that if $f, g\colon j \to j'$, then there is an $h\colon j' \to k$ such that $hf = hg$.

A *filtered colimits* is a colimit over a *filtered category* (see [161, p. 207]). Filtered colimits of sets are especially nice because they commute with finite limits (see [161, p. 211]). It immediately follows that filtered colimits commute with finite limits also for simplicial sets, and this is one of the many places we should be happy for not considering general topological spaces.

Given a space Y, its N*-skeleton* is the subspace $sk_N Y \subseteq Y$ generated by simplices in dimension less than or equal to N.

A space Y is *finite* if it has only finitely many non degenerate simplices. Alternatively finiteness can be spelled out as, $Y = sk_N Y$ for some N, Y_0 is finite, and its q-skeleton for $q \le N$ is formed by iterated pushouts over finite sets D_q

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bigvee_{D_q} \partial\Delta[q]_+ & \longrightarrow & \bigvee_{D_q} \Delta[q]_+ \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ sk_{q-1}Y & \longrightarrow & sk_q Y \end{array}$$

(in view of the applications below we have displayed the pointed case. For the unpointed case, remove the extra base points and substitute disjoint unions for the wedges).

Lemma 1.5.3 *Let J be a filtered category, $X\colon J \to \mathcal{S}_*$ a functor and Y a finite space. Then the canonical map*

$$\lim_{\overrightarrow{J}} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(Y, X) \to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(Y, \lim_{\overrightarrow{J}} X)$$

is an isomorphism

Proof: Since $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(Y, -)_q = \mathcal{S}_*(Y \wedge \Delta[q]_+, -)$ and $Y \wedge \Delta[q]_+$ is finite, it is clearly enough to prove that

$$\lim_{\overrightarrow{J}} \mathcal{S}_*(Y, X) \cong \mathcal{S}_*(Y, \lim_{\overrightarrow{J}} X).$$

Remember that filtered colimits commute with finite limits. Since Y is a finite colimit of diagrams made out of $\Delta[q]$'s, this means that it is enough to prove the lemma for $Y = \Delta[q]$, which is trivial since $\mathcal{S}_*(\Delta[q], X) = X_q$ and colimits are formed degreewise. ∎

Lemma 1.5.4 *If J is a filtered category, then the canonical map*

$$\lim_{\overrightarrow{J}} Ex^\infty X \to Ex^\infty \lim_{\overrightarrow{J}} X$$

is an isomorphism.

Proof: Since colimits commute with colimits, it is enough to prove that Ex commute with filtered colimits, but this is clear since $Ex(X)_n = \mathcal{S}_*(B(\Delta_m/[n]), X)$ and $B(\Delta_m/[n])$ is a simplicial finite set equal to its n-skeleton. ∎

Proposition 1.5.5 *Homotopy groups commute with filtered colimits.*

Proof: Let $X \in ob\mathcal{S}_*$ and J be a filtered category. First note that π_0, being a colimit itself, commutes with arbitrary colimits. For $q \geq 0$ we have isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned}\pi_q \varinjlim_J X \cong& \pi_0 \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^q, Ex^\infty \varinjlim_J X) \cong \pi_0 \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^q, \varinjlim_J Ex^\infty X) \\ &\cong \varinjlim_J \pi_0 \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^q, Ex^\infty X) \cong \varinjlim_J \pi_q X\end{aligned}$$

∎

1.6 The classifying space of a group

Let G be a group, and regard it as a one point category whose morphisms are the group elements. Then the classifying space 1.4 takes the simple form $B_q G = G^{\times q}$, and BG is called the *classifying space* of the group G (which makes a lot of sense, since homotopy classes of maps into BG are in bijective correspondence with isomorphism classes of G-bundles. The homotopy groups of BG are given by

$$\pi_i(BG) = \begin{cases} G & \text{if } i = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

1.6.1 The $\overline{W}$-construction

If G is a simplicial group there is an alternative construction for the homotopy type of $\text{diag}^* BG$, called $\overline{W}G$, which is most easily described as follows: We have a functor $\sqcup \colon \Delta \times \Delta \to \Delta$ sending two ordered sets S and T to the naturally ordered disjoint union $S \sqcup T$. For any simplicial set X we may consider the bisimplicial set $sd_2 X$ obtained by precomposing X with $\sqcup$ (so that the $(sd_2 X)_{p,q} = X_{p+q+1}$: the diagonal of this construction was called the (second) *edgewise subdivision* in section VI.1.2). We define $\overline{W}G$ to be space with q-simplices

$$\overline{W}_q G = \{\text{bisimplicial maps } sd_2 \Delta[q] \to BG\},$$

where the simplicial structure is induced by the cosimplicial structure of $[q] \mapsto \Delta[q]$. This description is isomorphic to the one given in [170] (with reversed orientation).

1.6.2 Kan's loop group

The classifying space BG of a group G is a reduced space (i.e., it only has one zero simplex). On the category of reduced spaces X there is a particularly nice model GX for the loop functor due to Kan [132], see [170, p. 118] or [86]. If $q \geq 0$ we have that $G_q X$ is the free group generated by X_{q+1} modulo contracting the image of s_0 to the base point. The degeneracy and face maps are induced from X except the extreme face map (which extreme depends on your choice of orientation, see [170, definition 26.3] for one choice). The Kan loop group is adjoint to the $\overline{W}$-construction described above. As a matter of fact, $\overline{W}$ and G form a "Quillen equivalence" which among other things implies that the homotopy category of reduced spaces is equivalent to the homotopy category of simplicial groups.

1.7 Path objects

Let Y be a simplicial object in a category $\mathcal{C}$. There is a convenient combinatorial model mimicking the path space Y^I. Let $\sqcup\colon \Delta \times \Delta \to \Delta$ be the ordered disjoint union.

Definition 1.7.1 Let Y be a simplicial object in a category $\mathcal{C}$. Then the *path object* is the simplicial object PY given by precomposing Y with $[0]\sqcup ?\colon \Delta \longrightarrow \Delta$.

Hence $P_qY = Y_{q+1}$. The map $PY \to Y$ corresponding to evaluation is given by the natural transformation $d^0\colon id \to [0] \sqcup id$ (concretely: it is $P_qY = Y_{q+1} \xrightarrow{d_0} Y_q$).

Lemma 1.7.2 *The maps $Y_0 \to PY \to Y_0$ induced by the natural maps $[0] \to [0] \sqcup [q] \to [0]$ are simplicial homotopy equivalences.*

Proof: That $PY \to Y_0 \to PY$ is simplicially homotopic to the identity follows, using the formulation in 1.4.4, by considering the natural transformation of functors $(\Delta/[1])^o \to \Delta^o$ sending $\phi\colon [q] \to [1]$ to $\phi_*\colon [0] \sqcup [q] \to [0] \sqcup [q]$ with $\phi_*(0) = 0$ and

$$\phi_*(j+1) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \phi(j) = 0 \\ j+1 & \text{if } \phi(j) = 1 \end{cases}.$$

∎

The connection to the path-space is the following: considering Δ as a subcategory of the category of small categories in the usual way, there is a projection $[1] \times [q] \to [0] \sqcup [q]$ sending $(0, j)$ to $0 \in [0] \sqcup [q]$ and $(1, j)$ to $1 + j \in [1 + q] = [0] \sqcup [q]$. If X is a simplicial set, the usual path space is

$$X^{I_+} = \underline{\mathcal{S}}(\Delta[1], X) = \{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{S}(\Delta[1] \times \Delta[q], X) = \mathcal{S}(N([1] \times [q]), X)\}$$

whereas $PX = \{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{S}(N([0] \sqcup [q]), X)\}$, and the injection $PX \subseteq X^{I_+}$ is induced by the above projection.

1.8 Cosimplicial spaces.

Recall that a cosimplicial space is a functor $X\colon \Delta \to \mathcal{S}$. The category of cosimplicial spaces is a "simplicial category". If Z is a space and X is a cosimplicial space, then $Z \times X$ is the cosimplicial space whose value on $[q] \in \Delta$ is $Z \times X^q$. The function space

$$c\mathcal{S}(X, Y) \in \mathcal{S}$$

of maps from the cosimplicial space X to the cosimplicial space Y has q-simplices the set of maps (natural transformation of functors $\Delta^o \times \Delta \to \mathcal{S}$)

$$\Delta[q] \times X \to Y.$$

The *total space* of a cosimplicial space X is the space

$$\operatorname{Tot} X = c\mathcal{S}(\Delta[-], X)$$

(where $\Delta[-]$ is the cosimplicial space whose value on $[q] \in \Delta$ is $\Delta[q] = \Delta(-, [q])$). The q-simplices are cosimplicial maps $\Delta[q] \times \Delta[-] \to X$.

1.8.1 The pointed case

In the pointed case we make the usual modifications: A pointed cosimplicial space is a functor $X : \Delta \to \mathcal{S}_*$, the function space $c\mathcal{S}_*(X, Y)$ has q-simplices the set of maps $\Delta[q]_+ \wedge X \to Y$, and the total space $\operatorname{Tot} X = c\mathcal{S}_*(\Delta[-]_+, X)$ is isomorphic (as an unbased space) to what you get if you forget the basepoint before taking Tot.

2 Spectra and simplicial abelian groups

2.1 Simplicial abelian groups

Let $\mathcal{A}b$ be the category of abelian groups. Consider the free/forgetful adjoint pair

$$\mathcal{A}b \underset{U}{\overset{\mathbf{Z}[-]}{\leftrightarrows}} \mathcal{E}ns$$

where $\mathbf{Z}[X]$ is the free abelian group on the set X (i.e., the coproduct of $\mathbf{Z}$ with itself indexed over the set X). We extend this to an adjoint pair between the category $\mathcal{A} = s\mathcal{A}b$ of simplicial abelian groups and the category $\mathcal{S}$ of spaces. If M is a simplicial abelian group, then its homotopy groups are defined as $\pi_*(M) = \pi_*(UM, 0)$. The *homology* of a simplicial set X defined to be $H_*(X) = \pi_*(\mathbf{Z}[X])$, and this definition is naturally isomorphic to the singular homology of the realization.

In the pointed case, the adjoint pair

$$\mathcal{A}b \underset{U}{\overset{\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[-]}{\leftrightarrows}} \mathcal{E}ns_*,$$

where $\mathcal{E}ns_*$ is the category of pointed sets and $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X] = \mathbf{Z}[X]/\mathbf{Z}[*]$, gives rise to an adjoint pair between $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{S}_*$, and $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ represent the *reduced homology*: $\tilde{H}_*(X) = \pi_*(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X])$. The unit of adjunction $X = 1 \cdot X \subseteq U\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[X]$ induces the *Hurewicz map* $\pi_*(X) \to \tilde{H}_*(X)$ on homotopy groups.

2.1.1 Closed structure

The category of simplicial abelian groups has the structure of a closed category in the sense of definition 9.1.1. That is, we have a tensor product

$$M \otimes N = \{[q] \mapsto M_q \otimes N_q\},$$

and morphism objects

$$\underline{\mathcal{A}}(M, N) = \{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{A}(M \otimes \mathbf{Z}[\Delta[q]], N)\}$$

satisfying the necessary conditions (see 9.1.1).

2.1.2 Eilenberg – Mac Lane spaces

If G is an abelian group, then the classifying space BG of section 1.6 becomes a simplicial abelian group. Hence we may apply the construction again, and get a bisimplicial abelian group, and so on. Taking the diagonal, we get a sequence G, BG, diag^*BBG, ... The nth term, diag^*B^nG, is isomorphic to $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^n] \otimes G$, and is often written $H(G, n)$, and is characterized up to homotopy by having only one nonzero homotopy group $\pi_n = G$, and such spaces are called *Eilenberg-Mac Lane spaces*. We call any space (weakly) equivalent to a simplicial abelian group, an Eilenberg–Mac Lane space. Note that there is a map $S^1 \wedge H(G, n) \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1] \otimes H(G, n) \cong H(G, n+1)$, and so they are examples of spectra (see section 2.2 below).

2.1.3 Chain complexes

A *chain complex* is a sequence of abelian groups

$$C_* = \{\cdots \leftarrow C_{q-1} \leftarrow C_q \leftarrow C_{q+1} \leftarrow \dots\}$$

such that any composite is zero. A map of chain complexes $f_*: C_* \to D_*$ is a collection of maps $f_q: C_q \to D_q$ such that the diagrams

$$\begin{tikzcd} C_q \arrow[r, "f_q"] \arrow[d] & D_q \arrow[d] \\ C_q \arrow[r, "f_{q-1}"] & D_q \end{tikzcd}$$

commute. We let Ch be the category of chain complexes, and $Ch^{\geq 0}$ be the full subcategory of chain complexes C_* such that $C_q = 0$ if $q < 0$.

If C_* is a chain complex, we let $Z_qC = \ker\{C_q \to C_{q-1}\}$ (cycles), $B_qC = \mathrm{im}\{C_{q+1} \to C_q\}$ (boundaries) and $H_qC_* = Z_qC/B_qC$ (homology).

2.1.4 The normalized chain complex

The isomorphism between simplicial abelian groups and chain complexes concentrated in non-negative degrees is given by the *normalized chain complex*: If M is a simplicial abelian group, then $C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(M)$ (which is usually called N_*M, an option unpalatable to us since this notation is already occupied by the nerve) is the chain complex given by

$$C_q^{\mathrm{norm}}(M) = \bigcap_{i=0}^{q-1} \ker\{d_i \colon M_q \to M_{q-1}\}$$

and boundary map $C_q^{\mathrm{norm}}M \to C_{q-1}^{\mathrm{norm}}M$ given by the remaining face map d_q. As commented earlier, this defines an isomorphism of categories between $\mathcal{A}$ and $Ch^{\geq 0}$, see [170, 22.4]. This isomorphism sends homotopies to chain homotopies (and conversely) and interacts well with tensor products and shifts. Note the isomorphism between $C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1])$ and the chain complex $\mathbf{Z}[-1] = \{\cdots = 0 = 0 \to \mathbf{Z} \to 0\}$ (the "-1" signifies – confusingly – that the copy of the integers is in degree 1).

Also, using a combinatorial description of the homotopy groups as in [170] (valid for "Kan complexes") one gets that, for a simplicial abelian group M, there is a natural identification $\pi_*M \cong H_*C^{\mathrm{norm}}(M)$ between the homotopy groups of the underlying simplicial set of M and the homology groups of the normalized chain complex.

2.1.5 The Moore complex

Associated to a simplicial abelian group M there is another chain complex, the *Moore complex* C_*M, defined by $C_qM = M_q$ with boundary map given by the alternating sum $\delta = \sum_{j=0}^{q}(-1)^j d_j \colon M_q \to M_{q-1}$. The inclusion of the normalized complex into the Moore complex $C_*^{\mathrm{norm}}(M) \subseteq C_*(M)$ is a homotopy equivalence (see e.g., [170, 22.1]), and so one has a chain of natural isomorphism

$$\pi_*M \cong H_*C^{\mathrm{norm}}(M) \cong HC_*(M).$$

It should also be mentioned that the Moore complex is the direct sum of the normalized complex and the subcomplex generated by the images of the degeneracy maps. Hence you will often see the normalized complex defined as the quotient of the Moore complex by the degenerate chains.

2.2 Spectra

There are many different models for spectra, each having their own merits (but all have equivalent homotopy categories with respect to the stable equivalences – the *stable category*). We will only need the very simplest version.

A *spectrum* is a sequence of spaces $X = \{X^0, X^1, X^2, \dots\}$ together with (structure) maps $S^1 \wedge X^k \to X^{k+1}$ for $k \geq 0$. A map of spectra $f \colon X \to Y$ is a sequence of maps

$f^k\colon X^k \to Y^k$ compatible with the structure maps: the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S^1 \wedge X^k & \longrightarrow & X^{k+1} \\ \Big\downarrow f^k & & \Big\downarrow f^{k+1} \\ S^1 \wedge Y^k & \longrightarrow & Y^{k+1} \end{array}$$

commute.

We let $\mathcal{S}pt$ be the resulting category of spectra. This category is enriched in $\mathcal{S}_*$, and also tensored and cotensored in the sense of 9.2.2. If X is a spectrum and K is a pointed space, then $X \wedge K = \{n \mapsto X^n \wedge K\}$ and the space of maps from K to X is $\{n \mapsto \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(K, X^n)\}$. The morphism spaces are given by

$$\underline{\mathcal{S}pt}^0(X,Y) = \{[q] \mapsto \mathcal{S}pt(X \wedge \Delta[q]_+, Y)\}.$$

In fact, this is the zero space of a function spectrum

$$\underline{\mathcal{S}pt}(X,Y) = \{k \mapsto \underline{\mathcal{S}pt}^0(X, Y^{(k+?)})\}.$$

There is a specially important spectrum, namely the *sphere spectrum*

$$\underline{\mathbf{S}} = \{k \mapsto S^k = S^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge S^1\}$$

whose structure maps are the identity. Note that there is a natural isomorphism between the function spectrum $\underline{\mathcal{S}pt}(\underline{\mathbf{S}}, X)$ and X.

The Eilenberg–Mac Lane spaces of section 2.1.2 give a rich supply of important spectra – the *Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectra*: if M is a simplicial abelian group, then $HM = \{n \mapsto M \otimes \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^n]\}$ is the Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum associated with M (c.f. the Γ-space version in II.1). More generally, it is not uncustomary to refer to any wedge of suspensions of Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectra as an Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum.

Recall that if $Y \in \mathcal{S}_*$, then $\Omega^k Y = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^k, \sin|Y|)$. The adjointness of the singular and realization functors gives us natural weak equivalences $\Omega^k(\Omega^l Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} \Omega^{k+l} Y$.

Let $\eta^n_X\colon \sin|X^n| \to \Omega^1 X^{n+1}$ be the adjoint of $S^1 \wedge \sin|X^n| \xrightarrow{\sim} \sin|S^1 \wedge X^n| \to \sin|X^{n+1}|$. We say that a spectrum X is an *Ω-spectrum* if η^n_X is an equivalence for all n.

2.2.1 Ω-spectra

For a spectrum X we define the spectrum

$$QX = \{n \mapsto \varinjlim_k \Omega^k X^{k+n}\}$$

where the colimit is taken over the maps

$$\Omega^k X^{k+n} \xrightarrow{\Omega^k(\eta^{k+n}_X)_*} \Omega^k(\Omega^1 X^{k+n+1}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \Omega^{k+1} X^{k+n+1}.$$

This is an Ω-spectrum.

Definition 2.2.2 Let X be a spectrum and q an integer. The qth *homotopy group* of X is defined as the group

$$\pi_q X = \lim_{\overrightarrow{k}} \pi_{q+k} X^k$$

where the colimit is over the maps $\pi_{q+k}X^k \to \pi_{q+k}\Omega X^{k+1} \cong \pi_{q+k+1}X^{k+1}$ induced by η_X^k for $k > q$.

We note that π_q defines a functor from the category of spectra to abelian groups.

Definition 2.2.3 A map of spectra $f\colon X \to Y$ is a *pointwise equivalence* if for each integer n the map $f^n\colon X^n \to Y^n$ is a weak equivalence of spaces, and f is a *stable equivalence* if it induces an isomorphism $\pi_* f\colon \pi_* X \to \pi_* Y$ on homotopy groups.

Note that a map of spectra $X \to Y$ is a stable equivalence if and only if the induced map $QX \to QY$ is a pointwise equivalence.

We say that a spectrum X is *cofibrant* if all the structure maps $S^1 \wedge X^k \to X^{k+1}$ are cofibrations (i.e., inclusions). We say that a spectrum X is n*-connected* if $\pi_q X = 0$ for $q \leq n$. A spectrum is *bounded below* if it is n-connected for some integer n.

We then get the trivial, but important, observation that any spectrum is the direct colimit of bounded below spectra

Lemma 2.2.4 *Let X be a spectrum. Then there is a canonical pointwise equivalence $C(X) \xrightarrow{\sim} X$ where $C(X)$ is a cofibrant spectrum, and a natural filtration*

$$C_0(X) \subseteq C_1(X) \subseteq \cdots \subseteq \lim_{\overrightarrow{n}} C_n(X) = C(X)$$

such that $C_n(X)$ is a cofibrant $-n-1$-connected spectrum.

Proof: Let $C(X)^0 = X^0$, and define $C(X)^1$ to be the mapping cone of $S^1 \wedge X^0 \to X^1$. Assuming $C(X)^n \xrightarrow{\sim} X^n$ has been constructed, let $C(X)^{n+1}$ be the mapping cone of the composite $S^1 \wedge C(X)^n \xrightarrow{\sim} S^1 \wedge X^n \to X^{n+1}$. This gives us a pointwise equivalence $C(X) \xrightarrow{\sim} X$, and by construction $C(X)$ is cofibrant. Let

$$C_n(X) = \{C(X)^0, C(X)^1, \ldots, C(X)^n, S^1 \wedge C(X)^n, \ldots\}$$

with the obvious structure maps, and we see that $C(X) = \lim_{\overrightarrow{n}} C_n(X)$. ∎

Example 2.2.5 Given an abelian group G and integer $n > 0$, the n'th *Moore space* is a (choice of a) space $M(G,n)$ such that $\tilde{H}_k(M(G,n)) = 0$ if $k \neq n$ and $\tilde{H}_n(M(G,n)) = G$ (e.g., build it from some representation of G in terms of generators and relations). Note that we may choose $M(G \oplus H, n) = M(G,n) \vee M(H,n)$. The *Moore spectrum* MG is the associated suspension spectrum $n \mapsto \Sigma^{n-1} M(G,1)$ (interpreted as a point if $n = 0$).

3 Homotopical algebra

In 1967, Quillen [199] provided a setup that summarized much of the formal structure seen in homotopy theory, with a view to applying it to situations that were not captured classically by homological algebra, in particular to the category of simplicial rings (the homomorphisms from one ring to another only forms a set, not an abelian group). This theory has proved to be useful in a wide variety of situations, although considered to be rather on the abstract side until the techniques saw a dramatic renaissance in the 1990's. We summarize the little of this theory, *(simplicial closed) model categories*, that is needed for out purposes. For fuller accounts, see either one of [199], [119], [117] or [86].

In homotopy theory there are three important concepts: *fibrations, cofibrations* and *weak equivalences*. The important thing is to know how these concepts relate to each other: Consider the (solid) commuting diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} A \arrow[r] \arrow[d, tail, "i"'] & E \arrow[d, "f"] \\ X \arrow[r] \arrow[ur, dashed, "s"] & B \end{tikzcd}$$

where i is a cofibration and f is a fibration. If either i or f are weak equivalences, then there exists a (dotted) map $s\colon X \to E$ making the resulting diagram commutative. The map s will in general only be unique up to homotopy (there is a general rule in this game which says that "existence implies uniqueness", meaning that the existence property also can be used to prove that there is a homotopy between different liftings).

Note that there may be many meaningful choices of weak equivalences, fibrations and cofibration on a given category.

3.1 Examples

1. **Spaces**. In $\mathcal{S}$ the weak equivalences are the maps $f\colon X \to Y$ which induce isomorphisms on path components and on all homotopy groups $\pi_*(X, x) \to \pi_*(Y, f(x))$ for all $x \in X_0$. The cofibrations are simply the injective maps, and the fibrations are all maps which have the lifting property described above with respect to the cofibrations which are weak equivalences. These are classically called *Kan fibrations*.

   These notions also pass over to the subcategory $\mathcal{S}_*$ of pointed simplicial sets. The inclusion of the basepoint is always a cofibration (i.e., all spaces are *cofibrant*), but the projection onto a one point space is not necessarily a fibration (i.e., not all spaces are *fibrant*). The fibrant spaces are also called *Kan spaces* (or *Kan complexes*).

2. **Topological spaces**. In $\mathcal{T}op$ and $\mathcal{T}op_*$, weak equivalences are still those which induce isomorphisms on homotopy. The fibrations are the *Serre fibrations*, and the cofibrations are those which satisfy the lifting property with respect to the Serre

fibrations which are weak equivalences. All topological spaces are fibrant, but not all are cofibrant. CW-complexes are cofibrant. Both the realization functor and the singular functor preserve weak equivalences, fibrations and cofibrations. The fact that the realization of a Kan fibration is a Serre fibration is a cornerstone in the theory, due to Gabriel–Zisman and Quillen, see e.g., [86, I.10.10].

3. **Simplicial groups, rings, monoids, abelian groups**. In $s\mathcal{G}$, the category of simplicial groups, a map is a weak equivalence or a fibration if it is in $\mathcal{S}_*$, and the cofibrations are the maps which have the lifting property with respect to the fibrations which are weak equivalences. Note that this is much more restrictive than just requiring it to be a cofibration (inclusion) in $\mathcal{S}_*$ (the lifting is measured in different categories). However, if $X \to Y \in \mathcal{S}_*$ is a cofibration, then $F(X) \to F(Y)$ is also a cofibration, where $F\colon \mathcal{E}ns_* \to \mathcal{G}$ is the free functor, which sends a pointed set X to the free group on X modulo the basepoint.

   Likewise in $\mathcal{A}$, the category of simplicial abelian groups, and *sRing*, the category of simplicial rings.

   In these categories fibrations are easily recognized: a map $G \to H$ of simplicial groups is a fibration if and only if the induced map $G \to H \times_{\pi_0 H} \pi_0 G$ is a surjection, where $\pi_0 G$ is considered as a constant simplicial group. In particular, all simplicial groups are fibrant.

4. **Functor categories**. Let I be any small category, and let $[I, \mathcal{S}_*]$ be the category of functors from I to $\mathcal{S}_*$. This is a closed simplicial model category in the "pointwise" structure: a map $X \to Y$ (natural transformation) is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration) if $X(i) \to Y(i)$ is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration) of simplicial sets, and it is a cofibration if it has the left lifting property with respect to all maps that are both weak equivalences and fibrations. Important examples are the pointwise structure on Γ-spaces (see chapter II.2.1.5) and G-spaces (see below).

   Generally, it is the pointwise structure which is used for the construction of homotopy (co)limits (see section 6 below).

5. **The pointwise structure on spectra**. A map $X \to Y$ of spectra is a *pointwise equivalence* (resp. *pointwise fibration*) if for every k the map $X^k \to Y^k$ is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration) of pointed simplicial sets. A map is a *cofibration* if it has the lifting property with respect to maps that are both pointwise fibrations and pointwise equivalences. A spectrum X is cofibrant if all the structure maps $S^1 \wedge X^k \to X^{k+1}$ are cofibrations (i.e., inclusions).

6. **The stable structure on spectra**. A map $X \to Y$ of spectra is a *stable equivalence* if it induces an isomorphism on homotopy groups (see 2.2.2), and a (stable) *cofibration* if it is a cofibration in the pointwise structure. The map is a *stable fibration* if it has the lifting property with respect to maps that are both cofibrations and

stable equivalences. So, in particular, a spectrum is stably fibrant if it is a pointwise fibrant Ω-spectrum.

7. G**-spaces and** G**-spectra**. Let G be a simplicial monoid. The category of G-spaces (see A.8) is a closed simplicial model category with the following structure: a map is a G-equivalence (resp. G-fibration) if it is an equivalence (resp. fibration) of spaces, and a cofibration if it has the left lifting property with respect to all maps that are both G-equivalences and G-fibrations. Also, the category of *G-spectra* (see A.2) has a pointwise and a stable structure giving closed simplicial model categories. *Pointwise fibrations* and *pointwise equivalences* (resp. *stable fibrations* and *stable equivalences*) are given by forgetting down to spectra, and *pointwise* (resp. *stable*) *cofibrations* are given by the left lifting property.

   Many authors refer to G-spectra in this stable structure as *naïve G-spectra* or *spectra with G-action* to distinguish them from versions, often called *genuine G-spectra* or the *equivariant structure*, where representations of the group are built into the structure maps and where a weak equivalence is a G-map that induces a stable equivalence on fixed point spectra of all subgroups of G. Note that the more sophisticated theory is used in the calculations in section VII.3.

The examples 3.1.1–3.1.3 can be summarized as follows: Consider the diagram

$$\mathcal{T}op_* \underset{\sin}{\overset{|-|}{\leftrightarrows}} \mathcal{S}_* \underset{U}{\overset{F}{\rightleftarrows}} s\mathcal{G} \underset{U}{\overset{H_1(-)}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{A} \underset{U}{\overset{T_{\mathbf{Z}}(-)}{\rightleftarrows}} sRing$$

where the U are forgetful functors, $T_{\mathbf{Z}}(A)$ the tensor ring on an abelian group, and $H_1(-) = -/[-,-]\colon \mathcal{G} \to \mathcal{A}b$ (applied degreewise). We know what weak equivalences in $\mathcal{T}op_*$ are, and we define them everywhere else to be the maps which are sent to weak equivalences in $\mathcal{T}op_*$. We know what cofibrations are in $\mathcal{S}_*$, and use the axiom to define the fibrations. We then define fibrations everywhere else to be the maps that are sent to fibrations in $\mathcal{S}_*$, and use the axioms to define the cofibrations.

These adjunctions also provide "morphism spaces". For instance, for simplicial groups G and G' we may define the *space* of group homomorphisms from G to G' to be $\underline{s\mathcal{G}}(G, G') = \{[q] \mapsto s\mathcal{G}(G * F(\Delta[q]_+), G')\}$, where $*$ is the coproduct in the category of groups (for obscure reasons sometimes referred to as the free product). For a more general view on morphism spaces in categories of simplicial objects, see example 9.2.4.4.

The proof that 3.1.1–3.1.4 define closed simplicial model categories is contained in [199, II4], and the proof 3.1.5 and 3.1.6 is in [30]. None of these proofs state explicitly the functoriality of the factorizations of the axiom CM5 below, but for each of the cases it may be easily reconstructed from a *small object* kind of argument [119, theorem 2.1.14]. For a discrete group G, the case of G-spaces is a special case of 3.1.4 but a direct proof in the general case is fairly straight forward, and the same proof works the pointwise structure on G-spectra. The proof for the stable structure then follows from the pointwise structure by the same proof as in [30] for the case $G = *$.

3.2 The axioms

For convenience we list the axioms for a closed simplicial model category $\mathcal{C}$. It is a category enriched in $\mathcal{S}$, and it is tensored and cotensored (see A.9.2.2). We call the function spaces $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(-,-)$. Furthermore $\mathcal{C}$ has three classes of maps called *fibrations*, *cofibrations* and *weak equivalences* satisfying the following axioms

CM1 $\mathcal{C}$ is closed under finite limits and colimits.

CM2 (Two-out-of-three) For two composable morphisms

$$b \xrightarrow{f} c \xrightarrow{g} d \in \mathcal{C},$$

if any two of f, g and gf are weak equivalences, then so is the third.

CM3 (Closed under retracts) If a map f is a retract of g (in the arrow category), and g is a weak equivalence, a fibration or a cofibration, then so is f.

CM4 Given a solid diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} A \arrow[r] \arrow[d, tail, "i"'] & E \arrow[d, two heads] \\ X \arrow[r] \arrow[ur, dashed, "s"] & B \end{tikzcd}$$

where i is a cofibration and f is a fibration. If either i or f are weak equivalences, then there exists a (dotted) map $s\colon X \to E$ making the resulting diagram commutative.

CM5 (Functorial factorization axiom) Any map f may be functorially factored as $f = ip = jq$ where i is a cofibration, p a fibration and a weak equivalence, j a cofibration and a weak equivalence, and q a fibration.

SM7 If $i\colon A \rightarrowtail B$ is a cofibration and $p\colon X \to Y$ is a fibration, then the canonical map

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(B,X) \xrightarrow{(i^*,p_*)} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(A,X)\prod_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}(A,Y)}\underline{\mathcal{C}}(B,Y)$$

is a fibration of simplicial sets. If either i or p are weak equivalences, then (i^*,p_*) is also a weak equivalence.

An object X is a retract of Y if there are maps $X \to Y \to X$ whose composite is id_X. Note that the demand that the factorizations in CM5 should be functorial is not a part of Quillen's original setup, but is true in all examples we will encounter, and is sometimes extremely useful. Furthermore, with the exception of $\mathcal{S}$ and $\mathcal{T}op$, all our categories will be $\mathcal{S}_*$-categories, that is the function spaces have preferred basepoints.

3.3 The homotopy category

It makes sense to talk about the homotopy category $Ho(\mathcal{C})$ of a closed simplicial model category $\mathcal{C}$. These are the categories where the weak equivalences are formally inverted (see e.g.,. [199]).

The realization and singular functor induce equivalences of categories

$$Ho(\mathcal{S}_*) \simeq Ho(\mathcal{T}op_*).$$

This has the consequence that for all practical purposes we can choose whether we rather want to work with simplicial sets or topological spaces. Both categories have their drawbacks, and it is useful to know that all theorems which are proven for either homotopy category holds for the other.

4 Fibrations in $\mathcal{S}_*$ and actions on the fiber

Let $f\colon E \to B \in \mathcal{S}_*$ be a fibration. We call $F = * \prod_B E$ the *fiber* of f. Recall that we get a long exact sequence

$$\cdots \to \pi_{q+1}E \to \pi_{q+1}B \to \pi_q F \to \pi_q E \to \pi_q B \to \dots.$$

The π_is are groups for $i > 0$ and abelian groups for $i > 1$, and $\pi_2 E$ maps into the center of $\pi_1 F$.

More generally, if $f\colon E \to B \in \mathcal{S}_*$ is any map we may define the *homotopy fiber* to be any map $F \to E$ in the homotopy category which is the fiber of a fibration isomorphic to f, and we say that $F \to E \to B$ is a (homotopy) *fiber sequence*. It is often important to make functorial choices. This can either be done by functorially replacing f by a fibration and taking its fiber, or, more concretely, we may define the homotopy fiber by the pullback diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\mathrm{hofib}(f) \arrow[rr] \arrow[d] & & \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\Delta[1], \sin|B|) \arrow[d] \\
E \arrow[r, "f"] & B \arrow[r, "\sim"] & \sin|B|,
\end{tikzcd}$$

where the right vertical map is induced by $d^1\colon \Delta[0] \to \Delta[1]$ and the right lower horizontal map is the unit of adjunction. That this definition does what it is supposed to follows since $\sin|B|$ is fibrant, $\Delta[0] \to \Delta[1]$ is a cofibration, SM7 and since $\mathcal{S}_*$ is *right proper*: weak equivalences are preserved by pulling them back along fibrations, see e.g., [117, 13.1.13].

4.1 Actions on the fiber

If π and G are groups and $\pi \to Aut(G)$ is a group homomorphism from π to the group of automorphisms on G we say that π *acts* on G. If $H \subset G$ is a normal subgroup we have an action $G \to Aut(H)$ via $g \mapsto \{h \mapsto g^{-1}hg\}$. In particular, any group acts on itself in this fashion, and these automorphisms are called the *inner automorphisms*.

Let $f\colon E \twoheadrightarrow B$ be a fibration and assume B is fibrant. Let $i\colon F = E \prod_B * \subseteq E$ be the inclusion of the fiber. Then there are group actions

$$\pi_1 E \to Aut(\pi_* F)$$

and

$$\pi_1 B \to Aut(H_* F)$$

and the actions are compatible in the sense that the obvious diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \pi_* F \times \pi_1 E & \longrightarrow & \pi_* F \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ H_* F \times \pi_1 B & \longrightarrow & H_* F \end{array}$$

commutes. For reference, we review the construction.

The spaces F, E, and B are fibrant, so function spaces into these spaces are homotopy invariant. For instance, $B^{S^1} = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1, B)$ is a model for the loops on B. We write X^I for the free path space $X^{\Delta[1]_+}$.

Consider the map $p\colon X \to F \times B^{S^1}$ defined by

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} X & = & \lim_{\leftarrow} \{F & \xrightarrow{i} & E & \xleftarrow{d_0} & E^I & \xrightarrow{d_1} & E & \xleftarrow{i} & F\} \\ {\scriptstyle p}\downarrow & & \| & & {\scriptstyle f}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle f^I}\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle f}\downarrow & & \downarrow \\ F \times B^{S^1} & = & \lim_{\leftarrow} \{F & \xrightarrow{*} & B & \xleftarrow{d_0} & B^I & \xrightarrow{d_1} & B & \longleftarrow & *\}, \end{array}$$

where the upper "equality" is a definition, and the lower is the canonical isomorphism. We see that p is both a fibration and a weak equivalence.

Hence there exists splittings $F \times B^{S^1} \to X$, unique up to homotopy, which by adjointness give rise to an unbased homotopy class of maps $B^{S^1} \to \underline{\mathcal{S}}(F, X)$. Via the projection onto the last factor

$$X = F \times_E E^I \times_E F \xrightarrow{pr_3} F,$$

this gives rise to a homotopy class of maps $B^{S^1} \to \underline{\mathcal{S}}(F, F)$. For every such we have a commuting diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} B^{S^1} & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathcal{S}}(F, F) & & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ \pi_0 B^{S^1} = \pi_1 B & \longrightarrow & \pi_0 \underline{\mathcal{S}}(F, F) & \longrightarrow & End(H_*(F)), \end{array}$$

and the lower map does not depend on the choice of the upper map. As F is fibrant, $\pi_0 \underline{\mathcal{S}}(F, F)$ is the monoid of homotopy classes of unbased self maps. Any homotopy class of unbased self maps of F defines an element in $End(H_*(F))$, and the map from $\pi_1 B$ is a monoid map, and giving rise to the desired group action $\pi_1 B \to Aut(H_*(F))$.

For the pointed situation, consider the (solid) diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} F \vee E^{S^1} \arrow[r, "in_1+j"] \arrow[d, tail] & X \arrow[r, "pr_3"] \arrow[d, two heads, "p"] & F \\ F \times E^{S^1} \arrow[r] \arrow[ur, dashed] & F \times B^{S^1} & \end{tikzcd} \tag{4.1.0}$$

where $in_1 \colon F \to X = F \times_E E^I \times_E F$ is inclusion of the first factor, and j is the inclusion $E^{S^1} = * \times_E E^I \times_E * \subseteq F \times_E E^I \times_E F = X$. Again there is a homotopy class of liftings, and since the top row in the diagram is trivial, the composites

$$F \times E^{S^1} \to X \xrightarrow{pr_3} F$$

all factor through $F \wedge E^{S^1}$. So, this time the adjoints are pointed: $E^{S^1} \to \underline{\mathcal{S}}_*(F, F)$, giving rise to a unique

$$\pi_1 E = \pi_0 E^{S^1} \to \pi_0(\underline{\mathcal{S}}_*(F, F)) \to End(\pi_*(F)).$$

Again the map is a map of monoids, and so factors through the automorphisms, and we get the desired group action $\pi_1 E \to Aut(\pi_*(F))$, compatible with the homology operation.

4.2 Actions for maps of grouplike simplicial monoids

If $j \colon G \subseteq M$ is the inclusion of a subgroup in a monoid, then $j/1$ is the *over category* 1.4.3 of j considered as a functor of categories. Explicitly, it has the elements of M as objects, and a map from m to m' is a $g \in G$ such that $m'g = m$.

We have an isomorphism

$$M \times G^{\times q} \xrightarrow{\cong} B_q(j/1)$$

given by

$$(m, g_1, \dots, g_q) \mapsto (m \xleftarrow{g_1} mg_1 \xleftarrow{g_2} \dots \xleftarrow{g_q} mg_1 g_2 \cdots g_q)$$

and $B(M, G, *) = \{[q] \mapsto M \times G^{\times q}\}$ with the induced simplicial structure, is called the *one-sided bar construction*. The projection $M \times G^{\times q} \to G^{\times q}$ away from M gives a map $B(j/1) \to BG$.

Theorem 4.2.1 *Let M be a group-like simplicial monoid, and $j \colon G \subseteq M$ a (simplicial) subgroup. Then*

$$B(j/1) \to BG \to BM$$

is a fiber sequence, and the action

$$\Omega BG \times B(j/1) \to B(j/1) \in Ho(\mathcal{S}_*)$$

may be identified with the conjugate action

$$\begin{aligned} G \times B(j/1) \to& B(j/1) \\ (g,(m,g_1,\ldots,g_q)) \in G_q \times B_q(j/1) \mapsto& (gmg^{-1}, gg_1g^{-1}, \ldots gg_qg^{-1}) \end{aligned}$$

Proof: That the sequence is a fiber sequence follows from corollary 5.1.4. As to the action, replace the fiber sequence with the equivalent fiber sequence

$$F \xrightarrow{i} E \xrightarrow{f} B$$

defined by $B = \sin|BM|$, and the pullback diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \longrightarrow & BG \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B^I & \xrightarrow{d_0} & B \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} F & \xrightarrow[i]{} & E \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ * & \longrightarrow & B \end{array}$$

where f is the composite

$$E = BG \times_B B^I \xrightarrow{pr_2} B^I \xrightarrow{d_1} B.$$

To describe the action, consider the diagram (the maps will be described below)

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} F \vee G & \overset{\sim}{\rightarrowtail} & F \vee (BG)^{S^1} & \overset{\sim}{\rightarrowtail} & F \vee E^{S^1} & \xrightarrow{in_1 + j} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ F \times G & \overset{\sim}{\rightarrowtail} & F \times (BG)^{S^1} & \overset{\sim}{\rightarrowtail} & F \times E^{S^1} & \longrightarrow & B^{S^1} \times F \end{array}$$

The rightmost square is the same as the lifting square in 4.1.0. The leftmost horizontal weak equivalences are induced by the weak equivalence $G \xrightarrow{\sim} (BG)^{S^1} = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1, BG)$ adjoint to the canonical inclusion $S^1 \wedge G \subseteq BG$, and the middle horizontal weak equivalences in the diagram are induced by the weak equivalence $BG \to E = BG \times_B B^I$ given by $x \mapsto (x, f(x))$ (the constant map at $f(x)$). By the uniqueness of liftings, any lifting $F \times G \to X$ is homotopic to $F \times G \xrightarrow{\sim} G \times E^{S^1}$ composed with a lifting $F \times E^{S^1} \to X$. Hence we may equally well consider lifings $F \times G \to X$. We will now proceed to construct such a lifting by hand, and then show that the constructed lifting corresponds to the conjugate action.

We define a map $BG \times G \times \Delta[1] \to (BG)$ by sending $(x, g, \phi) = (g, (x_1, \ldots, x_q), \phi) \in G_q \times B_q G \times \Delta([q],[1])$ to

$$H^g(x)(\phi) = (g^{\phi(0)} x_1 g^{-\phi(1)}, g^{\phi(1)} x_2 g^{-\phi(2)}, \ldots, g^{\phi(q-1)} x_q g^{-\phi(q)})$$

(where $g^0 = 1$ and $g^1 = g$). Note that, if 1 is the constant map $[q] \to [1]$ sending everything to 1, then $H^g(x)(1) = (gx_1g^{-1}, \dots, gx_qg^{-1})$. We let $H\colon BG \times G \to BG^I$ be the adjoint, and by the same formula we have a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} BG \times G & \xrightarrow{H} & (BG)^I \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ BM \times G & \xrightarrow{\bar{H}} & (BM)^I \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B \times G & \xrightarrow{\bar{H}} & B^I \end{array}$$

This extends to a map $E \times G \to E^I$ by sending $(x, \alpha) \in BG \times_B B^I = E$ to $g \mapsto H^g(x, \alpha) = (H^g(x), \bar{H}^g(\alpha))$. Since

$$G \subset B \times G \xrightarrow{\bar{H}} B^I \xrightarrow{d_i} B$$

is trivial for $i = 0, 1$ (and so, if $(x, \alpha) \in F$, we have $H^g(x, \alpha)(i) = (H^g(x)(i), \bar{H}^g(\alpha)(i)) \in F$ for $i = 0, 1$), we get that, upon restricting to $F \times G$ this gives a lifting

$$F \times G \to F \times_E E^I \times_E F = X$$

Composing with

$$X = F \times_E E^I \times_E F \xrightarrow{pr_3} F$$

we have the "conjugate" action

$$F \times G \to F, \qquad (g, (x, \alpha)) \mapsto c^g(x, \alpha) = H^g(x, \alpha)(1) = (H^g(x)(1), \bar{H}^g(\alpha)(1))$$

is equivalent to the action of G on the fiber in the fiber sequence of the statement of the theorem.

Let $C = \sin|B(M/1)| \times_B B^I$ and $\tilde{F} = C \times_B E$. Since C is contractible, $F \xrightarrow{\sim} \tilde{F}$ is an equivalence. We define a conjugate action on C using the same formulas, such that $C \to B$ is a G-map, and this defines an action on $\tilde{F}$ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F \times G & \longrightarrow & F \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \tilde{F} \times G & \longrightarrow & \tilde{F} \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ B(j/1) \times G & \longrightarrow & B(j/1) \end{array}$$

commutes, where the lower map is the action in the theorem. As the vertical maps are equivalences by the first part of the theorem, this proves the result. ∎

5 Bisimplicial sets

A *bisimplicial set* is a simplicial object in $\mathcal{S}$, that is, a simplicial space. From the diagonal and projection functors

$$\Delta \xrightarrow{\text{diag}} \Delta \times \Delta \overset{pr_1}{\underset{pr_2}{\rightrightarrows}} \Delta$$

we get functors

$$\mathcal{S} \xleftarrow{\text{diag}^*} s\mathcal{S} \overset{pr_1^*}{\underset{pr_2^*}{\leftleftarrows}} \mathcal{S}$$

where the leftmost is called the diagonal and sends X to $\text{diag}^*(X) = \{[q] \mapsto X_{q,q}\}$, and the two maps to the right reinterpret a simplicial space X as a bisimplicial set by letting it be constant in one direction (e.g., $pr_1^*(X) = \{[p],[q] \mapsto X_p\}$).

There are important criteria for when information about each X_p may be sufficient to conclude something about $\text{diag}^* X$. We cite some useful facts. Proofs may be found either in the appendix of [30] or in [86, chapter IV].

Theorem 5.0.2 *(see e.g., [86, proposition IV 1.9]) Let $X \to Y$ be a map of simplicial spaces inducing a weak equivalence $X_q \xrightarrow{\sim} Y_q$ for every $q \geq 0$. Then* $\text{diag}^* X \to \text{diag}^* Y$ *is a weak equivalence.* ☺

Definition 5.0.3 (The π_*-Kan condition, [30]) Let

$$X = \{[q] \mapsto X_q\} = \{[p],[q] \mapsto X_{p,q}\}$$

be a simplicial space. For $a \in X_q$ (that is, a is a zero simplex in X_q), consider the maps

$$d_i\colon \pi_p(X_q, a) \to \pi_p(X_{q-1}, d_i a), \qquad 0 \leq i \leq q$$

We say that X satisfies the π_*-Kan condition at $a \in X_q$ if for every tuple of elements

$$(x_0, \ldots, x_{k-1}, x_{k+1}, \ldots x_q) \in \prod_{\substack{0 \leq i \leq m \\ i \neq k}} \pi_p(X_{q-1}, d_i a)$$

such that $d_i x_j = d_{j-1} x_i$ for $k \neq i < j \neq k$, there is an

$$x \in \pi_p(X_q, a)$$

such that $d_i x = x_i$ for $i \neq k$.

For an alternative description of the π_*-Kan condition see [86, section IV.4].

Examples of simplicial spaces which satisfies the π_*-Kan condition are bisimplicial groups and simplicial spaces $\{[q] \mapsto X_q\}$ where each X_q is connected, see [30].

Recall that a square is *homotopy cartesian* if it is equivalent to a categorically cartesian square of fibrations. More precisely, a commutative square

$$\begin{tikzcd} A \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & B \arrow[d, "\in \mathcal{S}"] \\ C \arrow[r] & D \end{tikzcd}$$

is homotopy cartesian if there is a factorization $B \xrightarrow{\sim} X \twoheadrightarrow D$ such that the resulting map $A \to C \times_D X$ is a weak equivalence. Note that if the condition is true for one factorization, it is true for all. This definition gives the same result as the more general one given in 7.0.2.

Theorem 5.0.4 (Bousfield – Friedlander's Theorem B.4 [30]) *Let*

$$\begin{tikzcd} V \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X \arrow[d] \\ W \arrow[r] & Y \end{tikzcd}$$

be a commutative diagram of simplicial spaces, such that

$$\begin{tikzcd} V_p \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X_p \arrow[d] \\ W_p \arrow[r] & Y_p \end{tikzcd}$$

is homotopy cartesian for every p. If X and Y satisfy the π_*-Kan condition and if $\{[q] \mapsto \pi_0(X_q)\} \to \{[q] \mapsto \pi_0(Y_q)\}$ is a fibration, then

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathrm{diag}^*V \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & \mathrm{diag}^*X \arrow[d] \\ \mathrm{diag}^*W \arrow[r] & \mathrm{diag}^*Y \end{tikzcd}$$

is homotopy cartesian. ☺

As an immediate corollary we have the important result that loops can often be calculated degreewise. Recall that if X is a space, then the loop space of Y is $\Omega X = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1, \sin|X|)$.

Corollary 5.0.5 *Let X be a simplicial space such that X_p is connected for every $p \geq 0$. Then there is a natural chain of weak equivalences between $\Omega \mathrm{diag}^* X$ and $\mathrm{diag}^*\{[p] \mapsto \Omega X_p\}$.*

Proof: Let $Y_p = \sin|X_p|$, and consider the homotopy cartesian square

$$\begin{tikzcd} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1, Y_p) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\Delta[1], Y_p) \arrow[d] \\ * \arrow[r] & Y_p \end{tikzcd} .$$

Now, since each Y_p is connected, this diagram satisfies the conditions of theorem 5.0.4, and so

$$\begin{array}{ccc}\operatorname{diag}^*\{[p]\mapsto \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1,Y_p)\} & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{diag}^*\{[p]\mapsto \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\Delta[1],Y_p)\}\\ \downarrow & & \downarrow\\ * & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{diag}^*\{[p]\mapsto Y_p\}\end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian. The right vertical map factors canonically as

$$\operatorname{diag}^*\{[p]\mapsto \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\Delta[1],Y_p)\} \longrightarrow \operatorname{diag}^*\{[p]\mapsto \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\Delta[1],Y_p)\}\wedge\Delta[1] \longrightarrow \operatorname{diag}^*Y$$

where the first map is the non-basepoint inclusion and the second map sends $f\wedge\phi\in \mathcal{S}_*(\Delta[p]_+\wedge\Delta[1],Y_p)\wedge\Delta([p],[1])$ to $f_p(id_{[p]}\wedge\phi)\in Y_{p,p}$. This gives a canonical map $\operatorname{diag}^*\{[p]\mapsto \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\Delta[1],Y_p)\}\to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\Delta[1],\operatorname{diag}^*Y)$ of contractible spaces over diag^*Y, and ultimately a canonical equivalence $\operatorname{diag}^*\Omega X=\operatorname{diag}^*\{[p]\mapsto \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1,Y_p)\}\to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1,\operatorname{diag}^*Y)\to\Omega\operatorname{diag}^*Y$. Combining this with the equivalence $\operatorname{diag}^*Y\xleftarrow{\sim}\operatorname{diag}^*X$, we get the desired canonical chain of equivalences.

∎

Theorem 5.0.6 *[[30]] Let X be a pointed simplicial space satisfying the π_*-Kan condition. Then there is a first quadrant convergent spectral sequence*

$$E^2_{pq}=\pi_p([n]\mapsto\pi_q(X_n))\Rightarrow\pi_{p+q}(\operatorname{diag}^*X).$$ ☺

As an application we prove three corollaries, which is totally wrong historically, since the first result was used in [30] to prove theorem 5.0.6, and the second predates [30].

Corollary 5.0.7 *Let G be a simplicial group, and let BG be the diagonal of $[n]\mapsto BG_n$. Then*

$$\pi_qBG\cong\pi_{q-1}G.$$

Proof: Note that BG_n is connected for each n, and so BG satisfies the π_*-Kan condition. Now

$$E^2_{pq}=\pi_p([n]\mapsto\pi_q(BG_n))=\begin{cases}0 & \text{if } q\neq 1\\ \pi_pG & \text{if } q=1\end{cases}$$

and the result follows. ∎

Corollary 5.0.8 *Let X be a simplicial space. Then there is a convergent spectral sequence*

$$E^2_{pq}=H_p([n]\mapsto H_q(X_n))\Rightarrow H_{p+q}(\operatorname{diag}^*X)$$

Proof: Apply the spectral sequence of theorem 5.0.6 to the bisimplicial abelian group $\mathbf{Z}X$. ∎

Using the theorem repeatedly and using that the π_*-Kan condition is satisfied for degreewisely connected simplicial spaces we get

Corollary 5.0.9 *Let $X\colon(\Delta^o)^{\times n}\to\mathcal{E}ns_*$ be a multisimplicial set which is k_i-1-connected in the ith direction for $i=1,\dots,n$, and at least one of the k_i-1s are positive. Then the diagonal space is $k_1+k_2+\cdots+k_n-1$ connected.* ☺

5.1 Linear simplicial spaces

Definition 5.1.1 A simplicial object X in a model category is *linear* if the natural maps

$$X_p \to X_1 \times_{X_0} X_1 \times_{X_0} \cdots \times_{X_0} X_1$$

are weak equivalences, where the i'th component is induced from $[1] \cong \{i-1, i\} \subseteq [p]$ for $0 < i \leq p$.

This is inspired by categories, where a space X is the classifying space of a category, exactly if the said maps are isomorphisms. A slicker way of formulating this is to say that X is linear if it takes the pushouts of monomorphisms that exist in Δ to homotopy pullbacks.

Note that if $X_0 = *$, this gives a "weak multiplication" on X_1:

$$X_1 \times X_1 \xleftarrow[\sim]{(d_0, d_2)} X_2 \xrightarrow{d_1} X_1.$$

Saying that this weak multiplication has a *homotopy inverse* is the same as saying that all the diagrams

$$\begin{tikzcd} X_p \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "d_p"'] & X_1 \arrow[d] \\ X_{p-1} \arrow[r] & * \end{tikzcd}$$

are homotopy cartesian, where the top map is induced by $[1] \cong \{0, p\} \subseteq [p]$ (this formulation essentially claims that you must have inverses in a monoid to be able to uniquely produce g and h such that $gh = m$, if the only thing you know is g and m).

The following proposition is proved in [216, page 296] and is used several times in the text. The natural map in question is obtained as follows: you always have a map of simplicial spaces $\Delta[1] \times X_1 \to X$, but if $X_0 = *$ you may collaps the endpoints and get a pointed map $S^1 \wedge X_1 \to X$. Take the diagonal, and consider the adjoint map $X_1 \to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1, \mathrm{diag}^* X)$, which we map further to $\Omega X = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^1, \sin|X|)$, where we have suppressed mention of the diagonal from the notation.

Proposition 5.1.2 *Let X be a linear simplicial space with $X_0 = *$. Then the natural map*

$$X_1 \to \Omega X$$

is a weak equivalence if and only if the induced weak multiplication on X_1 has a homotopy inverse.

Proof: Recall from 1.7 the definition of the path space $PX = \{[q] \mapsto P_q X = X_q\}$. Since X is linear, we have that for each q the square

$$\begin{tikzcd} X_1 \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & P_q X \arrow[r, "\sim"] \arrow[d] & X_q \times_{X_0} X_1 \arrow[d, "\text{proj.}"] \\ X_0 = * \arrow[r] & X_q \arrow[r, equal] & X_q \end{tikzcd}$$

is homotopy cartesian. That X_1 has a homotopy inverse implies that X and PX satisfy the π_*-Kan condition, and that $\{[q] \mapsto \pi_0(P_qX)\} \to \{[q] \mapsto \pi_0(X_q)\}$ is isomorphic to the classifying fibration $E(\pi_0X_1) = B(\pi_0X_1, \pi_0X_1, *) \twoheadrightarrow B(\pi_0X_1)$ (which is a fibration since π_0X_1 is a group). Hence theorem 5.0.4 gives that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_1 & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{diag}^*PX \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{diag}^*X \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian, and the result follows by the contractibility of PX. ∎

Applying this proposition to the bar construction of a group-like simplicial monoid, we get:

Corollary 5.1.3 *Let M be a group-like simplicial monoid. Then the natural map $M \to \Omega BM$ is a weak equivalence.* ☺

Exactly the same argument as for Proposition 5.1.2, but applied to the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B(*, N, M) & \longrightarrow & EM \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ BN & \longrightarrow & BM \end{array}$$

yields

Corollary 5.1.4 *Let $N \subseteq M$ be an inclusion of simplicial monoids where M is group-like. Then*

$$B(*, N, M) \to BN \to BM$$

is a fiber sequence. ☺

6 Homotopy limits and colimits.

Let I be a small category, and $[I, \mathcal{S}_*]$ the category of functors from I to $\mathcal{S}_*$. This is a simplicial category in the sense that we have function spaces and "tensors" with pointed simplicial sets satisfying the usual properties (i.e., it is a tensored $\mathcal{S}$-category in the language of definition 9.2.1 and 9.2.2). If $F, G \in [I, \mathcal{S}_*]$ we define the function space to be the simplicial set $\underline{I\mathcal{S}_*}(F, G)$ whose set of q-simplices is

$$\underline{I\mathcal{S}_*}(F, G)_q = [I, \mathcal{S}_*](F \wedge \Delta[q]_+, G)$$

i.e., the set of all pointed natural transformations $F(i) \wedge \Delta[q]_+ \to G(i)$, and whose simplicial structure comes from regarding $[q] \mapsto \Delta[q]$ as a cosimplicial object. If $F \in [I^o, \mathcal{S}_*]$ and $G \in [I, \mathcal{S}_*]$ we define

$$F \wedge G \in \mathcal{S}_*$$

to be the colimit of

$$\bigvee_{\gamma\colon i\to j\in I} F(j)\wedge G(i) \rightrightarrows \bigvee_{i\in I} F(i)\wedge G(i)$$

where the upper map sends the γ summand to the j summand via $1\wedge G\gamma$, and the lower map sends the γ summand to the i summand via $F\gamma\wedge 1$ (in other words: it is the coend $\int^I F\wedge G$).

If $F \in [I^o, \mathcal{S}_*]$, $G \in [I, \mathcal{S}_*]$ and $X \in \mathcal{S}_*$, we get that

$$\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(F\wedge G, X) \cong \underline{I^o\mathcal{S}_*}(F, \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(G,X)) \cong \underline{I\mathcal{S}_*}(G, \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(F,X))$$

Recall the nerve 1.4 and over category constructions 1.4.3. Let $B(I/-)_+ \in [I, \mathcal{S}_*]$, be the functor which sends $i \in obI$ to $B(I/i)_+$.

Definition 6.0.1 If $F \in [I, \mathcal{S}_*]$, then the *homotopy limit* is defined by

$$\operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} F = \underline{I\mathcal{S}_*}(B(I/-)_+, \sin|F|)$$

and the *homotopy colimit* is defined by

$$\operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F = B(I^o/-)_+\wedge F.$$

Note that according to the definitions, we get that

$$\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(B(I^o/-)_+\wedge F, X) \cong \underline{I^o\mathcal{S}_*}(B(I^o/-)_+, \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(F,X))$$

so many statements dualize. Most authors do not include the "$\sin|-|$" construction into their definition of the homotopy limit. This certainly has categorical advantages (i.e., the above duality becomes an on the nose duality between homotopy limits and colimits: $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F, X) \cong \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I^o}} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(F,X)$), but has the disadvantage that whenever they encounter a problem in homotopy theory they have to assume that their functor has "fibrant values".

6.1 Connection to categorical notions

We can express the categorical notions in the same language using the constant functor $*\colon I \to \mathcal{S}_*$ with value the one-point space:

$$\lim_{\overleftarrow{I}} F = \underline{I\mathcal{S}_*}(*_+, F)$$

and

$$\lim_{\overrightarrow{I}} F = *_+\wedge F$$

The canonical maps $B(I/-) \to *$ and $B(I^o/-) \to *$ give natural maps (use in addition $F \to \sin|F|$ in the first map)

$$\lim_{\overleftarrow{I}} F \to \operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} F, \text{ and } \operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F \to \lim_{\overrightarrow{I}} F.$$

6.1.1 (Co)simplicial spaces

Let X be a cosimplicial space, e.g., a functor $X\colon \Delta \to \mathcal{S}_*$. The map $B(\Delta/-) \to \Delta[-]$ of cosimplicial spaces sending

$$[j] \xleftarrow{\sigma_0} [i_0] \xleftarrow{\sigma_1} \dots \xleftarrow{\sigma_q} [i_q] \in B_q(\Delta/[j])$$

to the map $t \mapsto \sigma_0\sigma_1\cdots\sigma_{q-t}(i_{q-t})$ in $\Delta([q],[j])$ defines a map $TotX = c\mathcal{S}_*(\Delta[-]_+, X) \to c\mathcal{S}_*(B(\Delta/-)_+, \sin|X|) = \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{\Delta}} X$. Likewise, if Y is a simplicial space (bisimplicial set), we get a map $\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\Delta^o}} Y = B(\Delta/-)_+ \wedge Y \to \Delta[-]_+ \wedge Y \cong \operatorname{diag}^* Y$. This map is an equivalence:

Lemma 6.1.2 ([31, XII.4.3] or [117, 19.6.7]) *If Y is a simplicial space, the induced map $\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\Delta^o}} Y \to \operatorname{diag}^* Y$ is a weak equivalence.* ☺

The map $TotX \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{\Delta}} X$ is also a weak equivalence under the condition that X is a "Reedy fibrant" cosimplicial space, see e.g., [117, 19.6.4].

6.2 Functoriality

Let

$$I \xrightarrow{f} J \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{S}_*$$

be functors between small categories. Then there are natural maps

$$f^*\colon \operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} F \to \operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} Ff$$

and

$$f_*\colon \operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} Ff \to \operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{J}} F.$$

Under certain conditions these maps are equivalences.

Lemma 6.2.1 (Cofinality lemma, cf. [31, XI.9.2]) *Let I and J be small categories and let*

$$I \xrightarrow{f} J \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{S}_*$$

be functors. Then

$$\operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} Ff \xrightarrow{f_*} \operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{J}} F$$

is an equivalence if the under categories j/f are contractible for all $j \in obJ$ (f is "right cofinal"); and dually

$$\operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} F \xrightarrow{f^*} \operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} Ff$$

is an equivalence if the over categories f/j are contractible for all $j \in obJ$ (f is "left cofinal"). ☺

For a sketch of the proof, see the simplicial version, 6.5.4 below.

The corresponding categorical statement to the cofinality lemma only uses the path components of I, and we list it here for comparison:

Lemma 6.2.2 (Categorical cofinality lemma, cf. [161, p. 217]) *Let I and J be small categories and let*

$$I \xrightarrow{f} J \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{S}_*$$

be functors. Then

$$\lim_{\overrightarrow{I}} Ff \xrightarrow{f_*} \lim_{\overrightarrow{J}} F$$

is an isomorphism if and only if the under categories j/f are connected for all $j \in obJ$; and dually

$$\lim_{\overleftarrow{J}} F \xrightarrow{f^*} \lim_{\overleftarrow{I}} Ff$$

is an isomorphism if and only if the over categories f/j are connected for all $j \in obJ$. ☺

Homotopy colimits are functors of "natural modules" (really of $\mathcal{S}_*$-natural modules, see 9.4.2 for the general situation), that is the category of pairs (I, F) where I is a small category and $F\colon I \to \mathcal{S}_*$ is a functor. A morphism $(I, F) \to (J, G)$ is a functor $f\colon I \to J$ together with a natural transformation $F \to f^*G = G \circ f$ and induces the map

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} f^*G \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{J}} G.$$

Homotopy limits should be thought of as a kind of cohomology. It is a functor of "natural comodules" (I, F) (really $\mathcal{S}_*$-natural comodules), that is, the category of pairs as above, but where a map $(I, F) \to (J, G)$ now is a functor $f\colon J \to I$ and a natural transformation $f^*F \to G$. Such a morphism induces a map

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} F \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} f^*F \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} G$$

Lemma 6.2.3 (Homotopy lemma, cf. [31, XI.5.6 and XII.4.2]) *Let $\eta\colon F \to G \in [I, \mathcal{S}_*]$ be a pointwise weak equivalence (i.e., $\eta_i\colon F(i) \to G(i)$ is a weak equivalence for all $i \in obI$). Then*

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} F \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} G$$

and

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} G$$

are weak equivalences.

Proof: The first statement follows from the fact that $B(I/-)$ is cofibrant and $\sin|F|$ and $\sin|G|$ are fibrant in the closed simplicial model category of $[I, \mathcal{S}_*]$ of 3.4, and the second statement follows from duality. ∎

Lastly we have the following very useful observation. We do not know of any reference, but the first part is fairly obvious, and the second part follows by some work from the definition (remember that we take a functorial fibrant replacement when applying the homotopy limit):

Lemma 6.2.4 *Let $f\colon I \subseteq J$ be an inclusion of small categories and $F\colon J \to \mathcal{S}_*$. Then the natural map*

$$f_*\colon \underset{\overrightarrow{I}}{\operatorname{holim}} Ff \to \underset{\overrightarrow{J}}{\operatorname{holim}} F$$

is an cofibration (i.e., an injection) and

$$f^*\colon \underset{\overleftarrow{J}}{\operatorname{holim}} F \to \underset{\overleftarrow{I}}{\operatorname{holim}} Ff$$

is a fibration. ☺

6.3 (Co)simplicial replacements

There is another way of writing out the definition of the homotopy (co)limit of a functor $F\colon I \to \mathcal{S}_*$. Note that

$$\underline{I\mathcal{S}_*}(B_q(I/-), F) = \prod_{i_0 \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow i_q \in B_q(I)} F(i_0)$$

Using the simplicial structure of $B_q(I/-)$ this defines a cosimplicial space. This gives a functor

$$[I, \mathcal{S}_*] \xrightarrow{\prod^*} [\Delta, \mathcal{S}_*],$$

the so-called *cosimplicial replacement*, and the homotopy limit is exactly the composite

$$[I, \mathcal{S}_*] \xrightarrow{\sin|\quad|} [I, \mathcal{S}_*] \xrightarrow{\prod^*} [\Delta, \mathcal{S}_*] \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Tot}} \mathcal{S}_*,$$

where Tot refers to the total complex of 1.8.

Likewise, we note that

$$B_q(I^o/-)_+ \wedge F = \bigvee_{i_0 \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow i_q \in B_q(I)} F(i_q)$$

defining a functor $\bigvee_*\colon [I, \mathcal{S}_*] \to [\Delta^o, \mathcal{S}_*]$, the so-called *simplicial replacement*, and the homotopy colimit is the composite

$$[I, \mathcal{S}_*] \xrightarrow{\bigvee_*} [\Delta^o, \mathcal{S}_*] \xrightarrow{\mathrm{diag}^*} \mathcal{S}_*.$$

There is a strengthening of the homotopy lemma for colimits which does not dualize:

Lemma 6.3.1 *Let $\eta\colon F \to G \in [I, \mathcal{S}_*]$ be a natural transformation such that*

$$\eta_i\colon F(i) \to G(i)$$

is n-connected for all $i \in obI$. Then

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} G$$

is n-connected.

Proof: Notice that, by the description above, the map $B_q(I^o/-)_+ \wedge F \to B_q(I^o/-)_+ \wedge G$ is n-connected for each q. The result then follows upon taking the diagonal. ∎

Lemma 6.3.2 *Let $\ldots \twoheadrightarrow X_n \twoheadrightarrow X_{n-1} \twoheadrightarrow \ldots \twoheadrightarrow X_0 \twoheadrightarrow *$ be a tower of fibrations. Then the canonical map*

$$\lim_{\overleftarrow{n}} X_n \to \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{n}} X_n$$

is an equivalence. ☺

6.4 Homotopy (co)limits in other categories

Note that, when defining the homotopy (co)limit we only used the simplicial structure of $[I, \mathcal{S}_*]$, plus the possibility of functorially replacing any object by an equivalent (co)fibrant object. If $\mathcal{C}$ is any category with all (co)products (at least all those indexed by the various $B_q(I/i)$s etc.), we can define the (co)simplicial replacement functors for any $F \in [I, \mathcal{C}]$:

$$\prod{}^* F = \{[q] \mapsto \prod_{i_0 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow i_q \in B_q(I)} F(i_0)\}$$

and

$$\coprod{}_* F = \{[q] \mapsto \coprod_{i_0 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow i_q \in B_q(I)} F(i_q)\}$$

In the special case of a closed simplicial model category, we can always precompose $\prod^*$ (resp. $\coprod_*$) with a functor assuring that $F(i)$ is (co)fibrant to get the right homotopy properties.

As an easy example, we could consider unbased spaces. For $F \in [I, \mathcal{S}]$ we let $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} F = Tot(\prod^* \sin |F|)$ and $\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F = \operatorname{diag}^* \coprod_* F$. Recall the adjoint functor pair

$$\mathcal{S} \underset{U}{\overset{X \mapsto X_+}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{S}_*$$

We get that if $F \in [I, \mathcal{S}]$ and $G \in [I, \mathcal{S}_*]$, then $\prod^* UG = U \prod^* G$, and $(\coprod_* F)_+ = \bigvee_* (F_+)$, so

$$U \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} G \cong \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} UG, \text{ and } (\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F)_+ \cong \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} (F_+)$$

More generally, the (co)simplicial replacement will respect left (right) adjoint functors.

6.4.1 Simplicial abelian groups

In abelian groups, the product is the product of the underlying sets, whereas the coproduct is the direct sum. All simplicial abelian groups are fibrant, and we choose a functorial factorization $0 \rightarrowtail C(M) \overset{\sim}{\twoheadrightarrow} M$, for instance the one coming from the free/forgetful adjoint functor pair to sets. Note that the diagonal (total) of a (co)simplicial simplicial abelian group is a simplicial abelian group, and we define

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} F = Tot \prod{}^* F$$

and

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F = \operatorname{diag}^* \coprod{}_* F$$

Note that this last definition is "wrong" in that we have not replaced $F(i)$ by a cofibrant object, but this does not matter since

Lemma 6.4.2 *Let $F\colon I \to \mathcal{A}$ be a functor, and let $C\colon \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}$ be a functorial cofibrant replacement. Then the map*

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F \xleftarrow{\simeq} \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} CF$$

is a weak equivalence.

Proof: This follows by forgetting down to simplicial spaces, using that homotopy groups commute with filtered colimits 1.5.5 and finite products 1.1.1, and finally that a degreewise equivalence of bisimplicial sets induces an equivalence on the diagonal 5.0.2. ∎

If F is a functor to abelian groups, the (co)homotopy groups of the (co)simplicial replacement functors above are known to algebraists as the derived functors of the (co)limit, i.e.,

$$\lim_{\overleftarrow{I}}{}^{(s)} F = H^s(I, F) = \pi^s \prod{}^* F, \text{ and } \lim_{\overrightarrow{I}}{}_{(s)} F = H_s(I, F) = \pi_s \coprod{}_* F$$

We say that a category J has *finite cohomological dimension* if there is some n such that for all functors $F\colon J \to \mathcal{A}b$ and $s > n$ the sth derived limit vanishes, $\lim_{\overleftarrow{J}}{}^{(s)} F = 0$. For instance, considered as a category, the natural numbers $\mathbf{N}$ has finite cohomological dimension ($n = 1$).

Theorem 6.4.3 *[31, XI.7, XII.5]Let $X\colon J \to \mathcal{S}_*$ be a functor. If $\pi_q X$ take values in abelian groups for all $q \geq 0$, then there is a spectral sequence with E^2 term*

$$E^2_{s,t} = \lim_{\overleftarrow{J}}{}^{(-s)} \pi_t X, \qquad 0 \leq -s \leq t$$

which under favourable conditions converges (in Bousfield and Kan's language:, is "closely related") to $\pi_{s+t} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} X$. Especially, if J has finite cohomological dimension, the spectral sequence converges. If $J = \mathbf{N}$ it collapses to the exact sequence

$$0 \to \lim_{\overleftarrow{\mathbf{N}}}{}^{(1)} \pi_{t+1} X \to \pi_t \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{\mathbf{N}}} X \to \lim_{\overleftarrow{\mathbf{N}}} \pi_t X \to 0$$

If h is some connected reduced homology theory satisfying the wedge axiom then there is a convergent spectral sequence

$$E^2_{s,t} = \lim_{\overrightarrow{J}}{}_{(s)} h_t X \to h_{s+t} \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{J}} X. \qquad ☺$$

The homotopy limits in abelian groups coincide with what we get if we forget down to $\mathcal{S}_*$, but generally the homotopy colimit will differ. However, if $F\colon I \to \mathcal{A}$, and $U\colon \mathcal{A}b \to \mathcal{E}ns_*$ is the forgetful functor, there is a natural map

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} UF \longrightarrow U\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F = U\operatorname{diag}^*\{[q] \mapsto \bigoplus_{i_0 \leftarrow i_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow i_q} X(i_q)\}$$

given by sending wedges to sums. We leave the proof of the following lemma as an excercise (use that homotopy groups commute with filtered colimit, 1.5.5 and the Blakers–Massey theorem 7.2.2)

Lemma 6.4.4 *Let $F\colon I \to \mathcal{A}$ be a functor such that $F(i)$ is n-connected for all $i \in obI$. Then*

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} UF \to U \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F$$

is $(2n+1)$-connected. ☺

6.4.5 Spectra

The category of spectra has two useful notions of fibrations and weak equivalences, the stable 3.1.6 and the pointwise 3.1.5. For the pointwise case there is no difference from the space case, and so we concentrate on the stable structure. Any spectrum is pointwise equivalent to a cofibrant spectrum (i.e., on for which all the structure maps $S^1 \wedge X^k \to X^{k+1}$ are cofibrations, see 2.2.4), so it is no surprise that the pointwise homotopy colimit has good properties also with respect to the stable structure. For homotopy limits we need as usual a bit of preparations. We choose a fibrant replacement functor $X \mapsto QX$ as in 2.2.1. Let $X\colon J \to \mathcal{S}pt$ be a functor from a small category to spectra. Then

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{J}} X = \{k \mapsto \operatorname{diag}^* \coprod{}_* X^k\}$$

which is just $\operatorname{holim}_{\rightarrow} J$ applied pointwise, and

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} X = \{k \mapsto Tot^* \prod{}^* Q^k X\}$$

which is equivalent to $k \mapsto \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} Q^k X$ (we just have skipped the extra application of $\sin|-|$).

Lemma 6.4.6 *Pointwise homotopy limits and colimits preserve stable equivalences of spectra.*

Proof: For the homotopy limit this is immediate from the construction since all stable equivalences are transformed into pointwise equivalences of pointwise fibrant spectra by Q. For the homotopy colimit, notice that we just have to prove that for a diagram of specta X, the canonical map $X \to QX$ induces an stable equivalence of homotopy colimits. By lemma 2.2.4 we may assume that all spectra in X are $-n$ connected, and then Freudenthal's suspension theorem 7.2.3 gives that the maps in $X^k \to Q^k X$ are $2k-n$ connected. Since homotopy colimits preserve connectivity (lemma 6.3.1) this means that the map of pointwise homotopy colimits is a weak equivalence. ∎

6.5 Enriched homotopy (co)limits

There are "enriched" versions of homotopy (co)limits. In fact, Hochschild homology itself is a close relative of a homotopy colimit with an $\mathcal{A}b$-enrichment (see remark 6.5.2 below). We will spell out the details in the case of enrichment in simplicial sets.

Let I be a small $\mathcal{S}$-category, i.e., a category with a set of objects obI and morphism *spaces* $\underline{I}(i,i')$ satisfying the usual axioms for a category, see section 9.2 for precise definitions and some background on enriched categories. Let $F\colon I \to \mathcal{S}_*$ be an $\mathcal{S}$-functor, i.e., a collection of maps $\underline{I}(i,i') \to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(F(i),F(i'))$ satisfying the usual axioms.

Then we may define the $\mathcal{S}$-homotopy (co)limit of F as follows. Given $i_{-1} \in obI$, let

$$N_q^{\mathcal{S}}(I/i_{-1}) = \coprod_{i_0,\dots,i_q} \prod_{0\leq k\leq q} \underline{I}(i_k, i_{k-1}) \in \mathcal{S},$$

and define the (co)simplicial replacements by

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}}^{\mathcal{S}_*} F = \{[q] \mapsto \int_I \underline{\mathcal{S}}(N_q^{\mathcal{S}}(I/-), F) \cong \prod_{i_0,\dots,i_q} \underline{\mathcal{S}}(\prod_{1\leq k\leq q} \underline{I}(i_k,i_{k-1}), F(i_0))\}$$

and

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}}^{\mathcal{S}_*} F = \{[q] \mapsto \int^I N_q^{\mathcal{S}}(I^o/-)_+ \wedge F \cong \bigvee_{i_0,\dots,i_q} \bigwedge_{1\leq k\leq q} \underline{I}(i_k,i_{k-1})_+ \wedge F(i_q)\}$$

and finally, let

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} F = \operatorname{Tot} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}}^{\mathcal{S}_*} \sin|F| \text{ and } \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} F = \operatorname{diag}^* \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}}^{\mathcal{S}_*} X.$$

We see that the homotopy limit is a functor of "$\mathcal{S}$-natural comodules", and homotopy colimits are functors of "$\mathcal{S}$-natural modules" (see section 9.4.2 for terminology).

Example 6.5.1 As a particularly important example, let G be a simplicial monoid, and X a G-space (i.e., an $\mathcal{S}$-functor $X\colon G \to \mathcal{S}_*$), then the homotopy fixed point and orbit spaces are just $X^{hG} = \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{G}} X$ and $X_{hG} = \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{G}} X$. See section 8 for further details.

Remark 6.5.2 *The notion of homotopy (co)limits carries almost word by word to other enriched situations but for one small detail. In the definitions above, the top face map in the nerve $N_q^{\mathcal{S}}(I/i_{-1})$ uses the preferred map $\underline{I}(i_q, i_{q-1}) \to *$ coming from the fact that the unit element for the cartesian product is also terminal in the category of spaces. In other words, the functor $I \to \mathcal{S}_*$ sending everything to the one point space is an "I-module". This has no analog in general, so we have to plug in explicit modules on both sides of the construction, or even better, a "bimodule". That is, if $V = (V, \otimes, e)$ is a closed symmetric monoidal category and $\mathcal{C}$ is a cotensored V-category with all coproducts, let $M\colon I^o \otimes I \to \mathcal{C}$ be a V-functor. Then one may define*

$$HH(I, M) = \{[q] \mapsto \coprod_{i_0,\dots,i_q} M(i_0, i_q) \otimes \bigotimes_{j=1}^{q} \underline{I}(i_j, i_{j-1})\},$$

with Hochschild-style face and degeneracy maps.

If there is a sensible projection $pr\colon I^o \otimes I \to I$ one may define the homotopy colimit of a V-functor $F\colon I \to \mathcal{C}$ as $\operatorname{diag}^* HH(I, F\,pr)$. Likewise we define a Hochschild cohomology which may give rise to a homotopy limit.

All the usual results for homotopy (co)limits generalize, for instance

Lemma 6.5.3 (Homotopy lemma) *Let I be a small $\mathcal{S}$-category, let $X, Y\colon I \to \mathcal{S}_*$ be $\mathcal{S}$-functors, and let $\eta\colon X \to Y$ be an $\mathcal{S}$-natural equivalence (see 9.2.3). Then η induces weak equivalences $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} X \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} Y$ and $\operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} X \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{I}} Y$.*

Proof: The homotopy colimit statement is clear since by lemma 5.0.2 a map of simplicial spaces which induces an equivalence in each degree induce an equivalence on the diagonal. For the homotopy limit case, the proof proceeds just as the one sketched in [31, page 303]: first one shows that

$$\{[q] \mapsto \prod_{i_0,\dots,i_q} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\bigwedge_{1\le k\le q} \underline{I}(i_k, i_{k-1})_+, \sin|X(i_0)|)\}$$

is a fibrant cosimplicial space (this uses the "matching spaces" of [31, page 274], essentially you fix an i_0 and use that the degeneracy map

$$\sum_j s_j\colon \bigvee_{0\le j\le q} \bigvee_{i_1,\dots,i_{q-1}} \bigwedge_{1\le k\le q-1} \underline{I}(i_k, i_{k-1})_+ \to \bigvee_{i_1,\dots,i_q} \bigwedge_{1\le k\le q} \underline{I}(i_k, i_{k-1})_+$$

is an inclusion). Then one uses that a map of fibrant cosimplicial spaces that is a pointwise equivalence, induces an equivalence on Tot. ∎

The (co)finality statements carry over from the discrete case. Since we use the following version in the text we spell it out in all detail

Lemma 6.5.4 (Cofinality lemma) *Let $f\colon I \to J$ be an $\mathcal{S}$-functor. Then*

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} F \xrightarrow{f^*} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} Ff$$

is an equivalence for all $\mathcal{S}$-functors $F\colon J \to \mathcal{S}_*$ if and only if f is "left cofinal" in the sense that for all $j \in obJ$ $N^{\mathcal{S}}(f/j)$ is contractible.

Proof: Assume $* \simeq N^{\mathcal{S}}(f/j)$, and let $X = \sin|F|$. Consider the bicosimplicial space C which in bidegree p, q is given by

$$C^{pq} = \prod_{\substack{i_0, \dots i_p \in I \\ j_0, \dots j_q \in J}} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\underline{J}(f(i_0), j_q)_+ \wedge \bigwedge_{1 \le k \le p} \underline{I}(i_k, i_{k-1})_+ \wedge \bigwedge_{1 \le l \le q} \underline{J}(j_l, j_{l-1})_+, X(j_0))$$

Fixing q, we get a cosimplicial space

$$\prod_{j_0, \dots j_q \in J} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\bigwedge_{1 \le l \le q} \underline{J}(j_l, j_{l-1})_+, \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(N^{\mathcal{S}}(f/j_q)_+, X(j_0)))$$

which by hypothesis is equivalent to

$$\prod_{j_0, \dots j_q \in J} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\bigwedge_{1 \le l \le q} \underline{J}(j_l, j_{l-1})_+, X(j_0))$$

which, when varying q and taking the total, is $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} X$.

Fixing p we get a cosimplicial space

$$[q] \mapsto \prod_{i_0, \dots i_p \in I} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\bigwedge_{1 \le k \le p} \underline{I}(i_k, i_{k-1})_+, \prod_{j_0, \dots j_q \in J} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\underline{J}(f(i_0), j_q)_+ \wedge \bigwedge_{1 \le l \le q} \underline{J}(j_l, j_{l-1})_+, X(j_0)))$$

Note that $X(f(i_0)) \to \{[q] \mapsto \prod_{j_0, \dots j_q \in J} \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\underline{J}(f(i_0), j_q)_+ \wedge \bigwedge_{1 \le l \le q} \underline{J}(j_l, j_{l-1})_+, X(j_0))\}$ is an equivalence (the right hand side has an extra codegeneracy), and so, when varying p again, we get $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} Ff$. One also has to show compatibility with the map in the statement.

In the opposite direction, let $F(j) = \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(\underline{J}(j, j'), Z)$ for some $j' \in obJ$ and fibrant space Z. Writing out the cosimplicial replacements for $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} F$ and $\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} Ff$ we get that the first is $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(N(J/j')_+, Z) \simeq Z$, whereas the latter is $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(N(f/j')_+, Z)$, and so $N(f/j')$ must be contractible. ∎

Note that in the proof, for a given $F\colon J \to \mathcal{S}_*$, the crucial point was that for all $j, j' \in obJ$, we had an equivalence $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(N^{\mathcal{S}}(f/j')_+, X(j)) \simeq X(j)$. This gives the corollary

Corollary 6.5.5 *Given $\mathcal{S}$-functors*

$$I \xrightarrow{f} J \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{S}_*,$$

then

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} F \xrightarrow{f^*} \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{I}} Ff$$

is an equivalence if for all $j, j' \in obJ$, the projection $N^{\mathcal{S}}(f/j')_+ \to S^0$ induces an equivalence $Map_*(N^{\mathcal{S}}(f/j')_+, F(j)) \simeq F(j)$. ☺

6.6 Completions and localizations

We review the basic facts about the completion and localization functors. The authoritative references are Bousfield and Kan's book [31], and Bousfield's papers [28] and [29]. Let R be either the field $\mathbf{F}_p$ with p elements for a prime p or a subring of the rationals $\mathbf{Q}$. The free/forgetful adjoint pair

$$sR - mod \overset{\tilde{R}}{\leftrightarrows} \mathcal{S}_*$$

gives rise to a cosimplicial functor on spaces which in dimension q takes $X \in \mathcal{S}_*$ to the simplicial R-module $\tilde{R}^{q+1}(X)$ considered as a space. In favourable circumstances the total, or homotopy limit $R_\infty X$, of this cosimplicial space has the right properties of an *R-completion*. We say that X is *good* (with respect to R) if $X \to R_\infty X$ induces an isomorphism in R-homology, and $R_\infty X \to R_\infty R_\infty X$ is an equivalence.

Especially, Bousfield and Kan [31] prove that simply connected spaces and loop spaces are good, and so R-completion of connective spectra is well behaved (this is a homotopy limit construction, so we should be prepared to make our spectra Ω-spectra before applying R_∞ to each space).

Explictly, for a spectrum X, let J be a set of primes, I the set of primes not in J and p any prime, we let

$$X_{(J)} = \{k \mapsto X^k_{(J)} = (\mathbf{Z}[I^{-1}])_\infty X^k\}$$

and

$$X^\frown_p = \{k \mapsto (Q^k X)^\frown_p = (\mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z})_\infty (Q^k X)\}.$$

Actually, for many purposes it is advantageous to use Bousfield's model [29]

$$X^\frown_p = \underline{\mathcal{S}pt}(\Sigma^{-1} M\mathbf{Z}/p^\infty, X),$$

where $M\mathbf{Z}/p^\infty$ is the Moore spectrum 2.2.5 associated to the abelian group $\mathbf{Z}/p^\infty = \mathbf{Z}[1/p]/\mathbf{Z}$. For instance, this way one clearly sees that profinite completion commutes with homotopy limits. Using that $\mathbf{Q}/\mathbf{Z} \cong \bigoplus_{p \text{ prime}} \mathbf{Z}[1/p]/\mathbf{Z}$ we may choose $M\mathbf{Q}/\mathbf{Z} = \bigvee_{p \text{ prime}} M\mathbf{Z}[1/p]/\mathbf{Z}$, and the *profinite completion* $X^\frown$ may then be written as

$$X^\frown = \underline{\mathcal{S}pt}(\Sigma^{-1} M\mathbf{Q}/\mathbf{Z}, X).$$

We write $X_{\mathbf{Q}}$ or $X_{(0)}$ for the rationalization $X_\emptyset$, and we say that X is *rational* if $X \to X_{\mathbf{Q}}$ is an equivalence, which is equivalent to asserting that $\pi_* X$ is a rational vector space. Generally, $X_{(J)}$ is a *localization*, in the sense that $X \to X_{(J)}$ induces an equivalence in spectrum homology with coefficients in $\mathbf{Z}[I^{-1}]$, and $\pi_* X_{(J)} \cong \pi_* X \otimes \mathbf{Z}[I^{-1}]$.

Also, $X^\frown_p$ is a *p-completion* in the sense that $X \to X^\frown_p$ induces an equivalence in spectrum homology with coefficients in $\mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z}$, and there is a natural short exact (nonnaturally splittable) sequence

$$0 \to \mathrm{Ext}^1(C_{p^\infty}, \pi_* X) \to \pi_* X^\frown_p \to Hom(C_{p^\infty}, \pi_{*-1} X) \to 0$$

where $C_{p^\infty} = \mathbf{Z}[1/p]/\mathbf{Z}$.

There is an "arithmetic square":

Theorem 6.6.1 *[29] Let X be any spectrum, then*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & X_{\mathbf{Q}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \prod_{p\ prime} X\hat{_p} & \longrightarrow & (\prod_{p\ prime} X\hat{_p})_{\mathbf{Q}} \end{array}$$

is homotopy cartesian. ☺

Also, from the description of completion and localization in Bousfield we get that p-completion commutes with arbitrary homotopy limits and J-localization with arbitrary homotopy colimits.

One says that an abelian group M is Ext-*p-complete* if $M \to \mathrm{Ext}(C_{p^\infty}, M)$ is an isomorphism and $Hom(C_{p^\infty}, M) = 0$. A spectrum X is p-complete (i.e., $X \to X\hat{_p}$ is an equivalence) if and only if $\pi_* X$ is Ext $-p$-complete.

Lemma 6.6.2 *Any simplicial space satisfying the π_*-Kan condition and which is "good" in every degree (and in particular, any simplicial spectrum) may be p-completed or localized degreewise*

Proof: We prove the less obvious completion part. Let Y be the simplicial space $\{q \mapsto (X_q)\hat{_p}\}$. We must show that the map $\mathrm{diag}^* X \to \mathrm{diag}^* Y$ is a p-completion. Use the spectral sequence of theorem 5.0.6 for the simplicial space Y, and that Ext$-p$ completeness is closed under extension to see that $\mathrm{diag}^*(Y)$ is p-complete. Then use the spectral sequence for the simplicial space $\mathbf{F}_p Y$ to see that $H_*(\mathrm{diag}^* X, \mathbf{F}_p) \to H_*(\mathrm{diag}^* Y, \mathbf{F}_p)$ is an isomorphism.

∎

We end this section with two results that are needed in the text.

Lemma 6.6.3 *Given $\mathcal{S}$-functors*

$$I \xrightarrow{f} J \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{S}_*$$

such that F has p-complete values and such that $(N^{\mathcal{S}}(f/j))\hat{_p}$ is contractible for every $j \in obJ$, then

$$\underset{\overleftarrow{J}}{\mathrm{holim}} F \xrightarrow{f^*} \underset{\overleftarrow{I}}{\mathrm{holim}} Ff$$

is an equivalence.

Proof: Follows from the corollary 6.5.5 of the cofinality lemma and the fact that if A is a space and B is a p-complete space, then $Map(A\hat{_p}, B) \xrightarrow{\sim} Map(A, B)$. ∎

Corollary 6.6.4 *The inclusion $C_{p^\infty} = \lim_{r\to\infty} C_{p^r} \subseteq \mathbf{S^1} = \sin|S^1|$ induces a weak equivalence*

$$BC_{p^\infty} \xrightarrow{\sim} B\mathbf{S^1} \simeq K(\mathbf{Z}, 2)$$

after p-completion. Thus we get that for any p-complete space or spectrum X with $\mathbf{S^1}$-action, that the map

$$X^{h\mathbf{S^1}} \to X^{hC_{p^\infty}}$$

is an equivalence.

Proof: Given lemma 6.6.3 we only need to see that $BC_{p^\infty}{}^{\widehat{}}_p \xrightarrow{\sim} B\mathbf{S^1}{}^{\widehat{}}_p$: We have a short exact sequence $C_{p^\infty} \subseteq \mathbf{S^1} \to \lim_{\overrightarrow{p}} \mathbf{S^1}$, and so it is enough to show that $B(\lim_{\overrightarrow{p}} \mathbf{S^1})^{\widehat{}}_p \simeq *$. But this is clear, since the homotopy groups of $B(\lim_{\overrightarrow{p}} \mathbf{S^1}) \simeq K(\mathbf{Z}[1/p], 2)$ are uniquely p-divisible. ∎

6.6.5 Completions and localizations of simplicial abelian groups

If M is a simplicial abelian group, then we can complete or localize the Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum HM. The point here is that this gives new Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectra which can be described explicitly. The proofs of the statements below follow from the fact that Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectra and completion and localization are determined by their homotopy groups.

Let $M \in ob\mathcal{A} = s\mathcal{A}b$ be a simplicial abelian group. Then $H(M \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{Q})$ is clearly a model for $HM_{(0)}$. The map $HM \to HM_{(0)}$ is given by $M \cong M \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{Z} \to M \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{Q}$.

Choose a free resolution $R \overset{\sim}{\twoheadrightarrow} \mathbf{Z}[1/p]/\mathbf{Z}$. Then we may define the p-completion as

$$M^{\widehat{}}_p = \underline{\mathcal{A}}(R, \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1] \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} M)$$

(internal function object in $\mathcal{A}$, see section 2.1.1) which is a simplicial abelian group whose Eilenberg–Mac Lane spectrum $H(M^{\widehat{}}_p)$ is equivalent to $(HM)^{\widehat{}}_p$ (note the similarity with the up to homotopy definition commonly used for spectra). The homotopy groups are given by considering the second quadrant spectral sequence (of the bicomplex associated with the simplicial direction of the morphism spaces and the cosimplicial direction of the resolution R – just as explained in section 2.1.4 for simplicial abelian groups, cosimplicial abelian groups give rise to chain complexes)

$$E^2_{s,t} = \mathrm{Ext}^{-s}_{\mathbf{Z}}(\mathbf{Z}[1/p]/\mathbf{Z}, \pi_{t-1}M) \Rightarrow \pi_{s+t}M^{\widehat{}}_p$$

whose only nonvanishing colums are in degree 0 and -1. The map $M \to M^{\widehat{}}_p$ is given as follows. Let $Q = R\prod_{\mathbf{Z}[1/p]/\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{Z}[1/p]$, and consider the short exact sequence

$$0 \to \mathbf{Z} \to Q \to R \to 0$$

giving rise to the exact sequence

$$0 \to \mathcal{A}(R, \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1] \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} M) \to \mathcal{A}(Q, \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1] \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} M) \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}[S^1] \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} M \to 0$$

which gives the desired map $M \to M^{\widehat{}}_p$.

7 Cubical diagrams

Cubical diagrams are used in many places in the text. We collect some useful facts here for reference.

Definition 7.0.1 If S is a set, let $\mathcal{P}S$ be the category of subsets of S and inclusions. We introduce the shorthand $\mathcal{P} = \mathcal{P}\{1, 2, \dots\}$ and $\mathcal{P}n = \mathcal{P}\{1, \dots, n\}$.

An S*-cube* is a functor $\mathcal{X}$ from the category $\mathcal{P}S$. A *cubical diagram* is a functor from $\mathcal{P}$. An n*-cube* is an S-cube for some S of cardinality $|S| = n$.

A d*-subcube* of an S-cube $\mathcal{X}$ is a d-cube resulting as the precomposite of $\mathcal{X}$ along an injection $F\colon \mathcal{P}T \to \mathcal{P}S$ satisfying that if $U, V \subseteq T$, then $F(U \cap V) = F(U) \cap F(V)$ and $F(U \cup V) = F(U) \cup F(V)$. A d*-face* is a d-subcube induced by an F given by $F(V) = U \cup f(V)$ where $f\colon \{1, \dots, d\} \to S$ is an injection and $U \subseteq S$ is disjoint from the image of f.

So, a 0-cube is an object $\mathcal{X}_\emptyset$, a 1-cube is a map $\mathcal{X}_\emptyset \to \mathcal{X}_{\{1\}}$, and a 2-cube is a (commuting) square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{X}_\emptyset & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{X}_{\{1\}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{X}_{\{2\}} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{X}_{\{1,2\}} \end{array}$$

and so on. Note that if $\mathcal{X}$ is a 47-cube, then

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{X}_{\{3\}} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{X}_{\{1,3,4\}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{X}_{\{2,3\}} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{X}_{\{1,2,3,4\}} \end{array}$$

is a 2-subcube, but not a 2-face.

We will regard a natural transformation of n-cubes $\mathcal{X} \to \mathcal{Y}$ as an $n+1$-cube. In particular, if $\mathcal{X}$ is an n-cube and $F \to G$ is a natural transformation of functors from the target category of $\mathcal{X}$, then we get an $n+1$-cube $F\mathcal{X} \to G\mathcal{X}$.

Definition 7.0.2 Let $\mathcal{X}$ be an S-cube with values in any one of the categories where we have defined homotopy (co)limits (see section 6). We say that $\mathcal{X}$ is k*-cartesian* if the canonical map

$$\mathcal{X}_\emptyset \to \operatorname*{holim}_{\overleftarrow{S \neq \emptyset}} \mathcal{X}_S$$

is k-connected, and k*-cocartesian* if the canonical map

$$\operatorname*{holim}_{\overrightarrow{S \neq \{1,\dots,n\}}} \mathcal{X}_S \to \mathcal{X}_{\{1,\dots,n\}}$$

is k-connected. It is *homotopy cartesian* if it is k-cartesian for all k, and *homotopy cocartesian* if it is k-cocartesian for all k.

A 0-cube is k-cartesian (resp. k-cocartesian) if its single value is $(k-1)$-connected (resp. k-connected). A 1-cube is k-(co)cartesian if it is k-connected as a map.

When there is no possibility of confusing with the categorical notions, we drop the "homotopy" and write just cartesian and cocartesian. Homotopy (co)cartesian cubes are also called *(homotopy) pullback cubes* (resp. *(homotopy) pushout cubes*), and the initial (resp. final) vertex is then called the *(homotopy) pullback* (resp. *(homotopy) pushout*).

Definition 7.0.3 Let $\mathcal{X}$ be an S-cube with values in any one of the categories where we have defined homotopy (co)limits (see section 6). The *iterated fiber* (resp. *iterated cofiber*) of $\mathcal{X}$ is the homotopy fiber (resp. cofiber) of the canonical map

$$\mathcal{X}_\emptyset \to \underset{\overleftarrow{S\neq\emptyset}}{\operatorname{holim}} \mathcal{X}_S \qquad (\text{resp.} \quad \underset{\overrightarrow{S\neq\{1,\dots,n\}}}{\operatorname{holim}} \mathcal{X}_S \to \mathcal{X}_{\{1,\dots,n\}}).$$

The reason for the term "iterated" is that one may obtain these homotopy types by iteratively taking homotopy (co)limits in one direction at a time.

7.1 Cubes and (co)simplicial spaces

Simplicial and cosimplicial spaces can be approximated through cubes, by "writing out" all the (co)simplicial relations. Since we will need the cosimplicial version, we write this out in some detail, and leave the simplicial statement to the reader.

Lemma 7.1.1 *Let Ord_n be the category of ordered non-empty sets of cardinality less than or equal $n+1$. The inclusion $f\colon \mathcal{P}[n]-\emptyset \subseteq Ord_n$ is left cofinal. Hence, by the cofinality lemma 6.2.1 the total may be calculated by a pullback: if X is a cosimplicial space (in the form of a functor from the category of ordered nonempty finite sets), spectrum or abelian group, then the map*

$$\underset{\overleftarrow{S\in Ord_n}}{\operatorname{holim}} X^S \to \underset{\overleftarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}[n]}}{\operatorname{holim}} X^S$$

is an equivalence.

Proof: We must show that for $t\leq n$ the over categories $f/[t]$ are all contractible. Since two objects in $f/[t]$ have maximally one morphism connecting them, it is enough to show that $f/[t]$ is connected. We will produce a path from an arbitrary object $\phi\colon S\to[t]$, where $S\subseteq[n]$, to the inclusion $\{0\}\subseteq[n]$. By restricting, we may assume that S is a one-point set $\{s\}$. If $s=\phi(s)=0$ we are done. If $s\neq 0$, consider $\{s\}\subseteq\{0,s\}\supseteq\{0\}$ and extend ϕ by sending 0 to 0, and we are again done. If $s=0$ and $\phi(s)\neq 0$, consider $\{0\}\subseteq\{0,t\}\supseteq\{t\}\subseteq\{0,t\}\supseteq\{0\}$, where we extend ϕ to $\{0,t\}$ by sending t to t, and on the second instance of $\{0,t\}$ the inclusion to $[t]$. ∎

There is a preferred equivalence $Ord\to\Delta$ to the skeletal subcategory, and this lemma is used to identify homotopy limits over Δ with homotopy limits over $\mathcal{P}-\emptyset$. In particular, one may apply this to the cosimplicial replacement of homotopy limits: for any functor

$X\colon J \to \mathcal{S}_*$ from a small category J we have a natural equivalence

$$\underset{\overleftarrow{J}}{\mathrm{holim}} X \simeq \underset{\overleftarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}-\emptyset}}{\mathrm{holim}} \left(\prod_{j_0\leftarrow\dots\leftarrow j_{|S|}\in B_{|S|}J} X(j_0) \right)$$

and dually

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{J}}{\mathrm{holim}} X \simeq \underset{\overrightarrow{S\in\mathcal{P}^o-\emptyset}}{\mathrm{holim}} \left(\bigvee_{j_0\leftarrow\dots\leftarrow j_{|S|}\in B_{|S|}J} X(j_{|S|}) \right).$$

This is especially interesting if BJ is a finite space, for then the homotopy limit is a homotopy pullback of a finite cube, and the homotopy colimit is the homotopy pushout of a finite cube. Explicitly, if $B(J) = sk_k B(J)$ (that is, as a functor from Δ^o, it factors through the homotopy equivalent subcategory Δ_k of objects $[q]$ for $q \leq k$), then $\mathrm{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} X$ is equivalent to the homotopy pullback of the punctured k-cube which sends $S \in \mathcal{P}k - \emptyset$ to $\prod_{j_0\leftarrow\dots\leftarrow j_{|S|}\in B_{|S|}J} X(j_0)$, and dually for the homotopy colimit.

7.2 The Blakers–Massey theorem

This means that statements for homotopy pullbacks and pushouts are especially worth while listening to. The Blakers–Massey theorem 7.2.2 is an instance of such a statement. It relates homotopy limits and homotopy colimits in a certain range. The ultimate Blakers–Massey theorem is the following. See [93, 2.5 and 2.6] for a proof.

Theorem 7.2.1 *Let S be a finite set with $|S| = n \geq 1$, and let $k\colon \mathcal{P}S \to \mathbf{Z}$ be a monotone function. Set $M(k)$ to be the minimum of $\sum_\alpha k(T_\alpha)$ over all partitions $\{T_\alpha\}$ of S by nonempty sets. Let $\mathcal{X}$ be an S-cube.*

1. *If $\mathcal{X}|_T$ is $k(T)$-cocartesian for each nonempty $T \subseteq S$, then $\mathcal{X}$ is $1 - n + M(k)$-cartesian.*

2. *If $\mathcal{X}(-\cup(S-T))|_T$ is $k(T)$-cartesian for each nonempty $T \subseteq S$, then $\mathcal{X}$ is $n - 1 + M(k)$-cocartesian.*

☺

The usual Blakers–Massey theorem is a direct corollary of this. We say that a cube is *strongly (co)cartesian* if all subcubes of dimension strictly greater than one are homotopy (co)cartesian (demanding this also for dimension one would be the same as demanding that all maps were equivalences, and would lead to a rather uninteresting theory!).

Corollary 7.2.2 (Blakers–Massey) *Let $\mathcal{X}$ be a strongly cocartesian n-cube, and suppose that $\mathcal{X}_\emptyset \to \mathcal{X}_{\{s\}}$ is k_s-connected for all $1 \leq s \leq n$. Then $\mathcal{X}$ is $1 - n + \sum_s k_s$-cartesian. Dually, if $\mathcal{X}$ is strongly cartesian, and $\mathcal{X}_{\{1,\dots,n\}-\{s\}} \to \mathcal{X}_{\{1,\dots,n\}}$ is k_s connected for $1 \leq s \leq n$, then $\mathcal{X}$ is $n - 1 + \sum_s k_s$-cocartesian.* ☺

By applying the Blakers-Massey theorem to the cocartesian square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & \Delta[1]\wedge X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & S^1\wedge X \end{array}$$

you get

Corollary 7.2.3 (Freudenthal) *If X is $(n-1)$-connected, then the natural map $X \to \Omega^1(S^1\wedge X)$ is $(2n-1)$-connected.* ☺

For reference we list the following useful corollary which is the unstable forerunner of the fact that stably products are sums.

Corollary 7.2.4 *Let X and Y be pointed spaces where X is m-connected and Y is n-connected. Then $X \vee Y \to X \times Y$ is $m+n$-connected.*

Proof: This is much easier by using the Whitehead and Künneth theorems, but here goes. Assume for simplicity that $m \geq n$ Consider the cocartesian square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \vee Y & \longrightarrow & X \times Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & X\wedge Y \end{array} .$$

Now, $X\wedge Y$ is $m+n+1$-connected (by e.g., considering the spectral sequence 5.0.6 of the associated bisimplicial set), the left vertical map is $n+1$-connected and the top horizontal map is – for trivial reasons – n-connected. Using the Blakers-Massey theorem 7.2.1, we get that the diagram is $2n$-cartesian and so the top horizontal map must be at least $2n$-connected (since $m+n \geq 2n$). With this improved connectivity, we can use Blakers-Massey again. Repeating this procedure until we get cartesianness that exceeds $m+n$ we get that the top map is $m+n$-connected (and finally, the diagram is $m+2n$-cartesian). ∎

The Blakers–Massey theorem has the usual consequence for spectra:

Corollary 7.2.5 *Let $\mathcal{X}$ be an n-cube of bounded below spectra. Then $\mathcal{X}$ is homotopy cartesian if and only if it is homotopy cocartesian.* ☺

Lemma 7.2.6 *Let $X\colon I \times J \to \mathcal{S}pt$ be a functor where BI is finite. Then the canonical maps*

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{I}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \underset{\overleftarrow{J}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, X \to \underset{\overleftarrow{J}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \underset{\overrightarrow{I}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, X$$

and

$$\underset{\overrightarrow{J}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \underset{\overleftarrow{I}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, X \to \underset{\overleftarrow{I}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, \underset{\overrightarrow{J}}{\operatorname{holim}}\, X$$

are equivalences.

Proof: The homotopy colimit of X over I is equivalent to the homotopy pushout of a punctured cube with finite wedges of copies of $X(i)$'s on each vertex. But in spectra, finite wedges are equivalent to products, and homotopy pushout cubes are homotopy pullback cubes, and homotopy pullbacs commute with homotopy limits. This proves the first equivalence, the other is dual. ∎

Corollary 7.2.7 *Let* $X.\colon \Delta^o \times J \to \mathcal{S}pt$ *be a functor regarded as a functor from* J *to simplicial spectra. Assume* J *has finite cohomological dimension and* diag^*X *is bounded below. Then*

$$\mathrm{diag}^* \underleftarrow{\mathrm{holim}}_{J} X. \to \underleftarrow{\mathrm{holim}}_{J} \mathrm{diag}^* X.$$

is an equivalence.

Proof: Assume $\lim_{\overleftarrow{J}}{}^{(s)} \equiv 0$ for $s > n$, and $\pi_s \mathrm{diag}^* X. = 0$ for $s < m$. Let

$$sk_k X. = \underrightarrow{\mathrm{holim}}_{[q]\in\Delta_k} X_q$$

This maps by a $k-m$-connected map to $\mathrm{holim}_{\overrightarrow{\Delta^o}} X \cong \mathrm{diag}^* X.$, and let F be the homotopy fiber of this map. Then $E^2_{s,t} = \lim_{\overleftarrow{J}}{}^{(-s)} \pi_t F = 0$ if $s < -n$ or $t < k-m$, so $\pi_q \,\mathrm{holim}_{\overleftarrow{J}} F = 0$ for $q < k - m - n$. All in all, this means that the last map in

$$sk_k \underleftarrow{\mathrm{holim}}_{J} X. = \underrightarrow{\mathrm{holim}}_{[q]\in\Delta_k} \underleftarrow{\mathrm{holim}}_{J} X_q \xrightarrow{\sim} \underleftarrow{\mathrm{holim}}_{J} \underrightarrow{\mathrm{holim}}_{[q]\in\Delta_k} X_q = \underleftarrow{\mathrm{holim}}_{J} sk_k X \to \underleftarrow{\mathrm{holim}}_{J} \mathrm{diag}^* X.$$

is $k - n - m$-connected. Letting k go to infinity we have the desired result. ∎

As we see in the next section even in the unstable case there is a shadow of these nice properties.

7.3 Uniformly cartesian cubes

Definition 7.3.1 If f is some integral function, we say that an S-cube $\mathcal{X}$ is f-cartesian if each d-subcube of $\mathcal{X}$ is $f(d)$-cartesian. Likewise for f-cocartesian.

Lemma 7.3.2 *Let* $k > 0$*. An* S*-cube of spaces is* $id + k$*-cartesian if and only if it is* $2 \cdot id + k - 1$*-cocartesian. The implication cartesian to cocartesian holds even if* $k = 0$*.*

Proof: Note that it is trivially true if $|S| \leq 1$. Assume it is proven for all d-cubes with $d < n$.

To prove one implication, let $\mathcal{X}$ be an $id+k$-cartesian $n = |S|$-cube. All strict subcubes are also $id + k$-cartesian, and so $2 \cdot id + k - 1$-cocartesian, and the only thing we need to show is that $\mathcal{X}$ itself is $2n + k - 1$-cocartesian. This follows from the second part of the Blakers-Massey theorem 7.2.1: $\mathcal{X}$ is K-cocartesian where

$$K = n - 1 + \min(\sum_\alpha (|T_\alpha| + k))$$

where the minimum is taken over all partitions $\{T_\alpha\}$ of S by nonempty sets. But this minimum is clearly attained by the trivial partition, for if we subdivide T into T_1 and T_2 then $|T|+k = |T_1|+|T_2|+k \le |T_1|+k+|T_2|+k$, and so $K = (n-1)+(n+k) = 2n+k-1$.

In the opposite direction, let $\mathcal{X}$ be a $2\cdot id+k-1$-cocartesian $n=|S|$-cube. This time, all strict subcubes are by assumption $id+k$ cartesian, and so we are left with showing that $\mathcal{X}$ is $n+k$-cartesian. Again this follows from 7.2.1: $\mathcal{X}$ is K-cartesian where

$$K = (1-n) + \min(\sum_\alpha (2|T_\alpha| + k - 1))$$

where the minimum is taken over all partitions $\{T_\alpha\}$ of S by nonempty sets. But this minimum is clearly attained by the trivial partition, for if we subdivide T into T_1 and T_2 then $2|T|+k-1 = 2|T_1|+2|T_2|+k-1 \le 2|T_1|+k-1+2|T_2|+k-1$, and so $K = (1-n)+(2n+k-1) = n+k$. ∎

Notice that this statement is undisturbed if one replaces all instances of "subcube" by "face" in the definitions.

Homology takes cofiber sequences to long exact sequences. This is a reflection of the well-known statement

Lemma 7.3.3 *If $\mathcal{X}$ is a homotopy cocartesian cube of spaces, then $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{X}$ is homotopy cartesian.*

Proof: This follows by induction on the dimension d of $\mathcal{X}$. If $d \le 1$ it follows since homology is a homotopy functor, and if $\mathcal{X}$ has dimension $d > 1$, split $\mathcal{X}$ into two $d-1$ dimensional cubes $\mathcal{X}^i \to \mathcal{X}^f$. Do a functorial replacement so that each map in $\mathcal{X}^i \rightarrowtail \mathcal{X}^f$ is a cofibration and take the cofiber $\mathcal{X}^c$. As $\mathcal{X}$ was cocartesian, so is $\mathcal{X}^c$, and by assumption $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{X}^c$ is cartesian, and $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{X}^i \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{X}^f \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{X}^c$ is a short exact sequence of cubes of simplicial abelian groups, and so $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{X}$ must be cartesian. ∎

We will need a generalization of the Hurewicz theorem. Recall that the Hurewicz theorem states that if X is $k-1>0$ connected, then $\pi_k X \to H_k(X)$ is an isomorphism and $\pi_{k+1}X \to H_{k+1}X$ is a surjection, or in other words that

$$X \xrightarrow{h_X} \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}X$$

is $k+1$-connected.

Using the transformation $h\colon 1 \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}$ on $h_X\colon X \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}X$ we get a square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{h_X} & \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}X \\ {\scriptstyle h_X}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle h_{\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}X}} \\ \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}X & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}h_X} & \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}X \end{array}$$

One may check by brute force that this square is $k+2$-cartesian if X is $k-1>0$ connected. We may continue this process to obtain arbitrarily high dimensional cubes by repeatedly applying h and the generalized Hurewicz theorem states that the result gets linearly closer to being cartesian with the dimension.

Theorem 7.3.4 (The Hurewicz theorem (generalized form)) *Let $k > 1$. If $\mathcal{X}$ is an $id+k$-cartesian cube of spaces, then so is $\mathcal{X} \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{X}$.*

Proof: To fix notation, let $\mathcal{X}$ be an $n = |S|$-cube with iterated fiber F and iterated cofiber C. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be the S-cube which sends S to C, and all strict subsets to $*$. Then the $|S|+1$-cube $\mathcal{X} \to \mathcal{C}$ is cocartesian.

As $\mathcal{X}$ is $id+k$-cartesian, it is $2\cdot id+k-1$-cocartesian, and in particular C is $2n+k-1$ connected. Furthermore, if $\mathcal{X}|T$ is some d-subcube of $\mathcal{X}$ with T not containing the terminal set S, then $\mathcal{X}|T$ is $2d+k-1$-cocartesian, and so $\mathcal{X}|T \to \mathcal{C}|T = *$ is $2d+k$-cocartesian. Also, if $\mathcal{X}|T$ is some strict subcube with T containing the terminal set S, then $\mathcal{X}|T \to \mathcal{C}|T$ is still $2d+k$-cocartesian because C is $2n+k-1$ connected, and $d < n$. Thus $\mathcal{X} \to \mathcal{C}$ is $2\cdot id+k-2$-cocartesian, and cocartesian. Using the Blakers-Massey theorem 7.2.1 again, we see that $\mathcal{X} \to \mathcal{C}$ is $1-n+2(n+1+k-2) = n+2k-1$-cartesian as the minimal partition is obtained by partitioning $S \cup \{n+1\}$ in two.

This implies that the map of iterated fibers $F \to \Omega^n C$ is $n+2k-1$ connected. We note that $n+2k-1 \geq n+k+1$ as $k > 1$.

Furthermore, as C is $2n+k-1$ connected, $\Omega^n C \to \Omega^n \tilde{\mathbf{Z}} C$ is $n+k+1$ connected. But lemma 7.3.3 implies that $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{X} \to \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{C}$ is cartesian. Hence the iterated fiber of $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{X}$ is $\Omega^n\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}C$, and we have shown that the map from the iterated fiber of $\mathcal{X}$ is $n+1+k$ connected. Doing this also on all subcubes gives the result. ∎

In particular

Corollary 7.3.5 *Let X be a $k-1 > 0$-connected space. Then the cube you get by applying the Hurewicz map n times to X is $id+k$-cartesian.* ☺

Lastly, the equivalence between $(id+k)$-cartesian and $(2id+k-1)$-cocartesian implies good behavior of the plus construction.

Lemma 7.3.6 *If $\mathcal{X}$ is an $(id+k)$-cartesian n-cube of spaces for $k \geq 1$, then so is $\mathcal{X}^+$.*

Proof: Since all the maps in $\mathcal{X}$ are $1+k \geq 2$-connected, they induce isomorphisms on fundamental groups. Let $\pi = \pi_1\mathcal{X}_\emptyset$, and let P be the maximal perfect subgroup. From the comment following immediately after the proof of lemma III.1.1.2, we have that for each $S \subseteq \{1,\ldots,n\}$ the map $(q_{\mathcal{X}_S})_*\colon H_*(\mathcal{X}_S;(q_{\mathcal{X}_S})^*\mathbf{Z}[\pi/P]) \to H_*(\mathcal{X}_S^+;\mathbf{Z}[\pi/P])$ is an isomorphism. Hence, the spectral sequence of the homotopy colimit 6.4.3 over the proper subsets S of $\{1,\ldots,n\}$,

$$\varinjlim{}_{(s)} H_t(\mathcal{X}_S;(q_{\mathcal{X}_S})^*\mathbf{Z}[\pi/P]) \Rightarrow H_{s+t}(\operatorname{ho}\varinjlim \mathcal{X}_S;(q_{\operatorname{holim}_\to \mathcal{X}_S})^*\mathbf{Z}[\pi/P]),$$

and the corresponding spectral sequence for $\mathcal{X}^+$ are isomorphic. Again by the comment following lemma III.1.1.2, this gives that $\operatorname{holim}_\to \mathcal{X}_S \to \operatorname{holim}_\to \mathcal{X}_S^+$ is acyclic and kills the maximal perfect subgroup, and so by the uniqueness of the plus construction, III.1.1.10, $\operatorname{holim}_\to(\mathcal{X}_S^+)$ is equivalent to $(\operatorname{holim}_\to \mathcal{X}_S)^+$.

Now, since $\mathcal{X}$ is $(id+k)$-cartesian, $\mathcal{X}$ is $2id+k-1$-cocartesian, and in particular $\operatorname{holim}_\to \mathcal{X}_S \to \mathcal{X}_{\{1,\ldots,n\}}$ is $2n+k-1$-connected, which implies that $(\operatorname{holim}_\to \mathcal{X}_S)^+ \to \mathcal{X}^+_{\{1,\ldots,n\}}$

is $2n+k-1$-connected, where again the homotopy colimit is over the proper subsets S of $\{1,\dots,n\}$. Consequently $\mathcal{X}^+$ is $2n+k-1$-cocartesian.

Repeating this argument for all subcubes of $\mathcal{X}$ gives that $\mathcal{X}^+$ is $(2id+k-1)$-cocartesian, and so $(id+k)$-cartesian. ∎

8 G-spaces

In this section we collect some useful facts on G-spaces used in chapter VI. We will not strive for the maximal generality, and there is nothing here which can not be found elsewhere in some form.

Let G be a simplicial monoid. A *G-space* X is a space X together with a pointed G-action $\mu\colon G_+\wedge X \to X$ such that the expected diagrams commute. Or said otherwise: it is an $\mathcal{S}$-functor (see definition 9.2.3, or alternatively: a map between simplicial categories with discrete object classes)

$$G \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{S}_*$$

with G considered as an $\mathcal{S}$-category with one object and morphism space G. We let X denote both the functor and the image of the object in G. That the functor is enriched over $\mathcal{S}$ asserts that the map $G \to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X,X)$ is simplicial, and by adjointness it gives rise to μ (the "plus" in $G_+\wedge X \to X$ comes from the fact that $G \to \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X,X)$ is not basepoint preserving as it must send the identity to the identity). Then the functoriality encodes the desired commuting diagrams.

According to our general convention of writing $\mathcal{C}\mathcal{S}_*$ for the category of functors from a category $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{S}_*$ (blatantly violated in our notation $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ for functors from Γ^o to spaces), we write $G\mathcal{S}_*$ for the category of G-spaces. This is a pointed $\mathcal{S}$-category with function spaces

$$\underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(X,Y) = \{[q] \mapsto G\mathcal{S}_*(X\wedge\Delta[q]_+, Y)\}.$$

If X is a G-space and Y is a G^o-space (a right G-space), we let their smash product be the space

$$Y\wedge_G X = Y\wedge X/(yg\wedge x \sim y\wedge gx)$$

The forgetful map $G\mathcal{S}_* \to \mathcal{S}_*$ has a left adjoint, namely $X \mapsto G_+\wedge X$, the *free G-space on the space X*.

Generally we say that a G-space X is *free* if for all non-base points $x\in X$ the *isotropy groups* $I_x = \{g \in G \mid gx = x\}$ are trivial, whereas $I_{\text{base point}} = G$ ("free away from the basepoint"). A *finite free G-space* is a G-space Y with only finitely many non-degenerate *G-cells* (you adjoin a "G-cell" of dimension n to Y_j by taking a pushout of maps of G spaces

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\partial\Delta(n)\wedge G_+ & \xrightarrow{\text{incl.}\wedge id} & \Delta(n)\wedge G_+ \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
Y_j & \longrightarrow & Y_{j+1}
\end{array}$$

where G acts trivially on $\partial\Delta(n)$ and $\Delta(n)$).

8.1 The orbit and fixed point spaces

Let $f\colon M \to G$ be a map of monoids. Precomposition with f gives a functor

$$f^*\colon [G, \mathcal{E}ns_*] \to [M, \mathcal{E}ns_*],$$

and since all (co)limits exist this functor has both a right and a left adjoint. If f is surjective and G a group, let $H \subset M$ be the submonoid of elements mapping to the identity. Then the right adjoint of f^* is

$$X \mapsto X^H = \lim_{\overleftarrow{H}} X = \{x \in X | h \cdot x = x \text{ for all } h \in H\}$$

the set of *fixed points*, and the left adjoint is

$$X \mapsto X_H = \lim_{\overrightarrow{H}} X = X/(h \cdot x \sim x)$$

the set of *orbits*. The same considerations and definitions holds in the simplicial case, and we even get simplicial adjoints:

$$M\mathcal{S}_* \;\begin{array}{c}\xrightarrow{X\mapsto X^H}\\ \xleftarrow{f^*}\\ \xrightarrow{X\mapsto X_H}\end{array}\; G\mathcal{S}_*$$

$$\underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(X_H, Y) \cong \underline{M\mathcal{S}_*}(X, f^*Y), \text{ and } \underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(Y, X^H) \cong \underline{M\mathcal{S}_*}(f^*Y, X)$$

If G is a simplicial group, the homomorphism $G \to G^o \times G$ sending g to (g^{-1}, g) makes it possible to describe $-\wedge_G-$ and $\underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(-,-)$ in terms of orbit and fixed point spaces. If $X, Y \in ob G\mathcal{S}_*$ and $Z \in ob G^o\mathcal{S}_*$ then $Z\wedge X$ and $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X, Y)$ are naturally $G^o \times G$-spaces, and since G is a group also G-spaces, and we get that

$$Z\wedge_G X \cong (Z\wedge X)_G, \qquad \text{and} \qquad \underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(X, Y) \cong \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(X, Y)^G.$$

8.2 The homotopy orbit and homotopy fixed point spaces

Let G be a simplicial monoid. When regarded as a simplicial category, with only one object $*$, we can form the over (resp. under) categories, and the nerve $B(G/*)_+$ (resp. $B(*/G)_+$) is a contractible free G-space (resp. contractible free G^o-space), and the G orbit space is BG. For G a group, $B(G/*) \cong B(G, G, *)$ (resp. $B(*/G) \cong B(*, G, G)$) the one sided bar construction 4.2, and we note that in this case the left and right distinction is inessential.

Recalling the notion of $\mathcal{S}$-homotopy (co)limits from 6.5 (if G is discrete this is nothing but the usual homotopy (co)limit), we get as in example 6.5.1

Definition 8.2.1 Let G be a simplicial monoid and X a G-space. Then the *homotopy fixed point space* is

$$X^{hG} = \operatorname{holim}_{\overleftarrow{G}} X = \underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(B(G/*)_+, \sin|X|)$$

and the *homotopy orbit space* is

$$X_{hG} = \operatorname{holim}_{\overrightarrow{G}} X = B(*/G)_+\wedge_G X.$$

A nice thing about homotopy fixed point and orbit spaces is that they preserve weak equivalences (since homotopy (co)limits do). We have maps $X^G \to X^{hG}$ and $X_{hG} \to X_G$, and a central problem in homotopy theory is to know when they are equivalences.

Note that if G is a *group*, then

$$X^{hG} \simeq Map_*(EG_+, X)^G, \qquad \text{and} \qquad X_{hG} \simeq (EG_+ \wedge X)_G$$

(where the G-action is by conjugation and diagonal) and where EG_+ is a contractible free G-space. Any free G-space EG_+ whose underlying space is contractible will do, in the sense that they all give equivalent answers.

Lemma 8.2.2 *Let U be a free G-space, and X any fibrant G-space (i.e., a G space which is fibrant as a space). Then*

$$\underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(U, X) \xrightarrow{\sim} \underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(U \wedge EG_+, X),$$

and so if G is a group $\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(U,X)^G \simeq \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(U,X)^{hG}$. Furthermore, if U is d-dimensional, then $\underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(U, -)$ sends n-connected maps of fibrant spaces to $(n-d)$-connected maps.

Proof: By induction on the G-cells, it is enough to prove it for $U = S^k \wedge G_+$. But then the map is the composite from top left to top right in

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(S^k \wedge G_+, X) \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\cong"'] & \underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(S^k \wedge G_+ \wedge EG_+, X) \arrow[r, "i^*", "\cong"'] \arrow[d, "\cong"'] & \underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(S^k \wedge G_+ \wedge EG_+, X) \\
\underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^k, X) \arrow[r, "\sim"] & \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^k \wedge EG_+, X) &
\end{tikzcd}$$

where i_* is the G-isomorphism from $S^k \wedge G_+ \wedge EG_+$ (no action on EG_+) to $S^k \wedge G_+ \wedge EG_+$ (diagonal action) given by the *shear map* $(s, g, e) \mapsto (s, g, ge)$. The last statement follows from induction on the skeleta, and the fact that $\underline{G\mathcal{S}_*}(S^k \wedge G_+, -) \cong \underline{\mathcal{S}_*}(S^k, -)$ sends n-connected maps of fibrant spaces to $(n-k)$-connected maps. ∎

9 A quick review on enriched categories

To remind the reader, and set notation, we give a short presentation of enriched categories (see e.g., [53], [138], [94] or [24]), together with some relevant examples. Our guiding example will be $\mathcal{A}b$-categories, also known as linear categories. These are categories where the morphism sets are actually Abelian groups, and composition is bilinear. That is: in the definition of "category", sets are replaced by Abelian groups, Cartesian product by tensor product and the one point set by the group of integers. Besides $\mathcal{A}b$-categories, the most important example will be the $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-categories, which are used frequently from chapter II on, and we go out of our way to point out some relevant details for this case. Note however, that scary things like limits and ends are after all not that scary since limits (and colimits for that matter) are calculated pointwise.

9.1 Closed categories

Recall the definition of a symmetric monoidal closed category $(V, \Box, e)$, see e.g., [161]. For convenience we repeat the definition below, but the important thing to remember is that it behaves as $(\mathcal{A}b, \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}}, \mathbf{Z})$.

Definition 9.1.1 A *monoidal category* is a tuple $(\mathcal{C}, \Box, e, \alpha, \lambda, \rho)$ where $\mathcal{C}$ is a category, $\Box$ is a functor $\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}$, and α, λ and γ are natural ("structure") isomorphisms

$$\alpha_{a,b,c} \colon a \Box (b \Box c) \xrightarrow{\simeq} (a \Box b) \Box c, \qquad \lambda_a \colon e \Box a \xrightarrow{\simeq} a, \quad \text{and } \rho_a \colon a \Box e \xrightarrow{\simeq} a$$

with $\lambda_e = \rho_e \colon e \Box e \to e$, satisfying the coherence laws given by requiring that the following diagrams commute:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
a(\Box b \Box (c \Box d)) \arrow[rr, "\alpha"] \arrow[d, "1 \Box \alpha"] & & (a \Box b) \Box (c \Box d) \arrow[d, "\alpha"] \\
a \Box ((b \Box c) \Box d) \arrow[dr, "\alpha"] & & ((a \Box b) \Box c) \Box d \\
& (a \Box (b \Box c)) \Box d \arrow[ur, "\alpha \Box 1"] &
\end{tikzcd}, \qquad
\begin{tikzcd}
a \Box (e \Box c) \arrow[dr, "q \Box \lambda"] \arrow[dd, "\alpha"] & \\
& a \Box c \\
(a \Box e) \Box c \arrow[ur, "\rho \Box 1"] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

A monoidal category is *symmetric* when it is equipped with a natural isomorphism

$$\gamma_{a,b} \colon a \Box b \xrightarrow{\cong} b \Box a$$

such that the following diagrams commute

$$\begin{tikzcd}
a \Box b \arrow[rr, equal] \arrow[dr, "\gamma"] & & a \Box b \\
& b \Box a \arrow[ur, "\gamma"] &
\end{tikzcd} \qquad
\begin{tikzcd}
a \Box e \arrow[rr, "\rho"] \arrow[dr, "\gamma"] & & a \\
& e \Box a \arrow[ur, "\lambda"] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

$$\begin{tikzcd}
a \Box (b \Box c) \arrow[rr, "\alpha"] \arrow[d, "1 \Box \gamma"] & & (a \Box b) \Box c \arrow[d, "\gamma"] \\
a \Box (c \Box b) \arrow[dr, "\alpha"] & & (c \Box a) \Box b \\
& (a \Box c) \Box b) \arrow[ur, "\gamma \Box 1"] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

A *symmetric monoidal closed category* (often just called a *closed category*) is a symmetric monoidal category such that

$$- \Box b \colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}$$

has a right adjoint $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(b, -) \colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}$ (which is considered to be part of the data).

If $\mathcal{C}$ is a closed category, we will refer to $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(b, c)$ as *the internal morphism objects*.

9.1.2 Monoids

Definition 9.1.3 Let $(\mathcal{C}, \Box, e)$ be a monoidal category. A *monoid* in $\mathcal{C}$ is an object M in $\mathcal{C}$ together with two morphisms

$$\eta\colon e \to M, \text{ and } \mu\colon M \Box M \to M$$

satisfying unitality and associativity, that is the diagrams

$$\begin{tikzcd} M \Box e \arrow[r, "1 \Box \eta"] \arrow[dr, "\rho_M"'] & M \Box M \arrow[d, "\mu"] & e \Box M \arrow[l, "\eta \Box 1"'] \arrow[dl, "\lambda_M"] \\ & M & \end{tikzcd}, \qquad \begin{tikzcd} M \Box (M \Box M) \arrow[rr, "\alpha"] \arrow[d, "1 \Box \mu"] & & (M \Box M) \Box M \arrow[d, "\mu \Box 1"] \\ M \Box M \arrow[r, "\mu"] & M & M \Box M \arrow[l, "\mu"] \end{tikzcd}$$

commute. If $\mathcal{C}$ is a symmetric monoidal category, M is a *symmetric monoid* if the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} M \Box M \arrow[rr, "\gamma_{M,M}"] \arrow[dr, "\mu"'] & & M \Box M \arrow[dl, "\mu"] \\ & M & \end{tikzcd}$$

commutes.

9.2 Enriched categories

Let $(V, \Box, e)$ be any closed symmetric monoidal category.

Definition 9.2.1 A V-category $\mathcal{C}$ is a class of objects, $ob\mathcal{C}$, and for objects $c_0, c_1, c_2 \in ob\mathcal{C}$ objects in V, $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c_i, c_j)$, and a "composition"

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c_1, c_0) \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c_2, c_1) \to \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c_2, c_0)$$

and a "unit"

$$e \to \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c, c)$$

in V subject to the usual unit and associativity axioms: given objects $a, b, c, d \in ob\mathcal{C}$ then the following diagrams in V commute

$$\begin{tikzcd} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d) \Box (\underline{\mathcal{C}}(b,c) \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,b)) \arrow[rr, "\cong"] \arrow[d] & & (\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d) \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}}(b,c)) \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,b) \arrow[d] \\ \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d) \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,c) \arrow[dr] & & \underline{\mathcal{C}}(b,d) \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,b) \arrow[dl] \\ & \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,d) & \end{tikzcd}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,b)\,\Box\, e & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,b) & \xleftarrow{\cong} & e\,\Box\,\underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,b) \\
\downarrow & & {\scriptstyle =}\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,b)\,\Box\,\underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,a) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,b) & \longleftarrow & \underline{\mathcal{C}}(b,b)\,\Box\,\underline{\mathcal{C}}(a,b)
\end{array}\quad .$$

We see that $\mathcal{C}$ is an ordinary category (an "$\mathcal{E}ns$-category") too, which we will call $\mathcal{C}$ also, or $U_0\mathcal{C}$ if we need to be precise, with the same objects and with morphism sets $U_0\mathcal{C}(c,d) = V(e, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d))$.

We see that $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ can be viewed as a functor $U_0\mathcal{C}^o \times U_0\mathcal{C} \to V$: if $f \in \mathcal{C}(c',c) = V(e, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c',c))$ and $g \in \mathcal{C}(d,d') = V(e, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(d,d'))$ then $f^*g_* = g_*f^* = \underline{\mathcal{C}}(f,g)\colon \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d) \to \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c',d') \in V$ is defined as the composite

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d) \cong e\,\Box\,\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d)\,\Box\, e \xrightarrow{g\,\Box\, id\,\Box\, f} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(d,d')\,\Box\,\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d)\,\Box\,\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c') \to \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c',d')\cdot$$

Definition 9.2.2 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a V-category. We say that $\mathcal{C}$ is a *tensored* V-category if it comes equipped with a functor $\mathcal{C} \times V \to \mathcal{C}$ sending (c,v) to $c \otimes v$ and a natural isomorphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c \otimes v, d) \cong \underline{V}(v, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d)),$$

and *cotensored* if it comes equipped with a functor $\mathcal{C} \times V^o \to \mathcal{C}$ sending (c,v) to c^v and a natural isomorphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c, d^v) \cong \underline{V}(v, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d)),$$

We notice that the closed structure of V makes V into a tensored and cotensored V-category.

9.2.3 Some further definitions

If $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ are two V-categories, we define their *tensor product* (or whatever the operator in V is called) $\mathcal{C}\,\Box\,\mathcal{D}$ to be the V-category given by $ob(\mathcal{C}\,\Box\,\mathcal{D}) = ob\mathcal{C} \times ob\mathcal{D}$, and $\underline{\mathcal{C}\,\Box\,\mathcal{D}}((c,d),(c',d')) = \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c')\,\Box\,\underline{\mathcal{D}}(d,d')$.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a V-category where V has finite products. If $U_0\mathcal{C}$ is a category with sum (i.e. it has an initial object $*$, and categorical coproducts), then we say that $\mathcal{C}$ is a *V-category with sum* if the canonical map $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c \vee c', d) \to \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d) \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c',d)$ is an isomorphism.

A *V-functor* F from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$ is an assignment $ob\mathcal{C} \to ob\mathcal{D}$ together with maps

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c') \to \underline{\mathcal{D}}(F(c), F(c'))$$

preserving unit and composition.

A V-functor $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is *V-full* (resp. *V-faithful*) if $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,d) \to \underline{\mathcal{D}}(F(c), F(d))$ is epic (resp. monic).

A *V-natural transformation* between two V-functors $F, G\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is a map $\eta_c\colon F(c) \to G(c) \in U_0\mathcal{D}$ for every $c \in ob\mathcal{C}$ such that all the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c,c') & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathcal{D}}(F(c), F(c')) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle (\eta_{c'})_*} \\
\underline{\mathcal{D}}(G(c), G(c')) & \xrightarrow{(\eta_c)^*} & \underline{\mathcal{D}}(F(c), G(c'))
\end{array}$$

commute. The V-natural transformation η is a *V-natural isomorphism* if each η_c is an isomorphism.

A V-functor $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is a *V-natural equivalence* if there is a V-functor $G\colon \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{C}$ and V-natural isomorphisms $GF \cong 1$ and $FG \cong 1$.

If

$$\mathcal{D} \underset{U}{\overset{F}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{C}$$

is a pair of V-functors, we say that F is *V-left adjoint* to U (and U is *V-right adjoint* to F) if there are V-natural transformations $FU \xrightarrow{\epsilon} 1_{\mathcal{C}}$ (the *counit*) and $UF \xleftarrow{\eta} 1_{\mathcal{D}}$ (the *unit*) such that the following diagrams commute:

$$\begin{tikzcd} U \arrow[r, "\eta U"] \arrow[dr, "="'] & UFU \arrow[d, "U\epsilon"] \\ & U \end{tikzcd} \qquad \begin{tikzcd} F \arrow[r, "F\eta"] \arrow[dr, "="'] & FUF \arrow[d, "\epsilon F"] \\ & U \end{tikzcd}$$

9.2.4 Examples of enriched categories

1. Any closed symmetric monoidal closed category $(V, \square, e)$ is enriched in itself due to the internal morphism objects.

2. A *linear* category is nothing but an $\mathcal{A}b$-category, that is a category enriched in $(\mathcal{A}b, \otimes, \mathbf{Z})$. Note that an additive category is *something else* (it is a linear category with a zero object and all finite sums). "Linear functor" is another name for $\mathcal{A}b$-functor.

3. Just as a ring is an $\mathcal{A}b$-category with one object, or a k-algebra is a $(k-\mathrm{mod})$-category with only one object, an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category with only one object. This is equivalent to saying that it is a monoid in $(\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*, \wedge, \mathbf{S})$, which is another way of saying that an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra is something which satisfies all the axioms of a ring, if you replace every of $\mathcal{A}b$, $\otimes$ or $\mathbf{Z}$ by $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$, $\wedge$ or $\mathbf{S}$ (in that order).

4. "Function spaces" appears in many applications, mirroring an enrichment in spaces. In particular, the category $s\mathcal{C}$ of simplicial objects in some category $\mathcal{C}$ can be given an enrichment in $\mathcal{S}$ as in [199, II.1.7]. The structure is easiest to describe if $\mathcal{C}$ has finite colimits, for then one may define $c \otimes K$ for any $c \in s\mathcal{C}$ and $K \in \mathcal{S}$ to be the simplicial object $[n] \mapsto \coprod_{K_n} c_n$ (the coproduct of c_n with itself indexed over K_n), and the function space becomes

$$\underline{s\mathcal{C}}(c, d) = \{[q] \mapsto s\mathcal{C}(c \otimes \Delta[q], d)\},$$

which is a simplicial set since $[q] \mapsto \Delta[q]$ is cosimplicial.

5. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category with sum (and so is "tensored over Γ^0" by the formula $c \Box k_+ = \bigvee_k c$). This defines a (discrete) $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category $\mathcal{C}^\vee$ by setting $\underline{\mathcal{C}}^\vee(c, c')(X) = \mathcal{C}(c, c' \Box X)$ for $X \in ob\Gamma^o$ and $c, c' \in ob\mathcal{C}$, and with composition given by

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \underline{\mathcal{C}}^\vee(c,d)(X) \wedge \underline{\mathcal{C}}^\vee(b,c)(Y) & = & \mathcal{C}(c, d \Box X) \wedge \mathcal{C}(b, c \Box Y) \\ & \xrightarrow{(- \Box Y) \wedge id} & \mathcal{C}(c \Box Y, (d \Box X) \Box Y) \wedge \mathcal{C}(b, c \Box Y) \\ & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{C}(b, (d \Box X) \Box Y) \\ \cong \mathcal{C}(b, d \Box (X \Box Y)) & = & \underline{\mathcal{C}}^\vee(b,d)(X \wedge Y) \end{array}.$$

Slightly more general, we could have allowed $\mathcal{C}$ to be an $\mathcal{S}_*$-category with sum.

9.3 Monoidal V-categories

There is nothing hindering us from adding a second layer of complexity to this. Given a closed category $(V, \boxtimes, \epsilon)$, a *(symmetric) monoidal (closed) V-category* is a (symmetric) monoidal (closed) category $(\mathcal{C}, \Box, e)$ in the sense that you use definition 9.1.1, but do it in the V-enriched world (i.e., $\mathcal{C}$ is a V-category, $\Box\colon \mathcal{C} \boxtimes \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}$ a V-functor, the required natural transformations are V-natural (and $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(b, -)$ is V-right adjoint to $- \Box b$)).

9.3.1 Important convention

All categories are considered to be enriched over $(\mathcal{S}_*, \wedge, S^0)$ without further mention. In particular, $(V, \Box, e)$ is a closed $\mathcal{S}_*$-category, and any V-category $\mathcal{C}$ is also an $\mathcal{S}_*$-category which is sometimes also called $\mathcal{C}$, with morphism spaces $\mathcal{C}(b, c) = V(e, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(b, c)) \in ob\mathcal{S}_*$. This fits with the convention of not underlining function spaces. Of course, it also defines a set-based category $U_0\mathcal{C}$ too by considering zero-simplices only.

9.4 Modules

A *left $\mathcal{C}$-module* P is an assignment $ob\mathcal{C} \to obV$, and a morphism $P(c) \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c, b) \to P(b)$ in V such that the obvious diagrams commute; or in other words, a $\mathcal{C}$-module is a V-functor $P\colon \mathcal{C} \to V$. Right modules and bimodules are defined similarly as V-functors $\mathcal{C}^o \to V$ and $\mathcal{C}^o \Box \mathcal{C} \to V$. If V has finite products and $\mathcal{C}$ is a V-category with sum, a $\mathcal{C}^o$-module M is said to be *additive* if the canonical map $M(c \vee c') \to M(c) \times M(c')$ is an isomorphism, and a bimodule is additive if $P(c \vee c', d) \to P(c, d) \times P(c', d)$ is an isomorphism.

Example 9.4.1 If a ring A is considered to be an $\mathcal{A}b$-category with just one object, one sees that a left A-module M in the ordinary sense is nothing but a left A-module in the sense above: consider the functor $A \to \mathcal{A}b$ with M as value, and sending the morphism $a \in A$ to multiplication on $M \xrightarrow{m \mapsto am} M$. Similarly for right modules and bimodules.

Likewise, if A is an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra, then an A-module is a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$ functor $A \to \Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$. Again, this another way of saying that an A-module is an "$- \wedge A$"-algebra, which is to say that it satisfies all the usual axioms for a module, mutatis mutandem.

9.4.2 V-natural modules

A *V-natural bimodule* is a pair $(\mathcal{C}, P)$ where $\mathcal{C}$ is a V-category and P is a $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule. A map of V-natural bimodules $(\mathcal{C}, P) \to (\mathcal{D}, Q)$ is a V-functor $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ and a V-natural transformation $P \to F^*Q$ where F^*Q is the $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule given by the composite

$$\mathcal{C}^o \Box \mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{F \times F} \mathcal{D}^o \Box \mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{Q} V\cdot$$

Similarly one defines V-natural modules as pairs $(\mathcal{C}, P)$ where $\mathcal{C}$ is a V-category and P a $\mathcal{C}$-module. A map of V-natural modules $(\mathcal{C}, P) \to (\mathcal{D}, Q)$ is a V-functor $F\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ and a V-natural transformation $P \to F^*Q$ where F^*Q is the $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule given by the composite

$$\mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{Q} V\cdot$$

The V-natural (bi)modules form a 2-category: the maps of V-natural (bi)modules are themselves objects of a category. The morphisms in this category are (naturally) called natural transformations; a natural transformation $\eta\colon F \to G$ where F, G are two maps of V-natural bimodules $(\mathcal{C}, P) \to (\mathcal{D}, Q)$ is a V-natural transformation $\eta\colon F \to G$ of V-functors $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ such that the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
P(c,c') \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & Q(F(c),F(c')) \arrow[d, "(\eta_{c'})_*"] \\
Q(G(c),G(c')) \arrow[r, "(\eta_c)^*"] & Q(F(c),G(c'))
\end{tikzcd}$$

commutes. A natural isomorphism is a natural transformation such that all the η_c are isomorphisms. Likewise one defines the notion of a natural transformation/isomorphism for maps of V-natural modules.

For cohomology considerations, the dual notion of V-natural co(bi)modules is useful. The objects are the same as above, but a morphism $f\colon (\mathcal{C}, P) \to (\mathcal{D}, Q)$ is a functor $f\colon \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{C}$ together with a natural transformation $f^*P \to Q$, and so on.

Example 9.4.3 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category with sum, and let P be an additive $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule (i.e., $P(c \vee c', d) \xrightarrow{\cong} P(c,d) \times P(c',d)$). Recall the definition of $\mathcal{C}^\vee$. We define a $\mathcal{C}^\vee$-bimodule $P^\vee$ by the formula $P^\vee(c,d)(X) = P(c, d \Box X)$. Note that since P is additive we have a canonical map $P(c,d) \to P(c \Box X, d \Box X)$, and the right module action uses this. Then $(\mathcal{C}^\vee, P^\vee)$ is a natural module, and $(\mathcal{C}^\vee, P^\vee) \to ((-\Box X)^*\mathcal{C}^\vee, (-\Box X)^*P^\vee)$ is a map of natural modules.

9.5 Ends and coends

Ends and coends are universal concepts as good as limits and colimits, but in the set-based world you can always express them in terms of limits and colimits, and hence are less often used. The important thing to note is that this is the way we construct natural transformations: given two (set-based) functors $F, G\colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$, a natural transformation η from F to G is a collection of maps $\eta_c\colon F(c) \to G(c)$ satisfying the usual condition. Another way to say the same thing is that the set of natural transformations is a set $\mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{C}}(F,G)$ together with a family of functions

$$\mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{C}}(F,G) \xrightarrow{\eta \mapsto p_c(\eta)=\eta_c} \mathcal{D}(F(c),G(c))$$

such that for every $f\colon c_1 \to c_0$

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{C}}(F,G) \arrow[r, "p_{c_1}"] \arrow[d, "p_{c_0}"'] & \mathcal{D}(F(c_1),G(c_1)) \arrow[d, "G(f)_*"'] \\
\mathcal{D}(F(c_0),G(c_0)) \arrow[r, "F(f)^*"] & \mathcal{D}(F(c_1),G(c_0))
\end{tikzcd}$$

Furthermore, $\mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{C}}(F,G)$ is universal among sets with this property: It is "the end of the functor $\mathcal{D}(F(-),G(-))\colon \mathcal{C}^o \times \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$". This example is the only important thing to remember about ends. What follows is just for reference.

Definition 9.5.1 Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be V-categories and $T\colon \mathcal{C}^o \square \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ a V-functor. A V-*natural family* is an object $d \in ob\mathcal{D}$, and for every object $c \in ob\mathcal{C}$ a map $f_c\colon d \to T(c,c)$ such that the following diagram commute

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\underline{\mathcal{C}}(c_1,c_0) \arrow[r, "T(c_1,-)"] \arrow[d, "T(-,c_0)"'] & \underline{\mathcal{D}}(T(c_1,c_1),T(c_1,c_0)) \arrow[d, "f_{c_1}^*"'] \\
\underline{\mathcal{D}}(T(c_0,c_0),T(c_1,c_0)) \arrow[r, "f_{c_0}^*"] & \underline{\mathcal{D}}(d,T(c_1,c_0))
\end{tikzcd}$$

Definition 9.5.2 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a V-category. The *end* of a bimodule $T\colon \mathcal{C}^o \square \mathcal{C} \to V$ is a V-natural family

$$\int_c T(c,c) \xrightarrow{p_x} T(x,x)$$

such that for any other V-natural family $f_x\colon v \to T(x,x)$, there exists a unique morphism $v \to \int_c T(c,c)$ making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
v \arrow[rr] \arrow[dr, "f_x"] & & \int_c T(c,c) \arrow[dl, "p_x"] \\
& T(x,x) &
\end{tikzcd}$$

Definition 9.5.3 Let $T\colon \mathcal{C}^o \square \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ be a V-functor. The *end* of T is a V-natural family

$$\int_c T(c,c) \xrightarrow{p_x} T(x,x)$$

such that for every $d \in ob\mathcal{D}$

$$\underline{\mathcal{D}}(d, \int_c T(c,c)) \xrightarrow{p_{x*}} \underline{\mathcal{D}}(d, T(x,x))$$

is the end of

$$\mathcal{C}^o \square \mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{\underline{\mathcal{D}}(d,T(-,-))} V.$$

With mild assumptions, this can be expressed as a limit in $\mathcal{D}$ (see [53, page 39]). The dual of the end is the *coend*. The most basic is the tensor product: considering a ring A as an $\mathcal{A}b$-category with one object (called A), a left module $M\colon A \to \mathcal{A}b$ and a right module $N\colon A^o \to \mathcal{A}b$, the tensor product $N \otimes_A M$ is nothing but the coend $\int^A N \otimes M$.

9.6 Functor categories

Assume that V has all limits. If I is a small category, we define the V-category $\int_I \mathcal{C}$ of "functors from I to $\mathcal{C}$" as follows. The objects are just the functors from I to $U_0\mathcal{C}$ (the underlying category of $\mathcal{C}$), but the morphisms $\int_I \underline{\mathcal{C}}(F,G)$ is set to be the end $\int_I \underline{\mathcal{C}}(F,G) = \int_{i\in I} \mathcal{C}(F(i),G(i))$ of

$$I^o \times I \xrightarrow{(F,G)} U_0\mathcal{C}^o \times U_0\mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{\mathcal{C}} V\cdot$$

We check that this defines a functor $[I, U_0\mathcal{C}]^o \times [I, U_0\mathcal{C}] \to V$. The composition is defined by the map

$$\left(\int_I \underline{\mathcal{C}}(G,H)\right) \Box \left(\int_I \underline{\mathcal{C}}(F,G)\right) \to \int_I\int_I \underline{\mathcal{C}}(G,H) \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}}(F,G) \xrightarrow{diag^*} \int_I \underline{\mathcal{C}}(G,H) \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}}(F,G)$$
$$\to \int_I \underline{\mathcal{C}}(F,H)$$

Note that I is here an ordinary category, and the end here is an end of set-based categories. In the case where the forgetful map $V \xrightarrow{N\mapsto V(e,N)} \mathcal{E}ns$ has a left adjoint, say $X \mapsto e \Box X$, then there is a left adjoint functor from categories to V-categories, sending a category I to a "free" V-category $e \Box I$, and the functor category we have defined is the usual V-category of V-functors from $e \Box I$ to $\mathcal{C}$ (see [53], [138] or [94]).

Also, a $\mathcal{C}$-bimodule P gives rise to a $\int_I \mathcal{C}$-bimodule $\int_I P$ with $\int_I P(F,G)$ defined as the end. The bimodule structure is defined as

$$\int_I \underline{\mathcal{C}} \Box \int_I P \Box \int_I \underline{\mathcal{C}} \to \int_{I^{\times 3}} \underline{\mathcal{C}} \Box P \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}} \to \int_I \underline{\mathcal{C}} \Box P \Box \underline{\mathcal{C}} \to \int_I P.$$

As an example, one has the fact that if $\mathcal{C}$ is any category and $\mathcal{D}$ is an $\mathcal{A}b$-category, the free functor from sets to abelian groups $\mathbf{Z}\colon \mathcal{E}ns_* \to \mathcal{A}b$ induces an equivalence between the $\mathcal{A}b$-category of $\mathcal{A}b$-functors $\mathbf{Z}\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ and the $\mathcal{A}b$-category of functors $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$. See [94] for a discussion on the effect of change of base-category.

Example 9.6.1 (Modules over an S-algebra) Let A be an $\mathbf{S}$-algebra. The category $\mathcal{M}_A$ of A-modules is again a $\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*$-category . Explicitly, if M and N are A-modules, then

$$\underline{\mathcal{M}}_A(M,N) = \int_A \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,N) \cong \lim_{\leftarrow}\{\underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(M,N) \rightrightarrows \underline{\Gamma\mathcal{S}_*}(A\wedge M,N)\}$$

with the obvious maps.

We refer to [213] for a more thorough discussion of $\mathbf{S}$-algebras and A-modules and their homotopy properties. See also chapter II.

Bibliography

[1] *Théorie des intersections et théorème de Riemann-Roch*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol. 225. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1971. Séminaire de Géométrie Algébrique du Bois-Marie 1966–1967 (SGA 6), Dirigé par P. Berthelot, A. Grothendieck et L. Illusie. Avec la collaboration de D. Ferrand, J. P. Jouanolou, O. Jussila, S. Kleiman, M. Raynaud et J. P. Serre.

[2] Guido's book of conjectures. *Enseign. Math. (2)*, 54(1-2):3–189, 2008. A gift to Guido Mislin on the occasion of his retirement from ETHZ, June 2006, Collected by Indira Chatterji.

[3] J. F. Adams. On the groups $J(X)$. IV. *Topology*, 5:21–71, 1966.

[4] John Frank Adams. *Infinite loop spaces*, volume 90 of *Annals of Mathematics Studies*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J., 1978.

[5] Vigleik Angeltveit and John Rognes. Hopf algebra structure on topological Hochschild homology. *Algebr. Geom. Topol.*, 5:1223–1290 (electronic), 2005.

[6] M. F. Atiyah. *K-theory*. Advanced Book Classics. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company Advanced Book Program, Redwood City, CA, second edition, 1989. Notes by D. W. Anderson.

[7] Christian Ausoni. On the algebraic K-theory of the complex K-theory spectrum. *Invent. Math.*, 180(3):611–668, 2010.

[8] Christian Ausoni and John Rognes. Algebraic K-theory of topological K-theory. *Acta Math.*, 188(1):1–39, 2002.

[9] Michael Barratt and Stewart Priddy. On the homology of non-connected monoids and their associated groups. *Comment. Math. Helv.*, 47:1–14, 1972.

[10] Hyman Bass. *Algebraic K-theory.* W. A. Benjamin, Inc., New York-Amsterdam, 1968.

[11] Hyman Bass. Personal reminiscences of the birth of algebraic K-theory. *K-Theory*, 30(3):203–209, 2003. Special issue in honor of Hyman Bass on his seventieth birthday. Part III.

[12] A. Jon Berrick. *An approach to algebraic K-theory*, volume 56 of *Research Notes in Mathematics*. Pitman (Advanced Publishing Program), Boston, Mass., 1982.

[13] S. Bloch. On the tangent space to Quillen K-theory. In *Algebraic K-theory, I: Higher K-theories (Proc. Conf., Battelle Memorial Inst., Seattle, Wash., 1972)*, pages 205–210. Lecture Notes in Math., Vol. 341. Springer, Berlin, 1973.

[14] Spencer Bloch. Algebraic K-theory and crystalline cohomology. *Inst. Hautes Études Sci. Publ. Math.*, (47):187–268 (1978), 1977.

[15] Andrew J. Blumberg, Ralph L. Cohen, and Christian Schlichtkrull. Topological Hochschild homology of Thom spectra and the free loop space. *Geom. Topol.*, 14(2):1165–1242, 2010.

[16] Andrew J. Blumberg and Michael A. Mandell. The localization sequence for the algebraic K-theory of topological K-theory. *Acta Math.*, 200(2):155–179, 2008.

[17] J. Michael Boardman. Conditionally convergent spectral sequences. In *Homotopy invariant algebraic structures (Baltimore, MD, 1998)*, volume 239 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 49–84. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1999.

[18] M. Bökstedt, G. Carlsson, R. Cohen, T. Goodwillie, W. C. Hsiang, and I. Madsen. On the algebraic K-theory of simply connected spaces. *Duke Math. J.*, 84(3):541–563, 1996.

[19] M. Bökstedt, W. C. Hsiang, and I. Madsen. The cyclotomic trace and algebraic K-theory of spaces. *Invent. Math.*, 111(3):465–539, 1993.

[20] M. Bökstedt and I. Madsen. Topological cyclic homology of the integers. *Astérisque*, (226):7–8, 57–143, 1994. K-theory (Strasbourg, 1992).

[21] M. Bökstedt and I. Madsen. Algebraic K-theory of local number fields: the unramified case. In *Prospects in topology (Princeton, NJ, 1994)*, volume 138 of *Ann. of Math. Stud.*, pages 28–57. Princeton Univ. Press, Princeton, NJ, 1995.

[22] Marcel Bökstedt. Topological hochschild homology. Preprint, Bielefeld, 1986.

[23] Francis Borceux. *Handbook of categorical algebra. 1*, volume 50 of *Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1994. Basic category theory.

[24] Francis Borceux. *Handbook of categorical algebra. 2*, volume 51 of *Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1994. Categories and structures.

[25] Francis Borceux. *Handbook of categorical algebra. 3*, volume 52 of *Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1994. Categories of sheaves.

[26] Armand Borel. Stable real cohomology of arithmetic groups. *Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. (4)*, 7:235–272 (1975), 1974.

[27] Armand Borel and Jean-Pierre Serre. Le théorème de Riemann-Roch. *Bull. Soc. Math. France*, 86:97–136, 1958.

[28] A. K. Bousfield. The localization of spaces with respect to homology. *Topology*, 14:133–150, 1975.

[29] A. K. Bousfield. The localization of spectra with respect to homology. *Topology*, 18(4):257–281, 1979.

[30] A. K. Bousfield and E. M. Friedlander. Homotopy theory of Γ-spaces, spectra, and bisimplicial sets. In *Geometric applications of homotopy theory (Proc. Conf., Evanston, Ill., 1977), II*, volume 658 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 80–130. Springer, Berlin, 1978.

[31] A. K. Bousfield and D. M. Kan. *Homotopy limits, completions and localizations*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1972. Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol. 304.

[32] Lawrence Breen. Extensions du groupe additif. *Inst. Hautes Études Sci. Publ. Math.*, (48):39–125, 1978.

[33] Morten Brun. Filtered topological cyclic homology and relative K-theory of nilpotent ideals. *Algebr. Geom. Topol.*, 1:201–230 (electronic), 2001.

[34] Morten Brun, Gunnar Carlsson, and Bjørn Dundas. Covering homology. *Adv. Math.*, 225:3166–3213, 2010.

[35] Morten Brun, Zbigniew Fiedorowicz, and Rainer M. Vogt. On the multiplicative structure of topological Hochschild homology. *Algebr. Geom. Topol.*, 7:1633–1650, 2007.

[36] R. R. Bruner, J. P. May, J. E. McClure, and M. Steinberger. H_∞ *ring spectra and their applications*, volume 1176 of *Lecture Notes in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1986.

[37] D. Burghelea and Z. Fiedorowicz. Cyclic homology and algebraic K-theory of spaces. II. *Topology*, 25(3):303–317, 1986.

[38] D. Burghelea, Z. Fiedorowicz, and W. Gajda. Power maps and epicyclic spaces. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 96(1):1–14, 1994.

[39] Dan Burghelea. Some rational computations of the Waldhausen algebraic K-theory. *Comment. Math. Helv.*, 54(2):185–198, 1979.

[40] Dan Burghelea. Cyclic homology and the algebraic K-theory of spaces. I. In *Applications of algebraic K-theory to algebraic geometry and number theory, Part I, II (Boulder, Colo., 1983)*, volume 55 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 89–115. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1986.

[41] G. E. Carlsson, R. L. Cohen, T. Goodwillie, and W. C. Hsiang. The free loop space and the algebraic K-theory of spaces. *K-Theory*, 1(1):53–82, 1987.

[42] Gunnar Carlsson. Equivariant stable homotopy and Segal's Burnside ring conjecture. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 120(2):189–224, 1984.

[43] Gunnar Carlsson, Cristopher L. Douglas, and Bjørn Dundas. Higher topological cyclic homology and the segal conjecture for tori. *Adv. Math.*, 226:1823–1874, 2011.

[44] P. M. Cohn. Some remarks on the invariant basis property. *Topology*, 5:215–228, 1966.

[45] Alain Connes. Cohomologie cyclique et foncteurs Ext^n. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris Sér. I Math.*, 296(23):953–958, 1983.

[46] Alain Connes. Noncommutative differential geometry. *Inst. Hautes Études Sci. Publ. Math.*, (62):257–360, 1985.

[47] Guillermo Cortiñas. The obstruction to excision in K-theory and in cyclic homology. *Invent. Math.*, 164(1):143–173, 2006.

[48] Viorel Costeanu. On the 2-typical de Rham-Witt complex. *Doc. Math.*, 13:413–452, 2008.

[49] Joachim Cuntz and Daniel Quillen. Excision in bivariant periodic cyclic cohomology. *Invent. Math.*, 127(1):67–98, 1997.

[50] Brian Day. On closed categories of functors. In *Reports of the Midwest Category Seminar, IV*, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol. 137, pages 1–38. Springer, Berlin, 1970.

[51] R. Keith Dennis and Michael R. Stein. K_2 of discrete valuation rings. *Advances in Math.*, 18(2):182–238, 1975.

[52] Vladimir Drinfeld. On the notion of geometric realization. arXiv:0304064, 2010.

[53] Eduardo J. Dubuc. *Kan extensions in enriched category theory.* Lecture Notes in Mathematics. 145. Berlin-Heidelberg-New York: Springer-Verlag. XVI, 173 p., 1970.

[54] Bjørn Ian Dundas. Relative K-theory and topological cyclic homology. *Acta Math.*, 179(2):223–242, 1997.

[55] Bjørn Ian Dundas. On K-theory of simplicial rings and degreewise constructions. *K-Theory*, 18(1):77–92, 1999.

[56] Bjørn Ian Dundas. The cyclotomic trace for symmetric monoidal categories. In *Geometry and topology: Aarhus (1998)*, volume 258 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 121–143. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2000.

[57] Bjørn Ian Dundas. Localization of V-categories. *Theory Appl. Categ.*, 8:No. 10, 284–312 (electronic), 2001.

[58] Bjørn Ian Dundas and Harald Øyen Kittang. Excision for K-theory of connective ring spectra. *Homology, Homotopy Appl.*, 10(1):29–39, 2008.

[59] Bjørn Ian Dundas and Harald Øyen Kittang. Integral excision for K-theory. arXiv:1009.3044, 2010.

[60] Bjørn Ian Dundas and Randy McCarthy. Stable K-theory and topological Hochschild homology. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 140(3):685–701, 1994.

[61] Bjørn Ian Dundas and Randy McCarthy. Topological Hochschild homology of ring functors and exact categories. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 109(3):231–294, 1996.

[62] W. Dwyer, W. C. Hsiang, and R. Staffeldt. Pseudo-isotopy and invariant theory. *Topology*, 19(4):367–385, 1980.

[63] W. Dwyer, W. C. Hsiang, and R. E. Staffeldt. Pseudo-isotopy and invariant theory. II. Rational algebraic K-theory of a space with finite fundamental group. In *Topology Symposium, Siegen 1979 (Proc. Sympos., Univ. Siegen, Siegen, 1979)*, volume 788 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 418–441. Springer, Berlin, 1980.

[64] W. G. Dwyer, M. J. Hopkins, and D. M. Kan. The homotopy theory of cyclic sets. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 291(1):281–289, 1985.

[65] W. G. Dwyer and D. M. Kan. Function complexes in homotopical algebra. *Topology*, 19(4):427–440, 1980.

[66] William Dwyer, Eric Friedlander, Victor Snaith, and Robert Thomason. Algebraic K-theory eventually surjects onto topological K-theory. *Invent. Math.*, 66(3):481–491, 1982.

[67] William G. Dwyer and Eric M. Friedlander. Algebraic and etale K-theory. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 292(1):247–280, 1985.

[68] William G. Dwyer, Philip S. Hirschhorn, Daniel M. Kan, and Jeffrey H. Smith. *Homotopy limit functors on model categories and homotopical categories*, volume 113 of *Mathematical Surveys and Monographs.* American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2004.

[69] Philippe Elbaz-Vincent, Herbert Gangl, and Christophe Soulé. Quelques calculs de la cohomologie de $\mathrm{GL}_N(\mathbb{Z})$ et de la K-théorie de $\mathbb{Z}$. *C. R. Math. Acad. Sci. Paris*, 335(4):321–324, 2002.

[70] A. D. Elmendorf, I. Kriz, M. A. Mandell, and J. P. May. *Rings, modules, and algebras in stable homotopy theory*, volume 47 of *Mathematical Surveys and Monographs*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 1997. With an appendix by M. Cole.

[71] F. Thomas Farrell and Lowell E. Jones. Rigidity in geometry and topology. In *Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematicians, Vol. I, II (Kyoto, 1990)*, pages 653–663, Tokyo, 1991. Math. Soc. Japan.

[72] Z. Fiedorowicz, C. Ogle, and R. M. Vogt. Volodin K-theory of A_∞-ring spaces. *Topology*, 32(2):329–352, 1993.

[73] Vincent Franjou, Jean Lannes, and Lionel Schwartz. Autour de la cohomologie de Mac Lane des corps finis. *Invent. Math.*, 115(3):513–538, 1994.

[74] Vincent Franjou and Teimuraz Pirashvili. On the Mac Lane cohomology for the ring of integers. *Topology*, 37(1):109–114, 1998.

[75] Eric M. Friedlander and Daniel R. Grayson, editors. *Handbook of K-theory. Vol. 1, 2*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 2005.

[76] Eric M. Friedlander and Barry Mazur. Filtrations on the homology of algebraic varieties. *Mem. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 110(529):x+110, 1994. With an appendix by Daniel Quillen.

[77] Ofer Gabber. K-theory of Henselian local rings and Henselian pairs. In *Algebraic K-theory, commutative algebra, and algebraic geometry (Santa Margherita Ligure, 1989)*, volume 126 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 59–70. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1992.

[78] P. Gabriel and M. Zisman. *Calculus of fractions and homotopy theory*. Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete, Band 35. Springer-Verlag New York, Inc., New York, 1967.

[79] Wojciech Gajda. On $K_*(\mathbb{Z})$ and classical conjectures in the arithmetic of cyclotomic fields. In *Homotopy theory: relations with algebraic geometry, group cohomology, and algebraic K-theory*, volume 346 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 217–237. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2004.

[80] Søren Galatius, Ulrike Tillmann, Ib Madsen, and Michael Weiss. The homotopy type of the cobordism category. *Acta Math.*, 202(2):195–239, 2009.

[81] Thomas Geisser and Lars Hesselholt. Topological cyclic homology of schemes. In *Algebraic K-theory (Seattle, WA, 1997)*, volume 67 of *Proc. Sympos. Pure Math.*, pages 41–87. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1999.

[82] Thomas Geisser and Lars Hesselholt. Bi-relative algebraic K-theory and topological cyclic homology. *Invent. Math.*, 166(2):359–395, 2006.

[83] Thomas Geisser and Lars Hesselholt. On the K-theory and topological cyclic homology of smooth schemes over a discrete valuation ring. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 358(1):131–145 (electronic), 2006.

[84] S. M. Gersten. K_3 of a ring is H_3 of the Steinberg group. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 37:366–368, 1973.

[85] S. M. Gersten. K-theory of free rings. *Comm. Algebra*, 1:39–64, 1974.

[86] Paul G. Goerss and John F. Jardine. *Simplicial homotopy theory*, volume 174 of *Progress in Mathematics*. Birkhäuser Verlag, Basel, 1999.

[87] Thomas G. Goodwillie. Cyclic homology, derivations, and the free loopspace. *Topology*, 24(2):187–215, 1985.

[88] Thomas G. Goodwillie. On the general linear group and Hochschild homology. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 121(2):383–407, 1985.

[89] Thomas G. Goodwillie. Relative algebraic K-theory and cyclic homology. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 124(2):347–402, 1986.

[90] Thomas G. Goodwillie. Letter to F. Waldhausen. August 10 1987.

[91] Thomas G. Goodwillie. The differential calculus of homotopy functors. In *Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematicians, Vol. I, II (Kyoto, 1990)*, pages 621–630, Tokyo, 1991. Math. Soc. Japan.

[92] Thomas G. Goodwillie. Notes on the cyclotomic trace. Lecture notes for a series of seminar talks at MSRI, spring 1990, December 1991.

[93] Thomas G. Goodwillie. Calculus. II. Analytic functors. *K-Theory*, 5(4):295–332, 1991/92.

[94] John W. Gray. *Formal category theory: adjointness for* 2*-categories*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol. 391. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1974.

[95] Daniel Grayson. Higher algebraic K-theory. II (after Daniel Quillen). In *Algebraic K-theory (Proc. Conf., Northwestern Univ., Evanston, Ill., 1976)*, pages 217–240. Lecture Notes in Math., Vol. 551. Springer, Berlin, 1976.

[96] Daniel R. Grayson. The K-theory of endomorphisms. *J. Algebra*, 48(2):439–446, 1977.

[97] Daniel R. Grayson. Exact sequences in algebraic K-theory. *Illinois J. Math.*, 31(4):598–617, 1987.

[98] Daniel R. Grayson. On the K-theory of fields. In *Algebraic K-theory and algebraic number theory (Honolulu, HI, 1987)*, volume 83 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 31–55. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1989.

[99] Daniel R. Grayson. Weight filtrations via commuting automorphisms. *K-Theory*, 9(2):139–172, 1995.

[100] J. P. C. Greenlees. Representing Tate cohomology of G-spaces. *Proc. Edinburgh Math. Soc. (2)*, 30(3):435–443, 1987.

[101] J. P. C. Greenlees and J. P. May. Generalized Tate cohomology. *Mem. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 113(543):viii+178, 1995.

[102] T. Gunnarsson, R. Schwänzl, R. M. Vogt, and F. Waldhausen. An un-delooped version of algebraic K-theory. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 79(3):255–270, 1992.

[103] Bruno Harris. Bott periodicity via simplicial spaces. *J. Algebra*, 62(2):450–454, 1980.

[104] Allen Hatcher. *Algebraic topology.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2002.

[105] Jean-Claude Hausmann and Dale Husemoller. Acyclic maps. *Enseign. Math. (2)*, 25(1-2):53–75, 1979.

[106] Lars Hesselholt. On the p-typical curves in Quillen's K-theory. *Acta Math.*, 177(1):1–53, 1996.

[107] Lars Hesselholt. Witt vectors of non-commutative rings and topological cyclic homology. *Acta Math.*, 178(1):109–141, 1997.

[108] Lars Hesselholt. On the K-theory of the coordinate axes in the plane. *Nagoya Math. J.*, 185:93–109, 2007.

[109] Lars Hesselholt. The big de rham–witt complex. arXiv:1006.3125, 2010.

[110] Lars Hesselholt and Ib Madsen. Cyclic polytopes and the K-theory of truncated polynomial algebras. *Invent. Math.*, 130(1):73–97, 1997.

[111] Lars Hesselholt and Ib Madsen. On the K-theory of finite algebras over Witt vectors of perfect fields. *Topology*, 36(1):29–101, 1997.

[112] Lars Hesselholt and Ib Madsen. On the K-theory of nilpotent endomorphisms. In *Homotopy methods in algebraic topology (Boulder, CO, 1999)*, volume 271 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 127–140. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2001.

[113] Lars Hesselholt and Ib Madsen. On the K-theory of local fields. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 158(1):1–113, 2003.

[114] Lars Hesselholt and Ib Madsen. On the De Rham-Witt complex in mixed characteristic. *Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. (4)*, 37(1):1–43, 2004.

[115] Graham Higman. The units of group-rings. *Proc. London Math. Soc. (2)*, 46:231–248, 1940.

[116] Howard L. Hiller. λ-rings and algebraic K-theory. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 20(3):241–266, 1981.

[117] Philip S. Hirschhorn. *Model categories and their localizations*, volume 99 of *Mathematical Surveys and Monographs*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2003.

[118] G. Hochschild, Bertram Kostant, and Alex Rosenberg. Differential forms on regular affine algebras. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 102:383–408, 1962.

[119] Mark Hovey. *Model categories*, volume 63 of *Mathematical Surveys and Monographs*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 1999.

[120] Mark Hovey, Brooke Shipley, and Jeff Smith. Symmetric spectra. *J. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 13(1):149–208, 2000.

[121] W. C. Hsiang and R. E. Staffeldt. A model for computing rational algebraic K-theory of simply connected spaces. *Invent. Math.*, 68(2):227–239, 1982.

[122] W. C. Hsiang and R. E. Staffeldt. Rational algebraic K-theory of a product of Eilenberg-Mac Lane spaces. In *Proceedings of the Northwestern Homotopy Theory Conference (Evanston, Ill., 1982)*, volume 19 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 95–114, Providence, RI, 1983. Amer. Math. Soc.

[123] Luc Illusie. *Complexe cotangent et déformations. II.* Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1972. Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol. 283.

[124] Luc Illusie. Complexe de de Rham-Witt et cohomologie cristalline. *Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. (4)*, 12(4):501–661, 1979.

[125] Hvedri Inassaridze. *Algebraic K-theory*, volume 311 of *Mathematics and its Applications*. Kluwer Academic Publishers Group, Dordrecht, 1995.

[126] J. F. Jardine. The homotopical foundations of algebraic K-theory. In *Algebraic K-theory and algebraic number theory (Honolulu, HI, 1987)*, volume 83 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 57–82. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1989.

[127] Mamuka Jibladze and Teimuraz Pirashvili. Cohomology of algebraic theories. *J. Algebra*, 137(2):253–296, 1991.

[128] John D. S. Jones. Cyclic homology and equivariant homology. *Invent. Math.*, 87(2):403–423, 1987.

[129] Bruno Kahn. The Quillen-Lichtenbaum conjecture at the prime 2. Preprint, available at `http://www.math.uiuc.edu/K-theory/0208/`.

[130] Bruno Kahn. Algebraic K-theory, algebraic cycles and arithmetic geometry. In *Handbook of K-theory. Vol. 1, 2*, pages 351–428. Springer, Berlin, 2005.

[131] D. M. Kan and W. P. Thurston. Every connected space has the homology of a $K(\pi, 1)$. *Topology*, 15(3):253–258, 1976.

[132] Daniel M. Kan. A combinatorial definition of homotopy groups. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 67:282–312, 1958.

[133] Max Karoubi and Orlando Villamayor. K-théorie algébrique et K-théorie topologique. I. *Math. Scand.*, 28:265–307 (1972), 1971.

[134] Max Karoubi and Orlando Villamayor. K-théorie algébrique et K-théorie topologique. II. *Math. Scand.*, 32:57–86, 1973.

[135] Christian Kassel. K-théorie relative d'un idéal bilatère de carré nul: étude homologique en basse dimension. In *Algebraic K-theory, Evanston 1980 (Proc. Conf., Northwestern Univ., Evanston, Ill., 1980)*, volume 854 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 249–261. Springer, Berlin, 1981.

[136] Christian Kassel. La K-théorie stable. *Bull. Soc. Math. France*, 110(4):381–416, 1982.

[137] G. M. Kelly. Coherence theorems for lax algebras and for distributive laws. In *Category Seminar (Proc. Sem., Sydney, 1972/1973)*, pages 281–375. Lecture Notes in Math., Vol. 420. Springer, Berlin, 1974.

[138] Gregory Maxwell Kelly. *Basic concepts of enriched category theory.* London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series, 64. Cambridge etc.: Cambridge University Press. 245 p., 1982.

[139] Michel A. Kervaire. Le théorème de Barden-Mazur-Stallings. *Comment. Math. Helv.*, 40:31–42, 1965.

[140] Michel A. Kervaire. Smooth homology spheres and their fundamental groups. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 144:67–72, 1969.

[141] Michel A. Kervaire. Multiplicateurs de Schur et K-théorie. In *Essays on Topology and Related Topics (Mémoires dédiés à Georges de Rham)*, pages pp 212–225. Springer, New York, 1970.

[142] Ch. Kratzer. λ-structure en K-théorie algébrique. *Comment. Math. Helv.*, 55(2):233–254, 1980.

[143] Michael Larsen and Ayelet Lindenstrauss. Topological Hochschild homology of algebras in characteristic p. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 145(1):45–58, 2000.

[144] Michael Larsen and Ayelet Lindenstrauss. Topological Hochschild homology and the condition of Hochschild-Kostant-Rosenberg. *Comm. Algebra*, 29(4):1627–1638, 2001.

[145] Tyler Lawson. Commutative Γ-rings do not model all commutative ring spectra. *Homology, Homotopy Appl.*, 11(2):189–194, 2009.

[146] W. G. Leavitt. Modules without invariant basis number. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 8:322–328, 1957.

[147] Ronnie Lee and R. H. Szczarba. The group $K_3(Z)$ is cyclic of order forty-eight. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 104(1):31–60, 1976.

[148] L. G. Lewis, Jr., J. P. May, M. Steinberger, and J. E. McClure. *Equivariant stable homotopy theory*, volume 1213 of *Lecture Notes in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1986. With contributions by J. E. McClure.

[149] Stephen Lichtenbaum. Values of zeta-functions, étale cohomology, and algebraic K-theory. In *Algebraic K-theory, II: "Classical" algebraic K-theory and connections with arithmetic (Proc. Conf., Battelle Memorial Inst., Seattle, Wash., 1972)*, pages 489–501. Lecture Notes in Math., Vol. 342. Springer, Berlin, 1973.

[150] Ayelet Lindenstrauss. A relative spectral sequence for topological Hochschild homology of spectra. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 148(1):77–88, 2000.

[151] Ayelet Lindenstrauss and Ib Madsen. Topological Hochschild homology of number rings. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 352(5):2179–2204, 2000.

[152] Jean-Louis Loday. *Cyclic homology*, volume 301 of *Grundlehren der Mathematischen Wissenschaften [Fundamental Principles of Mathematical Sciences]*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, second edition, 1998. Appendix E by María O. Ronco, Chapter 13 by the author in collaboration with Teimuraz Pirashvili.

[153] Jean-Louis Loday and Daniel Quillen. Cyclic homology and the Lie algebra homology of matrices. *Comment. Math. Helv.*, 59(4):569–591, 1984.

[154] Wolfgang Lück and Holger Reich. Detecting K-theory by cyclic homology. *Proc. London Math. Soc. (3)*, 93(3):593–634, 2006.

[155] Sverre Lunøe-Nielsen and John Rognes. The Segal conjecture for topological Hochschild homology of complex cobordism. arXiv:1010.5635, 2010.

[156] Sverre Lunøe-Nielsen and John Rognes. The topological Singer construction. arXiv:1010.5633, 2010.

[157] Manos Lydakis. Simplicial functors and stable homotopy theory. Preprint 98-049, SFB 343, Bielefeld, June 1998.

[158] Manos Lydakis. Smash products and Γ-spaces. *Math. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.*, 126(2):311–328, 1999.

[159] Hendrik Maazen and Jan Stienstra. A presentation for K_2 of split radical pairs. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 10(3):271–294, 1977/78.

[160] Saunders Mac Lane. Homologie des anneaux et des modules. In *Colloque de topologie algébrique, Louvain, 1956*, pages 55–80. Georges Thone, Liège, 1957.

[161] Saunders Mac Lane. *Categories for the working mathematician*, volume 5 of *Graduate Texts in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, New York, second edition, 1998.

[162] Ib Madsen. Algebraic K-theory and traces. In *Current developments in mathematics, 1995 (Cambridge, MA)*, pages 191–321. Internat. Press, Cambridge, MA, 1994.

[163] Ib Madsen and Michael Weiss. The stable mapping class group and stable homotopy theory. In *European Congress of Mathematics*, pages 283–307. Eur. Math. Soc., Zürich, 2005.

[164] Bruce A. Magurn, editor. *Reviews in K-theory, 1940–84*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 1985. Reviews reprinted from Mathematical Reviews.

[165] M. A. Mandell and J. P. May. Equivariant orthogonal spectra and S-modules. *Mem. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 159(755):x+108, 2002.

[166] M. A. Mandell, J. P. May, S. Schwede, and B. Shipley. Model categories of diagram spectra. *Proc. London Math. Soc. (3)*, 82(2):441–512, 2001.

[167] Michael A. Mandell. Equivariant symmetric spectra. In *Homotopy theory: relations with algebraic geometry, group cohomology, and algebraic K-theory*, volume 346 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 399–452. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2004.

[168] J. P. May. E_∞ spaces, group completions, and permutative categories. In *New developments in topology (Proc. Sympos. Algebraic Topology, Oxford, 1972)*, pages 61–93. London Math. Soc. Lecture Note Ser., No. 11. Cambridge Univ. Press, London, 1974.

[169] J. P. May. *A concise course in algebraic topology*. Chicago Lectures in Mathematics. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, 1999.

[170] J. Peter May. *Simplicial objects in algebraic topology*. Chicago Lectures in Mathematics. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, 1992. Reprint of the 1967 original.

[171] Barry Mazur. Relative neighborhoods and the theorems of Smale. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 77:232–249, 1963.

[172] Randy McCarthy. On fundamental theorems of algebraic K-theory. *Topology*, 32(2):325–328, 1993.

[173] Randy McCarthy. The cyclic homology of an exact category. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 93(3):251–296, 1994.

[174] Randy McCarthy. Relative algebraic K-theory and topological cyclic homology. *Acta Math.*, 179(2):197–222, 1997.

[175] J. E. McClure and R. E. Staffeldt. The chromatic convergence theorem and a tower in algebraic K-theory. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 118(3):1005–1012, 1993.

[176] J. E. McClure and R. E. Staffeldt. On the topological Hochschild homology of bu. I. *Amer. J. Math.*, 115(1):1–45, 1993.

[177] D. McDuff and G. Segal. Homology fibrations and the "group-completion" theorem. *Invent. Math.*, 31(3):279–284, 1975/76.

[178] J. Milnor. Whitehead torsion. *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 72:358–426, 1966.

[179] John Milnor. The Steenrod algebra and its dual. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 67:150–171, 1958.

[180] John Milnor. Two complexes which are homeomorphic but combinatorially distinct. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 74:575–590, 1961.

[181] John Milnor. *Introduction to algebraic K-theory*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J., 1971. Annals of Mathematics Studies, No. 72.

[182] John W. Milnor and James D. Stasheff. *Characteristic classes*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, N. J., 1974. Annals of Mathematics Studies, No. 76.

[183] Barry Mitchell. Rings with several objects. *Advances in Math.*, 8:1–161, 1972.

[184] Stephen A. Mitchell. On the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjectures from a stable homotopy-theoretic viewpoint. In *Algebraic topology and its applications*, volume 27 of *Math. Sci. Res. Inst. Publ.*, pages 163–240. Springer, New York, 1994.

[185] David Mumford. Towards an enumerative geometry of the moduli space of curves. In *Arithmetic and geometry, Vol. II*, volume 36 of *Progr. Math.*, pages 271–328. Birkhäuser Boston, Boston, MA, 1983.

[186] Robert Oliver. *Whitehead groups of finite groups*, volume 132 of *London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1988.

[187] I. A. Panin. The Hurewicz theorem and K-theory of complete discrete valuation rings. *Izv. Akad. Nauk SSSR Ser. Mat.*, 50(4):763–775, 878, 1986.

[188] T. Pirashvili. On the topological Hochschild homology of $\mathbf{Z}/p^k\mathbf{Z}$. *Comm. Algebra*, 23(4):1545–1549, 1995.

[189] Teimuraz Pirashvili. Polynomial approximation of Ext and Tor groups in functor categories. *Comm. Algebra*, 21(5):1705–1719, 1993.

[190] Teimuraz Pirashvili. Spectral sequence for Mac Lane homology. *J. Algebra*, 170(2):422–428, 1994.

[191] Teimuraz Pirashvili and Friedhelm Waldhausen. Mac Lane homology and topological Hochschild homology. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 82(1):81–98, 1992.

[192] Daniel Quillen. Cohomology of groups. In *Actes du Congrès International des Mathématiciens (Nice, 1970), Tome 2*, pages 47–51. Gauthier-Villars, Paris, 1971.

[193] Daniel Quillen. Letter to Graeme SegalJuly 25 1972.

[194] Daniel Quillen. On the cohomology and K-theory of the general linear groups over a finite field. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 96:552–586, 1972.

[195] Daniel Quillen. Finite generation of the groups K_i of rings of algebraic integers. In *Algebraic K-theory, I: Higher K-theories (Proc. Conf., Battelle Memorial Inst., Seattle, Wash., 1972)*, pages 179–198. Lecture Notes in Math., Vol. 341. Springer, Berlin, 1973.

[196] Daniel Quillen. Higher algebraic K-theory. I. In *Algebraic K-theory, I: Higher K-theories (Proc. Conf., Battelle Memorial Inst., Seattle, Wash., 1972)*, pages 85–147. Lecture Notes in Math., Vol. 341. Springer, Berlin, 1973.

[197] Daniel Quillen. Higher algebraic K-theory. In *Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematicians (Vancouver, B. C., 1974), Vol. 1*, pages 171–176. Canad. Math. Congress, Montreal, Que., 1975.

[198] Daniel Quillen. Projective modules over polynomial rings. *Invent. Math.*, 36:167–171, 1976.

[199] Daniel G. Quillen. *Homotopical algebra.* Lecture Notes in Mathematics, No. 43. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1967.

[200] A. A. Ranicki, A. J. Casson, D. P. Sullivan, M. A. Armstrong, C. P. Rourke, and G. E. Cooke. *The Hauptvermutung book*, volume 1 of *K-Monographs in Mathematics.* Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, 1996. A collection of papers of the topology of manifolds.

[201] Douglas C. Ravenel. *Nilpotence and periodicity in stable homotopy theory*, volume 128 of *Annals of Mathematics Studies*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 1992. Appendix C by Jeff Smith.

[202] Douglas C. Ravenel. Life after the telescope conjecture. In *Algebraic K-theory and algebraic topology (Lake Louise, AB, 1991)*, volume 407 of *NATO Adv. Sci. Inst. Ser. C Math. Phys. Sci.*, pages 205–222. Kluwer Acad. Publ., Dordrecht, 1993.

[203] J. Rognes and C. Weibel. Two-primary algebraic K-theory of rings of integers in number fields. *J. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 13(1):1–54, 2000. Appendix A by Manfred Kolster.

[204] John Rognes. Algebraic K-theory of the two-adic integers. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 134(3):287–326, 1999.

[205] John Rognes. $K_4(\mathbf{Z})$ is the trivial group. *Topology*, 39(2):267–281, 2000.

[206] John Rognes. Two-primary algebraic K-theory of pointed spaces. *Topology*, 41(5):873–926, 2002.

[207] John Rognes. The smooth Whitehead spectrum of a point at odd regular primes. *Geom. Topol.*, 7:155–184 (electronic), 2003.

[208] Jonathan Rosenberg. *Algebraic K-theory and its applications*, volume 147 of *Graduate Texts in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1994.

[209] Marco Schlichting. Negative K-theory of derived categories. *Math. Z.*, 253(1):97–134, 2006.

[210] Christian Schlichtkrull. The cyclotomic trace for symmetric ring spectra. In *New topological contexts for Galois theory and algebraic geometry (BIRS 2008)*, volume 16 of *Geom. Topol. Monogr.*, pages 545–592. Geom. Topol. Publ., Coventry, 2009.

[211] R. Schwänzl, R. M. Vogt, and F. Waldhausen. Topological Hochschild homology. *J. London Math. Soc. (2)*, 62(2):345–356, 2000.

[212] Roland Schwänzl, Ross Staffeldt, and Friedhelm Waldhausen. Stable K-theory and topological Hochschild homology of A_∞ rings. In *Algebraic K-theory (Poznań, 1995)*, volume 199 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 161–173. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1996.

[213] Stefan Schwede. Stable homotopical algebra and Γ-spaces. *Math. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.*, 126(2):329–356, 1999.

[214] Stefan Schwede and Brooke Shipley. Equivalences of monoidal model categories. *Algebr. Geom. Topol.*, 3:287–334, 2003.

[215] Stefan Schwede and Brooke E. Shipley. Algebras and modules in monoidal model categories. *Proc. London Math. Soc. (3)*, 80(2):491–511, 2000.

[216] Graeme Segal. Categories and cohomology theories. *Topology*, 13:293–312, 1974.

[217] Jean-Pierre Serre. *Corps locaux*. Publications de l'Institut de Mathématique de l'Université de Nancago, VIII. Actualités Sci. Indust., No. 1296. Hermann, Paris, 1962.

[218] Nobuo Shimada and Kazuhisa Shimakawa. Delooping symmetric monoidal categories. *Hiroshima Math. J.*, 9(3):627–645, 1979.

[219] Brooke Shipley. Symmetric spectra and topological Hochschild homology. *K-Theory*, 19(2):155–183, 2000.

[220] Brooke Shipley. A convenient model category for commutative ring spectra. In *Homotopy theory: relations with algebraic geometry, group cohomology, and algebraic K-theory*, volume 346 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 473–483. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2004.

[221] U. Shukla. A relative cohomology for associative algebras. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 15:461–469, 1964.

[222] V. P. Snaith. Towards the Lichtenbaum-Quillen conjecture concerning the algebraic K-theory of schemes. In *Algebraic K-theory, number theory, geometry and analysis (Bielefeld, 1982)*, volume 1046 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 349–356. Springer, Berlin, 1984.

[223] C. Soulé. Rational K-theory of the dual numbers of a ring of algebraic integers. In *Algebraic K-theory, Evanston 1980 (Proc. Conf., Northwestern Univ., Evanston, Ill., 1980)*, volume 854 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 402–408. Springer, Berlin, 1981.

[224] Christophe Soulé. On higher p-adic regulators. In *Algebraic K-theory, Evanston 1980 (Proc. Conf., Northwestern Univ., Evanston, Ill., 1980)*, volume 854 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 372–401. Springer, Berlin, 1981.

[225] Edwin H. Spanier. *Algebraic topology.* McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1966.

[226] V. Srinivas. *Algebraic K-theory*, volume 90 of *Progress in Mathematics*. Birkhäuser Boston Inc., Boston, MA, second edition, 1996.

[227] Ross E. Staffeldt. On fundamental theorems of algebraic K-theory. *K-Theory*, 2(4):511–532, 1989.

[228] John R. Stallings. On infinite processes leading to differentiability in the complement of a point. In *Differential and Combinatorial Topology (A Symposium in Honor of Marston Morse)*, pages 245–254. Princeton Univ. Press, Princeton, N.J., 1965.

[229] A. Suslin. On the K-theory of algebraically closed fields. *Invent. Math.*, 73(2):241–245, 1983.

[230] A. Suslin. On the Grayson spectral sequence. *Tr. Mat. Inst. Steklova*, 241(Teor. Chisel, Algebra i Algebr. Geom.):218–253, 2003.

[231] A. A. Suslin. Projective modules over polynomial rings are free. *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR*, 229(5):1063–1066, 1976.

[232] A. A. Suslin. On the equivalence of K-theories. *Comm. Algebra*, 9(15):1559–1566, 1981.

[233] A. A. Suslin. Algebraic K-theory of fields. In *Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematicians, Vol. 1, 2 (Berkeley, Calif., 1986)*, pages 222–244, Providence, RI, 1987. Amer. Math. Soc.

[234] Andrei A. Suslin and Mariusz Wodzicki. Excision in algebraic K-theory. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 136(1):51–122, 1992.

[235] Richard G. Swan. Excision in algebraic K-theory. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 1(3):221–252, 1971.

[236] R. W. Thomason. Homotopy colimits in the category of small categories. *Math. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.*, 85(1):91–109, 1979.

[237] R. W. Thomason. Algebraic K-theory and étale cohomology. *Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. (4)*, 18(3):437–552, 1985.

[238] R. W. Thomason and Thomas Trobaugh. Higher algebraic K-theory of schemes and of derived categories. In *The Grothendieck Festschrift, Vol. III*, volume 88 of *Progr. Math.*, pages 247–435. Birkhäuser Boston, Boston, MA, 1990.

[239] Ulrike Tillmann. On the homotopy of the stable mapping class group. *Invent. Math.*, 130(2):257–275, 1997.

[240] Stavros Tsalidis. On the topological cyclic homology of the integers. *Amer. J. Math.*, 119(1):103–125, 1997.

[241] Stavros Tsalidis. Topological Hochschild homology and the homotopy descent problem. *Topology*, 37(4):913–934, 1998.

[242] B. L. Tsygan. Homology of matrix Lie algebras over rings and the Hochschild homology. *Uspekhi Mat. Nauk*, 38(2(230)):217–218, 1983.

[243] Wilberd van der Kallen, Hendrik Maazen, and Jan Stienstra. A presentation for some $K_2(n, R)$. *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 81(5):934–936, 1975.

[244] Vladimir Voevodsky. Motivic cohomology with $\mathbf{Z}/2$-coefficients. *Publ. Math. Inst. Hautes Études Sci.*, (98):59–104, 2003.

[245] Friedhelm Waldhausen. Algebraic K-theory of generalized free products. I, II. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 108(1):135–204, 1978.

[246] Friedhelm Waldhausen. Algebraic K-theory of topological spaces. I. In *Algebraic and geometric topology (Proc. Sympos. Pure Math., Stanford Univ., Stanford, Calif., 1976), Part 1*, Proc. Sympos. Pure Math., XXXII, pages 35–60. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, R.I., 1978.

[247] Friedhelm Waldhausen. Algebraic K-theory of topological spaces. II. In *Algebraic topology, Aarhus 1978 (Proc. Sympos., Univ. Aarhus, Aarhus, 1978)*, volume 763 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 356–394. Springer, Berlin, 1979.

[248] Friedhelm Waldhausen. Algebraic K-theory of spaces, localization, and the chromatic filtration of stable homotopy. In *Algebraic topology, Aarhus 1982 (Aarhus, 1982)*, volume 1051 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 173–195. Springer, Berlin, 1984.

[249] Friedhelm Waldhausen. Algebraic K-theory of spaces. In *Algebraic and geometric topology (New Brunswick, N.J., 1983)*, volume 1126 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 318–419. Springer, Berlin, 1985.

[250] Friedhelm Waldhausen. Algebraic K-theory of spaces, concordance, and stable homotopy theory. In *Algebraic topology and algebraic K-theory (Princeton, N.J., 1983)*, volume 113 of *Ann. of Math. Stud.*, pages 392–417. Princeton Univ. Press, Princeton, NJ, 1987.

[251] C. Weibel. The norm residue isomorphism theorem. *J. Topol.*, 2(2):346–372, 2009.

[252] C. A. Weibel. Mayer-Vietoris sequences and module structures on NK_*. In *Algebraic K-theory, Evanston 1980 (Proc. Conf., Northwestern Univ., Evanston, Ill., 1980)*, volume 854 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 466–493. Springer, Berlin, 1981.

[253] C. A. Weibel. Mayer-Vietoris sequences and mod p K-theory. In *Algebraic K-theory, Part I (Oberwolfach, 1980)*, volume 966 of *Lecture Notes in Math.*, pages 390–407. Springer, Berlin, 1982.

[254] Charles Weibel. An introduction to algebraic K-theory. In progress, some of it is on the web, `http://math.rutgers.edu/~weibel/Kbook.html`.

[255] Charles Weibel. K-théorie algébrique homotopique. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris Sér. I Math.*, 305(18):793–796, 1987.

[256] Charles Weibel. The 2-torsion in the K-theory of the integers. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris Sér. I Math.*, 324(6):615–620, 1997.

[257] Charles Weibel. Algebraic K-theory of rings of integers in local and global fields. In *Handbook of K-theory. Vol. 1, 2*, pages 139–190. Springer, Berlin, 2005.

[258] Charles A. Weibel. The development of algebraic K-theory before 1980. In *Algebra, K-theory, groups, and education (New York, 1997)*, volume 243 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 211–238. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1999.

[259] Michael Weiss and Bruce Williams. Automorphisms of manifolds and algebraic K-theory. II. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 62(1):47–107, 1989.

[260] Hermann Weyl. *Philosophy of Mathematics and Natural Science. Revised and Augmented English Edition Based on a Translation by Olaf Helmer*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, N. J., 1949.

[261] J. H. C. Whitehead. Simplicial spaces, nuclei and m-groups. *Proc. London Math. Soc. (2)*, 45:243–327, 1939.

[262] J. H. C. Whitehead. On incidence matrices, nuclei and homotopy types. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 42:1197–1239, 1941.

[263] J. H. C. Whitehead. Simple homotopy types. *Amer. J. Math.*, 72:1–57, 1950.

[264] Dongyuan Yao. A devissage theorem in Waldhausen K-theory. *J. Algebra*, 176(3):755–761, 1995.

Index